



This is a digital copy of a book that was preserved for generations on library shelves before it was carefully scanned by Google as part of a project to make the world's books discoverable online.

It has survived long enough for the copyright to expire and the book to enter the public domain. A public domain book is one that was never subject to copyright or whose legal copyright term has expired. Whether a book is in the public domain may vary country to country. Public domain books are our gateways to the past, representing a wealth of history, culture and knowledge that's often difficult to discover.

Marks, notations and other marginalia present in the original volume will appear in this file - a reminder of this book's long journey from the publisher to a library and finally to you.

### Usage guidelines

Google is proud to partner with libraries to digitize public domain materials and make them widely accessible. Public domain books belong to the public and we are merely their custodians. Nevertheless, this work is expensive, so in order to keep providing this resource, we have taken steps to prevent abuse by commercial parties, including placing technical restrictions on automated querying.

We also ask that you:

- + *Make non-commercial use of the files* We designed Google Book Search for use by individuals, and we request that you use these files for personal, non-commercial purposes.
- + *Refrain from automated querying* Do not send automated queries of any sort to Google's system: If you are conducting research on machine translation, optical character recognition or other areas where access to a large amount of text is helpful, please contact us. We encourage the use of public domain materials for these purposes and may be able to help.
- + *Maintain attribution* The Google "watermark" you see on each file is essential for informing people about this project and helping them find additional materials through Google Book Search. Please do not remove it.
- + *Keep it legal* Whatever your use, remember that you are responsible for ensuring that what you are doing is legal. Do not assume that just because we believe a book is in the public domain for users in the United States, that the work is also in the public domain for users in other countries. Whether a book is still in copyright varies from country to country, and we can't offer guidance on whether any specific use of any specific book is allowed. Please do not assume that a book's appearance in Google Book Search means it can be used in any manner anywhere in the world. Copyright infringement liability can be quite severe.

### About Google Book Search

Google's mission is to organize the world's information and to make it universally accessible and useful. Google Book Search helps readers discover the world's books while helping authors and publishers reach new audiences. You can search through the full text of this book on the web at <http://books.google.com/>



K  
iv S  
159<sup>m</sup>



D3





302315897





*Alfred Fuller  
Newcastle, Staffs.*

*Edmond*  
*Barman B. Perry*  
*12. xi. '90*  
CLARK'S  
FOREIGN

# THEOLOGICAL LIBRARY.

VOLUME XXV.

Neander's General Church History.

VOL. VIII.

EDINBURGH:

T. & T. CLARK, 38 GEORGE STREET;

LONDON: SEELEY AND CO.; WARD AND CO.; AND JACKSON AND WALFORD.

DUBLIN: JOHN ROBERTSON. NEW YORK: WILEY AND PUTNAM.

PHILADELPHIA: J. A. MOORE.

MDCCCLII.



GENERAL HISTORY  
OF THE  
CHRISTIAN RELIGION AND CHURCH:

FROM THE GERMAN OF  
DR AUGUSTUS NEANDER.

TRANSLATED FROM THE LAST EDITION.

BY JOSEPH TORREY,  
PROFESSOR OF MORAL AND INTELLECTUAL PHILOSOPHY IN THE UNIVERSITY OF  
VERMONT.

"I am come to send fire on the earth." *Words of our Lord.*  
"And the fire shall try every man's work, of what sort it is." "But other foundation can no man lay than that  
is laid, which is Christ Jesus." *St Paul.*

VOLUME VIII.

EDINBURGH:  
T. & T. CLARK, 38 GEORGE STREET.  
LONDON: HAMILTON, ADAMS, & CO.; SIMPKIN, MARSHALL, & CO.;  
SEELEY & CO.; WARD & CO.; JACKSON & WALFORD, ETC.  
DUBLIN: JOHN ROBERTSON.

---

MDCCCLII.

PRINTED BY  
PARK AND DEWARS,  
DUNDEE.



# TABLE OF CONTENTS.

## VOLUME EIGHTH.

### FIFTH PERIOD OF THE HISTORY OF THE CHRISTIAN CHURCH.

FROM GREGORY THE SEVENTH TO BONIFACE THE EIGHTH.

FROM A.D. 1073 TO A.D. 1294.

#### [SECOND DIVISION.]

#### SECTION THIRD.

#### CHRISTIAN LIFE AND CHRISTIAN WORSHIP, 1-84.

|                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                             |    |
|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----|
| General description of Christian life .....                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                 | 1  |
| Individual traits of Christian life. Ambrose of Siena. Raimund Palmaris.<br>Louis the Ninth. Elizabeth of Hessa .....                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                       | 4  |
| Resistance to the secularization of the religious life. Pious societies of the<br>Beghards, Papelards, boni homines, boni valeti.....                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                       | 14 |
| Subjective view of the order of salvation. Justification as the interior work of<br>making just. Fides formata. Twofold error resulting from this view; one-<br>sided externalization, or spiritualization, of religion. Voices of the church-<br>teachers with regard to both errors. Marks of a truly Christian spirit.....                                                                                                               | 16 |
| Shape given to preaching in the beginning of the twelfth century. Preaching<br>in the spoken language. Preachers of repentance. Discourse of the abbot<br>Guibert, of Novigentum, on the right method of preaching. Work of Hum-<br>bert de Romanis, general of the Dominicans, on the education of preachers.<br>Example of pope Innocent the Third. Berthold the Franciscan, a preacher<br>of repentance, at Regensburg and Augsburg..... | 28 |
| Attempts to translate the Bible in Germany and France; Bible-reading society<br>at Metz. Dissolution of it. The Bible prohibited at the synod of Toulouse,<br>1229 .....                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                    | 39 |
| Traces of infidelity, proceeding partly from rudeness of manners, partly from<br>the revival of speculative culture, and especially from the influence of the                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                               |    |



|                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                              |    |
|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----|
| Arabian philosophy. Frederic the Second. John Sans Terre. John Count of Soissons. Tract of the abbot Guibert of Nogent sous Coucy against the latter. Temptations occasioned by religious doubt. Examples of such conflicts .....                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                            | 44 |
| Dead, worldly faith. Hugo a St Victore against it. Fanaticism and superstition. Superstitious veneration of saints. Elfeg of Canterbury. Abuse of relics. Work of Guibert of Nogent sous Coucy, <i>De pignoribus Sanctorum</i> .....                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                         | 48 |
| Worship of the Virgin Mary. Doctrine of the immaculate conception. Festival of the Conception. Bernard of Clairvaux against it. Pothos, a monk of Prüm, attacks this festival in his work, "On the state of God's house." Epistolary dispute on this subject betwixt the abbot De la Celle and the English monk Nicholas. Thomas Aquinas, opponent of the exaggerated veneration of Mary. Raymund Lull's defence of the worship of Mary. Festival of the Holy Trinity. Abuses in the observance of festivals. <i>Festum fatuorum, follorum</i> .....                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                         | 53 |
| The seven sacraments; first mentioned by Otto of Bamberg, 1124. Exposition of the seven sacraments. Doctrine of the Eucharist. Confirmation of the doctrine of transubstantiation at the Lateran council, A. D. 1215. Distinction of the accidents remaining behind from the changing substance. Completion of the cultus and entire catholicism in this doctrine. Struggle against it in opinions and doubts of the sectaries. Secret adherents of Berengar. Older intermediate view, taking its departure from the relation of the two natures .....                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                       | 58 |
| Extreme point of realistic externalization. Thomas Aquinas. Inquiries of Innocent the Third in his treatise <i>De mysteriis missæ</i> ; his and Bonaventura's hypothesis of a retro-transubstantiation. Reply of the University of Paris, on the doctrine of the eucharist, to Clement the Fourth, A. D. 1264. The Dominican John of Paris's revival of the older dogma lying at the bottom of the relation of the two natures. His deposition from his office .....                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                         | 63 |
| Corpus-Christi day; originated in Liege; instituted first in 1264, by Urban the Fourth; again by Clement the Fifth, in 1311. Introduction of the bowing of the knee before the host, under Innocent the Third; made a law in 1217, by Honorius the Third. Abolition of the communion of infants. Distribution of the eucharist under one form, occasioned by the dread of spilling the blood of Christ; promoted by the idea of the priesthood. Doctrine of concomitance. Contest against the division of the Lord's supper. Division reprobated by Paschalis the Second. Provost Folmar of Traufenstein against concomitance. Neglect of the Lord's supper by the laity. Ordinance of the Lateran council of 1215 with regard to this point. Encroaching corruption in the celebration of mass .....                                                                                                                                                        | 67 |
| Doctrine of penance. Necessity of separating the theological doctrine from the notions of the people. Distinctions of the theologians between church absolution and the divine forgiveness of sins;—subjection of this correct sentiment under the principles of the church. The three parts of penitence, first defined by the Lombards: <i>Compunctio cordis</i> ; <i>confessio oris</i> ; <i>satisfactio operis</i> . Extension of satisfaction to the future life. Gregory the Seventh, Urban the Second against the externals of penitence. Indulgence. Origin of general indulgences, by Victor the Third, by occasion of a crusade against the Saracens in Africa. Repeated preaching of indulgences during the crusades to the holy sepulchre. The council of Claremont under Urban the Second. Indulgences placed on a theoretical basis in the thirteenth century. Defence of them on the ground of a <i>Thesaurus meritorum</i> and of a superer- |    |

## TABLE OF CONTENTS.

vii

|                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                        |    |
|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----|
| ogatory perfection of the saints. Distortion of the original opinion by the sellers of indulgences. Confession of William of Auxerre. Thomas Aquinas, Abelard, Stephen of Obaize, Berthold the Franciscan, partly against indulgences in general, partly against the abuse of them. Papal remissions, and canon of the council of Beziers against the latter. Ordinance of oral confessions by Innocent the Third, at the fourth Lateran council ..... | 74 |
|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----|

## SECTION FOURTH.

### HISTORY OF DOCTRINES.

|                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                  |    |
|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----|
| <i>Course of Development of Doctrines and Theology in the Western Church</i> ...                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                 | 85 |
| Newly awakened religious and scientific life in the eleventh century. Distinction of a more intellectual and a more religious interest. Question concerning the objective, or barely subjective import of general conceptions.....                                                                                                                                                                                                                                               | 85 |
| Roscelin of Compiègne, near the close of the eleventh century, against the hitherto prevailing realism of Augustin, which had grown out of the combination of Plato's <i>Universalia ante rem</i> with Aristotle's <i>Universalia in re</i> . His explanation of general conceptions as <i>nomina non res</i> . Analysis of the conceptions <i>part and whole</i> .....                                                                                                          | 86 |
| Isolation of scientific efforts previous to the founding of the University of Paris in the twelfth century. Raimbert, nominalist at Lille; Udarus, realist at Tournay. John of Salisbury, near the close of the twelfth century, complains of the pride of dialectics. Strife between faith and speculation; example in Udarus; his work on original sin .....                                                                                                                   | 87 |
| Principles, theological and philosophical, confounded. Suppression of nominalism. Improbability of religious scepticism in the case of Roscelin himself. His designation of the three persons as <i>tres res</i> . Condemnation of his doctrine as tritheism at the council of Soissons, 1093. Recantation: flight to England; controversy with the English clergy on account of his Hildebrandian principles; return to France; death .....                                     | 91 |
| Anselm of Canterbury represents the union of science and life. His early life; studies under Lanfranc in the monastery of Bec; made prior of that monastery after his master's death; his activity as a teacher; his principles of education; made abbot in 1078; called to England as archbishop of Canterbury in 1093; disputes with William the Second and Henry the First; relations with Urban the Second; travels through Italy and France; return to England; death ..... | 93 |
| Anselm's character and intellectual bent. Unity of faith and knowledge assumed as the basis of his speculation. Import of his attack upon nominalism. Adopts Augustin's principle with regard to the relation of theology and faith. Striving of his theology to satisfy the two main directions of the human                                                                                                                                                                    |    |

|                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                |     |
|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----|
| mind. Fusion of the Christianity of the Bible and of the church. Mistakes the certainty and strength of his conviction for demonstration .....                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                 | 98  |
| Separation of the main theological tendencies which had been united in the case of Anselm. Abelard; Bernard of Clairvaux. Bernard's monkish view of the relation of faith and knowledge. Threefold relation of the human mind to divine things. Corresponding distinction of the three provinces, of <i>opinio</i> , of <i>fides</i> , and of <i>intellectus</i> . Bernard's abandonment of scientific theology occasioned by Abelard .....                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                    | 106 |
| Peter Abelard of Palais, near Nantes, in Bretagne, 1079. His character. Controversy with the realist William of Champeaux, at Paris. Philosophical disputations at Melun, Corbeil, Paris. Passes over to theology. Competition with Anselm of Laon. Appears as a teacher in Paris. Enters the abbey of St Denis. Scientific lectures.....                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                      | 109 |
| His work entitled <i>Introductio in Theologiam</i> ; in which he bears down upon the enemies of the dialectic method. On the necessity of the explication of faith in conceptions. Different stages of faith. Distinguishes the essentially religious, and the religiously unessential, in the Sacred Scriptures; that which is necessary to religion and that which is less important. Distinguishes faith as a temper of the heart, and as dialectically apprehended. Gives a new shaping to the doctrine of inspiration. Distinguishes the mental acts, <i>cognoscere</i> and <i>intelligere</i> . Defends the idea of miracles. Endeavours to reconcile the natural and the supernatural. His over-valuation of the ancient philosophers on the subject of morals. Affirms their belief in a Redeemer..... | 111 |
| Fundamental principles of Abelard compared with those of Anselm .....                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                          | 118 |
| Opponents of Abelard. Walter of Mauretania his constant opponent. Charges brought against him by Walter. Abelard condemned at the council of Soissons, 1121. Abelard's return to St Denis. His quarrel with the monks; takes refuge in Troyes; lives as a recluse. Theological lectures. Exposed to new persecutions. Accepts the place of abbot at Ruits, in 1128; resigns it in 1136. Lectures at Paris. Outbreak of a general controversy .....                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                             | 119 |
| His writings belonging to this period. New edition of the Introduction. Agreement between the ancient philosophy and Christianity. His injustice towards Judaism. Polemics against the undue exaltation of knowledge. Theology apprehended as relating to life .....                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                           | 123 |
| Commentary on the Epistle to the Romans. Disinterested love to God required. Fear only the beginning of wisdom. His agreement with Bernard on this subject .....                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                               | 126 |
| Abelard's ethical treatise entitled <i>Scito te ipsum</i> (principle that every action is in itself indifferent). The <i>intentio animi</i> constitutes the morality of an action. Adopts the doctrine of the church with regard to the actions of unbelievers. Sin and excitements to sin rigidly separated. The divine judgment of actions a distinct thing from all human judgment. His purer conception of penitence, and his attack upon the system of penance in his own age .....                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                       | 127 |
| Abelard's work on the history of dogmas, entitled <i>Sic et non</i> . Its aim. His freer notions of inspiration. Separates the divine and human elements in prophecy. Possibility of error in the apostles. Abelard's criticism as opposed to the spirit of his times. Copies of Abelard's dogmatic lectures.....                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                              | 133 |
| William of St Thierry brings a complaint against Abelard before Gottfried of                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                   |     |

# TABLE OF CONTENTS.

ix

|                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                 |     |
|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----|
| Abelard and Bernard of Clairvaux. Synod of Sens, A.D. 1140. Hypocritical behaviour of Bernard. Berengar's sarcastic description of the synod. Abelard's system of doctrine condemned. He appeals to the pope. Letter of the council to Rome. Bernard's letter. Weakness of his charges. His letter to the cardinals. Abelard's letter to Heloise. Decision of the pope. Condemnation of Abelard. Comparison of his cause with that of Arnold of Brescia. Noble conduct of the venerable Peter of Cluny towards Abelard. The latter takes refuge at Cluny. His work of confession and defence. Discourse concerning the Supreme Good. Abelard's sickness and death at St Marcel. Peter's letter to Heloise ..... | 137 |
| Import of the controversy between Abelard and Bernard. Hugo of St Victor at Paris from Ypres, near the end of the eleventh century. His education at Halberstadt, and the abbey of Hamersleben. Reception into the establishment of St Victor, in 1118. Hugo representative of a mystical, intuitive, anti-dialectic school. Relation of his bent to that of Anselm. His <i>Eruditio didascalica</i> . Exalts the empirical sciences to the disparagement of philosophy. On the study of the Bible .....                                                                                                                                                                                                        | 146 |
| Hugo as a champion for the independence of the religious province. Worldly consciousness, self-consciousness, and the consciousness of God, under the image of three eyes; one precursory, preceding faith, relating to the existence of the spirit; the second, developing itself out of it and setting forth the nature of the object; faith an affection ( <i>affectus</i> .) Certainty of knowledge in the case of the theologian and of the logician. Concerning the merit of faith. Progressive growth of faith to the certainty of experience ..                                                                                                                                                         | 148 |
| Different modes of estimating the degree of knowledge necessary to salvation. Hugo refers the whole to the measure of devotional feelings. Disputed question respecting the knowledge of the pious men of the Old Testament. Hugo differs from Abelard on the question concerning disinterested love. Similar views of Gerhoh of Reichersberg on the same point .....                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                           | 151 |
| Robert Pullen; his bent akin to that of Hugo a St Victore. Made a cardinal by pope Eugene the Third. New controversy of Bernard with Gilbert Porretanus, archbishop of Poitiers, a man belonging to the dialectical school of theology. The latter accused of heretical views of the trinity before Eugene the Third. Division of opinions at the synod of Rheims. Bernard's hopes defeated .....                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                               | 156 |
| Peter Lombard of Novara, bishop of Paris, 1159; died 1160. His <i>Libri quatuor sententiarum</i> . Character of the work. Propagation of the school by Peter of Poitiers. Contests of the Schools with the church and the mystical tendency. Representatives of the former tendency. Gerhoh of Reichersberg and Walter of Mauretania; the latter's rude attack against Abelard and Gilbert of Poitiers. Peter Lombard and Peter of Poitiers, in the work entitled " <i>Contra quatuor Gallie labyrinthos</i> ." Joachim. Innocent the Third decides in favour of Peter Lombard. Lateran council, 1215 .....                                                                                                     | 158 |
| The mystic theology. Its relation to the dialectic. Rupert of Deutz, Bernard's contemporary, author of an allegorizing, tedious commentary on the Bible. The Scotchman Richard, pupil of Hugo, prior of St Victor, 1173. <i>Ratio and intellectus</i> . Ecstatic intuition. Thoughts and sayings of Richard. Objects of faith which are <i>supra</i> , and which are <i>præter rationem</i> . Three stages or positions of the consciousness of God. The <i>Meditationes</i> of Guigo, a mystic, prior of the Carthusians .....                                                                                                                                                                                 | 160 |
| Salutary influence of the Victorines at Paris. Jacob of Vitry complains of the                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                  |     |

|                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                    |     |
|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----|
| licentious morals of the University, in his <i>Historia occidentalis</i> . Peter Cantor of St Victor, bishop of Tournay, 1194. His ethics. Complaint against speculation. Archdeacon Peter of Blois, pupil of John of Salisbury, utters a similar complaint. Stephen, bishop of Tournay, writes a letter of complaint to Rome against divisions on matters of doctrine and desecration of the faith .....                                                                                          | 163 |
| Transition of dialectic theology from the twelfth to the thirteenth century. Alanus Magnus. His <i>Ars Catholicae fidei</i> , dedicated to pope Clement the Third. His <i>Regulae theologicae</i> . Influence of the Aristotelian philosophy. Opposition to this influence. Admonitory letter of Gregory the Ninth to the University of Paris. Story about Simon of Tournay. General recognition of Aristotle .....                                                                                | 169 |
| Difference of the effects produced by the Aristotelian philosophy in the earlier times and in the age of the schoolmen. Union of the Aristotelian with the Platonic philosophy, by Augustin. Pseudo-Dionysius. Translations of the Platonists. The alliance with the Aristotelian philosophy made possible by the distinction of the state of nature and the state of grace. Peculiarity of the new method. Its disadvantages. The two authorities of scholasticism, Aristotle and tradition ..... | 171 |
| The Franciscans. Alexander of Hales, English; and Bonaventura, Italian. The Dominicans. Albertus Magnus, and Thomas Aquinas his pupil. <i>Summa Theologiae</i> of Thomas Aquinas. His Commentary on the Sentences .....                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                            | 173 |
| William of Paris. Roger Bacon. Persecutions which he suffered. His <i>Opus majus</i> . His opinions. Raymund Lull self-educated. Contest with the school of Averrhoes. His conception of an absolute method of science, <i>ars magna</i> .....                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                     | 177 |
| Progress of the theology of the thirteenth century .....                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                           | 181 |

*General Introductory Questions, 181-193.*

|                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                      |     |
|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----|
| Alexander of Hales. Different relation of knowledge and certainty in theology and in the other sciences. On the utility of theology. Redemption, the central-point. Similar views of Bonaventura and of Albert the Great. Point of departure of these theologians and Thomas Aquinas, the principle of an end above nature. This end defined, by the latter, as contemplation. Distinction of natural and supernatural contemplation of the Spirit reconciled by revelation. Total separation of faith and knowledge by the school of Averrhoes, controverted. Reason incapable of demonstrating the faith; capable of refuting objections to it. Use of analogies. Formal unity of theology in the idea of God. Definition of theology, agreeably to the principle of contemplation, as a theoretical science ..... | 182 |
| William of Paris defines faith as a determination of the affections and will. Requires self-denial of the intellect. Doubt and conflict as belonging to faith. Faith the soul of the intellect. Agreement of knowledge and faith according to Roger Bacon. Practical life exalted above speculation. Moral philosophy the end of speculative. Theology the loftiest science. Agreement of Bacon with the other theologians on the subject of faith .....                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                             | 189 |
| Raymund Lull a zealous champion for the ultimate unity of faith and knowledge. His treatise on this subject, composed at Montpellier in 1304. Differ-                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                |     |

# TABLE OF CONTENTS.

xi

|                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                               |     |
|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----|
| ent grades of the <i>credere</i> and the <i>intelligere</i> . Similar relation of God's essence to faith and knowledge. His disputation with a hermit. His answer to the question, How far theology is a science. Subordination of faith to knowledge. Denies the possibility of unlimited knowledge. His work on the contest between faith and knowledge. Constant precedence of faith to knowledge. His treatise entitled <i>Contemplatio in Deum</i> . Reciprocal demand of religious consciousness and scientific thought. Kinds of faith.....                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                            | 193 |
| <i>Doctrine concerning God, 200.</i>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                          |     |
| Anselm's ontological argument. Necessity of distinguishing his fundamental ideas from their syllogistic form. Exhibition of his ideas in the book <i>De veritate</i> and the <i>Monologium</i> , which are identical with the corresponding ones of Augustin. Anselm's realistic view of a higher objectivity of thought. Thought as the copy of an existing truth. Self-causality of the idea of God. Intrinsic impossibility of denying the Divine existence. He neglects to distinguish the thought of the absolute and the consciousness of God. Contradiction between his affirmation of the unavoidableness of the presupposition of God and his proof of the actual being of God. Origin of the latter. The argument itself. Its refutation by the monk Gannilo. Anselm's reply. Alexander of Hales' distinction of the <i>cognitio Dei in actu</i> and <i>in habitu</i> : of a <i>ratio communis</i> and a <i>ratio propria</i> , in reference to the argument of Anselm. Similar objection of Thomas .....                                           | 200 |
| Monistic view of the world, occasioned by the work <i>De divisione naturæ</i> , the Dionysian writings, Latin versions of works pertaining to the Neo-Platonic and Arabian philosophies, particularly the book <i>De causis</i> , translated from the Arabic and ascribed to Aristotle. Neo-Platonic doctrines of the last. Thomas's Commentary on it. More decided expression of the Neo-Platonic ideas, by Almaric of Bena, and his scholar, David of Dinanto .....                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                         | 205 |
| Almaric of Bena, near Chartres. Passes from the study of Dialectics to theology. Asserts the oneness of the individual with Christ. His doctrine condemned by the University of Paris, 1204. This judgment confirmed by Innocent the Third. Almaric's recantation at Paris, 1207, and death. David of Dinanto defines God as the "material principle of all things." Sets up three identical principles: the first indivisible ground of the material world, matter; the first indivisible principle of the mental world, <i>nous</i> ; and that of the eternal substances, God. God defined by Almaric, as the <i>principium formale</i> ; by David, as the <i>materia prima</i> . Phenomenal things mere accidents, <i>sine subjecto</i> . Corresponding explanation of the eucharist. God incarnate in every man. Introduction of this pantheism among the laity by writings in the French language. The sect of the Holy Ghost. Predictions of William of Aria. Extirpation of the sect 1210. Theological writings in the French language forbidden ..... | 208 |
| This <i>monism</i> attacked by the church theologians. The relation of God to the world according to Albertus Magnus and Thomas. Monistic mode of apprehending the Aristotelian philosophy, one intelligence in all beings. Severance of reason from faith. Pretended subordination of reason to the declarations of faith. Thomas opposed to this direction .....                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                            | 211 |
| Doctrine of the divine attributes. Unfounded charge brought against Abelard by Walter of Mauretania and Hugo a St Victor, that he denied the omni-                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                            |     |

|                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                 |     |
|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----|
| presence of God. Abelard's objections to the notion of a local omnipresence. He extends the idea of omnipresence also to time. View of this attribute according to the scholastic theologians, as the divine efficiency prevailing space .....                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                  | 213 |
| Determination of the idea of almighty power by the theologians of the twelfth century. Anselm limits the divine freedom to that which is worthy of God. The conception of divine necessity taken up into that of an immutable will. Abelard resolves divine necessity into love. His respect for the religious interest. Development of his views in the Sentences. More moderate in the apology. Hugo's distinction of divine will in itself, as <i>beneficium Dei</i> , from its historical manifestation, as <i>signum beneficium</i> . His view of an overgrasping omnipotence. Abelard controverted by the schoolmen of the thirteenth century .....                                                                                                                                                                                       | 216 |
| Doctrine of the Trinity. Method of Augustin adhered to. Point of departure, analogy between the created and the Supreme Spirit. Anselm's comparison of human self-knowledge with the Word, in whom finite being is created, of man's thought of himself with the Father. Procession of the Holy Spirit from Father and Son. Defence of the Western doctrine of the Holy Spirit against the Greeks at Bari in Apulia, 1098. Abelard's departure from the method of analogy; treats the doctrine of the Trinity as a necessary idea of reason,—God as almighty power, wisdom, love—Father, Son, and Spirit. Attempt to reconcile the doctrine as held by the Western and by the Oriental church. Similar explanation of this doctrine by Richard a St Victor, Hugo, Richard, Alanus .....                                                         | 222 |
| Controversies on the Trinity, growing out of opposite theories respecting general conceptions. Charge of tritheism brought against Gilbert Porretanus. Anti-Sabellian distinction made by Porretanus of the <i>substantia quae est Deus</i> from the <i>substantia qua est Deus</i> . Unprofitableness of this dispute. Rejection of the symbol proposed by Bernard. Inapplicability of the logical categories to God, according to Abelard and Peter of Lombardy .....                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                         | 228 |
| Prosecution of the doctrine of the Trinity in the thirteenth century. Alexander of Hales. Self-communication of God after his nature, in generation; after his will, in love. Albert the Great: <i>formans formatum, spiritus rector formae</i> . Thomas Aquinas rejects the argument from reason. Analogy of the divine creation with the Trinitarian distinction of God within himself. The <i>processio amoris</i> conditioned on the <i>processio intellectus verbi</i> . The generation of the Son; procession of the Spirit. Mode of apprehending the creation of the world as a process of nature, excluded by the doctrine of the Trinity. Lull: Divine <i>principle</i> of all existence, the Father; <i>medium</i> , the Son; <i>end</i> , the Spirit. The Trinity considered as the exhaustion and fulfilment of perfect being ..... | 230 |
| Doctrine of creation. Thomas Aquinas: Beginning of creation a bare matter of faith. Considerate judgment respecting the hypothesis of an eternal creation. End of the creation. Bonaventura's definition of this end as the glory of God, not the good of the creature .....                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                    | 234 |
| Conception of the miracle. Reconciliation of this idea with the doctrine concerning God and the world. Abelard's distinction of a <i>κόσμος νοητός</i> and <i>κόσμος αἰσθητός</i> , of the plan of the world and the course of the world. Evolution of the powers originally implanted in the world, and entrance of new ones in miracles. Abelard opposed to philosophical monism. On the cessation of miraculous works in his own times .....                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                 | 235 |

|                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                      |     |
|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----|
| Middle theory of Abelard passes over to the thirteenth century. Alexander of Hales. Distinguishes nature as plastic matter and formal law. Defines the miracle as the exposition of that which is concealed in nature. Albertus Magnus: <i>Primordiales rerum causae simpliciter</i> ; nature, as the comprehended sum of all the possibilities laid within it; and nature, as the totality of all the actualities, determined by its self development. <i>Contra praeter</i> and <i>supra naturam</i> distinguished. Similar determinations of Thomas Aquinas. Sayings of Raymund Lull. Designates the Christian age of the world as the age of miracles, in contradistinction to the antique world. Roger Bacon: Miraculous power residing in the Word .....                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                       | 238 |
| Foreknowledge and predestination. Liberty of the creature sacrificed to the Augustinian system and a monistic speculation. Sophistic concealment of the final result common to all the speculations on this subject. Anselm's treatise on predestination. Show of freedom which arises from the temporalization of the eternal. Evil excluded from the foreknowledge of God as non-existent. Hugo: Freedom of the will in itself; limitation of the individual will by the order of the world. Alexander of Hales: <i>necessitas antecedens</i> and <i>consequens</i> . Conception of "providence" and "fate;" the one, as the arrangement of things in the divine understanding; the other, as their incorporation in actual reality. Freewill included under the latter. Extension of God's knowledge also to evil. Evil an element in the harmony of the universal whole. Albertus Magnus: Harmony of providence, fate, and freedom.....                                                                                                                                                                                          | 245 |
| Climax of the monistic denial of liberty in the determinations of Thomas Aquinas. Necessity of free actions, as contemplated from their <i>highest</i> and <i>ultimate</i> , <i>contingency</i> of them as contemplated in their <i>proximate</i> causes. God's will, that some things should be necessary after a <i>necessary</i> , others after a <i>contingent</i> manner,—connected with this unconditional predestination. God's goodness, ultimate ground of both election and reprobation. Reference of this relation back to the necessary manifoldness in the universe. Plan of the world in the divine understanding distinguished from its execution in the actual world. Identity of knowing and being in God. Thomas vacillates betwixt pantheistic monism and the theistic contemplation of the world. The irresistible will of God as necessitating man to freewill.....                                                                                                                                                                                                                                             | 250 |
| Raymund Lull. The questionable relation united with that of creation and preservation. Lull endeavours to exclude all constraint from predestination. Concedes the incompatibility of the doctrine of predestination with ethics....                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                 | 255 |
| Connection of the scholastic anthropology with that of Augustin; particularly in the application of the idea of grace to the primeval state of man. Anselm controverts the definition of freewill as the faculty of choice between good and evil. Positive conception of freedom. This conception more precisely defined by the view of man's primeval state. "Merit" of the angels, who did not fall; their confirmation and goodness. Pulletin's doctrine with regard to the original bare faith, and the posterior intuition of the angels. Twofold employment of the term faith. Clear separation of the two meanings by Hugo. The <i>concursum</i> , and the more limited grace. Distinction of grace as <i>gratia co-operans</i> in the primeval state, and <i>operans</i> in the state of corruption. Peter of Lombard supposes a will without power, in the primeval state, rendered active by grace. Peter of Poitiers interprets the image of God as referring to the natural powers of the soul. <i>Bona naturalia</i> and <i>bona gratuita</i> . State of man before and after the bestowment of grace in paradise ..... | 260 |



|                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                  |     |
|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----|
| Influence of these distinctions upon faith and morals. Principle of super-human virtue. Agreement in this respect with the fundamental principle of Aristotle's ethics. The abbot Peter of Celle, bishop of Chartres, rejects this view. Alexander of Hales : <i>Pura naturalia</i> and <i>informatio</i> . Distinction made by the theologians of the thirteenth century between a <i>gratia gratis data</i> and a <i>gratia gratum faciens</i> . The latter acquired by the <i>meritum de congruo</i> , as distinguished from the <i>meritum de condigno</i> . Human nature in itself as <i>informis negative</i> , not <i>privative</i> . Its need of <i>gratia informans</i> , not <i>reformans</i> . Alexander holds to a twofold love to God, human and super-human ; supposes a supernatural reconciliation between the natural state and the supernatural destination of man                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                             | 264 |
| Destination of man, according to Bonaventura, to serve the glory and the manifestation of God. Creation in the image of God, and likeness to God, grounded in the intellect and the affections of man. Transition from the hypothesis of a twofold grace, by Alexander, to the succeeding doctrines. Deviation of the Dominican Thomas Aquinas from the Franciscan Alexander, in the hypothesis of a co-existence of nature and grace in the original state. His view of original righteousness. Harmony between the higher and lower powers. Immediate surrendry of man, at his first creation, to the divine                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                   | 267 |
| Augustinian exposition of the influence of the first sin. Fall of the entire race in one exemplar, according to Anselm. <i>Peccatum naturale</i> and <i>personale</i> . Similar connection of ideas in the work of Odo of Tournay, <i>De peccato originali</i> . Abelard wavers betwixt his own principles and the church doctrine. Traces the fall to the natural conflict betwixt reason and sense. In opposition to the doctrine of Augustin, supposes the transfer of punishment only to the posterity of Adam. Reduces the whole finally to God's unlimited will. The difference between good and evil made to depend on the divine will, in contradiction to his own theory respecting the divine omnipotence. Case of unbaptised infants. Vague defence of his doctrine in his Vindication. Original sin more precisely defined by means of the assumption of <i>bona naturalia</i> and <i>gratuita</i> . Peter of Lombardy: corruption of the former, loss of the latter. Thomas rejects Traducianism. All partake of Adam's sin by virtue of a community of nature. Original sin as <i>inordinata dispositio</i> , <i>languor naturae</i> . Question about a <i>posse non peccare</i> or a <i>peccare non posse</i> , in respect of the sinlessness of Christ. Twofold view in Abelard. Comparison of the immutable divinely human unity in Christ, with the transitory relation of the spirit to the prophets. Possibility of sin in Christ as man ; impossibility as God-man. Perfect humanity of Christ insisted on. Peter Lombard's distinction of natural from sinful weakness, <i>passio</i> and <i>propassio</i> | 270 |
| Doctrine of redemption. Neglect of this doctrine in the earlier times. Germ of its scholastic shape in Augustin. Prominence given by him to the subjective side. His judgment with regard to the possibility of another form of redemption ; this contemplated from the point of view of the divine omnipotence. Anselm's attempt to prove the necessity of the actual form. All sin considered as withholding from God the honour due to him. Punishment as a moment in the divine order of the world. Necessity of more than equivalent reparation for sin. Impossibility of such satisfaction on the part of man. Necessity thence arising of a God-man as mediator. Separation of the ethical from the dogmatical side of the death of Christ. Its conformity to nature founded in the human relations. His unmerited and hence                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                              |     |

# TABLE OF CONTENTS.

xv

meritorious death. Christ, the self-sufficient, abdicates this merit in favour of fallen humanity.....

276

Unconditional significance of the "active satisfaction" in this theory, while the "passive" retires wholly out of view. The fact of redemption incomprehensible to finite conception. Opposition betwixt Anselm and Abelard in the treatment of this doctrine. Abelard represented, without good grounds, as an heretic before Innocent the Second, by Bernard. The latter deprecates speculation on this subject, and considers the whole work of redemption as a mystery. Views of Robert Pullein nearly resemble those of Abelard. Peter Lombard warns against anthropopathical misconceptions. The theory of Anselm passes down. The theory set up of vicarious satisfaction by suffering, to which theory Anselm was a stranger. Complexity of his view. View of Innocent the Second, independent of Anselm's exposition. Regards the work of redemption as the reconciliation of divine justice and mercy. Necessity of the punishment of death. The redemption as an act of love, as an example of humility, as a removal of the distance betwixt God and man. William of Paris. Adopts the views of Anselm. The remedy as counterpart to the disease. The first sin pride, disobedience, and cupidity; corresponding character of the redemption. Likeness to God, the chief end of man's nature, made possible by the union of God with human nature.....

281

Resumption of a point of view which had been lost sight of ever since the time of the Gnostics and of the Antiochian school, viz.: The work of redemption considered in its relation to the whole system of things. Significance of the incarnation, aside from the fact of sin, and considered in its bearing on the perfection of the universe. Bonaventura, separating the interest of religion from that of the reason, proposes two possible answers to the question respecting the import of redemption. Thomas Aquinas expresses himself doubtfully. Raymund Lull determines the question in opposition to the two latter.....

290

Appropriation of the redemption. The Augustinian doctrine of justification, as the inward making just, continues to maintain its ground. This subjective view favourable to the guardianship of the church. Peculiar soterological views of Bernard. Lays stress upon the objective side in justification. Eternity of divine justification, which is temporal in its manifestation. Derives sanctification from justification. Indecision between the two different views. Both confounded together.....

293

Interior principle of the fellowship of life with Christ according to the theologians of this century. A dead faith distinguished from faith working by love. Anselm; dead faith as extrinsic of its object, living faith as interpenetrated by it. Peter Lombard: *Credere in Deum, credere Deum, credere Deo*,—the first, faith inspired by love, *fides justificans, fides formata*; the second, dead faith, corresponding to the Aristotelian inorganic matter, *fides informis*; these determinations, as the foundation of the doctrine of the thirteenth century. Dead faith, gift of miracles, of prophecy, and faith of the affections separated by Thomas, and distinguished as *gratia gratis data* and *gratia gratum faciens*. The bent of the will to the divine, love—the soul, the *forma fidei*. Point contested whether the *fides informis* is raised to the *formata*, or extinguished by it. Aquinas affirms the former, as faith is essentially an intellectual act. Similar judgment of Lull.....

296

Thomas Aquinas apprehends justification as an infusion of grace, forgiveness of sins as a consequence of this infusion. Practical consequence of

|                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                               |     |
|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----|
| <p>this order of salvation. Dependence of salvation on the subjective operation of grace. Uncertainty in regard to the present existence of such an operation. Alexander denies that any infallible mark exists of the state of grace. Thomas takes the same view; because the author of grace, God himself, cannot be an object of experience. Freedom from mortal sin, as a mark of the state of grace. Only <i>certain</i> mark, a particular revelation. Anxiety of conscience, over-excitement of religious feelings, dependence of the pious consciousness on the external church, on the <i>gratia justificans</i> of the sacraments, as the fruit of this uncertainty.....</p>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                        | 298 |
| <p>Relation of freedom and grace. Coincidence with Augustin. Reservation in regard to the denial of freewill. Anselm's dialogue on the freewill and treatise on foreknowledge and predestination. Capacity for good, even in the state of the corruption of the will. This faculty operative only in the redeemed will. Robert Pullein wavers betwixt the Augustinian and the milder view. So the other systematic theologians of the twelfth century. More human theory of the Mystics. Bernard's work, <i>De gratia et libero arbitrio</i>. Distinction of freedom <i>as to fact</i> under grace, and inalienable freedom <i>as to bare form</i>. Moral nature of man founded in the latter. Dependence of the efficiency of grace on the freewill. Ultimate dependence of free-will on grace. Still a limitation of these concessions by the view of original sin. Richard a St Victore unites the Augustinian doctrine of prevenient grace with the strongest expressions in favour of freewill .....</p> | 301 |
| <p>The two main antithetic directions of the thirteenth century. The more liberal one of the Franciscans, represented by Alexander of Hales; and the ultra Augustinian, by the Dominican Albert the Great and Aquinas. Alexander gives prominence to free reciprocity. His comparison of the two paupers. Thomas likewise falls back upon a necessary reciprocity, but traces this to predestination. The communication of grace conditioned on the moral reciprocity of the creature, as <i>meritum de congruo</i> .....</p>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                 | 305 |
| <p>Systems of morals. Fusion of system of morals with that of faith. Principal work on ethics, the <i>Summa</i> of Thomas Aquinas. Subordinate value of the <i>Summa de virtutibus et vitiis</i> of Nicholas Peraldus. The <i>De virtutibus</i> of William of Paris and the <i>Contemplatio in Deum</i> of Raymund Lull. The peculiar Christian consciousness, the might of tradition and the authority of the Aristotelian ethics, as the three main points of departure of the scholastic systems of morals. Dualistic character of the Aristotelian and of the accessory New-Platonic ethics .....</p>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                     | 306 |
| <p>Important distinction of ante-Christian and Christian, natural and supernatural. Cardinal and theological virtues. Thomas conceives of virtue as the requisite aptitude of the rational essence to attain to its proper end. Twofold nature of this end. Happiness, based on natural faculties corresponding to natural reason, and supernatural communion with God. Inner necessity of the cardinal virtues, in their number of four: Knowledge of the <i>bonum rationis—prudentia</i>; external realization of the <i>ordo rationis—justitia</i>; resistance to the passions opposed to the <i>ordo rationis—temperantia</i>; and to that which draws away from it, <i>fortitudo</i>. The theological virtues. "Intellect" determined as faith by the appropriation of revealed truth. Will, in its direction to the true end, as hope; and its union and assimilation with it, as charity. Purity and simplicity of the Christian principle disturbed by this division .....</p>                        | 307 |
| <p>The seven spiritual gifts, as media of union between the cardinal and theo-</p>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                            |     |

## TABLE OF CONTENTS.

xvii

|                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                         |     |
|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----|
| gical virtues. William of Paris divides the virtues into natural, acquired, and virtues of grace. Apprehends purely human virtue as purely imaginary. Aristotelian point of view, the superhuman. Appropriation of Plotinus's distribution of virtues, prototypical, purifying, and political. On the assumption of purifying virtues, Thomas Aquinas modifies the old notion of the cardinal virtues and considers <i>prudence</i> as contempt of the world and aspiring after God; <i>temperance</i> , as abstinence from the things of sense; <i>fortitude</i> , as imperturbation at this separation from the world; <i>justice</i> , as resignation to it. The end to be striven after. Virtue as pure contemplation. Fasts and mortifications united with the <i>temperantia infusa</i> .....                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                     | 311 |
| Contradictions in Thomas Aquinas's system of ethics flowing from the combination of heterogeneous elements. Rejects actions indifferent; things to be permitted. Supposes a supererogatory perfection. The <i>adiaphoron</i> , as that which is not as yet determined. Refers <i>precepts</i> to that which is necessary to salvation; <i>counsels</i> , to that which contributes to its easier attainment. Want of true connection between virtue in <i>struggle with</i> , and virtue <i>appropriating</i> the world. Self-will above law, as the highest stage of morality. Surprising introduction of this stage of perfection also into the province governed by the <i>praeceptum. Consilium particulare</i> . Adoption of the unchristian <i>μεγαλοψυχία</i> of Aristotle as <i>magnanimitas quae modum rationis ponit circa magnos honores</i> , this referring to the divine gifts of grace,—humility, to the sense of one's own deficiency. With the former, comes contempt of those destitute of grace. Right and wrong in this theory. Thomas's sensible inquiry into the relation of the <i>actus exterior</i> and the <i>intentio</i> . Perfect will, as the will energetic in act ..... | 314 |
| 2. <i>History of the Greek Church in its Relation to the Latin, 819-351.</i>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                            |     |
| Stiffness and uniformity of the Greek church. Secular spirit of monachism. Self-mortifications. Mock holiness. Rudeness of the monks. Literary college under the Comnenes. Nicetas, bishop of Chonae; Euthymius Zigabenus; Nicholas Methone, theologians of the twelfth century .....                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                   | 319 |
| Eustathius, archbishop of Thessalonica, author of the Commentary on Homer. Dogmatizing spirit of the Greek emperors. Imperial dogmatism of Manuel Comnenus .....                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                        | 321 |
| Misunderstanding betwixt the Eastern and Western church increased by scholasticism, the organisation of the papacy, and the Crusades. Council of Bari, 1098, under Urban the Second, on the doctrine of the Holy Spirit. Conference between bishop Anselm of Havelberg and Neshites archbishop of Nicomedia, president of the college, 1146, under John Comnenus the Second .....                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                       | 325 |
| Desire of a general council. Founding of the Western empire at Constantinople 1204, the occasion of new jealousies. Political motives for union. Letter of the patriarch Germanus, of Constantinople, to Gregory the Ninth. Embassy and letter of Gregory to Constantinople in 1233. Efforts of Nicephorus Blemmydes to bring about a union of the churches. Manly conduct of this abbot .....                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                          | 329 |
| Restoration of the old empire at Constantinople by Michael Paleologus in 1261.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                          | 333 |

|                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                            |     |
|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----|
| He falls out with the patriarch Arsenius. Zeal of the emperor for the union of the churches. Resistance of the <i>archivar</i> John Beccus. Change of his views. Decree of union at the council of Lyons, 1274. Its introduction at Byzantium. Misunderstandings between the emperor and Beccus. Ban pronounced by Martin the Fourth against Michael, 1281 | 334 |
| Breaking up of the union under Andronicus, 1282. Retirement of Beccus. His controversies with the enemies of the union between the churches. His death, in 1298. The party of the Arsenians                                                                                                                                                                | 346 |
| 3. <i>The Sects that stood forth in Opposition to the Hierarchy, 351-475.</i>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                              |     |
| The Bogomiles. Their connection with the older Greek sects. Bulgarian origin. The doctrine concerning Satanael. His apostasy. Creation of the world and of man. Seduction of Eve by Satanael. Emanation of the Logos; Michael, in the year 5550. Docetic incarnation of the Logos. Emanation of the Spirit                                                 | 351 |
| Rejection of water baptism. The <i>consolamentum</i> . Rejection of the sacrifice of the mass; of the worship of Mary, images, and saints. Aversion to places of worship. Canon of the Bogomiles                                                                                                                                                           | 356 |
| Attempts to suppress them. Constantine, Chrysomalos; they are condemned at Constantinople, 1140. Mystical writings of Chrysomalos. The Monk Niphon. Philippolis and Alexiopolis                                                                                                                                                                            | 364 |
| The Catharists; origin; different names. Sterner and milder party of this dualistic sect                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                   | 368 |
| Doctrines of the sterner dualistic party. The two creations. Fall of Satan and of his angels. Pre-existence and transmigration of souls. Theory of subordination. Docetism. Reunion of fallen souls with their heavenly spirit. Interpretation of Scripture                                                                                                | 369 |
| Doctrines of the Catharists of the milder class. Refer evil to an apostasy of spirits. Doctrine of Adam. Anthropology. Their views of the Old Testament. Less rigid doctrine of subordination. Docetic Christology. Dualistic Eschatology                                                                                                                  | 378 |
| Agreement of both parties in combating the outward formality of the church. Their doctrine of baptism. The sect itself falls into the fault of externalization. Their relation to Protestantism                                                                                                                                                            | 382 |
| Ascetic system of morals. <i>Credentes, perfecti, and auditores</i>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                        | 388 |
| Diffusion of the Catharists. Trial of Armano Punzillovo of Ferrara. Treatment of the Catharists on the part of the church. Courageous deaths of the condemned. The Catharist popes: Nequinta in South France, with his council at Toulouse in 1167, and Bartholomew in Bulgaria sometime after 1223                                                        | 392 |
| The Passagians. Disappearance of the dualistic element in the later sects opposed to the church. Tanchelm of Flanders. Sects about Cologne. Sects at Perigueux                                                                                                                                                                                             | 403 |
| Peter of Bruis                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                             | 409 |
| Henry the Cluniacensian                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                    | 412 |

# TABLE OF CONTENTS.

xix

|                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                   |     |
|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----|
| Universality of the reformatory movement. The Waldenses. Romance treatise on antichrist. Peter Waldus. Lateran council 1170. Spread of the sect. Knowledge of the Bible. <i>Pauperes Catholici</i> established by Innocent the Third. Principles of the Waldenses. The Noble Lesson .....         | 421 |
| Ideas of Joachim among the Franciscans. <i>Evangelium æternum</i> . John Peter de Oliva. The Italian Apostolicals. Segarelli. Dolcino. Heroic fall of the sect. Difference of Apostolical brethren from the mendicant monks. Dante's comparison of Dolcino with Mohammed. <i>Wilhelmina</i> ..... | 439 |
| Violent proceedings of the church against the sects. Inquisitions. Crusade against the Albigenses under Innocent the Third. Order of proceeding of the inquisitions at the Lateran council, 1215. The inquisitor Conrad of Marburg. Suppression of the Stedingers .....                           | 468 |
| Real and nominal Index .....                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                      | 477 |
| Passages from Ancient Authors .....                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                               | 483 |
| Passages from Scripture .....                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                     | 483 |



# CHURCH HISTORY.

---

FIFTH PERIOD. FROM GREGORY THE SEVENTH TO BONIFACE  
THE EIGHTH. FROM THE YEAR 1073 TO THE YEAR 1294.

---

## SECTION THIRD.

### CHRISTIAN LIFE AND CHRISTIAN WORSHIP.

To the epochs that mark the commencement of a new outpouring of the Holy Spirit, may be reckoned the opening of the twelfth century; and the after effects of the religious awakening which then began among the Christian nations of the West, extend far into the period now before us. As we observed in individual examples, under the preceding section, the religious life was continually receiving a fresh impulse from influences of various kinds: from the vigorous measures of Gregory the Seventh to promote a reform in the whole church; from the impressions produced on the multitude by the preaching of the crusades; from the effects wrought by distinguished preachers of the clerical, and more especially of the monastic order, who itinerated through the countries, exhorting men to repentance; from the founding of the two orders of mendicant friars. Great susceptibility to religious impressions, as well as great depth and power of religious feeling, manifested themselves by various signs of the times: by the quick and general participation in important enterprises undertaken in the name of religion; by the formation of societies in which the energies of many could be speedily united for accomplishing great works consecrated to religion, such as the erection of magnificent churches;<sup>1</sup> by the mighty influence which men who

<sup>1</sup> The zeal with which men of all ranks and ages could unite together in building a church, is illustrated by an example belonging to the year 1166, which may be found in the life of the abbot Stephen of Obaise, l. ii., c. xviii: *Aderat hujus tantæ ædificationis*  
VOL. VIII. A



could exert an influence on the religious life, soon acquired; by the rapid spread of religious societies, whether connected with the church, or with the sects that were opposed to it.

Over against religion stood the rude power of unsubdued sensuousness, of fierce and eager passions, that announced themselves by rude outbreaks of crime, and either with brutal obstinacy maintained their ground, or finally yielded to the mightier force of religious impressions. "How many do we see every day," says the pious mystic, Richard a St Victore,<sup>1</sup> who, amid the crimes which they are constantly committing, never abandon the hope and purpose of repentance; and who not only mean to leave off sinning, but to renounce every worldly possession, and join themselves to some order of monks. And so, if God, in his sovereign mercy, have compassion on them, they become reformed. But others, when exhorted to repentance, swear they never could prevail upon themselves to give up the world, or abandon their lusts.<sup>2</sup>

Sudden transitions from the most violent outbreaks of sensual rudeness to emotions, no less violently expressed, of a more or less enduring contrition, were of no rare occurrence. The awe-inspiring appearance and words of pious monks had a power, especially when strengthened by the impression of some remarkable incident, to produce great changes in minds whose religious susceptibilities had, as yet, been only kept back by the force of barbarism; as we have already seen illustrated<sup>3</sup> in the remarkable effect produced by the monk Bernard of Tiron, on a crew of barbarian pirates.

*initis inestimabilis hominum multitudo diversi generis atque ætatis cum multo coetu nobilium, quorum alii potentiores auxilium et protectionem, divites pecuniam offerebant, pauperes, quod rebus non poterant, votis supplebant protensis in coelum manibus.* The foundation-stone was laid with great solemnity, a circumstance to which the author attributes special importance, because this represented the foundation-stone on which the entire church reposes, and other than which can no man lay. See Baluz. Miscellan. t. iv. p. 130.

<sup>1</sup> De eruditione interioris hominis, l. ii., c. xxv.

<sup>2</sup> His words: *Quam multos quotidie videmus, qui inter flagitia, quæ assidue, committunt, spem et propositum respiscendi non amittunt et non solum peccata dimittere imo etiam omnia quæ mundi sunt, relinquere et ad ordinem et religionem venire proponunt. Alii autem, cum de conversione admonentur, nunquam se ad ordinem vel religionem venire etiam cum juramento affirmant et cum de peccatis corripuntur se a suis voluptatibus non posse exhibere cum sacramento asseverant.*

<sup>3</sup> See vol. vii. p. 318.

Active benevolence, hospitality ; sympathy with the sick and suffering ; kindness and respect shown to pious ecclesiastics and monks, devout participation in prayer and in all the ordinances considered as belonging to the church life ; zeal in the Christian education of children ; rigid abstinence ; such were the signs under which genuine piety exhibited itself even among the laity. A biographical sketch belonging to the twelfth century presents us with a picture of the piety of these times in the account of a married couple, who are held up as patterns. They owned and resided on an estate in the diocese of Vienne. They supported themselves by honest labour, lived with great frugality, gave liberally to the poor, and sympathized with them in their sufferings. They were full of respect and love to pious monks ; and took great pains in bringing up their children to faith and good works. To neither of their sons, whom they destined for the spiritual profession, would they allow a benefice to be given in advance. After they had done educating their children, they practised a rigid abstinence, living like anchorets in the midst of the world, and devoting themselves with still more zeal than ever to the work of almsgiving. Sleeping themselves on straw, they gave up the better beds for the use of the poor ; and while the whole of their house was ever open to the needy and the wayfaring, they set apart one chamber, expressly for their use. As to the monks, they were not only ready to receive them, but took pains to fetch them in. They drew instruction from them about the way of salvation, not merely for their own benefit, but that they might be able to impart it to others. They exerted themselves to restore peace between parties at strife ; to aid the injured, and to bring those who wronged others to a sense of their injustice.<sup>1</sup> In the beginning of the twelfth century, we find a person in Brittany, by the name of Goisfred, who, in his younger days, had lived by robbery, but by the admonitions of his pious wife, had been led to change the whole course of his life. He now lived by the labour of his own hands, and, reserving from his earnings barely enough to support himself and his family, distributed the rest in alms. During a violent snow-storm in mid-winter, he drove to a monastery with great difficulty a waggon laden with bread for the cele-

<sup>1</sup> Vita Patri Archiep. Tarantas : see vol. vii. p. 321. Acta Sanct. Mens. Maj. t. ii., c. l., f. 324 et 325.

bration of some saint-day.<sup>1</sup> In a biographical account of certain pious country-people, in the twelfth century, the following points are cited as characteristic marks of the Christian life : both husband and wife showed by the best evidence—the fruits of their good works—that they were true Christians ; for they were zealous in bestowing alms, in giving food to the hungry, in clothing the naked, and in performing other pious deeds of charity.<sup>2</sup> Of the mother of archbishop Eberhard of Salzburg, it is related, that she was almost constantly engaged in almsgiving, prayer, and fasting ; and that she seldom ate anything but vegetables. She caused a church to be erected on her estate, and conveyed the stones for it two miles barefoot on her own shoulders ; many other women followed her example.<sup>3</sup>—It is recorded of a pious smith, in this century, that he daily lodged poor people in his own house, first washing their feet, and then providing beds for them.<sup>4</sup>—The father of a family, whenever he went to church, took provisions with him for the poor people who lived in the neighbourhood.<sup>5</sup> Ambrose of Siena, a much-venerated Dominican, who lived near the close of the thirteenth century, was descended from a respectable and wealthy family in that city. He was, while a youth, and still living under the paternal roof, particularly distinguished for a spirit of active benevolence.

So it is said in the account of his life.<sup>6</sup> The law of Christ is founded for the most part in love ; this grace, therefore, predominated in him. He obtained leave from his wealthy father to take home with him every Saturday five strangers, to entertain them and present to each of them a certain sum of money. On every Saturday evening, he placed himself near that gate of Siena which was the thoroughfare of those strangers who came from beyond the Alps. Choosing five from the whole, and conducting them to his own house, he showed them to a room set apart expressly for their service. He himself provided them with everything necessary to supply their bodily wants, till he had waited upon them to their beds. The next morning he accompanied them to mass,

<sup>1</sup> Orderic. Vital. Hist. l. vi., f. 628.

<sup>2</sup> Acta S. Mens. Januar. t., ii. f. 795

<sup>3</sup> L. c. Mens. Jun. t. iv.

<sup>4</sup> L. c. Mens. Jun. t. v., f. 115.

<sup>5</sup> See life of the abbot Stephen of Obazine, l. i. c. iv.

<sup>6</sup> Acta S. Mens. Mart. t. iii., c. ii., f. 183.

and then led them round to the principal churches of the city. Returning with them to his house, he gave them a breakfast, bestowed on them an alms besides, and dismissed them, after recommending himself to their prayers. But he took a special interest in the condition of those who languished in confinement. He was accustomed, on every Friday, to visit the public prisons. And, if he found any poor people there who were unable to provide for their own support, he took care to send them privately, one day in the week, a certain allowance of food and money. Every Sunday, he visited the hospital of the city at meal time, and assisted those who took care of the sick in distributing among the patients their allotted portions of food. He strove also to comfort them. He entered the houses of the poor; and, if he found any sick and wanting the necessaries of life, he begged of his parents that their wants might be relieved, and was himself the bearer of the charities bestowed on them. He declined all invitations to social parties and weddings. And already was he beginning to show symptoms not only of an inclination to withdraw from the world, but of a tendency to the monastic life, when, like St Francis,<sup>1</sup> he experienced a remarkable reaction of the freer Christian spirit. It so happened, that he was invited to attend a wedding-feast at the house of a relative. He declined the invitation, and in the mean time turned his steps to a Cistercian monastery, beyond the walls of the city. While on the way he was accosted by an old man, in the Dominican habit, who begged of him an alms, taking occasion at the same time of entering into conversation with him. He said: "Thou thinkest of gaining merit in the sight of God, and of better providing for thy soul's salvation, by shunning the society of thy relatives and associates, and declining to take any part in the celebration of a holy marriage. But I tell thee, thou wilt obtain more favour and merit in the sight of God, if thou disdainest not to mingle in the society of thy associates; for it is far more praiseworthy in his sight to battle with the temptations and dangers of the soul, than to lead the secure life which thou proposest to do. Wilt thou not fall into the sin of pride, or give others occasion to accuse thee of it, if thou disdainest the society of those who

<sup>1</sup> See vol. vii., p. 364.

would honour thee ? And how wilt thou secure thy soul's salvation, if without the marriage estate, which God has ordained, thou art unable to conquer the temptations of the flesh ? It is the free gift of God which bestows on some the ability of leading a chaste life apart from marriage. But it is pride which leads thee to imagine thyself able to do this out of thy self-will, and by thine own efforts." The appearance of this free-minded sage was transformed by the people of those times into an appearance of Satan—disguised as a monk, for the purpose of deceiving the young man.

We read of an English nobleman, near the close of the eleventh century, who, finding himself shut up for a year in close confinement, on account of some political change, gave himself wholly to exercises of penitence and devotion. The effects of the change which he underwent manifested themselves in the resignation and composure with which he met the death to which he was condemned. He walked to the scaffold clad in the costly robes which belonged to his rank and office ; but on arriving there distributed them among the poor that stood around as spectators. Falling upon his knees, he prayed for some time, weeping. When the executioner, who had been ordered to hasten the execution of the sentence, urged him to stand up, he said : " Suffer me, in God's name, to repeat one more pater-noster for myself and for you ;" and, again kneeling, he prayed with hands and eyes uplifted to heaven. But when he came to the words, " Lead us not into temptation," the tide of his inward feelings gushed forth in a flood of tears, and choked all further utterance.<sup>1</sup>

An example of sincere and active piety from the class of common artisans, is presented in the case of a certain Raymund Palmaris, at Placenza. Born in this city, in the year 1140, and descended from a pious family of the middle class, at twelve years of age he was apprenticed to an artisan ; the occupation, however, did not suit a mind striving after higher things. Having lost his father while young, and being no longer obliged to follow the trade for which the father had destined him, he was seized with an earnest desire to quicken and nourish his devotion by a visit to the sacred spots in Palestine. Having made up his mind, he

<sup>1</sup> Orderic, Vital. f. 536.

informed his pious mother of it, and she resolved to undertake the pilgrimage with him. After they had with great devotion visited all the spots consecrated to the memory of our Saviour, they returned home to their country. Raymund, soon afterwards, lost his mother, upon which he married, and resumed his former occupation. He had five sons; each of whom, when they received baptism, he was accustomed to dedicate to God with the following prayer: "Here is a being who wears thine image; to thee I dedicate him, as thy creature; life and death are in thy hands." The five children were all, one after another, removed from him in early life. He resigned himself to the will of God, and it was a comfort and joy to him, that the Lord had called them, in the robes of innocence, out of this life of temptation, to himself. He looked upon it as an admonition, warning him thenceforth to live with his wife as if they were unmarried; which he proposed to her, having too conscientious a regard for duty to carry this plan into effect, without the consent of his companion. Another son was born to him, and in the absence of his wife he took the child from its cradle, carried it to the church, threw himself down with it before a crucifix and prayed: "My Lord and Saviour, who stretchest out thine arms to receive all who come to thee, as thou hast taken to thyself my five children, in their tender age, and made them fellow-heirs of eternal bliss, I beseech thee vouchsafe to receive also to thyself this my little son, whom thou hast bestowed on me, beyond all my hopes. But, if thou hast destined him for a longer life, preserve him chaste and pure for the holy order of monks, to which I now consecrate him." Even at this time, while he was still an artisan, and had the care of a family, he improved every hour which he could spare from the business of his trade, and also the holidays, to obtain from pious and well-informed ecclesiastics and monks a more exact knowledge of the contents of the sacred Scriptures, and of the doctrines of religion. The knowledge thus acquired, he intended to use in promoting the salvation of his fellow-men. On Sundays and festivals, he collected together in a workshop the people of his own class, and particularly such as followed the same trade with himself, and whom he could persuade to forego their customary amusements, at those times, and addressed them on matters of practical Christianity. These addresses met with so

much favour, that multitudes soon flocked together from all quarters to hear him. Many invited him to preach in the public streets, and on the market-place. But this he refused, saying that it belonged to none but priests and the learned to do this ; an uneducated man like himself might by this course easily fall into mistakes. He contented himself with simple practical exhortations, designed for his fellow-craftsmen : these considered him as their spiritual father, and lived as a pious community under his guidance. After the death of his wife, he resolved to carry out a purpose which he had long had in contemplation, and wholly withdraw himself from all secular business. He committed his little son to the care of his maternal grandparents, that he might be trained up to the profession of a pious monk. He surrendered into their hands all his property, to be managed and used for the benefit of this son. He now prepared to go on a pilgrimage to all the holy places, intending finally to settle down in the vicinity of the holy sepulchre, and there end his days. He had already completed the pilgrimage to St Jago di Compostella in Spain, and other holy places, and had at length repaired to Rome, and was on the point of setting out for Jerusalem, but by the spirit of Christ he was taught a better course. The voice of that spirit, in the inmost recesses of a heart so warm with true piety, would doubtless often be heard remonstrating against the mistaken tendency into which the undue influence of religious feeling alone, in the absence of better knowledge, had hurried him. Such reaction of the genuine Christian spirit gave birth to a dream which befell him in one of the porches of St Peter's church, where he once happened to lay himself down to sleep in his pilgrim-garb. Christ appeared to him, and told him that he was by no means pleased with his plan of making a pilgrimage to the holy sepulchre. "Thou oughtest," the voice seemed to say, "to employ thyself on things more acceptable to me and more profitable to thyself, on works of mercy. Believe not that, in the last day, I shall inquire particularly concerning pilgrimages and such pious acts, when I shall say, 'I was hungry, and ye gave me food,' etc. (Matt. xxv. 35.) Thou oughtest no longer to roam about thus in the world ; but go back to thy native town, Placenza, where there are so many poor, so many forsaken widows ; so many sick, who implore my compassion, and none to receive

them. Go thither, and I will be with thee, and give thee grace by which thou shalt be enabled to stir up the rich to benevolent action, to restore the contentions to peace, the wandering to the good way." In obedience to this admonition he returned, in 1178, to Placenza; and the bishop to whom he made the matter known, felt bound to recognize it as a divine call. He was furnished with a house for the purpose he had in view by the canonical priests of the collegiate church. He sought out all the diffident poor, and such as were prevented by sickness from begging, collected alms for them, and took care of them. All who were helpless found welcome admittance and relief from him. His example operated upon others; many of the citizens associated themselves with him, to share, under his direction, the task of supporting and nursing the poor and the sick. He appropriated a separate dwelling for the sick and poor of the female sex; here also he received such as he succeeded in calling from a life of unchastity to repentance, and the direction of them he intrusted to pious well-tried women. After they had lived sometime in this manner he left them free to choose the mode of life which would be most agreeable to them. If they preferred to marry, he endeavoured to assist them in this matter, and to procure for them a dowry from his pious friends. Those who showed an inclination for the monastic life he contrived to get admitted into monasteries. He diligently visited the prisons, distributed temporal relief among the prisoners, and by his exhortations and admonitions endeavoured to promote the salvation of their souls. In behalf of such as seemed to him to give proof of sincere penitence, he interceded with the magistrates, and became security for them that they would pursue a different course of life and prove useful to the state. Many of these, in order to escape temptations, withdrew to the monastic life, and distinguished themselves afterwards by the piety and integrity of their lives. He sought after outcast children, gently took them up in his arms, carried them home, and saw that they were taken care of. Oftentimes he would take on his shoulders some sick person, whom he found lying in the street, and convey him home to the above-mentioned dwelling. Widows and orphans, and all who suffered wrong treatment, found in him a protector. Bearing his cross before him, and relying on him whom it symbolized, he feared nothing; to that love



which led Christ to give up his life for the salvation of mankind, he appealed to exorcise passion. Thus he reconciled those who were at variance; thus he sought to hush the strifes of fiercely contending factions amid the civil broils of Italy. When the citizens of Placenza and of Cremona were at war with each other, he threw himself between the two armies and succeeded in persuading his countrymen to peace. But the people of Cremona, indignant because he threatened them with divine judgments, hurried him away as a prisoner. Yet the spirit of love still continued to inspire him, and wrought so strongly on their feelings that they soon let him go, repenting of their having so treated one whom they felt constrained to reverence as a saint. After having laboured in this manner for twenty-two years, he cheerfully looked forward to death. Commending to his associates the prosecution of his work, and exhorting them to take care of the poor whom he left behind, he thanked the Saviour that he had brought his earthly career to the long-desired goal; he sent for his only remaining son, warned him against loving the empty goods of this world and yielding to its temptations, advised him to confirm the dedication that had been made of him when a child, and take refuge in the monastic life. He testified that he put no trust in his own merits, but confided solely in the mercy of Christ; looking serenely on the cross, which had ever accompanied him in his consecrated labours, he said, "In thy arms, in thy name and thy strength, I depart from this world to my Saviour and Creator." These were his last words.<sup>1</sup>

This particular shaping of the Christian life presents itself to us in a multitude of examples among all ranks of society. From the Christian artisan, let us now turn to the Christian prince. In king Louis the Ninth, of France, we see the piety of these times represented to us in all its noble traits intermingled with those one-sided extravagancies which called forth the covert censure of the free-spirited William of St Amour.<sup>2</sup> On him, too, the training of a pious mother (Blanche), had exerted a decided influence, as he informs us himself. She surrounded him with pious monks,

<sup>1</sup> The source of this narrative is a *Life*, in the Latin language, which certainly proceeded from a contemporary. We have it to regret, however, that this was lost, and only the Italian translation preserved, which was retranslated into Latin. It is to be found at the 28th July. *Mens. Jul. t. vi.*

<sup>2</sup> See vol. vii. p. 381.

and on Sundays and festivals had him always attend the sermon. Having once heard it falsely reported of her son that he lived an unchaste life, she exhibited the utmost concern, and remarked that if her son, whom she loved more than any other creature, had fallen sick with a fatal disease, and she was assured that he might be restored by a single act of unchastity, she would prefer that he should die, rather than offend his Creator by a mortal sin. This remark left a deep impression on the mind of Louis, and he often repeated it, in expressing his abhorrence of that sin. "There was no leprosy so hateful," he was accustomed to say, "as a mortal sin is to the soul." He once remarked at his table, that "the devil took a very cunning course in seducing usurers and robbers, and then moving them to give what they had got by usury and robbery, for God's sake, to the church ; when they knew to *whom* they must give it back at last." So, with reference to a similar case, he warned his son-in-law, Thiebault the Second, to take care lest he might bring his soul into jeopardy, if he supposed he could atone for all his sins by the bountiful alms which he bestowed on a Dominican monastery. Being threatened with shipwreck near the island of Cyprus, when on the voyage to make his crusade in the Holy Land, he sprang from his bed, and threw himself before a crucifix ; and when the danger was over, he remarked that "this threatening display of God's Almighty power ought to be regarded as an admonition calling upon them to make haste to purify themselves from all evil and engage earnestly in every good work." Mindful of the temptations that constantly beset men, he considered steadfastness of faith as the greatest of all goods ; and he exhorted all to strive after it in due season, that they might be well armed in the final hour, when Satan would seek to awaken in them all manner of doubts. "We should aim to possess it in such measure as to be able to say to him, 'Away hence, thou enemy of human nature ; thou shalt not prevail to draw me off from that which I firmly believe.' Gladly would I suffer every limb to be severed from my body if I can only die in this faith." When he was taken prisoner by the Turks, and to obtain his liberty and save his life was required to promise something on his oath, which he believed he would never be able to accomplish, he peremptorily refused, saying, if he should not fulfil what he had promised, he would be like

a Christian that denied his God, the law of his God, and his baptism. He would rather die like a Christian, than live under God's anger. When he was informed of the death of his beloved mother, prostrating himself before the altar in his court-chapel, he said : " My God, I thank thee that thou didst send my dearest mother to me, so long as it pleased thy goodness, and that thou hast now, after thine own good pleasure, taken her to thyself. It is true that I loved her as she deserved to be loved,—more than every other creature. But since it has so pleased thee, let thy name be eternally praised !" He set a high value on good sermons, and was in the habit of repeating them over with delight to others. Being detained ten weeks at sea on his return from the East, he caused three sermons weekly to be preached on board his ship. When the sea was calm and the mariners had little to do, considering how few opportunities they enjoyed of hearing the word of God, he ordered that a sermon should be preached expressly for them, on some subject appropriate to their condition, on the articles of faith, or the practical life of a Christian.

Reminding them of the dangers to which their lives were constantly exposed, he exhorted them to confess to priests of their own choice ; and if, while they were confessing, a rope was to be pulled, or anything else needed to be done on board the ship that required their help, he chose rather to lend a hand himself than suffer them to be interrupted when attending to the concerns of their salvation. By this means many were induced to confess, who had not done so for years. Being informed that a Turkish Sultan had taken pains to collect, and to have transcribed books, of every kind that could be procured, for the use of the learned, he remarked that the children of darkness were wiser in their generation than the children of the light ; and on his return to France he directed copies of the Church Fathers, from all the monasteries, to be transcribed for himself and others. He preferred to have them copied rather than to purchase them, in order that the copies might be multiplied. He habitually refrained from every form of the profane language which was everywhere so prevalent in those times. To avoid every sort of protestation, he was in the habit of substituting, in lieu of every other, the phrase, " In my own name." But on hearing that this

practice was censured by some monk, he ever afterwards contented himself with a simple yea or nay. As, in the last years of his life, he avoided all expensive raiment,<sup>1</sup> thus occasioning a loss to the poor, on whom the garments he left off were usually bestowed as presents, he felt himself bound to make up the deficiency by adding to the sum which he yearly appropriated for alms. To the last days of his life he busied himself with the thought of a mission to Tunis. He died praying, with his eyes directed to heaven.

In addition to what we have cited on a former page,<sup>2</sup> from the last testament of Louis to his son, we may mention the following particulars as characteristic of the man: "I admonish thee to confess often, and to choose for thy confessors discreet and honest men, able to teach thee what thou hast to shun and what to do. And demean thyself so modestly towards thy confessors that they may venture kindly and boldly to reprove thee. Conduct thyself so uprightly towards thy subjects, as ever to maintain the straightforward course, deviating neither to the right hand nor to the left, inclining rather to the side of the poor than of the rich, till thou art fully certain of the truth. But when one has a complaint against thyself, adopt thine adversary's side till thou hast ascertained the truth; thus will thy counsellors more readily declare themselves on the side of justice." The testament closes with these words: "In conclusion, I bestow on thee every blessing that a loving father can bestow on his son. May the whole Trinity and all the saints preserve thee from everything evil, and may God give thee grace so to do his will, that by thee he may be honoured; that so, after this life, we may together behold, love, and praise him without end."<sup>3</sup>

From the female sex we may cite, in the same century, the land-gravine Elizabeth of Hessa, St Elizabeth, who, after the death of her husband, retired wholly from the world. In the absence of the latter, she led a strictly ascetic life. But whenever she heard of his speedy return, she performed what to her must have been a still greater piece of self-denial, attiring herself

<sup>1</sup> Of which William of St Amour takes notice. See vol. vii. p. 383.

<sup>2</sup> See vol. vii. p. 379.

<sup>3</sup> The sources, we have cited on page 384. All may be found collected in the *Actis Sanctorum*, fifth volume, month of August, under the 25th of the month.

in all her princely array ; which she did, as she said, only from love to Christ, that her husband might not conceive dislike to her and be tempted to sin, but ever retain towards her true conjugal love in the Lord."<sup>1</sup>

The Christian life generally moved betwixt the two extremes of an excessive devotion to, and an undue estrangement from, the world. The first-mentioned tendency we find to have been that of the great mass, who supposed that, by a number of outward religious acts, in which they formally participated ; by the repetition of certain prayers ; by going to church ; by making donations to churches and monasteries ; by almsgiving, they satisfied every demand of Christianity,—while, at the same time, they abandoned themselves to their pleasures, till, impressed by some preacher of repentance, or surprised by some sudden calamity, they were led to perceive the vanity of their dead faith and of their mere outward Christianity, and excited to strive after the true essence of piety. In opposition to this worldly Christianity rose up, next, a much smaller number, with whom piety was really a matter of earnest and sincere concern ; who were deeply imbued with the peculiar Christian spirit, but who, by reason of this opposition, were forced into an ascetic monk-like direction. Thus, there proceeded from the very midst of the laity, pious societies, formed for the purpose of a spiritual, contemplative life, or for pious objects of a more practical character ; the members of which commonly passed under the name of Beghards ; a freer imitation of monasticism. We recognize in them that strong inclination to social union, quickened by religion, which distinguished the twelfth century,—the mighty energy of that idea of evangelical poverty which set itself in opposition to the secularization of the church. Among the quite diversified shapings which maintained a connection with, or stood out in opposition to, the church, we notice such pious societies as the one formed by Vicelin,<sup>2</sup> and those founded by Raymund Palmaris, by the Apostolicians, the Waldenses,—at their first commencement,—of which we shall speak on a future page. When the minds of men were excited by the contests between Henry the Fourth and Gregory the Seventh,

<sup>1</sup> See her life, by the Dominican Theoderic of Thuringia, lib. ii., c. v., Canisii, lect. antiq. ed. Basnage, t. iv., f. 124.

<sup>2</sup> See vol. vii. p. 45.

in Germany, such pious societies began to be formed also among the country people; by men and women, married and unmarried; who committed themselves to the guidance of ecclesiastics or monks.<sup>1</sup>

Now when such names were once invented to designate that tendency of piety opposed to the world,—just as the term “Pietists” came to be employed in later times,—*Beghardi*, *Papelardi*,<sup>2</sup> *Boni homines*, *Boni valeti*,<sup>4</sup> it came about that these names, used in different senses to denote different sets of religious opinions, were laid hold of by men of a more liberal Christian spirit—like the above-mentioned William of St Amour—as a sort of nickname for some caricature of piety,—though such caricatures were certainly in these days extremely rare,—as also by the mass of common worldlings, who contented themselves with a mere formal and outward Christianity, for the purpose of begetting mistrust in every form of uncommon seriousness in the Christian life, which they were enabled to discriminate from the monk-like tendency.

A Parisian theologian of the thirteenth century, Robert de Sorbonne, founder of the famous college that went by his name, says in his work on *Conscience*,—where he exhorts to rigid self-examination: “The Beguins, whether they are to be found in the world, or in the monkish orders, are wiser in this book (of *Conscience*), because they more frequently confess; for this reason they are denominated *papelardi* (pope-servants:)”<sup>3</sup> He declaims against those, who, when amongst worldly people, dressed and lived like them, and spoke ill of the devout; while on the other hand, amongst the latter, they dressed in their fashion and begged

<sup>1</sup> Berthold of Constance, at the year 1091: Non solum autem viorum et feminarum innumerabilis multitudo his temporibus se ad hujusmodi vitam contulerunt, ut sub obedientia clericorum sive monachorum communiter viverent eisque more ancillarum quotidiani servitii pensum devotissime persolverent, in ipsis quoque villis filiae rusticorum innumerae conjugio et saeculo abrenuntiare et sub alicujus sacerdotis obedientia vivere studuerunt, sed etiam ipsae conjugatae nihilominus religiose vivere et religiosis cum summo devotione non cessaverunt obedire. He immediately adds: Multae villae ex integro se religioni contradiderunt seque invicem sanctitate morum praevenire incessabiliter studuerunt. Monumenta res Alemannicas illustrantia, t. ii., p. 148.

<sup>2</sup> See vol. vii. p. 334.

<sup>3</sup> See William of St Amour, responsiones ad objecta, p. 92: Propter beguinas, bonos valetos, dicentes, quod vestis pretiosa portari non potest sine magno periculo.

<sup>4</sup> Bibliotheca patrum Lugd. t. xxv. f. 350.

for their intercessions.<sup>1</sup> "Such persons, who can trim their sails to every breeze that blows," says he, "the world pronounces wise and liberal."<sup>2</sup> Those of the laity who led a stricter life, looked pale, and made it a point to swear no oath,—because they considered the words of Christ thus literally understood, if not as a commandment, yet as a *consilium evangelicum*,—were called by the sectarian name Catharians.<sup>3</sup> Peter Cantor opposes, to the severity with which men pronounced on the orthodoxy of others, their own extreme negligence with regard to morals. He says: "If we call every man, who wanders ever so little from the faith, a heretic,—why do we not, in like manner, complain of him who departs from the light of the moral law; why do we not say of him, that he walks not in the light, but in darkness?"<sup>4</sup> He complains of those who, by their quibbling glosses, let down the requisitions of the Christian moral law, as propounded in the sermon on the mount, and would convert the strait gate of salvation into a wide one.<sup>5</sup>

In order rightly to understand the shaping of the Christian life, and its extravagances in this period, we must present distinctly before our minds the peculiar mode of apprehending the order of salvation; for this will furnish a ground of explanation, or a point of attachment, for many things otherwise obscure. The tendency to the subjective—as we shall have to explain more at large in the section treating of doctrines—here predominated. Thus, for example, by justification,—which men considered as the necessary condition to the obtaining of salvation, as the sign

1 L. c. f. 348: Tales homines cum sint cum papelardis viris et religiosis, dicunt: orate pro me, et faciunt Magdalenam, et quando sunt cum mundanis, faciunt sicut mundani, vel pejus et detrectant de peregrinis et religiosis viris et derident, ut habeant benevolentiam mundanorum.

2 De talibus dicit mundus, quod sapientes sunt et liberales, qui optime sciunt se habere cum omni genere hominum et quod bonum est tales promovere.

3 Peter Cantor's words, verbum abbreviatum, c. cxxvii., p. 291: Si omnes alias perfectiones evangelicas ex voto possum suscipere et implere, quare et non similiter hoc consilium perfectionis? Vel cur hoc observantem statim proclamus Catharum? Concerning a person, who quia pauper et pallidus, was held to be a Catharist, l. c. p. 201.

4 Si parum diviantem a fide vocamus haereticum et increpamus, dicentes eum non esse in via, sed extra, quare et similiter recedentem in modico a luce moralium præceptorum non arguimus, objicientes ei, quod jam non sit in luce, sed tenebris. Verbum abbrev., c. lxxx., p. 213.

5 Superflua expositione potius quam amore hanc portam adeo dilatavimus, quod jam angustias non habeat, ut sic intremus per latam portam, non per angustam. L. c. p. 211, et seqq.

of the elect,—was understood the internal work of making just,—sanctification through divine grace, which should manifest itself by good works proceeding from faith, and working by love (the *fides formata*). While now man's confidence, with reference to his salvation, was thus made to depend on something unsettled, subjective, and incapable of being defined by an infallible mark, the consequence was—according to the different characters and temperaments of men—either a one-sided spiritualization, or a one-sided externalization, of religion; either a reflection upon one's self, absorbing the whole man, till he was led to doubt of his salvation; or spiritual pride and work-holiness;—except where these evil results were prevented by the predominant reference which, in spite of the subjective element of the church doctrine, still prevailed in the religious life to the objective side of redemption. One class cast themselves upon externals, sought the warrant of their justification in the works of mortifying the flesh, of benevolence, donations to the church, in the frequent use of the sacraments; another class, consisting of persons of deeper feeling, looked within, and would attain to this assurance by watching the frames of their own mind, and thus, depending for their joy and their confidence on the changeful states of feelings oftentimes grounded in human weakness, they not seldom sought, by supernatural means, by visions, by special and extraordinary revelations, to obtain for themselves the assurance they were in quest of; easily falling a prey to fanaticism or to absolute despair, whereby many, especially of those who were beginners in the spiritual life, would be led, after seeing the fruitlessness of their efforts, to give themselves up again wholly to the world. The experienced spiritual guides of these centuries often speak of these several dangers, and seek to guard men against them. Thus, for example, Richard a S. Victore warns against spiritual pride, against work-holiness, as well as against moral despondency. In reference to the first he says: "We know that those good works which nourish the other virtues, almost always undermine humility. The works of abstinence and of patience, which excite the wonder of mankind, are wont to render those who perform them proud instead of humble."<sup>1</sup> In reference to the second he says: "When the soul, which has once despaired of its sal-

<sup>1</sup> De præparatione animi ad contemplationem, c. xxx.



vation, and is wholly deserted of the Holy Spirit, feels that it has no power to resist firmly-rooted habits, nor to restrain itself from the sin which cleaves to it, it is very apt to excuse itself, and to cast the blame upon its Maker. Men say, Everything must turn out as it has been foreordained. Who can resist the will of God? Can we create our own merits ourselves? In truth, nothing depends on our own willing or our own running, but everything upon the divine mercy. Why, then, does he not have mercy on us? Why does not he who works all in all, according to his will, work in us what is well-pleasing to himself?"<sup>1</sup>

By making their subjective feelings the ground of their assurance, men were the more troubled by those internal experiences which those, who find not their home in the present world, but labour after a secret divine life, must at all times have;—that interchange in the life of the soul between light and darkness, a lively feeling of grace and inward desolation. The lives of the pious men of this period, and of the mystics, are full of these experiences.<sup>2</sup> Richard a Sancto Victore calls this "the necessary darkness, the necessary vicissitude, of this present earthly life, where it cannot always be day, as it is in heaven, but the sun rises and sets."<sup>3</sup>

The heavily-oppressed spirits often felt themselves relieved as by a gift from Heaven, when the deep, dull pain of the soul, thirsting after the fountain of its life and longing after its home, could find vent in tears, that "donum lachrymarum" of which so much is said in the testimonies concerning the internal life of this period. There was no want of important voices which expressed themselves emphatically against that externalization of religion in isolated good works, and which pointed those, whose minds were solely directed to things outward and individual, to

<sup>1</sup> De eruditione interioris, p. i., l. iii., c. xviii. Caesarius, in his Narrations, Distinct. c. xxvii., cites the instance of a prince who, upon every exhortation to repentance, replied that, if he belonged to the elect, he should be saved at all events; and, if he did not, all the efforts he might make would avail nothing. See vol. vii., p. 320.

<sup>2</sup> See History of Monachism, vol. vii., p. 321.

<sup>3</sup> Quare ergo omne cor moeret, nisi quia nullum cor perpetuum diem hic habet, quia lumen coeli semper praesens habere non valet. Oritur enim sol et occidit et ad locum suum revertitur. Quid ergo mirum, si omne cor moeret, quamdiu necessarias tenebras hujusmodi alternantium vicissitudinum sustinet? Quamdiu in terra vivimus, quamdiu in terra sumus, has temporum vicissitudines necessario sustinemus. In coelo dies sine nocte. De statu interioris hominis Tract. i., p. i., c. xxvii.

that which is required in order to true piety. In a sermon on Luke xi. 41, pope Innocent the Third extols above all other good works, that of almsgiving. He says: "Almsgiving is more than fasting; since what the man denies to himself he gives to others. It is more than prayer, because it is better to pray with deeds than with words." At the same time, however, he guards against a misapprehension of those words of Christ which he took for his text, by the remark: "But if the power of almsgiving is so great, men may do what they please, provided only they diligently bestow alms, secure in their reliance on those words of our Lord. Will, then, all things be pure to them that give alms, even to drunkards, to adulterers, to murderers, and to those who are stained with all the other pollutions of crime? May they, then, securely abandon themselves to all their pleasures, because alms suffice to redeem them from all sins? Far from it; since, as holy writ declares, Lev. xv., whatever is touched by the unclean, becomes unclean. God looks rather upon *how* a thing is done than upon *what* is done."<sup>1</sup> And he quotes, in opposition to this false view of alms, the words of the apostle Paul: "Though I bestow all my goods to feed the poor, and have not charity," etc. True almsgiving proceeds, then, from love unfeigned. He raises the objection: "But I am poor; I have no bread, no clothing, no alms to bestow; nothing that I can give to others." And he answers: "But recollect that with God the good will sufficeth, where the opportunity is wanting." And: "God regards, in the gift, not so much its magnitude as the measure of piety in the act of bestowing it."<sup>2</sup> Bishop Hildebert of Mans wrote to a certain count of Angers, who was about starting on a pilgrimage to St Jago di Compostella,<sup>3</sup> "We deny not that this is a good thing, but he who undertakes a calling is obligated to obedience. And he sins, if he forsake it without being called to something greater and more useful. Wherefore, look forward to thy great guilt, thou who preferrest that which is not necessary, to the necessary; repose, to activity in thy calling. Among the talents which the Master of the house gave to his servants to administer, no teacher nor

<sup>1</sup> Deus magis attendit modum in facto, quam factum in modo, id est quo modo aliquid fiat, quam quid aliquo modo fiat. De elemosyna, c. iiii., f. 201.

<sup>2</sup> Nec tam attendit in munere quantitatem, quam devotionem in opere pensans magis ex quanto, quam quantum.

<sup>3</sup> Ep. xv.

passage of the Holy Scriptures mentions roving about in the world. But perhaps it will be said, the man is bound by a vow ; recollect that *thou* hast bound *thyself* by thy vow, but God has bound thee by the duties of thy calling." And he then goes on to explain more at large how, with self-renunciation, he ought to fulfil his duties as a ruler, govern himself by the laws, his subordinates with love ;<sup>1</sup> not stroll about to the churches of the saints, but bear within him the lively remembrance of their virtues.<sup>2</sup> Concerning pilgrimages, Raymund Lull, in his work on Contemplation, expresses himself as follows : he first compares the procession of the pilgrims with the entry of Christ into Jerusalem,<sup>3</sup>—the pilgrims riding at their ease, living comfortably, and bearing the cross only on their cloaks ; he contrasts what Christ did to seek men, with what they do to seek him : " We see the pilgrims travelling away into distant lands to seek thee, whilst thou art so near that every man, if he would, might find thee in his own house and chamber. Why are multitudes so ignorant as to travel away into distant lands to seek thee, carrying evil spirits with them, if they depart laden with sin ? The pilgrims are so deceived by false men, whom they meet in taverns and churches, that many of them, when they return home, show themselves to be far worse than they were when they set out on their pilgrimage. He who would find thee, O Lord, let him go forth to seek thee in love, loyalty, devotion, faith, hope, justice, mercy, and truth ; for in every place where these are, there art thou. Blessed, then, are all they who seek thee in such things. The things which a man would find, he should seek earnestly ; and he must seek in the place where they are to be found. If, then, the pilgrims would find thee, they must carefully seek thee ; and they must not seek thee in the images and paintings of churches, but in the hearts of holy men, in which thou dwellest day and night. The mode and the way to find thee stands within the power of man ; for to remember thee, to love thee, to honour, to serve thee ; to think of thine exalted dignity and on our own great wants,—this is the occasion and the way to find thee, if we seek thee. Often have I sought thee on the cross, and my bodily eyes have not been able

1 Te ipsum legibus, amore subjectos rege.

2 Nec circumferri per memorias lapidum, sed circumferre memoriam virtutum.

3 Cap. cxiii. f. 252.

to find thee, although they have found thine image there, and a representation of thy death. And when I could not find thee with my bodily eyes, I have sought thee with the eye of my soul ; and, thinking on thee, my soul found thee ; and when it found thee, my heart began immediately to warm with the glow of love, my eyes to weep, my mouth to praise thee. How little profits it the pilgrims to roam through the world in quest of thee, if, when they have come back from their pilgrimage, they return again to sin and folly." Bishop William of Paris, another distinguished man among the scholastic theologians of the thirteenth century, says, in one of his sermons : " The true pilgrimage is this,—to travel, by penitence, to the heavenly Jerusalem. This pilgrimage is more glorious than all others, for the reason that the others are performed for the sake of this ; and, where this is wanting, the others are useless." The same bishop remarks, in another sermon : " They present their bodies, not as a living but as a dead sacrifice, who say, I will cause myself to be buried and remain, after my death, in this or that order, while they continue to live on in their sins." The abbot Bernard of Tiron<sup>1</sup> said to the monks assembled around his dying bed : " All virtue, besides love, is perishable ; in this consists the essence of all God's commandments ; by this alone, the disciples of Christ are distinguished from the servants of antichrist. By this alone, will men recognize them as Christ's disciples, not by the circumstance that they observed superstitious ordinances ; these promoted sin far more than edification." He lamented that he had been so long a slave to such outward ordinances, and had laid such a yoke upon others.<sup>2</sup>

Many bright testimonies of this Christian spirit, that pointed away from the outward to the inward, we find in the works of Raymund Lull. We will cite a few of them. " The figure of the holy cross," says he, " laments over those hypocrites who simulate the poverty and suffering represented by it, with a view to appear as saints to the people, and who are unwilling to follow

<sup>1</sup> See vol. vii. p. 317.

<sup>2</sup> In hoc solo cognoscent homines, quia Christi sitis discipuli, non si superstitionum observatores traditionum extiteritis, sed si dilectionem ad invicem habueritis. Concerning the former he says, quibus non parvo tempore ipse subjacueram, quasque aliis per nonnulla annorum curricula instanter ferendas imposueram. Acta S. Meni. April, t. ii., f. 249.

after it by the performance of real good works.<sup>1</sup> We see the holy cross honoured with gold, silver, precious stones, silks, and paintings of various colours; but we see it little honoured by love, tears, contrition, devotion, and holy thoughts; and yet the wooden cross, before which a sinner weeps, receives more honour than the cross of gold, before which a sinner stands thinking of the vanities of the world.<sup>2</sup> The image of the crucified Christ is found much rather in men who imitate him in their daily walk, than in a crucifix made of wood."<sup>3</sup> All the Christian virtues he represents as signs of that constitution of soul which is requisite in order to salvation;<sup>4</sup> "but from these signs," says he, "it is still impossible to know whether one is in the way of salvation, because that which shows itself in outward appearance is no certain expression of the disposition within, on which alone everything depends. For those persons who fast, give alms, and speak words of humility, clothe themselves in rags, and subject themselves to many self-denials, may yet, with all this, unite a false bent of the inward temper."<sup>5</sup> And others may eat and sleep well, and wear comfortable garments, who do this with a good intention, and to avoid making a parade of their piety."<sup>6</sup> "The poor man, when he gives a small morsel of bread, in true piety and contrition, to another poor man, is more benefitted than the rich man, who gives the poor bread and meat from vanity and in a false intention."<sup>7</sup> "A small piece of money, which the poor man gives out of love to God, is more than a large sum which the rich man bestows in such intention; and the rich man is more acceptable before God when, from love to God, he is humble, simple, and courteous, than the poor man who, from love to God, is the same."<sup>8</sup> Prayer, he describes

<sup>1</sup> Conqueritur, quia ipsi eam in se fingunt, ut videantur a gentibus in similitudinem bonorum hominum, et nolunt ipsam imitari faciendo vera esse opera.

<sup>2</sup> Majorem honorationem recipit crux lignea, coram qua peccator plorat, quam crux aurea, coram qua peccator stat memorando vanitates hujus mundi.

<sup>3</sup> Quoniam figura, quam videmus in cruce, est pictura in ligno, sed beatus religiosus est illius speciei, cujus est tua gloriosa humanitas. Liber contemplationis, vol. ii., Distinct. 23, c. cxxiii. t. i., f. 280.

<sup>4</sup> Omnes virtutes signa et significationes et demonstrationes salvationis.

<sup>5</sup> Possunt habere in istis rebus falsam et inordinatum intentionem.

<sup>6</sup> L. c. f. 461.

<sup>7</sup> L. c. f. 181.

<sup>8</sup> L. c. f. 162.

as the soul of the Christian life. "It is ordained of God as the ladder, by which man mounts from this dark place to the eternal glory. As often as man begins to pray, while praising and loving God, testifying of his goodness and acknowledging his own wretchedness, so often he begins to mount upward to God. Prayer converts the proud man into an humble one, the disdainful man into a simple and courteous one.", "A man better defends himself against temptation with prayer than with fasting." "Devotion in prayer is so good a thing, that the prayer of uneducated men or women, who pray in rude language, but with great devotion, is far more acceptable than the prayer of the great and learned, and of prelates, who pray with fine words but without devotion; since they have their hearts and their imaginations set on other things, quite at variance with those denoted by their words."<sup>3</sup> He called that acceptable prayer to God, which aims at obtaining the forgiveness of sin, humility, wisdom, love. "But many," says he, "pray daily for the glory of paradise, and yet in their hearts love the joys of this world more than the glory they pray for; and as they love the goods of this world more than those of the other, they are not worthy of attaining to the celestial goods."<sup>4</sup> He distinguishes three kinds of prayer,—prayer in words (the *oratio sensualis*); the internal prayer of the spirit (*oratio intellectualis*), and that embracing the whole life. "He who is just, compassionate, humble, patient, prays, although he is not consciously thinking of God. To this act belong all works which pious men perform. Whatsoever such a person may do, whether he eat, or drink, or sleep, buy or sell, dig or plough, he prays to God and praises God."<sup>5</sup> The temper which should be the soul of the Christian life, he represents as love, concerning whose holy fervour he could testify more fully than any other individual. "As the needle," says he, "when touched by the magnet, points naturally to the north, so must thy servant turn thither to love and praise God his Lord, and to serve him; since

<sup>1</sup> L. c. f. 125.

<sup>2</sup> Homo melius se defendit a tentatione cum oratione quam cum jejuniis. De centum nominibus Dei, c. ii., t. vi., f. 23.

<sup>3</sup> De contemplatione Dei, vol. ii., l. iii., Dist. 29, c. cc., f. 498.

<sup>4</sup> L. c. f. 490.

<sup>5</sup> L. c. vol. iii., l. v., Dist. 40, c. cccxv., t. x., f. 339.

from love to him the Lord has been willing to endure heavy pains and sufferings in this world<sup>1</sup>

Among his spirited aphorisms we find the following, which belong here. "He who bestows on his friend his love, bestows on him more than if he gave him treasures of gold; he who gives God, *can* give nothing more,"<sup>2</sup> (alluding to the words of the apostle John, that God is love.) With this saying, we may compare what Richard a Sancto Victore remarks, on the other hand, concerning those who sow contentions. "He treats you in a godless manner, who robs you of your money; but how is it with him who deprives you of love? Does he treat you cruelly who robs you of your garment? how much more, then, he who deprives you of love. For if it is cruel to rob a man of his outward and perishable goods, it must be still more so to deprive him of the internal, ever-abiding goods; for charity never ceases. Of a truth, whoever deprives a man of love, deprives him also of God, for God is love."<sup>3</sup> Again, says Raymund Lull: "He who loves not, lives not."<sup>4</sup> "The spirit longs after nothing as it does after God. No gold is worth so much as a sigh of holy longing. The more of this longing one has, the more of life he has. The want of this longing is death. Have this longing, and thou shalt live. He is not poor who possesses this; unhappy the man who lives without it."<sup>5</sup> "Were there no sin," says he, "all temporal goods would be held in common by all." The activity of love in almsgiving, he considered as that whereby all those distinctions which had proceeded from sin, were to be again done away.<sup>6</sup>

Although an enthusiastic admirer of monasticism, yet Raymund Lull objected to an excessive asceticism, or one that does not spring out of the temper of love; and places the love that unites

1 Sicut acus per naturam vertitur ad septentrionem, dum sit tacta a magnete, ita oportet, quod tuus servus se vertat ad amandum et laudandum suum Dominum Deum, et ad serviendum ei, quoniam pro suo amore voluit in hoc mundo sustinere graves dolores et graves passiones. De contemplatione Dei, vol. ii., l. iii., Dist. 27, c. cxxx., t. ix. f. 296.

2 Qui dat bonum amare suo amico, illi plus dat, quam si illi daret omne aurum; qui dat Deum, non potest plus dare. De centum nominibus Dei, c. xxxi., t. vi. f. 16.

3 De eruditione interioris hominis, p. i., l. iii., c. iv., f. 107.

4 Qui non amat, non vivit. Liber proverborum, c. xvii., t. vi., f. 10.

5 Qui plus desiderat, plus scit de vivere. Privatio desiderii est mori. Desidera et vivas. Non est pauper, qui desiderat. Tristis vivit, qui non desiderat. De centum nominibus Dei, c. xc., Lib. Proverbiorum, p. i. t. vi., f. 38.

6 Si peccatum non esset, omnia temporalia bona essent communia. Eleemosyna est figura communis boni. Prov. moral. c. lxx., t. vi., f. 119.

together the practical and contemplative life, and is active in promoting the salvation of others, above everything else. "The body which has been too much mortified," says he, "is suited for neither the active nor the contemplative life. Thou wilt be a murderer, if thou destroyest thyself slowly, as much as if thou doest it at once. God does not bestow earthly blessings on men for nothing; as thou must eat in order to live, so thou must not fast in order to die. Hypocrisy steals upon those who impose on themselves excessive mortification."<sup>1</sup> "No hermit does so much good as a good preacher, who has the contemplative life in himself, and shows the practical in his preaching. Better is a life spent in instructing others, than one spent in fasting."<sup>2</sup>

In his great work concerning Contemplation in God, Raymund Lull exhibits, in all the ranks and professions of Christendom, the contrast between what they are and what they ought to be,<sup>3</sup> and points away from the corruption of all, to Christ. While he thus treats of princes and nobles, and complains that no access is to be found to them, when it is needed in reference to the matters for which they are placed over others,—for the gates of the palaces are shut, and the porters threaten those who would enter them; he thereupon betakes himself to God and says, "Praised then, be thou, that the case is not so with thee,—for as often as

<sup>1</sup> Proverb. moral. c. lxi., f. 119.

<sup>2</sup> Nullus eremita facit tantum bonum, sicut bonus praedicator, qui habet vitam contemplativam in se ipso et activam in praedicando. Vita est melior per doctrinam, quam per jejunium. L. c. p. iii., c. li. f. 110.

<sup>3</sup> As this work will be accessible to but few of my readers, I have thought it might be agreeable to them if I should quote a few passages from Raymund Lull on this point. He speaks earnestly against the manner in which princes, abusing their power, acted in contradiction to their high calling, ut teneant pacem in terra et ut gentes secure possint ire per vias et secure manere in suis domibus. He says of them, quod totum mundum teneant in bello et labore. And he expressed his surprise, quod tam pauci homines teneant in labore tot gentes, quot sunt in hoc mundo. He says that the majority of them ipsi se faciant servos vilium hominum. He speaks of their love of the chase; he describes how they excused themselves on the plea that this was their *relaxation*; and thus pretending that by such pursuits they avoided sin; sed non attendunt ad malos procuratores, quos relinquunt loco sui et qui sunt populo sicut lupi voraces et dum ipsi venantur et se recreant, lupi comedunt oves sibi commissas. In complaining of the cupidity, the ambition, and the ignorance of *physicians* (quia operantur in infirmis plus casualiter, quam certa scientia, ideo plures homines occiduntur quam sanantur a medicis), he recommends, as the best practice of medicine, that the patient should study his own case, find out what ails him, et caveat, ne utatur rebus contrariis et sinat operari in se cursum naturae.



man would see thee, contemplate thee, address thee, he can do so, and the door is never shut."<sup>1</sup>

We will quote in addition a few things from the sayings of the Franciscan, Aegidius of Assisi, a friend of Francis of Assisi, as testimonies of the internal Christian life, the internal Christian experience, of these times: "One grace draws after it another, and one crime draws after it another." "Grace cannot bear to be praised, nor crime to be despised. Purity of heart *sees* God, devotion *enjoys* him. While a man lives he must not despair of God's mercy; for there is no tree so distorted that human art cannot make it straight again;—*a fortiori*, there is no person in the world whose sins are so grievous that God cannot adorn him with grace and virtues. All love of the creature is nothing in comparison with love of the Creator. Only through humility can man attain to the knowledge of God; the path upward begins downward.<sup>3</sup> It is better to suffer a heavy wrong, without murmuring, out of love to God, than to feed daily a hundred poor, and to fast many days far into the night. What does it profit a man to despise himself and to mortify his body with fasting, prayer, vigils, and self-scourging, if he is not able to endure a wrong from his neighbour, which would bring him greater reward than all the mortifications he imposes on himself? Should the Lord rain stones from heaven, they would not harm us if we were what we ought to be. If a man were what he ought to be, evil would for him transform itself into good; for all great good and all great evil are within the man, where none can see them. It is a great virtue to conquer one's self; if thou conquerest thyself thou wilt conquer all thine enemies. Every man has just so much knowledge and wisdom as he performs good deeds." When Aegidius came in contact with persons who dreaded undertaking any good thing, for fear that vanity might mix in and spoil the whole, said he, "Be not withheld by this from doing good. If the husbandman, when about to scatter his seed on the earth, should say within himself, 'I will not sow this year, for fear the birds may come and devour the seed,' he would after-

<sup>1</sup> *Igitur benedictus sis, quia non est ita de te, quoniam quotiescunque homo velit videre te et contemplando loqui tecum, semper potest nunquam januae sunt clausae*, vol. ii., l. iii., *Distinct. xxiii., c. exi., t. ix., f. 247.*

<sup>2</sup> *Gratia attrahit gratiam et unum vitium trahit ad aliud.*

<sup>3</sup> *Vai cundi sursum est ire deorsum.*

wards find himself in want of food to supply his wants. But if he sow, and it should really happen that some of his seed perishes, yet the greatest portion will remain to him. So is it with him who is tempted with the love of fame and fights against it." Speaking of the inexhaustible store of the knowledge of God yet in reserve for man, he said: "The entire Holy Scriptures speak to us as it were with a lisping tongue, as a mother talks to her little child; because, otherwise, it would be unable to understand her words."<sup>1</sup>

It is true the love of the wonderful prevailed very generally, and the lives of the saints, in order to be popular with the multitude, must needs say a good deal about their miracles.<sup>2</sup> But neither were there wanting those who combated this tendency; and from the twelfth and thirteenth centuries onwards, a series of testimonies might be cited on the true import and significance of the miracle, in its relation to the divine life; and against the over-valuation of the externally wonderful—thoughts which are not barely the property of a few enlightened individuals elevated above their times, but which may be considered as expressing the common Christian consciousness of these centuries.<sup>3</sup> The monk Stephen, who in the twelfth century described the life of his master, the abbot Stephen of Obaize, a man distinguished for his pious and influential activity, adduces no miracle of his; but asserts that, for this reason, he stands not inferior to that active wonder-worker, Martin of Tours; for, to awaken so many men and women, who were sunk in all manner of vice, by repentance, to eternal life, was a far greater work than if he had awakened them from natural death.<sup>4</sup> The author of the life of the abbot Bernard of Tiron says, in his preface to that work: "If any, following the pattern of Jewish unbelief, seek after miracles, and

<sup>1</sup> *Tota sacra scriptura loquitur nobis tanquam balbutiendo, sicut mater balbutiens cum filio suo parvulo, qui aliter non potest intelligere verba ejus. Acta Sanct. Mens. April, t. iii., f. 227, seqq.*

<sup>2</sup> *Quod maxime nunc exigitur ab his, qui sanctorum vitas describere volunt. The preface to the life of the abbot Stephen of Obaize, which was composed by his disciple, Stephen. Baluz. Miscellan. iv., p. 69.*

<sup>3</sup> *Comp. the passages already cited, p. 306.*

<sup>4</sup> *After having spoken of the great numbers of unchaste women converted by him, he says: Qui ergo de talibus poenitentiae remedio et praevenientis gratiae dono castas atque mundissimas Christo sponas exhibuit, non dubito majoris hoc fuisse virtutis, quam si eas corpore mortuas suscitasset, iv., f. 106.*

would estimate the character of the saints solely according to the number of these, what would he say of Mary, or of John the Baptist? But in the day of judgment many who wrought miracles will be rejected, and those alone attain to salvation who have striven after works of righteousness. We praise then our father Bernard, not for the reason that he wrought miracles (although these were not wholly wanting),—but we set him forth as one who meekly, humbly, and from his heart followed in the steps of our Lord Christ.”<sup>1</sup> “Visible miracles,” says the author of the life of Norbert, “may properly excite the wonder of the simple and ignorant; but the patient endurance and virtues of the saints are worthy of the admiration and of the imitation of those who would be soldiers of Christ.”<sup>2</sup>

From the time of this new excitement of the religious life in the beginning of the twelfth century, the want of preaching in the native languages of the different countries became deeply felt, and the more complete formation of these languages was brought about at the time most convenient to meet this want; as the German language had already been found peculiarly well adapted to sacred poetry.<sup>3</sup> It is very evident how fervently the people greeted those ecclesiastics and monks who travelled about as preachers of repentance; and it was the same state of feeling, moreover, that procured such a rush of hearers for those who used their influence with the people in combating the doctrines of the church and diffusing heretical principles. The church would be compelled, therefore, by the interests of self-preservation, to bestow more attention on the management of the predicatorial office. Several writings appeared, which treated of this subject. We may first mention here the work of the abbot Guibert, of Novigentum, on the right method of preaching.<sup>4</sup> He declared it to be the general duty of Christians, and not confined solely to bishops and abbots, to labour for the advancement of the

<sup>1</sup> *Acta Sanct. Mens.* April, t. ii., f. 223.

<sup>2</sup> *Visibilia miracula simplicibus et idiotis stupenda sunt, patientia vero et virtutes sanctorum his, qui ad Christi militiam se accingunt, admirandae sunt et imitandae Mens. Jun. t. i., f. 824.*

<sup>3</sup> *Tota terra jubilat in Christi laudibus etiam per cantilenas linguae vulgaris, maxime in Teutonicis, quorum lingua magis apta est concinnis canticis.* See the words of Gerhoh of Reichersberg, vol. vii., p. 208.

<sup>4</sup> *Quo ordine sermo fieri debeat.*

Christian life in others, according to the proportion of each man's knowledge and gifts. "Suppose one be neither a bishop nor an abbot, still he is a Christian. If he would live a Christian life, he must honour the Christian name, as in himself so also in others." He requires of the preacher that he should have respect to the wants of the simple and uneducated as well as of the better-informed; that he should endeavour to unite depth with lucidity and plainness of meaning.<sup>1</sup> "Let the sermon," says he, "be preceded by prayer; so that the soul, fired with divine love, may utter forth what it feels of God, with glowing words; so that the preacher, as he burns in his own heart, may enkindle a flame also in the hearts of his hearers." He required, especially, that the sermon should contain ethical matter. "The preacher should treat concerning the motions of the inner man." This was a thing so common to the experience of all men, that such a sermon could be obscure to none. Every man could read in his own heart, written as it were in a book, what he heard said of the various kinds of temptation.<sup>2</sup> No sermon was more useful than that which showed men to themselves, and led back those who, by the distraction of outward things, had become estranged from themselves to the secret recesses of their hearts; presenting them, as if reflected from a mirror, before their own eyes."<sup>3</sup> But as, in describing a battle in the field, he who took part in the fight will be able to give an entirely different account of it from one who knows nothing about it except from the report of others, so is it with the spiritual warfare. He whose own conscience bears witness to that which he expresses in words, will treat of spiritual conflicts with an altogether different sort of authority, and be able to point as it were with his finger to all the particulars."<sup>4</sup>

1 Ut idiotis ac simplicibus perspicuum, quod dicitur, esse queat.

2 Præsertim cum unusquisque intra seipsum quasi in libro scriptum attendat quicquid de diversis tentationibus prædicatoris lingua retractat.

3 Nulla enim prædicatio salubrior mihi videtur, quam illa, quæ hominem sibi met ostendat et foras extra se sparsum in interiori suo restituat atque eum coarguens quodammodo depictum ante faciem suam statuatur.

4 This tract of Guibert forms the introduction to his work on the exposition of Genesis, in ten books, in which he aims to show how everything in holy Scripture may be applied to a moral end, and so made use of for preaching. He was induced to undertake this work by a prior, who heard a sermon of his, and requested him to compose a

We ought especially to mention here a work abounding in good matter and worthy of the special consideration of those times, in which, in the thirteenth century, Humbert de Romanis,<sup>1</sup> general of the order of Dominicans, endeavoured to set forth to the members of his order the obligation incumbent on them of preaching the gospel; the gravity and dignity of this vocation; and the qualifications requisite for the right discharge of it.<sup>2</sup> Of all the spiritual exercises in which the monks employed themselves, he describes preaching as the most excellent; and declares that whoever possessed the talent for it, was bound to cultivate it most assiduously.<sup>3</sup> It was more than all fasting and all mortification of the body; for all these bodily exercises, according to 1 Timothy iv., profit but little; but preaching effected much good. Besides, an indigent preacher, truly zealous for the salvation of souls, had more to suffer than all those mortifications could amount to which a man imposes on himself. He cites, in confirmation of this, the remark of a man that had passed over from the Cistercian to the Dominican order, and affirmed, that he "had had more to suffer in a few days, when he itinerated as a preacher, than during the whole time he had spent in his old order. Other monks busied themselves with works of charity pertaining to the body; but preaching was as much above these as the soul is more than the body." He refers to the words of Christ, Luke ix., 60, Let the dead bury their dead, but go thou and preach the kingdom of God." He sets preaching above prayer; above the study of the sacred Scriptures, if they are not studied as a help to preaching; above the celebration of the mass, and the liturgical acts of worship; "for of the Latin liturgy the laity understand nothing; but they can understand the sermon; and hence, by preaching, God is glorified in a clearer and more open manner than by other acts of worship."<sup>4</sup> Furthermore, he appeals to the example of Christ:

work for himself, from which he might learn how to work everything into matter for preaching (*ut id sibi scriberem, in quo materiam sumendi cujuscunque sermonis acciperet*). See his *Traet, De vita sua*, lib. i., f. 477.

<sup>1</sup> So named from his native town, Romans, in Burgundy.

<sup>2</sup> His work, *De eruditione prædicatorum*, in two books, published in the twenty-fifth volume of the *Bibliotheca patrum*, Lugd.

<sup>3</sup> Lib. i., c. xx.

<sup>4</sup> In *prædicatione intelligunt, quæ dicuntur, et ideo per prædicationem clarius et apertius laudatur Deus.*

"Christ celebrated the mass but once; heard no confessions; seldom administered the sacraments; did not employ himself much in the liturgical adoration of God; but he was constantly engaged in prayer and preaching. Indeed, after he had once commenced preaching, he spent his whole life in that employment, much more than in prayer." He dwells on the great effects which sermons might produce in his own times; describes how the multitude ran after them.<sup>1</sup> He relates that certain ecclesiastics had discussed together, before an eminent archbishop, the question what good has been effected by the multitude of sermons preached by the new order of monks, since vice and crime prevail in the world to as great a degree as ever? Upon this the archbishop remarked, "As there is still so much vice and those good men have been the means of extirpating so much by their preaching, what would the case have been, if such preachers had never appeared?"<sup>2</sup> Humbert examines into the hindrances by which many were prevented from preaching, with a view of depriving those whom he would urge to engage in it of all grounds of excuse. "Thus, some," he said, "were kept back by the love of contemplative quiet; such had the more to answer for, in proportion to the good they might have done by public activity. Others were hindered through dread of the temptations to sin." He meets the case of such by saying, "It is sometimes better for men to toil, even though by toiling they may cover themselves with dust, than to sit always in perfect tidyness at home. Others deferred the work too long, from the desire of attaining to a certain degree of perfection, which perhaps they would never reach." He says to them: "The friends sleep, and meantime the house is on fire; an enemy breaks in, and yet they cannot arouse themselves. Others were deterred by dread of the want to which they must expose themselves in preaching the gospel." Before such he holds up the poverty of Christ, and asks, "What preacher, of the present age, would have to suffer want to that degree as not to be able to find, at least in populous cities, the necessary means for the support of life? Others were intimidated by the per-

<sup>1</sup> Interdum ista devotio facit multos sequi praedicatorum, sicut visum est in diebus nostris frequenter. Lib. i., c. iv.

<sup>2</sup> Lib. i., c. ii.

<sup>3</sup> Praeparatio nimis morosa ad hoc officium.

verseness of many of the prelates, who sought to hinder the preaching which it was much more their duty to encourage ; as the scribes and pharisees had done among the Jews, and the priests among the pagans."<sup>1</sup> He calls upon the preacher to go about everywhere ; and to labour wherever there was need of it. " What sort of preachers are those who would always remain inactive at home ?"<sup>2</sup> We may observe how the zeal with which the heretics, that appeared in opposition to the church, laboured to propagate their doctrines, served to call forth a reaction on the part of those who were engaged in the service of the church. He holds up the example of the former as worthy of imitation ; describing their incessant activity in running about the houses and villages, at the hazard of their lives, for the purpose of leading souls astray.<sup>3</sup> But at the same time, he warns against the false zeal of an indiscreet obtrusiveness, advising his monks not to appear in improper places ; not to hold forth, as many did, at markets and fairs ; since in these places men were wholly engrossed in worldly affairs, and reverence for the divine word could not fail to suffer injury ; but to choose befitting spots, as Paul preached in the synagogues, and our Lord in the temple, or even in the open fields, where the attention of men was not liable to be diverted by worldly occupations.<sup>4</sup>

He furthermore gives many admonitions and warnings to preachers with regard to the right method of preaching : " Though the talent for preaching," he says, " is obtained through the special gift of God, yet the wise preacher will do his own part of the work, and diligently study, in order that he may preach correctly." But he warns against a mistake committed by many, who were for making a display of their own ingenuity and eloquence, and as the people of Athens required, were ever on the search for something new to say.<sup>5</sup> Thus he unites in the same

<sup>1</sup> Lib. i. c. xvi. to xxi.: Sunt multi praelati, qui non solum non praedicant, sed etiam ne alii, qui hoc laudabiliter possunt facere, faciant prohibent.

<sup>2</sup> Quales ergo praedicatores sunt, qui semper quiescere volunt in domibus vel in castris suis. L. c. c. xxi.

<sup>3</sup> Haeretici cum periculo corporis non cessant per domos et villas discurrere, ut pervertant animas. L. c. c. xxxi.

<sup>4</sup> L. c. c. xvii.

<sup>5</sup> Sunt quidam praedicatores, qui cum student ad praedicandum interdum applicant studium suum circa subtilia, volentes plectere et texere subtilia circa nova, more Athen-

censure which the opponent of his order, William of St Amour, pronounces against the preachers of the two mendicant orders,—that they lacked the simplicity of the gospel, and affected to exhibit themselves as philosophers.<sup>1</sup> “But the good preacher,” said he, “would aim rather at that which might prove useful,—which might serve to promote devotion.” He declaims against excessive prolixity and frequent repetitions in sermons,—against those who were for displaying their ingenuity in deriving the theme of their discourse from a text altogether foreign from the matter in hand.<sup>2</sup> Such tricks would rather excite derision than promote edification.<sup>3</sup> He speaks against those who looked more to fine words than to the thoughts; comparing them with people who took more pains to make a display of beautiful dishes, than of good food upon them.<sup>4</sup>

With regard to the effects produced by preaching, he says,<sup>5</sup> “Many hear the word of God with great delight; but it is the same as if they were listening to a beautiful song. Others experience a great effect on their feelings for the moment; but it is of no benefit to them, because, after the sermon, they become immediately cold again.” He applies to them 1 Kings xix. 11, “The Lord was not in the whirlwind.” “Others,” says he, “are good judges of preaching,—he has spoken well or badly, say they; the sermon was too long, too short, too abstruse, too trivial,—but they never think of applying what is said to their own lives.”

He takes particular notice, also, of the different ranks and occupations of men, and hints at the kind of instruction suited to each. Of the great, as well as of the poor, he says, that they seldom visited the churches,—which were mostly frequented, there-

*iensium vocantes ad dicendum nova, interdum circa sophismata, linguam suam volentes magnificare.* Lib. i. c. vi.

<sup>1</sup> De periculis novissimorum temporum, l. c. p. 71: Quod veri Apostoli non intendunt nec innotantur rationibus logicis aut philosophicis. Illi ergo prædicatores, qui hujus modi rationibus innotantur, non sunt veri Apostoli, sed pseudo.

<sup>2</sup> Thus, one who would treat concerning the apostles Peter and Paul took for his text Numbers iii. 20.

<sup>3</sup> Solet autem accidere frequenter, quod hujusmodi themata extranea non possunt aptari, nisi cum magna et incongrua extorsione sententiae et ideo potius inducunt derisionem quam aedificationem.

<sup>4</sup> Lib. i., c. vi.

<sup>5</sup> L. c. c. xxvi.



fore, by persons of the middle class,—and hence, the opportunity of addressing them ought to be the more carefully improved. As it was but seldom they heard sermons, it was a work of love for the preacher, whenever he could find them together and have access to them, to address them the word of exhortation, for they greatly needed it.<sup>1</sup> And he exhorts the preacher to set home upon the great, the duties which they owed to their inferiors. “The poor,” says he, “come seldom to church,—seldom to hear preaching,—for this reason they know little about things that minister to salvation; and hence, if they are ever found collected at church, or elsewhere, they should be instructed in that which it concerns all Christians to know.”<sup>2</sup> He instances the case where numbers come together in large ships, thus furnishing an opportunity for any who may be disposed to preach to them.<sup>3</sup> The sensuous bent of devotion paid but little regard to preaching, and hence Humbert laments over the case of the poor women, who knew no better than to neglect the preached word; busying themselves, while it was delivering, either in repeating their prayers, in kneeling before the images, or in taking the holy water.<sup>4</sup> When it was seen that a pope, like Innocent the Third, would not allow himself to be deterred, by the enormous pressure of his affairs, from the zealous preaching of the word,<sup>5</sup>—this fact would doubtless serve to beget in many a high sense of the importance of the predicatorial office in its bearing on church life. We hear this pope himself lamenting in his sermons that, by the great multitude of affairs which demanded his attention, he was prevented from bestowing the care which he wished to expend on the composition and delivery of his discourses. Yet he was unwilling to remain wholly silent on festival occasions, though he could not accomplish what he would have been glad to do.<sup>6</sup> His sermons bear witness to his earnest zeal for the advancement of

<sup>1</sup> Lib. ii., c. lxxxiii.

<sup>2</sup> L. ii., c. xxvi.

<sup>3</sup> L. c. c. xci.

<sup>4</sup> L. c. c. ci.

<sup>5</sup> Hubert de Romanis relates that, on a certain high festival, he delivered before the people a homily, written by Gregory the Great on this festival, and translated into the vernacular tongue. L. c. lib. i. c. vi.

<sup>6</sup> S. i., Quadrages: *Saepe necessitas impedit, quod requirit utilitas, quod ipse nunc experiri compellor. Requirit enim utilitas, ut his sacris diebus frequentius solito per exhortationes sermonum debeam populos admonere, sed impedit hoc necessitas, quia praeter solitum imo plus solito multis et magnis sum occupatus negotiis, ut nullum mihi sit otium otiosum.* Opp. f. 40.

practical Christianity, in opposition to a certain superstition which resisted it; and of this, we have already cited some examples. He protested strongly, amongst other things, against a superstitious and excessive image-worship, which he call a species of idolatry.<sup>1</sup> Concerning the greatest teacher of scientific theology of his age, Thomas Aquinas, it is related that he took the utmost pains to preach plainly, in the Italian language, and to abstain from all matters which would not contribute to the edification of the people, by whom he was listened to with great reverence.<sup>2</sup>

From the middle of the thirteenth century to the year 1272, in which he died, the Franciscan Berthold held the first rank as a preacher of repentance in the cities of Regensburg and Augsburg. His labours were extended from Bavaria to Thuringia, and far into Switzerland. He was invited to preach first in one city, and then in another. No church was large enough to hold the multitudes that came to hear him. He often preached in the open fields, where a pulpit had been erected for him, with more than sixty thousand people assembled around him. He fearlessly rebuked the vices of all ranks of society, high and low, rich and poor. Many were converted under his preaching, and freely confessed their sins to him. Among this number were women of very immodest habits of life, who immediately abandoned their dishonest calling, and were married by him to husbands, after he had collected from the crowds that hung upon his lips the amount of alms required for their dowry. He was revered as a prophet and a worker of miracles.<sup>3</sup>

His sermons, couched in nervous and pithy German, breathe a

<sup>1</sup> Quid est, quod quidam sub prae-textu pietatis et obtentu religionis, ut caetera taceam, diversas adorant imagines, tanquam liceat manufactum aliquid adorare? In Dedicat, templi, s. iii., f. 75.

<sup>2</sup> Praedicationes suas, quibus placeret Deo, prodesset populo, sic formabat, ut non esset in curiosis humanae sapientiae verbis, sed in spiritu et virtute sermonis, qui evitatis, quae curiositati potius quam utilitati deserviant, in illo suo vulgari natalis soli proponebat et prosequeretur utilia populo, subtilitates quaestionum scholasticae disputationi relinquens. See the already cited life, c. viii., § 48. Mens. Mart. t. i., f. 674.

<sup>3</sup> See the accounts in Wadding's *Annalen des Franciskanerordens*, t. iv., at the year 1272; and in the *Chronicle of the Swiss Johann von Wintherthur*. The latter writes concerning him, under the year 1340: Hic ab hominibus adhuc praesenti tempore extantibus, qui saepe suis sermonibus interfuerant, mihi et allis hoc narrantibus, asseritur, habuisse spiritum prophetiae, nam multa et diversa praedixerat, quae nostris sunt temporibus adimpleta. This chronicler states that Berthold, who preached in several other

genuine spirit of practical Christianity, which, although still cramped and confined within the narrow limits of the church doctrine, yet stood forth in zealous opposition to all the superstition and outside Christianity which merely served as a prop to sin, foretoking the great reformatory tendency which was destined to proceed forth at a future day from German monasticism.<sup>1</sup> We will here cite a few of his sayings, in illustration of these remarks. Speaking of the worth of virtue, he says: "While God Almighty created all things for our use, yet there is one which, in value and profit, far exceeds all the rest. And therefore you should use all diligence to make sure of this; for he who is without it, never beholds God and his holy angels, in their joys and in their glory. And that you may love it as long as you live, I will name it to you: it is called Virtue. For the Almighty God is all virtue; and he created men and angels for no other purpose than that we might become partakers of his joys and of his glory. By this virtue, God created angels and men; and as he himself can be nothing other than absolute virtue and pure virtue, so it is his will that angels and men should also be virtuous. But then," says he, "virtue is something other than what the world commonly calls by that name, applying it to him who can gracefully convey a message, carry a dish, or present a cup; and hold or dispose of his hands in a well-bred fashion. Behold! such virtue is a mockery in God's sight. For even a dog may be taught to hold up his fore-paws, and to demean himself with a becoming grace."<sup>2</sup> "Had not our Lady been virtuous," says he, soon afterwards,<sup>3</sup> "the Holy Ghost would not have come upon her. Could I but be certain in this earthly state, that I should never lose the kingdom of heaven, I would rather be a virtuous man upon earth, than a saint in heaven;

Swiss cities, constantly declined complying with the requests of the citizens of Winterthur, that he would also come to them, because they refused to do away an impost which was oppressive to the poor. Vid. Joannis Vitodurani Chronicon, f. vi., et seqq., in the *Thesaurus Historiae Helveticae*. Tiguri, 1785.

<sup>1</sup> Professor F. K. Grieshaber of Rastadt has this year published German sermons of an unknown person belonging to the thirteenth century, which in language bear considerable resemblance to Berthold's, but in which the moral element is still more predominant. They are marked by a gentle and earnest spirit of sincerity, but want the depth of Berthold.

<sup>2</sup> In the edition of Kling, p. 103, etc.

<sup>3</sup> P. 138.

for then I would become progressively holier from day to day, and from year to year." He warns his hearers against supposing that a man, by possessing this or that particular virtue, though he may be destitute of the other principal ones, and live in the practice of great sins, is still sure of the kingdom of heaven. "True, one man may possess this, and another that virtue, in a higher degree; but at the same time, all these virtues must be together; for no man can enter the kingdom of heaven if he has not possessed, and does not still possess, all these virtues. Flatter not yourselves on possessing one virtue, or two, or three, or many. Hast thou but a single vice, which is called a capital sin, that settles the question for thee (so wird deiner nimmer Rath)."<sup>1</sup> He gives prominence to purity of heart, as the main thing on which everything depends. "He who looks upon a woman," says he,<sup>2</sup> "and thinks he would gladly commit sin with her, has, in God's sight, already done the deed." Here, as frequently in his sermons, he interrupts himself with the exclamation: "What! brother Berthold! how many would then be lost?" To which he replies: "Well, suppose thou shouldst find, in thy cellar, a man that has broken open thy chest; though as yet he has purloined nothing from it; what wouldst thou take him to be? Surely, thou wouldst take him to be a thief, and send him to the gallows. Just so God holds thee to be an actual adulterer; for that thou art not so, is no fault of thine. Thou art far more, on thy part, God's thief."<sup>3</sup> He ever sets forth love as constituting the essence of the Christian temper. Love (die Minne) is one of the most exalted virtues the world ever won. And hence the Almighty God so dearly prizes love, that he has made it the chief ornament of the kingdom of heaven. It is the noble food with which Almighty God will feed us. And therefore should we, on the earth, possess the true love, that we may ever be fed with it in the kingdom of heaven; for there is love beyond love."<sup>4</sup> Having spoken of the fulfilling of the law as consisting in supreme love to God, and in loving our neighbours as ourselves, he says of him who fulfils this law: "I will venture a great word—he has everything that God himself has."<sup>5</sup> True love to God consists in this, that thou avoidest all mortal sins, through the regard thou hast

<sup>1</sup> P. 140.<sup>2</sup> P. 93.<sup>3</sup> P. 94.<sup>4</sup> P. 247.<sup>5</sup> P. 4.

to God, therefore sincerely, as if there were neither hell nor devil ; and not so much through the fear of hell, as through the love thou hast to God.”<sup>1</sup> “ Love is like fire,”<sup>2</sup> says he ; “ whatever is placed in the fire, becomes fire. So is it with love. All that can befall a man who possesses true love is itself converted into a love. Has he to encounter great toils ? It becomes a pleasure of love to him. Has he great poverty ? It is the same.”<sup>3</sup> It seems to many people as if they loved God, while yet they love him not in the way he has bidden. It is a small thing to love God with something else,—with a paternoster, an alms, with a visit to a church, or with a bow towards the altar, or to a picture. Others, who can discourse largely of Christ’s sufferings, of God’s love and mercy, are wanting in true love.<sup>4</sup> Learn not even to be an enemy to thine enemies ; for it is an eminent sign that one is a child of our heavenly Father, and a pupil of our Lord Jesus Christ, and a dwelling of the Holy Ghost, if he has learned of him to love his enemies, and to carry a gentle heart towards them that have done him ill, and to be peaceful with them that hate peace. What joy has the Holy Ghost over the heart where he finds such constant quiet within ! Such sweetness, however, is now rare on the earth ; for such meekness we find not in all the world ; seldom even with the clergy.” In pointing out the distinction between true and false humility, he says : “ We may be humble in apparel, in behaviour, in gestures, in words ; all this, without possessing humility of heart ; as the case is with dissemblers. But the internal humility of the heart cannot remain concealed. It shows itself outwardly in everything ; since it cannot appear otherwise than it is. Where it does not appear, there it does not exist in strength.” True humility, he said, might be known by this, that they who possess it are willing to hear the same judgment passed upon them which they pass upon themselves. They are willing to be considered as nothing ; to be thought sinners ; and whatsoever good may be in them, to have God praised for it, from whom it has all proceeded. “ It is better,” says he,<sup>5</sup> “ to devour half an ox on Good Friday, than to bewray a soul by falsehood.”<sup>6</sup>

The deep-felt religious need, in connection with the complete

<sup>1</sup> P. 178.

<sup>2</sup> P. 156.

<sup>3</sup> P. 149.

<sup>4</sup> P. 106.

<sup>5</sup> P. 89.

<sup>6</sup> [It is impossible to give these sayings the quaint simplicity in which they appear in the old German.—Ta.]

formation of the vernacular tongues, had for its result that, in Germany, and in South France, in the Provencal language, various attempts were made to translate the Bible. The effect which, in all times, has accompanied the diffusion of the Scriptures among the people, was observed also in the present case; and it is easy to see how much might have been done for the religious awakening and enlightenment of the people, if such efforts, growing out of the national life and the religious need, had been taken advantage of by the church authorities. The word of God was received with great eagerness by the laity; and from it proceeded a mighty influence on the minds of men. Although the spread of translations of the Bible in the vernacular tongue was certainly not opposed as yet by any law; yet the whole church spirit and the existing relations between priests and laity could not possibly be inclined to favour the more general circulation of such versions. By the universal use of the Bible the religious consciousness of the laity would have been withdrawn from its dependence on the tutelage of the church and of the priesthood, and the way would necessarily be prepared thereby for a new evolution. A struggle could not fail to arise, therefore, between the church system and the universal reading of the Scriptures; and even though the persons of highest station in the government of the church by no means entertained at first any intention of limiting the reading of the Scriptures by the laity; yet they would be actually driven to this course by the interest and logical coherence of the system which they wished to maintain. In addition to this, it was especially by means of the sects who stood forth in opposition to the dominant church system, that the Bible was once more spread among the laity, whence, with the diligent reading of it, was connected from the first, a tendency unfavourable to the hierarchy. It is remarkable that pope Innocent the Third was originally inclined rather to encourage than to suppress the reading of the Bible by the laity, till, influenced by the principles of the church theocracy, of which he was the representative, he was led, by the consequences growing out of that tendency, to contend against it.

By Waldenses, who came from Montpellier,<sup>1</sup> translations of the

<sup>1</sup> See Caesarius of Heisterbach, *Distinct*, v. c. xx. f. 138.

Psalter, of Job, of the epistles of St Paul, and of several other books of the Bible, in the Provencal language, were spread in the diocese of Metz, and they were eagerly caught up and read by men and women. The light of a religious knowledge, to which their ignorant clergy would have been unable to lead them, here rose upon them. Societies were formed, of men and women, who read the Bible to one another, and were edified thereby; but, as was reported to pope Innocent the Third,<sup>1</sup> a certain spiritual pride infected the members of these associations, insomuch that they believed themselves to be the only true Christians, and felt inclined to despise all who took no part in their assemblies. It is, however, quite possible, also, that this charge was brought against them by their adversaries, simply because they maintained, as they might rightly do, that they had a better knowledge of the essence of Christianity than others; and, by their manner of life, ordered according to the doctrine of the Bible, distinguished themselves from the multitude. The priests and parish clergy, it is true, could as yet detect nothing that savoured of heresy in these people; but still they could not be pleased with their effort to make themselves independent of them; and they endeavoured to put a stop to these private meetings. The members of them then met the priests with arguments from the Bible, to show they needed not allow themselves to be forbidden these private means of edification. And several of them assured the ignorant clergy that, in their books, they had what was better than anything they could give them. The bishop of Metz drew up a report of these movements, within his community, for the pope; but the latter was far from wishing to suppress the whole thing, at once, by violent measures. He had undoubtedly learned, from the experience of his predecessors,<sup>2</sup> how easily such efforts, capable, without doubt, of being made to work in harmony with the church life, and under the supervision of the general church guidance, of proving eminently beneficial, might, by the ecclesiastical despotism which would check every freer movement of the religious spirit, be pushed to an heretical opposition. This pope was well aware, too, that the study of the Bible was better

<sup>1</sup> Lib. ii., ep. 141: Qui etiam aspernantur eorum consortium, qui se similibus non immisceant, et a se reputant alienos qui aures et animos talibus non apponunt.

<sup>2</sup> See further on.

suited, than anything else, to beget and foster a spiritual bent of piety; he recognised the Bible as furnishing the best means of nourishment for the soul, and the surest remedy for all the disorders of the soul; only he supposed that but few could elevate themselves to this lofty stage; that the majority must content themselves with that union to Christ which came through the medium of sensible things: such, for instance, as the holy eucharist, a medium instituted, indeed, by Christ himself for the use of all.<sup>1</sup> He might, therefore, be rather surprised and rejoiced than otherwise to learn that the Bible had, in spite of his doubts, found its way among the laity; and that they derived from it nourishment for their piety; provided nothing was connected therewith which appeared to him fanatical or calculated to disturb the order of the church. He therefore issued to the bishop and chapter of the cathedral at Metz, a letter to the following import.<sup>2</sup> "While it is the duty of prelates to keep a careful watch that the heretics may not succeed in laying waste the Lord's heritage, they should also be extremely cautious how they attempt to gather up the tares before the time of the harvest, lest, perchance, the good fruit may be plucked away also. While no tolerance should be shown to heresy, it was important, also, that no harm should be done to a pious simplicity, lest the simple might be converted into heretics."<sup>3</sup> He called upon them to admonish these people, and persuade them with arguments, that they should abstain from everything that deserved censure, and not intrude into matters foreign from their calling. And he required, also, before

<sup>1</sup> We gather this from the words of Innocent, in the fourth book of his work, *De mysteriis missae*, c. xlv, t. i., f. 395. After having mentioned the words at the institution of the sacrament, he says: *Non enim solam scripturarum commemorationem ad hoc sufficere judicabat, qui lethargicum venerat aegrotum sanare. Quota namque pars nostri capit illud, quo tunc evangelio optimis unguentis fragrat, antidotum, verbum quod erat in principio apud Deum, per quem omnia facta sunt quodque caro factum est habitavit in nobis? Nam illud quidem ruminare, medela salubris est, super mel et favum, dulcis faucibus animas diligentia. Sed tamen cibus valde paucorum est et solius mentis pabulum; quo tunc anima plenissime satiabitur, cum verbum ipsum in aeterna felicitate gustabit.* On the other hand, concerning the institution of the Lord's supper, he says: *Quibus lethargicam mentem aegroti renovata quotidie suae salutis commemoratione percelleret et edentalam, id est sine dentibus plebem, quae verbum antiquum et aeternum principium quasi solidum cibum ruminare non poterat, hoc dulcissimo confecto liquamine in panis et vini sacramento consuefaceret sorbillare.*

<sup>2</sup> Lib. ii., ep. 142.

<sup>3</sup> Ne in haereticos de simplicibus com mutantur.



he proceeded to any further decision on the matter, a more exact report from them, based on careful inquiry, as to the questions, who was the author of the translation referred to; by what motives he was led to prepare it; what was the character of the faith of those who used this translation; what had led them to set up themselves as teachers. The pope, by his own conduct, set an example to those who were placed over the communities, teaching them how they ought to proceed with such people; how they ought to place themselves in their point of view, and use passages from the Holy Scriptures themselves, for the purpose of opening their eyes to what was censurable in their conduct, and of leading them away from it.<sup>1</sup> A letter, which he himself wrote to these people, was to serve as a pattern for the clergy.<sup>2</sup> After having explained to them, in detail, what had been reported of them, he declared: "Although the desire of learning how to understand the Holy Scriptures, and of using them for mutual edification, was not to be found fault with, but rather deserved commendation; yet it was a thing not to be approved of, that they should hold their meetings in private; that they should take upon themselves the office of preaching; ridicule the simplicity of the priests, and avoid the society of those who would take no part in their meetings; for that God, who is the true light, that enlighteneth every man that cometh into the world, so abhors the works of darkness, that he gave express command to the apostles, when he sent them forth to preach the gospel to all the world: 'What I tell you in darkness, that speak ye in light; and what ye hear in the ear, that preach ye upon the housetops,' Matt. x. 27, whereby he manifestly gives it to be understood that the gospel should be preached, not in secret conventicles, as it is by the heretics, but after the Catholic manner, publicly in the churches." He then, seemingly without design, as though he had no particular reference to them, proceeded to say, "that a special preparatory training was requisite in order to penetrate into the deep things of the sacred Scriptures. For this reason, a particular order had been instituted in the church; and since this had been done, it was not for every one, indiscriminately, to arrogate

<sup>1</sup> As he himself says: *Revocandi et convincendi secundum scripturas super his, quae reprehensibilia denotavimus.*

<sup>2</sup> Ep. 141.

to himself the office of teacher, but it depended on the fact, whether a man was entrusted with it by the Lord. Should it be affirmed, however, by any one, that God had commissioned him to undertake such a calling in some invisible way, and that such an immediate divine call was superior to any human call, to this person it should be replied: 'As this is a hidden thing, it is not sufficient barely to affirm it, which indeed any false teacher might do concerning himself, but he must prove it, either by a miracle, or by some express testimony of Holy Scripture.' No doubt," he says again, "knowledge is pre-eminently necessary for priests, in order that they may be enabled rightly to discharge the office of teachers; yet the more learned ought not to undervalue the less highly educated priests, but always honour in them the priestly vocation." He warned them, moreover, against the pharisaical pride which they would inevitably betray, if they looked upon themselves as alone correct, and despised all who did not join their party. Finally, he threatened them with the severity of the church, if they would not listen to his paternal admonitions. The reading of the Scriptures, however, had already led these truth-seeking laymen to the knowledge of many errors in the church doctrines. They continued to hold their meetings, in spite of the episcopal prohibition; they refused to give up their translation of the Bible; they declared they would not obey the pope himself, if he should undertake to suppress it. Already several among them avowed, more or less openly, that it was right to obey God rather than men. When this was reported to the pope, by the bishop of Metz, he believed it to be now necessary for him to act with more severity. Still, however, he was unwilling to proceed at once to extreme measures, but preferred, in the first place, to obtain more exact information of the case, and to try milder remedies. Thinking, perhaps, that he could not place entire confidence in the bishop, he commissioned the abbot of Cistercium and three other abbots, in conjunction with the bishop, to investigate the affair, and to examine those people who were to be brought up for trial; a report of all which was to be drawn up and laid before the pope.<sup>1</sup> As the result of this examination, it was found that those separatists professed doctrines which,

<sup>1</sup> Lib. ii., ep. 235.

considered from the position of the church-system, could not appear otherwise than as heresies. A connection was found to exist between them and the sect of the Waldenses, who had long before incurred the condemning sentence of the church. Their assemblies were broken up, and their Bibles committed to the flames. Thus the contest for the dominant church-system, with the sects that fought against it, led to the forcible suppression of the reading of the Bible among the laity; although no such result was intended at the beginning. A synod at Toulouse, in the year 1229, issued a prohibition of this sort, directed against the translation of the Bible into the spoken language, and the reading of any such translation by laymen.<sup>1</sup>

Although religious feeling predominated beyond any other spiritual power in these times, and the supernaturalistic element had diffused itself through the whole spiritual atmosphere, yet even in this period of a predominating religious tendency, the reactions, which have their ground in the essence of the natural man, and are directed against the principle of faith and the recognition of the supernatural generally, could not be wholly wanting. Even in this period, we observe many indications of this reaction that runs through the entire history of humanity; partly in a distinctly avowed infidelity, and partly in transitory agitations coming up in the form of temptations, and overcome by the power of a triumphant faith. This reaction proceeded from different points; sometimes it was from that tendency of rude sensuousness which, elsewhere restrained by the superior might of the religious principle, is wont, when it intermingles with the religious feeling itself, to beget superstition; and then, rebelling against this, its antagonist force, leads to the infidelity of brutal natures; at others, it was the worldly culture which began to flourish from the times of the twelfth century, and particularly the speculative bent which set itself in hostility against the faith. Added to this, were those influences from without, which tended to call forth or to promote such reactions—the influence of the Arabian philosophy from Spain; and of

<sup>1</sup> C. xiv. : Prohibemus, ne libros veteris testamenti aut novi laici permittantur habere, nisi forte psalterium vel breviarium pro divinis officiis aut horas beatae Mariae aliquis ex devotione habere velit. Sed ne praemissos libros habeant in vulgari translatos, artisline inhiemus.

intercourse with the Jews, now widely dispersed among the Christian nations. The emperor Frederic the Second, and king John Sansterre of England, are to be considered in this regard, not merely as solitary appearances, but as the signs of such tendencies that presented a hostile aspect to the religious principle of the times ; tendencies which recur also under other forms. Thus we find, at the end of the eleventh century, a certain count John of Soissons, who attacked, with rude insolence, the power of the clergy ; favoured Jews and heretics ; borrowed weapons from the Jews to combat the doctrines of the Christian faith, which he joined with them in ridiculing ; and yet, whether it resulted from hypocrisy and a respect for outward considerations, or from the momentary influence of that religious feeling which was so exceedingly dominant in the spirit of the age, attended church and took part in the acts of worship. "On the Christmas and Easter festivals," says the abbot Guibert of Nogent sous Coucy, "he made his appearance at church with such humility, that one could scarcely look upon him as an unbeliever. And yet he did not hesitate to declare everything that was preached concerning Christ's passion and resurrection, a mere farce."<sup>1</sup> The abbot Guibert, who had a great deal to suffer from this individual, expresses no surprise that a man who called himself a Christian ; and who sometimes, though in a mean and stealthy way, visited the churches ; sometimes manifested respect to the altars and priests ; participated in the communion of the faithful and in confession ; adored the crucifix, and sometimes even brought himself to give an alms ;—that such a person should utter blasphemies which the very Jews themselves dared not openly express. A Jewess, with whom the abbot Guibert once spoke concerning him, called it pure insanity, that he should first prostrate himself before an image of the Saviour, and then go away and blaspheme him.<sup>2</sup> This abbot composed a book in defence of the doctrine of the incarnation of the deity, in answer to objections borrowed from the Jews and circulated abroad by the above-mentioned count.—The pious bishop Moritz of Paris, well known as a benefactor of the poor and of orphans, desired at his death, which happened in 1196, to testify his faith in a

<sup>1</sup> De vita sua, lib. iii., c. xv.

<sup>2</sup> Tractat. de incarnatione contra Judaeos, c. i.

future resurrection, and by his example, to confirm in their faith many educated persons, of whom he had been told that they doubted concerning this doctrine.<sup>1</sup> For this reason he left it in charge to his friends, that when his body was exposed to the public view, a card should be laid on his breast, containing the words: "I believe that my Redeemer liveth; and that on the last day I shall arise, and, in my body, behold my Saviour. This testimony of my hope has been laid upon my breast."<sup>2</sup> This was designed for the learned, who should meet together on the day of his burial. Among the internal conflicts of the faithful, mention is also made of conflicts with the scepticism of the understanding. We have already cited several examples of this kind, in the history of monasticism. In the beginning of the thirteenth century, a young man of a quick and active mind, named Rainer, who had entered the Dominican order, while diligently busying himself, in his monastery at Bruges, in the study of the scholastic theology, and comparing the arguments which might be alleged for and against Christianity, was assailed by a host of doubts. He conversed with Jews, for the purpose of ascertaining what they could say, at the position which they occupied; and his doubts grew stronger than ever. His superiors, on observing this, kept him from frequenting the society in which he found nourishment for his doubts. But the forbidden intercourse only became so much the more attractive; the fire which his friends sought to smother burst forth with more violence;<sup>3</sup> and, at midnight, he fled from the monastery.<sup>4</sup> He afterwards vanquished his doubts, and became still firmer in his faith than ever. That sincerely pious monarch, Louis the Ninth, was no

<sup>1</sup> Quia resurrectionem corporum, de qua multos peritos tempore suo haesitantes audierat, firmissime credebatur, cupiens illos ab incredulitate sua etiam moriens revocare.—Rigord. *de gestis Philippi*, at this year, p. 40.

<sup>2</sup> Credo, quod redemptor meus vivit et in novissimo die de terra resurrecturus sum et in carne mea videbo salvatorem meum, quem visurus sum ego et non alius et oculi mei conspecturi sunt. Reposita est haec spes mea in sinu meo.

<sup>3</sup> The Dominican and suffragan bishop of Cambrai, Thomas de Cantimpré, who relates this in his *Bonum universale*, or his book *De apibus*, l. ii., c. x., says in this connection: quoniam arctatus ignis acrior consurgit.

<sup>4</sup> According to the report of Thomas Cantimpré, he was quieted by a vision of the virgin Mary, and induced to return back to his monastery. Some occurrence of a psychological nature may, perhaps, lie at the bottom of this story, but what it was it is impossible to make out from the isolated facts reported to us.

stranger to such assaults of temptation. He exhorted all<sup>1</sup> to struggle against them betimes ; to attain to steadfastness of faith, in order to be prepared against the final hour, when Satan tries his best to entangle men in scepticism. " We should not rest satisfied," said he, " until we can say to the devil, Away, thou enemy of human nature, thou shalt not be able to deprive me of my settled faith ; rather would I consent to part with every limb of my body, than to renounce this faith, in which I intend to live and to die. He who does this," he adds, " will foil the enemy at his own weapons."<sup>2</sup> It was therefore the opinion of the pious monarch,—an opinion which he shared also with the men of these times, rich in Christian experience with regard to all tempting thoughts,—that no admission should be allowed to such thoughts, when they arose involuntarily ; but the soul should surrender itself more entirely to the faith, and, in the assurance of this, despise them. To confirm this advice, the king quoted a saying which he had heard from the lips of one of the distinguished theologians of this period, bishop William of Paris (or of Auvergne.) A respectable teacher of theology once came to him in quest of spiritual counsel. But before he could state his case, he fell into a violent fit of weeping. The bishop then bespoke him in words of comfort, and said : " Despair not ; for no man can be so great a sinner as to exceed God's ability to forgive him his sins." Whereupon, the man laid open his doubts respecting the doctrine of the eucharist, which he considered a temptation of Satan. The bishop asked him whether he found pleasure in these doubts ? And when the man who was troubled with them assured him that his faith was more precious to him than all the wealth in the world, and that he would rather suffer one limb after another to be severed from his living body than to deny the least article in it,—the bishop proposed to him the following question : " Suppose our king to be at war with the king of England, and that he had intrusted to each of us two the defence of a citadel ; to you, one situated on the frontier, and exposed to the greatest danger ; to me, one in the centre of the country,—to which of us would he feel the most thankful ?" And the theologian, being obliged to reply, " To the former," the

<sup>1</sup> See Joinville, l. c., p. 177.

<sup>2</sup> Qui ainsi le fait, il vainqt l'ennemy du baton, dont l'ennemy le vouloit occire.

bishop resumed : " My mind, disturbed by no doubts, is to be compared with that second citadel ; yours, which amid so many conflicts remains true to the faith, is like the first. Surely, then, your condition is of greater account in the eye of God than mine ; only trust in him, and be assured that, wherever it is needful, he will help you."

There was a dead faith of the worldly heart, which had adopted a form, to the power of which it was a stranger, as a mere matter of tradition, and which was preserved free from all doubts, simply by reason of its indifference to all the objects of faith. To persons of this stamp, it could hardly fail to happen, that, with an awakening interest in these objects, doubts also would start into being ; and these doubts might sometimes prove a necessary point of transition to true faith. A tendency of this sort is described by that profound observer of the secret workings of the soul, Hugo a Sancto Victore, where he is describing a class of men,<sup>1</sup> whose faith consisted in nothing else than merely taking care not to contradict the faith ; men who were called believers, rather from the custom of a life passing under the outward guise of Christianity, than from any power of faith :<sup>2</sup> " for with their eyes ever fixed on the perishable, they never elevate their souls to that degree as to think on futurity ; and though they unite with other believers, in partaking of the sacraments of the Christian faith ; still, they never ask themselves why a man is a Christian, or what is the hope of future good among Christian men. Although such persons pass under the name of believers, yet, in reality and truth, they are at a great distance from faith,"<sup>3</sup> or, as he remarks in another place :<sup>4</sup> " Men who live as they have been born, would, had they been born elsewhere, be no believers at all."<sup>5</sup> And with such, he believed it a sign of the first visitation of divine grace, when they were aroused to consider for what man was born ; whether another life followed the present ; and whether there were rewards for the good and punishments for the wicked. Thus, it was only the doubts that filled their consciences

1 De sacramentis fidei, p. x. lib. i., c. iv., Ed. Venet, 1588, t. ii., f. 257.

Quibus credere est solum fidei non contradicere, qui consuetudine vivendi magis quam virtute credendi fideles nominantur.

2 Re et veritate longe sunt a fide.

3 Miscellan. lib. i., tit. xviii., f. 47.

4 Qui ita vivunt, ut nati sunt, qui si in alio nati essent, fideles non essent.

with alarm, when they contemplated the uncertainty of human life, that awakened in them, according to Hugo, the longing after the knowledge of the truth. The abbot Peter of Cluny heard that a great number—as he had reason to suspect, of the monks around him—had expressed doubts whether Christ had anywhere in the gospels called himself God. They had, therefore, carefully examined them, and could arrive at no satisfactory conclusion. The abbot Peter did not ask after their names; nor did he allow himself to draw any hasty inferences from the doubts which they expressed. He took it for granted they had not fallen away from their faith, but were only inquiring after the truth, and seeking instruction. Lest, however, this suspense and hesitation should lead to scepticism with regard to the doctrine itself,—of Christ's divinity,—he composed a tract, the object of which was to prove that Christ bore witness to his own divinity, by the manner in which he spoke of himself.

The religious feelings of the multitude, lively in their character, but quite exposed to be alloyed by a rude sensuousness, easily betrayed them into fanatical extravagances; and although, as we have seen, voices of commanding influence were not wanting to guide to the spiritual apprehension of divine things,—and to warn against everything fanatical and superstitious,—yet, the men of this spirit were too few to exert a sufficient degree of influence on the masses; and the greater number of incompetent or badly disposed ecclesiastics and monks, contributed by their influence to promote the evils which they ought to have averted. Hence, the wide and rapid spread of so many excrescent growths of fanaticism and superstition,—one case of which we have in saint-worship. Men who, by their lives, by their deeds and words, had made a powerful impression on the religious feelings of the people, were easily made the objects of an extravagant veneration; and it was necessary for them to be at every pains to put a check to it, lest it might reach the point of idolatry. At the tomb of some such individual, vast numbers would soon be found assembled for the purpose of prayer; the heightened devotion, the excited state of the imagination, were capable of producing remarkable effects on soul and body; exaggerating report magnified the facts, and thus stories of the miraculous cures that had been performed at such tombs, spread far and wide; and an



ever-increasing multitude of people, moved by devotion, curiosity, or the hope of succour, were attracted to the spot. While some, carried away by this general enthusiasm for the memory of the departed saint, gave countenance to such movements among the people, many sensible bishops and abbots thought it necessary to adopt precautionary measures, lest fanaticism or fraud should take advantage of these tumultuous exhibitions of religious feeling; in doing which, however, they were always liable to injure the reputation of their piety.<sup>1</sup> The attempt forcibly to suppress such exhibitions by outward measures, instead of accomplishing its object, was apt to lead to exactly the contrary result. Many tombs became celebrated for the miraculous cures which were performed at them, through reports, the foundation of which could never be ascertained; and thus many a dead man, probably, attained to the honour of a saint who was far from deserving it. Ignorance, credulity, and fraud would contribute, in some degree, to multiply the number of saints. When Lanfranc was created archbishop of Canterbury, he was surprised to find that many were honoured as saints, in England, respecting whom no reason could be given why they deserved that honour. To the number of these belonged, in particular, Elfeg, archbishop of Canterbury, slain by the Normans, in 1012, who was worshipped as a saint and a martyr. Lanfranc did not think he ought to be regarded as a martyr,—for he had not died in confessing the Christian faith,—but had been slain when a prisoner among the Normans, simply because he refused to pay the sum demanded for his ransom. Having stated the case to Anselm, while the latter was on a visit to him in England, Anselm endeavoured to show that the aforesaid archbishop deserved beyond question to be regarded as a martyr; “for,” said he, “a man, who chooses rather to die than to dishonour God by the slightest sin, would surely hesitate still less to sacrifice his life rather than provoke the divine displeasure by

1 After the death of the abbot Walter of Melrose, in Scotland (A.D. 1160,) his successor, William, published an order forbidding the sick to flock to his tomb; but he exposed himself thereby to the reproach of envy or of arrogance; as if he had presumed to set limits to the divine grace. The author of the life of the former abbot observes: *Videtur pluribus hujusmodi prohibitionem præsumptuosam nimis esse, ut homo luteo tabernaculo circumdatus misericordiæ fontem audeat obstruere, et gloria coelesti clarificatum mundoque miraculis manifestatum sub cespite silentii præsumat obnuere.* *Mens. August, t. i., f. 274.*

a more grievous transgression. And so that archbishop Elfeg, who chose rather to die than to redeem his life at the expense of his community, would assuredly not have shrunk from death if he had been commanded to deny Christ. And besides, what else was meant by dying for justice or for truth, than dying for Christ, who is justice and truth ?"<sup>1</sup> Anselm himself was afterwards obliged, however, to declare against a saint-worship of this sort, for which no due reasons were assigned.<sup>2</sup> How easily the reputation of a saint might be acquired among the people, appears from an example cited by the abbot Guibert. It was quite sufficient for this purpose, among the country-people of France, that the squire of a knight should have died on Good Friday. The peasants of the district, eager after novelties, brought gifts and wax-tapers to his tomb ; a house was erected over it, and country-pilgrims flocked to it from afar. Wonderful stories were spread abroad, and mixed with the rest was a plentiful share of imposture. Avarice, taking advantage of the credulity of the people, led people first to feign themselves sick, and then to be healed by the pretended saint.<sup>3</sup> The abbot of the monastery within whose territory was the spot where these things transpired, was forgetful enough of his duty to connive at these impostures for the sake of the gain.<sup>4</sup> Unprincipled monks pushed a lucrative trade with fictitious relics, in extolling the virtues of which they spared no lies.<sup>5</sup> Processions with relics were got up with a view to collect money for the rebuilding of a church ; and the clergy, who cried up, in mountebank-fashion, their various virtues, pretended, without blushing, to show in a casket the bread which our Lord himself had touched with his teeth. Every village was anxious to have its own guardian saints. Thus false legends of saints sprang up among the people. The clergy tolerated this ; and so these legends, passing from mouth to mouth, continually gained cre-

<sup>1</sup> See the life of Lanfranc, by his disciple, Milo Crispin, in the *Actis Sanctorum Ord. Benedicti* of Mabillon, § 37, *sæc.* vi., p. ii., f. 654.

<sup>2</sup> He threatened an abbeys, who favoured such worship, with suspension. See his letter, l. iv., ep. 10.

<sup>3</sup> The abbot Guibert, *De pignoribus sanctorum*, lib. i. c. ii., § 5: *In profani vulgi avaris pectoribus capi potuerunt fictitiæ surditates, affectatæ vesaniæ, digiti studio reciprocari ad volam, vestigia contorta sub clunibus.*

<sup>4</sup> As Guibert says : *Munerum comportatorum blandiente frequentia infecta miracula fieri supportabat.*

<sup>5</sup> The work above cited, l. c. § 6.

dence ; and among the populace, whoever presumed to lisp a syllable against them, was accounted an enemy of piety, and provoked against himself the popular fury.<sup>1</sup> In opposition to these abuses of the worship of saints and relics, the abbot Guibert of Nogent sous Coucy wrote his work, *De Pignoribus Sanctorum*, in four books. He called it a grievous sin that men should think of glorifying God by falsehoods. He accused those who spread abroad stories of miracles, of making God a liar. He detected one source of the abuse, in what he considered the unnatural practice of removing the bodies of holy men from the earth in which they reposed, and of distributing and carrying about their separated members in costly settings.<sup>2</sup> He declared it unbecoming that the body of the disciple should be honoured above that of the Master ; that while Christ was buried beneath the stone, the members of his disciples should be denied the earth from which they originally came, to be preserved in gold, silver, precious stones, and silks.<sup>3</sup> He protested especially against the carrying about the so-called relics of the body of Christ. It was only by spiritual communion that men should now rise upward to Christ. Christ communicated himself under the figure of the bread and wine in the supper, in order that the faithful might have their minds withdrawn from the things of sense. He refers to Christ's words addressed to his disciples (John xvi. 7), that the Holy Ghost would not come to them till he was no longer sensibly present before their eyes. "Those who pretend to show such relics," says he, "contradict this word of truth. For what does Christ say? The Holy Spirit will not come if his own bodily presence be not first withdrawn from men ; because, unless the sight of everything bodily be withdrawn, the soul will not rise to the faith of contemplation. For the exer-

<sup>1</sup> Guibert, lib. i. c. iii. § 1. After having spoken of the ancient, approved saints, he adds : Cum enim alii alios summos conspicerent habere patronos, voluerunt et ipsi quales potuerunt facere suos. Tacente clero anus et muliercularum vilium greges talium patronorum commentatas historias post insubulos et litiatoria cantitant, et si quis earum dicta refellat, pro defensione ipsarum non modo convitiis, sed telorum radiis instant.

<sup>2</sup> Lib. i. c. ii. § 5: Qui Deo quod nequidem cogitavit adscribit, quantum, in se est, Deum mentiri cogit.

<sup>3</sup> Cap. iv. § 1: Certe si sanctorum corpora sua juxta naturae debitum loca, i. e. sepulchra servassent, hujusmodi errores vacassent.

<sup>4</sup> Ut discipulus praeponatur magistro? Ille lapidi intrudatur, hic auro claudatur? Ille nec plene sindone subtili involvatur, hic palliis aut sericis aurove textili succingatur?

cise and trial of our faith, our Lord would lead us away from his proper to his mystical body; and thus should we progressively mount upward to the spiritual contemplation of the divine essence."<sup>1</sup>

Particularly did that tendency of devotion which manifested itself in paying honors to the Virgin Mary, in whom men adored the mother of our Saviour, and the ideal of the virgin-life, rise continually to a higher pitch, and lead onward to wilder extravagances. For a long time, already, the opinion had gained currency that she ought to be excepted from the number of human beings under the taint of corruption; that by a special operation of grace she had been preserved immaculate from all sin. But now, many were led, on the same principle, to take still another step, and to maintain that the Virgin Mary came into the world wholly free from original sin. Therefore, many began already to set apart for this glorification of the Virgin Mary, a particular festival,—the festival of the Immaculate Conception. But voices of influence and authority protested against such an innovation, and the dogma lying at the bottom of it. Canonicals of the church at Lyons having introduced such a festival, Bernard of Clairvaux declared himself decidedly opposed to it.<sup>2</sup> "On the same principle," he wrote to them, "you would be obliged to hold that the conception of her ancestors, in an ascending line, was also a holy one; since otherwise, she could not have descended from them after a worthy manner,—and there would be festivals without number.<sup>3</sup> But such a frequent celebration of festivals was appropriate only to our final home in heaven; it was unsuitable to a life, far from our true home, like this upon the earth. We ought not to attribute to Mary that which belongs to one Being alone,—to him who can make all holy,—and being himself free from sin, purify others from it. Besides him, all who have descended from Adam must say of themselves that which one of them says in the name of all (Psalm li. 5); 'In sin did my mother conceive

<sup>1</sup> Lib. ii. c. vi. § 4: Nisi, quicquid corporeum ipsius est, a memoria abrogetur, ad contemplandi animus fidem nullatenus sublevatur. Ad exercitationem fidei nostrae, a principali corpore ad mysticum Dominus noster nos voluit traducere, et exinde quasi quibusdam gradibus ad divinae subtilitatis intelligentiam erudire.

<sup>2</sup> Ep. 178.

<sup>3</sup> De avis et proavis id ipsum posset pro similis causa quilibet flagitare et sic tenderetur in infinitum et festorum non esset numerus.

me.'” The controversy concerning the festival of the Immaculate Conception, and the dogma therewith connected, spread also through England and Germany. It was the monks who contended for it; but there were monks also who combated it. Potho, a monk and priest in the monastery of Prüm in the province of Triers, who wrote, after the middle of the twelfth century, a work “On the condition of the house of God,”<sup>1</sup> combated, among many other innovations introduced by monks, this festival as the most absurd of all.<sup>2</sup> In evidence of the continued controversy on this subject, we have the letters relating to it which passed in the latter times of the twelfth century, between the abbot de la Celle, afterwards bishop of Chartres, and Nicholas, an English monk. The former maintained, as Bernard had done, that Mary was born with the tinder, the inflammable material, of sin,—lust, warring against reason; but that she was preserved, through the power of grace, from all the excitements of temptation, till at length, after the birth of Christ, she attained to a perfect exemption from the same.<sup>3</sup> He inveighed against the chimeras of the English.<sup>4</sup> But the monk Nicholas looked upon that which the abbot de la Celle had said concerning the conflict which lasted in Mary until the conception, as a disparagement of her dignity, and felt himself bound to stand forth in its defence. Although he honoured Bernard as a saint, yet he believed that even he, like other holy men, might err on such a single point. He appealed, in proof of this, to the legend concerning an appearance of Bernard after his death.<sup>5</sup> Such visions, often susceptible of a very easy explanation,

<sup>1</sup> In the Bibl. patr. Lugd. t. xxi.

<sup>2</sup> Quod magis absurdum videtur, at the end of the third book.

<sup>3</sup> Lib. vi., ep. 23: Quod saeva libidinis incentiva Deo praeoperante nunquam senserit vel ad modicum. Caetera vero impedimenta humanae fragilitatis, quae naturali origine de natura procedunt, ante divinam conceptionem sentire potuit, sed nullatenus consensit. Praeveniente siquidem gratia fomes peccati anhelando supremum spiritum duxit, until this *fomes* was wholly destroyed through the operation of the Holy Spirit at the conception.

<sup>4</sup> Nec indignetur Anglia levitas, si ea solidior sit Gallica maturitas. Certe expertus sum, somniatores plus esse Anglicos quam Gallos.

<sup>5</sup> See his letter, l. ix., ep. 9: In Claravallensi collegio quidam conversus bene religiosus in visu noctis vidit Abbatem Bernardum niveis indutum vestibus quasi ad mamillam pectoris furvam habere maculam. And when he was asked, why?—he replied: Quia de Dominae nostrae conceptione scripsi non scribenda, signum purgationis meae maculam in pectore porto. The vision was committed to writing, and the document laid before the chapter general, but it was burnt, maluitque Abbatum universitas virginis periclitari gloriam S. Bernardi opinione.

were, as it seems, at this period sometimes resorted to as a divine testimony to the truth : and Humbert de Romanis, general of the Dominicans, in his work above cited,<sup>1</sup> denounces those who, instead of adducing texts of Scripture and passages from the fathers, appealed to uncertain dreams and visions for the purpose of defending innovations, to whom he applied the saying of the prophet Hosea (chapter xiii.)<sup>2</sup> In like manner, Peter de la Celle declared, in this particular case : " I believe, respecting her, the gospel, and not dreams ; and if I am in any way wrong, God will reveal this also, in the time and way he pleases." The monk Nicholas appealed, moreover, to the fact of a progressive development of the church, which may even introduce innovations for the necessities of devotion.<sup>4</sup> But the abbot de la Celle maintained that any such new institution should proceed regularly from the church of Rome and a general council. He protested against the innovating caprice of individuals. This controversy was continued into the thirteenth century, and passed into the following periods. The antagonists of this extravagant veneration of Mary gained a very important voice on their side, when Thomas Aquinas stood forth as an opponent of that opinion, offering as an argument against it, that the honour due to Christ alone would thereby suffer injury ; inasmuch as he must be acknowledged to be the Saviour of all men ; whom all needed, in order to be freed from original sin.<sup>5</sup> As he saw very clearly that nothing could be adduced from Holy Scripture concerning the conception and birth of Mary, he was of the opinion that no decision was to be arrived at here except on grounds of reason and analogy. From these then it might be argued that since on Mary, as the mother of Christ, was conferred greater favour than

<sup>1</sup> De eruditione praedicatorum, lib. ii., in the section concerning councils.

<sup>2</sup> Alii sunt, qui innitentes quibusdam visionibus et somniis incertis intendunt propter illa aliquid ordinare, cum tamen sensus et intentio sanctorum ac sanctorum virorum sint huiusmodi phantasiae omnino praeposenda.

<sup>3</sup> Lib. ix., ep. 10: Evangelio non somniis de illa credo, et si aliter sapio, et hoc ipsum revelabit Deus, quando voluerit et quomodo voluerit.

<sup>4</sup> Nonne eodem spiritu potantur moderni, quo et antiqui ? Non erat ab initio natiuitas virginis in ecclesia solennis, sed crescente fidelium devotione addita est praeclariæ ecclesiae solennitatibus. Quare igitur non similiter et diem conceptionis obtineat sollemnitas Christianae devotionis ?

<sup>5</sup> Hoc derogaret dignitati Christi, secundum quam est universalis omnium Salvator.

on any other human being, and since a Jeremiah, a John the Baptist, enjoyed the peculiar privilege of being sanctified from the womb, a like privilege must be attributed also to her. Hence, it might be, that although original sin existed in her, as a nature,<sup>1</sup> yet, through the grace imparted to her before her birth, and through the divine providence which accompanied her afterwards through her entire life, this inherited nature was so restrained, that no motion contrary to reason could proceed therefrom. Thus might that, which was potentially present in her, be, notwithstanding, always restrained from any actual putting forth, and thereupon, after the conception of Christ, might follow a perfect exemption, in her case, from all original sin, even in its potential being ; which exemption was transferred to her from her Son, as the universal Redeemer.<sup>2</sup> This cautious reserve of the considerate Thomas Aquinas, a man who was in the habit of relying more on the declarations of Scripture than on human conjectures, was a quality of which Raymund Lull, with his bold flights of fancy and speculation, was altogether incapable. Among the necessary prerequisites, in order to Mary's becoming the organ for the incarnation of the Son of God, he reckoned this, that she should be exempt not only from all actual, but also from all original sin : for God and sin could not come together in the same subject.<sup>3</sup> The Holy Spirit had so wrought within her to prepare the way by her sanctification for the incarnation of the Son of God, as the sun by the dawn prepares the way for the day.

As the festival of the Immaculate Conception of the Virgin grew out of that peculiar turn of devotion that originated in the monasteries, the same was the case likewise with another festival, which afterwards came to be very generally observed. It may easily be conceived that the mystical, contemplative bent of the monkish spirit, would first lead to the creation of a festival distinguished from other Christian festivals by the absence of all re-

<sup>1</sup> The fomes peccati.

<sup>2</sup> *Credendum est, quod ex prole redundaverit in matrem totaliter fomite subtracto.*

<sup>3</sup> *Nisi beata virgo fuisset disposita, quod filius Dei de ipsa assumeret carnem, scilicet quod non esset corrupta nec in aliquo peccato sive actuali sive originali, filius Dei non potuisset ab ipsa assumere carnem, cum Deus et peccatum non possunt concordari in aliquo subjecto.*

<sup>4</sup> *Sic praeparavit viam incarnationis per sanctificationem, sicut sol diem per auroram.* In lib. ii., sent. Quæst. 96, t. iv., opp., f. 84.

ference to historical facts ; and such was that of the Trinity.<sup>1</sup> Yet if there was something in the Christian consciousness that resisted the introduction of a festival of the Immaculate Conception of Mary, there was, on the other hand, an appropriateness in a festival of the Trinity, constituting, as it were, a sort of terminus to the entire cycle of festivals in the year, which would recommend it to general acceptance, and gradually overcome the objections which might be raised on the ground of innovation. For it corresponded with the relation of the doctrine of the Trinity to the sum total of Christian consciousness, that, as this doctrine has for its presupposition the full development of all that is contained in this consciousness, and the Christian consciousness of God arrives, therein, at a statement that exhausts the whole subject-matter ; so a festival having reference to this doctrine would form the terminus of the cycle of festivals, commencing with Christ's nativity ; and if this festival grew, in the first place, out of the significance which the doctrine of the Trinity had gained for the speculative and mystical theology of these times, yet this solemnity obtained a position, in the entire cycle of church festivals, which was calculated to direct attention to the original and essential significance of this doctrine.

As the customs and amusements usually connected with the pagan festivals of December and January had, in spite of every attempt to suppress them, still continued to be observed among Christians, both in the East and the West,<sup>2</sup> and had attached themselves to the celebration of the Christian festivals in these months—as, for example, to the festival of Christ's circumcision, which was directly opposed to the pagan celebration of January,—so, in many districts, these customs gradually led to the practice of sportively travestying the offices and rites of the church,—a natural accompaniment of sensuous devotion,—as in the *festum*

1 The monk Potho of Prüm, near the end of the third book of his work *De statu domus Dei*, mentions the introducing of this festival also among the repentinis novitiis in ecclesiasticis officiis, which innovations he traces to the juvenilis levitas, by which the vita monastica had allowed itself to be vitiated.

2 Forbidden by the sixty-second canon of the second Trullan council, A.D. 691, directed against maskings and comical processions : Μηδένα ἄνδρα γυναικίαν στολήν ἐνδιδύσκειν ἢ γυναῖκα τοῖς ἀνδράσιν ἀρμόδιον· ἀλλὰ μήτε προσωπεῖα κωμικά ἢ σατυρικά ἢ τραγικά ὑποδύεσθαι.



*fatuorum, follorum, hypodiaconorum* ; abuses which, notwithstanding the various ordinances made in order to suppress them, continued afterwards to spread even more widely.<sup>1</sup>

We have, in the preceding periods, seen how it came to pass that the idea of the sacraments, understood at first so indefinitely as holy symbols, came to be restricted to a certain series of ecclesiastical transactions ; and the practice of the church had already given sanction to the hypothesis, that these sacraments were all comprised under the sacred number *seven*. It only remained that various other holy signs, to which it had also been customary to apply the name of sacraments,<sup>2</sup> should be excluded, and the number seven more distinctly fixed. This was done in the present period, when the idea of the sacrament came to be more exactly and sharply defined by scientific theology. In the instructions given, by bishop Otto of Bamberg, to persons newly baptized, in the year 1124,<sup>3</sup> the determinate number of seven sacraments is mentioned for the first time. He wished to leave behind him, he said, for the new converts, from whom he was about to separate, these seven sacraments as the pledge, given by our Lord, of his fellowship with the church, in order that, amid the labours and conflicts of the present life, they might not faint and be discouraged.<sup>4</sup> The scientific theology of this century now sought to prove the internal necessity of this determinate number of the sacraments. It was customary to ascribe to them a twofold efficiency,—one positive, to prepare men for the whole duty of the Christian worship of God ; the other negative, to meet and oppose the reactions of sin. At bottom lay the Christian idea, that the present earthly life should, in all its relations, be consecrated and sanctified by religion ; and that the spiritual, in like manner with the bodily life, should have its own proper stages of development.<sup>5</sup> The peculiar form of the religious spirit, in these times, craved how-

<sup>1</sup> Whoever would like to know more on this subject, may consult Gieseler's Manual of Church History, vol. ii., sect. ii., p. 436, and ff. 2d ed.

<sup>2</sup> Thus we find the numbertwelve mentioned by Damiani.

<sup>3</sup> See section i. p. 10.

<sup>4</sup> *Septem sacramenta ecclesiae, quasi septem significativa dona Spiritus sancti, quibus intendendo in laboribus et certamine hujus vitae non deficere.* Canisii lect. antiq., ed. Basnage, t. iii. p. ii. f. 62. To be sure, the chronological date of the first mention of this number seven is uncertain ; as we cannot vouch for the accuracy of the report.

<sup>5</sup> See, for example, the unfolding of this view by Thomas Aquinas.

ever, for everything, some medium of sensuous representation ; and this was not to be a mere symbol, but must be objectively manifested, as the actual bearer of divine powers. Thus, in the first place, the birth to a spiritual life is represented by baptism ; next, growth to maturity by confirmation ; finally, nutriment, in order to the preservation of the life and strength, by the Lord's supper. This would suffice, were not man subject, in his bodily and spiritual life, to manifold defects and disturbances. Diseases require their appropriate remedies. Answering to the recovery of health, is penance ; to the promotion of convalescence, by means of appropriate diet and exercise, the extreme unction. Furthermore, as man belongs, both in a physical and spiritual sense, to some society ; so the efficiency of the sacraments must extend, also, to this relation : thus ordination and marriage obtain their appropriate place. We have seen how the consciousness of a real communion with Christ in the Lord's supper assumed, in the all-absorbing supernaturalist element of this age, the form of a doctrine of transubstantiation ; and how this notion, so firmly established in the whole mode of intuition peculiar to these centuries, could not fail to obtain the victory for it, over the modes of apprehension belonging to other habits and bents of mind. Accordingly, this doctrine was definitively settled for the church, at the Lateran council, in 1215.<sup>1</sup> The doctrine of transubstantiation being definitively settled, it must be followed by the determination that, after the miracle produced by the consecration, the " accidents " of bread and wine, without the subject, still remained ; and a determination of this sort, though involving a contradiction in language, was still the best suited, at this particular point of view, to avoid such expressions of a gross and fleshy materialism as we saw employed by the zealots opposed to Berengar, as well as the fantastical, Docetic notion, that everything of a sensuous nature which took place at the Lord's supper, was only an appearance, without reality. In fact, the particular mode, after which the matter then presented itself to religious intuition, is, in this form, simply *objectized* : for this mode of religious intuition, everything sensible was purely an accident ; the *essential* thing for it was, simply, the body of

<sup>1</sup> Transsubstantiat panis in corpus Christi potestate divina.

Christ, veiled under this figure. In this mode of intuition, the whole theocratico-ecclesiastical point of view, the whole mediaeval form of apprehending Christianity was brought to a completion. The miracle of transubstantiation appeared as the ever-repeated miracle of all miracles, the act of the greatest self-humiliation of the deity.<sup>1</sup> It was the very Christ, who, under this sensible veil, presented himself to believing devotion; and the lively faith excited by the view of that Host, which was only the veil of Christ, might produce powerful effects.<sup>2</sup> Here was shown the high dignity of the Christian priesthood, that constantly served as the organ of this miracle of miracles, by means of which this utmost realization of the union of heaven and earth could be brought about, the very end and aim of all worship. But precisely for the reason that this dogma constituted the central and the highest point of the whole mode of intuition that governed the religious consciousness of these centuries, those who, in their modes of thinking, were opposed to the Catholic view, manifested a peculiar hostility to it, as we may perceive in the attacks against the church doctrines by the sects, and in the doubts and temptations with which ecclesiastics had to contend;<sup>3</sup> and contemplating such phenomena in their connection with the times, we may doubtless affirm that to many, who, with their religious life, belonged wholly to this standing-point of intuition, and who were incapable of apprehending Christianity in any other form, it was in fact a

<sup>1</sup> As Raymund Lull, for example, in his glowing style of devotion, expresses it: *Fuit unquam ullum mirabile vel ulla humilitas, quae cum ipso possit comparari, quod panis et vinum deveniant in tuam sanctam humanitatem, quae est unita cum deitate et quod tuum corpus adeo nobile se permittat manducari et tractari ab homine peccatore misero?*

<sup>2</sup> This may be illustrated by the case of William, archbishop of Bourges, who, in the last struggles of death, seeing the Host approach, raised himself from his couch, and, filled with awe and enthusiastic faith, advanced with a firm and vigorous step to meet his Lord, and prostrated himself, with tears, before him. The incident is thus related in the language of the times: *Ut autem Dominum creatorem suum ad se venisse cognovit, illico resumptis viribus, de strato prosiliens, tanquam febris omnis abcessisset, non sine stupore circumstantium, maxime quod jam fere in supremo spiritu positus videretur, et vix aliquid liquoris posset in os admittere, concito gradu procedit, vires certe subministrante caritate flexisque genibus, totus lacrimis diffuens, illum adorat.* See the above-cited life, c. viii., § 29. *Mens. Januar. t. i., f. 634.*

<sup>3</sup> To the same cause may be referred, also, the doubts by which an ecclesiastic was annoyed, who complained of his distress to bishop William of Paris. See above, p. 47.

trial under which their faith in the supernatural must either be able to preserve itself, or else must succumb to that reaction of the mere understanding that discards everything supernatural. With others, it was, no doubt, the reaction of a freer and purer evangelical bent of the spirit; and this would, in the case of some, yield to the superior power of the dominant church spirit, while in others it proceeded to the point of an actual breach.

The latter may have been the case with that ecclesiastic of whom St Bernard speaks, in his life of the archbishop Malachias of Armagh.<sup>1</sup> There was a certain man of good intellectual endowments, who refused to recognize in the eucharist the true body of Christ, but looked upon it as only a means of spiritual communion with Christ, whereby one is advanced in holiness.<sup>2</sup> The bishop, after having tried in vain by private conversations to convince him of his error, called together a meeting of the clergy, before which the denier of the doctrine of transubstantiation was summoned to appear. The matter was here discussed with him, and the judgment of all present went against him. He still persisted, however, in his opinion, affirming that he was not overcome by arguments, but put down by the authority of the bishop. Respect to the person of no man, he said, should prevail upon him to forsake the truth. It is then stated that, soon afterwards, falling into a mortal sickness, he was led to seek reconciliation with the church. The report which has come down to us respecting this matter is not, however, sufficiently exact to enable us to determine from it what were the actual facts. Abelard intimates that the question concerning the Lord's supper belonged, in his day, among those which were yet *sub lite*.<sup>3</sup> We learn from another report,<sup>4</sup> that there were still in the twelfth century many who condemned Berengar, without being at a very wide remove from his doctrines. They supposed that, by a metonymy, conformable to the biblical

<sup>1</sup> Cap. 26.

<sup>2</sup> *Sacramentum et non rem sacramenti, id est solam sanctificationem et non corporis veritatem.*

<sup>3</sup> *Sed nec adhuc illam summam controversiam de sacramento altaris, utrum videlicet panis ille, qui videtur, figura tantum sit dominici corporis, an etiam veritas substantiæ ipsius dominicæ carnis, finem accepisse, certum est.* Theol. Christian. l. iv. Martene et Durand. thesaur. anecdotor. t. v. f. 1315.

<sup>4</sup> That of Zacharias, bishop of Chrysopolis (Scutari), in his Commentary on the four gospels, l. iv., c. elvi. Bibl. patr. Ludg. t. xix., f. 916.

usage of language—by which the name of a thing was transferred to what represented it—the consecrated bread might be denominated the body of Christ; and they pronounced Berengar to be wrong only in that he had so openly expressed an opposite view to the common church representation, and thus given occasion of offence to many.<sup>1</sup> As the free spirit of inquiry, encouraged by the dialectic theology, called forth many antagonisms, so, among the rest, there seems to have been some who appealed to the sayings of the old church fathers, particularly of Augustin, in defence of a similar opinion to that of Berengar.<sup>2</sup> And that mystic himself, who with so much warmth and earnestness defended the faith in the true reality of the body and blood of Christ in the eucharist, still—when he wished to say that the miracle here wrought by the Holy Ghost was one which remained hidden from the perception of the senses, and produced no alteration in the sensuous emblems—was driven to make an assertion at variance with the doctrine of transubstantiation, namely, the following: that it was the manner of the Holy Ghost, not to destroy the nature of a thing, but to appropriate it as the bearer of higher powers—not to remove the existing substance, but to raise it to a higher potency.<sup>3</sup> Were one to apply a principle of this sort with logical consistency to the doctrine in question, he would be carried back—as Rupert, using the same comparison, also observes—to the older hypothesis, that the union of the body and blood of Christ with the bread and wine was to be conceived as similar to the union of the two natures in Christ; and among the different views which at that time were still held forth re-

<sup>1</sup> Sunt nonnulli, imo forsan multi, sed vix notari possunt (they cannot easily be noticed, because they conceal their real opinions) qui cum damnato Berengario idem sentiunt, et tamen eandem cum ecclesia damnant. In hoc videlicet damnant eum, quia formam verborum ecclesiae abiciens, nuditate sermonis scandalum movebat. Non sequebatur, ut dicunt, usum scripturarum, quae passim res significantes tanquam significantas appellant.

<sup>2</sup> Rupert of Deutz, says of them: Quid dicemus magnis et magnificis parvulorum magistris, quibus interdum suavius redolet Platonis academia, quam haec vivifica Domini mensa? Commentar. in Joann. l. vi., t. ii., f. 308. Ed. Paris, 1638.

<sup>3</sup> He says of them: Ubi totius viribus intenti ad expugnandam veritatem dominici corporis et sanguinis magnorum sententias doctorum attulerint.

<sup>4</sup> Spiritus sancti affectus non est, destruere vel corrumpere substantiam, quamcumque suos in usus assumit, sed substantiae bono permanenti quod erat, invisibiliter adiacere, quod non erat. Commentar. in Exod. l. ii., c. x. t. i., f. 171.

specting the doctrine of the Lord's supper, one of this sort actually made its appearance.<sup>1</sup> As the doctrine of transubstantiation had proceeded from the one-sided supernaturalist element which governed the minds of that period, so it operated back again also, in promoting and encouraging the same particular bent. Hence the deification of outward symbols which now prevailed ; these symbols being made—even independent of the whole sacred rite, and of the end which it was designed to subserve—objects of superstitious veneration ; which, to be sure, was not first called forth by this article of doctrine, but had its foundation laid long before in that externalization of the religious feelings, which led to the supposition of a supernatural power adhering to the sensuous element. In order consistently to maintain the doctrine of transubstantiation, and to give up nothing on the side of the objective, it was assumed, that so long as the emblems of the bread and wine—perceivable to the senses—were present ; so long, in the same manner, as the *substance* of both was before contained under these emblems, the *Body of Christ* was now present, veiled under the same ;, and accordingly, it was necessary to infer that, if a mouse or a dog should nibble the consecrated host, the substance of Christ's body still did not, on that account, cease to be there. Thomas Aquinas was of the opinion that this by no means tended to lower the dignity of Christ's body ; since, in fact, he had, without any lowering of his dignity, suffered himself to be crucified by sinners ; especially, considering it was not the body of Christ, according to its proper essence, but only in respect to these outward emblems, under which it was veiled in the sacrament, that was thereby affected.<sup>3</sup> We see here the most extreme point of realistic externalization to which the interest to retain the objective side unimpaired could bear to be pushed. And that which was expounded by Thomas Aquinas

<sup>1</sup> Among these different opinions which the scholastic writer, Alger of Liege, cites in the preface to his book written in defence of the doctrine of transubstantiation : *De sacramento corporis et sanguinis Dominici*, we find also this : *In pane Christum quasi imparatum, sicut Deum in carne personaliter incarnatum*. Bibl. patr. Ludg. t. xxi., f. 251.

<sup>2</sup> *Quod defertur corpus Christi, quousque species defertur*.

<sup>3</sup> *Nec hoc vergit in detrimentum dignitatis corporis Christi, qui voluit a peccatoribus crucifigi absque diminutione suae dignitatis, praesertim, cum mus aut canis non tangat ipsum corpus Christi secundum propriam speciem, sed solum secundum species sacramentales,—non sacramentaliter, sed per accidens corpus Christi manducat.*

nas with a refined and cautious species of dialectics, was expressed by others in a still crasser form; yet, the pious delicacy of many resisted a tendency which was driven, purely out of a dread of the subjective element, to a profanation of the holy essence; and voices of commanding influence declared themselves opposed to such a conclusion. Among these we may place even the word of a pope, that of Innocent the Third, who in his work *De Mysteriis Missae*, entered minutely into the examination of everything pertaining to this sacrament. And in fact, we recognise in this performance, the work of a man thoroughly fitted for the supreme guidance of the church,—of one, who distinguished himself by a certain sound practical sense in the handling of doctrinal matters, by a certain delicate tact, which led him to avoid everything which was really offensive. In replying to the question,<sup>1</sup> Into what is the body of Christ converted after it has been eaten?—he says: “So uneasy are the thoughts of mortals, that they will never leave exploring, and especially into those things respecting which man ought not to inquire at all. If we seek after the bodily presence of Christ, we must look for it in heaven, where he sits at the right hand of God. Only for a certain time he exhibited his bodily presence, in order to invite to the spiritual. As long as the sacrament is held in the hand, and eaten, Christ is bodily present with that which is seen, felt, and tasted. But when the bodily senses discern nothing more, the bodily presence must no further be sought after, but we must hold ourselves only to the spiritual. After the administration of the sacrament is finished, Christ passes from the mouth into the heart. He is not food for the body, but for the soul.” He then adds: “As it regards the relation to ourselves (to our perceptions), he preserves throughout the resemblance to perishable food. But as it regards himself, he loses not the truth of the (unchangeable) body. That which outwardly appears (the species) is sometimes nibbled or stained, but no such affection can reach the true body of Christ. But if the question is asked, whether Christ spaciouly descends from or ascends to heaven, when he offers or withdraws his bodily presence, or whether it is after some other manner that he begins

1 Lib. iv., c. xv.

or ceases to be present, under the species of the sacrament? I answer, that in such matters we ought not to be too curious, lest we arrogate to ourselves more than belongs to us. I know not how Christ comes, but neither do I know how he departs; *He* knows, from whom nothing is hidden." To escape the conclusion that the body of Christ may be nibbled by mice, burned by fire, etc., he preferred rather to resort to a twofold miracle,—that, in the same manner as the substance of the bread had been converted into the body of Christ, so, afterwards, in place of it, the substance of the bread is created anew, of which substance, the accidents only had remained.<sup>1</sup> In favour of this view, Bonaventura also declared himself; the thought undoubtedly floating before his mind that such things belonged to a higher province of the intuition of faith, and ought not to be brought down to this sensuous and conceptual mode of contemplation.<sup>2</sup> With regard to that other mode of apprehension, he observes, "that, however much might be said in proof of this opinion, it will never be so proved that pious ears must not be shocked at it."<sup>3</sup> He was inclined to admit, with pope Innocent the Third, in order to unite the hypothesis that the body of Christ in the eucharist was present only for the use of man,<sup>4</sup>—with the doctrine of transubstantiation,—that the above-mentioned double miracle took place. The dread of such conclusions, and dissatisfaction with those forced resolutions of the difficulty whereby men sought to guard against such conclusions, would lead many reflecting minds to entertain doubts with regard to the premises themselves, from which such conclusions were derived. A master in the university of Paris wrote, in the year 1264, a letter,<sup>5</sup> to pope Clement the Fourth, in which he defended that scientific institution against a charge which was said to have proceeded from the pope himself,

1 Sicut miraculose substantia panis convertitur in corpus dominicum, cum incipit esse sub sacramento, sic quodammodo miraculose revertitur, cum ipsum ibi desinit esse, non quod illa panis substantia revertatur, quæ transivit in carnem, sed quod ejus loco alius miraculose creatus.

2 His words: Caveat tamen quisque qualiter intelligit, quia in hoc secretum fidei latet.

3 Quantamcumque hæc opinio muniatur, nunquam tamen adeo munitur, quando aures piæ hoc abhorreant audire.

4 Quia Christus non est sub illo sacramento, nisi eatenus, quod ordinabile est ad usum humanum, scilicet ad manducationem.

5 See Bouleai hist. univers. Parisiens, t. iii., f. 374.



that the opinion prevailed there that the eucharist stood no otherwise related to Christ than as the symbol stands related to the thing signified by it.<sup>1</sup> Such an accusation, against which the university had occasion to defend itself, may not perhaps have been altogether without foundation; though it did not contain one word of literal truth. Accordingly, there stood forth among the members of this university, towards the close of the thirteenth century, an independent thinker,—well known on account of his skill in dispute,—the Dominican John of Paris,<sup>2</sup> who endeavoured to avoid the above-mentioned conclusions by calling up once more<sup>3</sup> that opinion which, as we have seen, had not yet been lost sight of in the twelfth century,—the opinion that the body of Christ, abiding in its proper essence, was united with the substance of the bread and wine abiding in their proper essence, after the same manner as the divine nature is united with the human in Christ. According to this view, a mutual transfer and interchange of predicates might find place, as in the case of the two natures of Christ; and so these offensive conclusions might be avoided. He supposed that, as the orthodox faith in this doctrine consisted simply in maintaining the real and veritable presence of the body of Christ, so a determinate representation of the manner in which this came to pass could not—while still other representations were also possible—obtain the authority of an article of faith. He believed, moreover, that he might affirm the words of the institution were more favourable to his own view than to the opposite one.<sup>4</sup> He was not in favour of directly condemning the common representation, but only contended against its being held as the alone valid one; while at the same time he avowed submission to the authority of the pope and of the church. Yet he was prohibited, in 1304, from reading and disputing. He appealed to the pope, but died at Rome, while the matter was still under discussion. The transmutation of bread and wine into the body and blood of Christ being regarded as the highest miracle, and one daily repeated, and this highest pitch of the

1 *Esse sicuti signatum sub signo.*

2 *Johannes pungens asinos*, *Pique d'âne*, so called, because his disputations left no quiet to indolent minds.

3 *His Determinatio*, published by Peter Allix, London, 1686.

4 *Quod ista opinio evidentiùs salvat veritatem hujus propositionis: hoc est corpus meum, et quod in altari sit corpus Christi, quam alia.*

miraculous and of the self-communication of God, being a matter which particularly busied the religious feelings and the imaginations of men, it is no wonder that visions should grow out of it ; and such visions may have been the occasion which led to the founding of a festival extremely agreeable to this bent of devotion, and consecrated to the remembrance of this abiding miracle,—the festum Corporis Domini, or *Corpus-Christi* day, which, after it had first arisen—as it is said in the diocese of Liege—was established in 1264, by a bull of pope Urban the Fourth ; although, as this pope soon afterwards died, the ordinance did not at first pass generally into effect, but had afterwards, in 1311, to be renewed by Clement the Fifth.

It was in correspondence with these views, that as Christ, veiled beneath these external signs, was contemplated as actually present and inseparably connected with them, so the worship due to him was transferred to them. And accordingly it had been the custom, even before these views had reached their extreme point in the doctrine of transubstantiation, for the community, at the elevation of the consecrated emblems, to kneel to the ground ; and, in general, Christ himself was worshipped in them, as appears from many indications, especially in the East, where, as a common thing, the feelings were more strongly expressed. This was a necessary expression of those modes of intuition which, after they had reached their highest point in the doctrine of transubstantiation, would, of course, be still further promoted. The papal legate, cardinal Guido, whom pope Innocent the Third sent to Cologne, is said to have first introduced the custom, already practised in Italy, of kneeling before the host, elevated after the consecration, and when borne in procession to the sick, into those districts of Germany,<sup>1</sup> and pope Honorius the Third, by a constitution enacted in 1217, made this a law for the whole church. From this reverence for the external signs in the eucharist, this anxious dread of spilling a drop of the blood of Christ, proceeded, however, at the same time, one salutary change, which may have been already introduced of itself, through the better understanding of the relation of the eucharist to baptism, as it *certainly* found therein a basis of support. We have already seen, in the earlier periods, how the communion of infants spread abroad in

<sup>1</sup> See Cæsar. Heisterbac. Dial. Dist. ix., c. li.

connection with infant baptism, while men were unconscious of the real difference between the two sacraments, and, from a false construction put upon what Christ says, in the sixth chapter of the gospel according to John, respecting the eating of his flesh and blood, drew the conclusion that, without partaking of the holy supper, it was impossible to obtain eternal life. In such cases, it was customary to let infants, who were incapable as yet of eating anything solid, merely sip a portion of the consecrated wine.<sup>1</sup> But inasmuch as it was now feared, lest the blood of Christ might thus be profaned, while yet men were not bold enough to abandon at once the ancient custom, it came about that, in preference to dropping the practice altogether, it was preferred to take up with an unmeaning ceremony, and give to infants unconsecrated wine.<sup>2</sup> This practice, Hugo a S. Victore justly declared to be altogether superfluous; and wished rather that the whole ceremony might be dispensed with, if it could be done without giving scandal to the simple-minded;<sup>3</sup> and he expressed it as his opinion that, if danger was to be apprehended in preserving the blood of Christ, or in offering the same to infants, it were better that the whole ceremony should be omitted, inasmuch as infants belonged already to the body of Christ by baptism, and were thereby secured in possession of all the benefits which flow from union with him; in favour of which view he quoted a saying of Augustin, to whose authority it was the custom to appeal in support of the communion of infants. From these words of Hugo, it is manifest that, besides the above-mentioned anxiety, the consciousness of the difference between the sacrament of baptism, as that whereby the subject was supposed to be, once for all, incorporated into fellowship with Christ and entitled to participate in all the benefits grounded therein, and the sacrament of the Lord's supper as that which referred to the continued, *conscious*, and self-active appropriation of this fellowship, the consciousness of such a difference between the two sacraments, contributed some share towards promoting the abandon-

1 Hugo a S. V. de caeremoniis, sacramentis, officiis et observationibus ecclesiasticis, lib. i., c. xx.: Pueris recens natis idem sacramentum in specie sanguinis est ministrandum digito sacerdotis, quia tales naturaliter sugere possunt.

2 L. c. Ignorantia presbyterorum adhuc formam retinens, sed non rem, dat eis loco sanguinis vinum.

3 Quod penitus supervacuum arbitrares, si sine scandalo simplicium dimitti posset.

ment of infant communion.<sup>1</sup> Already, in the beginning of the thirteenth century, the communion of infants was considered to be a thing altogether inadmissible. As piety in children, more or less pure or mingled with fanaticism,<sup>2</sup> belonged among the peculiar features of this age, so an example of this sort occurred in the year 1220, at Thorout in Flanders. A boy, on whose tender mind religion had made a powerful impression, and who was looked upon as a prodigy of youthful piety, died before he had completed his seventh year. Before his death, he expressed an earnest desire to partake of the holy eucharist. It being supposed, however, that, according to the then existing laws of the church,<sup>3</sup> this privilege could not be granted him, when he found that he was about to die, stretching forth his hands to heaven, he exclaimed: "Thou, Lord Jesus Christ, knowest that my greatest desire is to have thee; I have longed after thee, and done all in my power to obtain thee; and I confidently hope that I am now going to behold thee."

The consideration, however, which, in the manner above described, was the occasion of introducing a change in the doctrine of the Lord's supper, corresponding to its idea, contributed to promote the extensive spread of another innovation, directly at variance with this idea. In the earlier centuries, it was held indispensably necessary that the holy supper, in conformity with its institution, should be distributed fully, in both kinds, to all without distinction, and should be partaken of by all. The only exception was when, as in the North African church, a portion of the consecrated bread was kept at hand, as a means of constantly maintaining communion with Christ, and as a supernatu-

<sup>1</sup> In the fifth canon of the council of Bordeaux (concilium Burdegalense), in 1255, it is already presupposed that children belonged to the class of the *prohibiti communicare*; and it is only specially decreed that the priests should not, on the Easter festival, give them the consecrated host instead of the communion. Only common consecrated bread (*panis benedictus communis*)—still a remnant, therefore, of the ancient usage—should be given them. Harduin. Concil. t. vii., f. 471.

<sup>2</sup> Thus, for example, in 1213, a summons issued by a youth led to a fanatical excitement that hurried away a vast multitude of boys to a crusade, who could not be kept back by any of the means employed, gentle or severe. See Thom. Cantipratani Bonum universale, lib. ii., c. iii., § 14, and Matth. Paris. hist. Angl. An. 1251, f. 710. Ed. Lond. 1686.

<sup>3</sup> Thomas Cantiprat, in relating this story, lib. ii., c. xxviii. § 7, speaks of an ordinance passed by a general council prohibiting this; but no such canon of a general council is known to me.

ral preservative against all manner of evil ; and when the wine alone was used for the communion of infants ; which customs already implied, and indeed were based on, the opinion that, in cases of necessity, the communion in one kind might be substituted in place of the whole. Now the fear we have already mentioned, of spilling the least particle of Christ's blood, led, in the eleventh and twelfth centuries, especially in England, to the custom of presenting, in the communion of infants, only a portion of bread dipped in the consecrated wine. And as this was a proceeding already at variance with the words of the institution and the nature of the sacrament, both as to form and matter,<sup>1</sup> so it formed a medium of transition to the practice of distributing the sacrament to the sick, under the single species of the consecrated bread.<sup>2</sup> The same anxiety was the occasion also that, in here and there an instance, this custom should be extended still further, and that partaking of the blood of Christ should be withheld altogether from the laity. That idea of the priesthood, which placed the laity at such a distant remove from the clergy, would furnish ground for the opinion that it was enough if they, by whose instrumentality this greatest of miracles was accomplished, and the sacrifice of Christ continually offered anew, enjoyed the holy supper in its complete form, as it had been instituted by our Saviour;<sup>3</sup> since in fact the priests offered for all, and acted in the name of all who were united with them by fellowship of spirit.<sup>4</sup> Thus, then, a full and perfect observance was to be paid, by the priests, to all that the institution of Christ required. On the part of the laity, reverence towards the sacrament was to be the most prominent thing ; and, in accordance with this reverence, they should abstain from the blood,

<sup>1</sup> Hildebert of Mans says, concerning a custom of this sort (ep. 15) : *Quod nec ex dominica institutione nec ex sanctionibus authenticis reperitur assumptam.*

<sup>2</sup> The words of the abbot Rodolph of Liege, which Bona has given in his work *De rebus liturgicis* :

*Hinc et ibi cautela fiet,  
Ne presbyter aegris et aenis  
Tribuat laicis de sanguine Christi, nam fundi posset leviter  
Simplexque putaret, quod non sub specie sit totus Jesus utraque.*

<sup>3</sup> As Thomas Aquinas says : *Quod perfectio hujus sacramenti non est in usu fidelium sed in consecratione materiae. Et ideo nihil derogat perfectioni hujus sacramenti, si populus sumat corpus sine sanguine, dummodo sacerdos consecrans sumat utrumque.*

<sup>4</sup> Conformably to that which Thomas Aquinas says : *Quia sacerdos in persona omnium sanguinem offert et sumit.*

that none of it might be spilled and profaned.<sup>1</sup> This was the acme of that spiritual aristocracy which stood in such contradiction to the idea of the Christian church; and it needed but one step more to proclaim, "it was sufficient for the priests to celebrate the communion in behalf of the entire community." There was still another element, belonging to the Christian mode of thinking in this age, that contributed to encourage and uphold this change, namely, the power attributed to the church, by virtue of the Holy Spirit which guided it, of introducing changes in the administration of the sacraments, according to the necessities of the times; and the power was stretched to this extent.<sup>2</sup> The principle, right in itself, of distinguishing between the mutable and the immutable in the celebration of the sacraments, was, by reason of those false assumptions, falsely applied. Furthermore, this change found another ground of support in the doctrine of concomitance, so called; which, however, was neither devised nor got up for this purpose, but had been first evolved independently thereof;<sup>3</sup> and was first employed by the schoolmen of the thirteenth century,<sup>4</sup> in defence of the withdrawal of the cup,—the doctrine that, under each species, the whole of Christ was contained, *per concomitantiam*, therefore under the body, the blood; so that he who partook of but one species, lost nothing.

It was above a century, however, before the scruples against

<sup>1</sup> As Thomas says: *Ex parte sumentium requiritur summa reverentia et cautela, ne aliquid accidat, quod vergat ad injuriam tanti mysterii.*

<sup>2</sup> Thus already in the letter of Ernulph, bishop of Rochester, near the beginning of the twelfth century, in which, in replying to the doubts proposed to him by a certain Lambert, he states how the *Hodierna ecclesiae consuetudo* of distributing the hostia sanguine intincta, alio et paene contrario ritu, quam a Domino distributum might be justified. He supposes that everything ordained by Christ for man's salvation ought to be observed, indeed, as a matter of unconditional necessity; but that changes might be made in the form of administration, respecting which Christ had established nothing definite. "*Quae praecepta sunt, non fieri non licere, pro ratione vero necessitatis vel honestatis alio et alio modo fieri licere.*" And he could cite other changes in proof of this, changes which the church had introduced on grounds of reason. "*Unde nonnulla Christianae religionis instituta eum in ecclesiae nascentis initio modum originis accipere, quem in progressu ejusdem crescentis propter quasdam rationabiles causas non diu tenere.*"—See D'Achery *Spicileg.* t. iil. f. 470. We must allow, however, that when the mutable and the immutable, in respect to matter and form, were distinguished by such inexact limits, a wide field would be opened for arbitrary procedures.

<sup>3</sup> For example, by Anselm of Canterbury.

<sup>4</sup> After the precedent of bishop Ernulph.

a deviation from the institution of Christ and the ancient and universal custom of the church could be wholly overcome. Not only was this change not approved in the twelfth century, except in single portions of the church, but even a pope, Paschalis the Second, declared himself decidedly opposed to it. In a letter to Pontius, abbot of Cluny, he wrote that no arbitrary will of man, nor innovating spirit, ought to be allowed to deviate from the course that Christ had ordained. As Christ communicated bread and wine, each by itself, and it ever had been so observed in the church, it ever should be so done in the future, save in the case of infants and of the sick, who, as a general thing, could not eat bread."<sup>1</sup> Yet the withdrawal of the cup, favoured by the highest authorities of the thirteenth century, the first theologians of both the orders of mendicants, among whom Albert the Great constitutes the only exception, constantly advanced to more general recognition. Near the close of the twelfth century, the provost Folmar of Traufenstein, in France, took ground against the doctrine of concomitance employed to defend the withdrawal of the cup; and he seems by this opposition to have been driven to a view of the Lord's supper deviating from the church doctrine, although he was too much confined by his dependence on the authority of the church to be able to make that which he wanted wholly clear to himself, and to carry it out in a consistent manner. He agreed, it is true, that the true body of Christ was in the eucharist; but he supposed not wholly, with all its members, as Christ had lived on earth; that the whole Christ was, by virtue of the union of the two natures, in each species, but not the whole, completely, in all its parts. In each species, he would probably say, he is present only in one particular form.<sup>2</sup> As he maintained that, even by Christ's glorification, the difference of the predicates, applied to the two natures, was not annulled, so he contended against the supposition of an ubiquity; and held, on the contrary, that Christ, till the time of his second advent, abode, with his glorified body, only in heaven. When his opponents brought up against him the stories which had gone abroad since the time of Paschasius Radbert, about actual manifestations of the body and blood of Christ, he declared

<sup>1</sup> Harduin. Concil., t. vi., p. ii., f. 1796.

<sup>2</sup> Totus, sed non totum et non totaliter.

such stories to be false : he looked upon them as mere fables, that harmonized in no sort with the doctrine of Holy Scripture. The sources from which these legends had been derived, he considered as not entitled to the least credit.<sup>1</sup> Thus we perceive that, at bottom, he possessed an original and independent bent of spirit, directly at variance with that of the church. But before he could come to the point of expressing it, in a clear and consistent manner, he was induced to recant.<sup>2</sup>

That view of the Lord's supper which represented the miracle performed by the priests as the principal thing, did not serve to promote the participation of the laity in the sacrament. One evidence that shows how far this was from being the case, is the twenty-first canon of the Lateran council in 1215, whereby it is ordained that every one should partake of the holy supper at least once a year, on the Easter festival. Whoever failed of so doing was to be excluded from church fellowship, and, at his death, to be refused burial according to the rites of the church. So much the greater reliance was placed on the priestly sacrifice of the mass ; and the vast multitude of unworthy ecclesiastics turned it into a means of gain. Such persons undertook, for the sake of the profit, to hold more masses than they could themselves perform. They entered into contracts to perform a certain number of masses, which they obligated themselves to hold for twenty or thirty years ; and when they had undertaken more than they were able to perform, hired assistants, who went through with a mechanical performance of the liturgical acts in

1 Gerhoh of Reichersberg says, in the work directed against him, and intitled *De gloria et honore filii hominis*, c. xlii., in *Pez thesaurus anecdotorum novissimus*, t. i., p. ii., f. 221 : Folmar had asserted, *dictis et scriptis*, corpus Domini, ex quo ascendit, nunquam fuisse sub coelo. Cui cum nos inter caetera objiceremus, quod multi sanctorum viderint eum coporaliter, postquam ascendit in coelum, sicut coporaliter visus est Petro, dixit hoc totum esse fabulosum. Neque canonicis fultum scripturis.—Gerhoh now argues that, according to the position of his antagonist, the account given by Luke in the Acts of the Apostles, of Christ's appearance to Paul, should be regarded as fabulous and uncanonical. But it was certainly very far from the intention of his opponent to affirm anything like this. If the latter really expressed the opinion, thus broadly, that Christ could not, after his ascension, again appear on earth, he must have explained this appearance as being a supernatural vision, which, however, it is hardly credible that he did. Probably, he only spoke of those tales, altogether fabulous both in matter and form, which were commonly made use of, in defence of the doctrine of transubstantiation.

<sup>2</sup> The sources are to be found in the above-cited volume of the collection by *Pez*, and in the 26th volume of the *Bibl. patr. Lugd.* It is to be regretted that we possess but a few fragments of Folmar himself.



their stead.<sup>1</sup> Pious individuals contended against this abuse as a most abominable species of simony, Christ himself being here held up for sale, as he was by Judas. The free-spirited Abelard declaimed against the cupidity of the priests by whom many, even when dying, were deceived with the idle promise of salvation, if they should secure a sufficient number of masses, which however could not be had without pay. "They advise these dying men," says he, "not to restore what they have robbed from others, but to offer it for the sacrifice of the mass."<sup>2</sup> The ecclesiastical assemblies at length considered it necessary to enact laws against such abuses.<sup>3</sup> These abuses were not necessarily connected, we admit, with that particular mode of intuition of which we have been speaking; on the contrary, the loftiness of the transaction, as an offering of Christ, was appealed to in order to expose the detestable character of this traffic:<sup>4</sup> but the whole of this externalizing, magic-seeking bent, furnished, to say the least, a foothold for such superstition and such profanation.

In the administration of the sacrament of penance, the mischief-working abuses of the church stand forth with particular prominence. But on this point, we must take care to distinguish the false representations of the church-doctrine, which were encouraged by ignorant and badly-disposed preachers, from that doctrine as it was taught in the schools of theology. Men were aware of the distinction between the divine forgiveness of sin, and church absolution. It was acknowledged that the former could be obtained only by the *inward* confession of sin, and that true repentance which springs from love. When a priest inquired of Yves, bishop of Chartres, how the practice of the

<sup>1</sup> As, for instance, Petrus Cantor, verbum abbreviatum, c. xxvii. et xxviii.

<sup>2</sup> Multos morientium seducit cupiditas sacerdotum, vanam eis securitatem promittentium, si quae habent, sacrificiis obtulerint, et missas emant, quas nequaquam gratis haberent. In quo quidem mercimonio praefixum apud eos pretium constat esse, pro una scilicet missa unum denarium, et pro uno annuali quadraginta. In his Ethics or his Scito te ipsum, c. xviii., in Pez thesaurus anecdotorum novissimus, p. ii., f. 666.

<sup>3</sup> See the Council of Paris, of the year 1212: Ne pro annalibus vel triennialibus vel septennialibus missarum faciendis laici vel alii dare aliquid vel legare cogantur in testamento, et ne super his aliqua pactio vel exactio vel sub aliqua alia specie palliata a sacerdotibus vel aliis mediatoribus fiat, et ne superflua multitudine talium annalium se onerent sacerdotes, ad quae supplenda sufficere honeste non possint et propter quae ipsos oporteat habere conductitios sacerdotes.

<sup>4</sup> The greater guilt incurred in the profanation of this sacrament by simony, Petr. Cant., c. xxvii.: Totus enim Christus ibi sumitur fons et origo omnium gratiarum.

church—to exclude those who confessed their sins for a season from partaking of the eucharist—was to be reconciled with the words of the prophet Ezekiel,—that the sinner shall live if he but sighs to God, and returns from his evil ways; the bishop replied: “To that Judge who looks upon the heart, inward conversion, and the contrition of the heart sufficeth; and the forgiveness of sin is immediately bestowed by him to whom this inward conversion is manifest. But the church requires a public satisfaction, because she cannot know the secrets of the heart.”<sup>1</sup> Peter Lombard declared, that the power to bind and to loose bestowed on the priest, did not consist in this, that he actually had it in his power to forgive sins and confer justification, which was the work of God alone. The priest could only declare the judgment of God;<sup>2</sup> and the priestly sentence was valid only when it agreed with the divine. He distinguished, therefore, between absolution in the sight of God, and in the view of the church.<sup>3</sup> But in holding fast to the inward requisites,—necessary in order to the obtaining of the divine forgiveness of sin,—men were, at the same time, at no loss for reasons to justify everything that prevailed in the practice of the church. That interior state of the soul,—genuine contrition of heart,—must necessarily express itself by some outward and corresponding sign. Inward humiliation before God must exhibit itself by the outward self-humiliation of penance before the priest. The inward confession of sins must be accompanied with an outward confession; the inward self-castigation for sin, in *contrition*, by penitential exercises voluntarily undertaken according to the direction of the priest. So the three following parts of penance, as determined by Peter of Lombardy, ever continued to be held fast: the *compunctio cordis*, the *confessio oris*, and the *satisfactio operis*. In the doctrine, that for sins committed subsequently to baptism, it was required that a peculiar species of satisfaction should be paid to divine justice, the necessity of church penance found its substantial basis. And the effects of it might, in the next place, extend even beyond the bounds of the present life; for after it had once been determined that such a species of justification was

<sup>1</sup> See ep. 228.

<sup>2</sup> Ostendere hominem ligatum vel solutum.

<sup>3</sup> Solutio apud Deum et in facie ecclesiæ.

necessary, it was easy to infer from it, that whosoever neglected to pay such satisfaction in the present life, would have to suffer hereafter, for the purpose of expiation and purification, so much the severer pains in the fires of purgatory. At the same time, however, it was supposed that the above-mentioned inward self-punishment might be of sufficient force to be substituted in place of all other satisfactions; so that the individual thus circumstanced stood exempted from the necessity of enduring the fires of purgatory. At all events, the church doctrine and scientific theology were very far from attributing any important influence to the external act separated from the internal disposition. The temper of the heart was ever held up to view as that from which everything must proceed. But the blame lies with the ordinary priests, that this connection between the inward temper and outward act, in the religious sense of the multitude, was obscured, and that the people were confirmed in the delusive notion that forgiveness of sin could be obtained by outward works, and in their mistaken confidence on priestly absolution, which was often but too easily bestowed. The laws enacted by the first popes of this period, had for their object to counteract such abuses. Thus it undoubtedly belonged to the essence of the Hildebrandian reform of the church, that on this point also the ancient order of the church should be restored. We have noticed already, on a former page,<sup>1</sup> the interest taken in this matter by Gregory the Seventh. Pope Urban the Second declared,<sup>2</sup> that "Whereas, false penance belongs especially among the causes which disturb the peace of the church; therefore, we admonish the bishops and priests against deceiving the souls of the laity by false penance, and thus causing them to be hurried to perdition. But false penance is, where penance is done on account of one sin to the overlooking of many others." In confutation of this error, which led men to suppose that they had done enough by leaving off one class of sins, while they still indulged themselves in others, the pope quotes James ii. 10, "It is also denominated false penance, for one not to abandon the business of an ordinary calling which he cannot pursue without sin, or to harbour hatred in his heart; or to refuse satisfaction to one whom

<sup>1</sup> See vol. vii. p. 110.

<sup>2</sup> Concilium Melitanum, c. xvi. Harduin, vii., f. 1687.

he has wronged, or forgiveness for wrongs he has himself received, or to bear arms against a righteous cause." Yet the authorities at Rome did not remain true to these principles of ecclesiastical legislation, when they too easily granted absolution to those who from other lands resorted to the highest tribunal ; and a mischief-working change, in the matter of absolution, proceeded from that very quarter.

In the first place, by virtue of the monarchical ecclesiastical power of the popes, it was possible to introduce, instead of the absolutions hitherto dispensed by the bishops in behalf of their respective dioceses, a more general absolution, valid for the whole church ; and while it was the case hitherto that absolution was only limited and partial in its extent, another kind now appeared in its stead, of wider grasp, which tended to the dispensing with all church penance. The crusades furnished the first occasion for this. Pope Victor the Second, when preaching a crusade against the infidels in North Africa, having first set a precedent of this sort, it was often followed on occasion of the crusades to the Holy Sepulchre ; when it was held that the participation in so holy an enterprise ought to be considered a valid substitute for all other penance ; and so a full and unconditional absolution came to be connected therewith. Yet it must be allowed that true devotion and penitence were still appended as a condition. Thus, for example, Urban the Second, at the council of Clermont, in 1095, extended this indulgence expressly to those alone who, from motives of simple piety, and not for the sake of honour or of money, embarked in the expedition to liberate the church at Jerusalem. But the crimes to which the crusaders abandoned themselves, testify of the immense injury that grew out of the confidence in the power of absolution.

Absolution received a theoretical support from the theologians of the thirteenth century. They were directed thereto by that idea of Christian fellowship,—though conceived after a false and external manner,—which generally exercised so vast a power over the religious life of these times,—the sense of that fellowship of divine life by which everything was upborne that proceeded from the Christian spirit,—the conviction that each one, through the fellowship of the same spirit,—which works everything in all its organs,—shared in all the benefits accruing from that

spirit,—the invisible bond that knit together all Christians, however separated by time and space. Hence the notion of a treasury of merits, belonging to the whole church. In addition to this, came now that representation, which in earlier periods we saw already existing in the bud, and which had its ground in a false apprehension of the idea of the law,—the representation, namely, that the saints possessed a superlegal perfection,<sup>1</sup>—had performed more than justice required in satisfaction for their own sins; where, to be sure, the treasure of Christ's merits was assumed as the foundation of the whole, without which it was vain to talk of human merit.<sup>2</sup> Christ was pointed to, as the primal source of all sanctification.<sup>3</sup> Thus arose the doctrine of a *thesaurus meritorum supererogationis*, from which the church, and especially its visible head, could, for reasonable causes,—as, for example, for the advancement of a holy work of general importance,—appropriate to individuals whatever might be requisite, as a satisfaction for their own sins. It was at the same time held fast, we allow, that the indulgence so bestowed was not *forgiveness* of sin, but only a remission of the church-penance, which would otherwise have to be fulfilled by each. Yet, as this was to take the place of the punishment which must otherwise be suffered in purgatory, it followed that the effects of this indulgence might bear indirectly even upon the forgiveness of sin.<sup>4</sup> Beyond question, it was still pre-supposed, that they who received the indulgence were in a state of true penitence, and by faith and love united to the saints, whose merits were placed

<sup>1</sup> Thus Thomas of Aquino says (Supplement. tertiæ partis summae theol. Qu. xlii., Art. i.): Est quedam mensura homini adhibita, quæ ab eo requiritur, scilicet impletio mandatorum Dei, et superea potest aliquid erogare, ut satisfaciat.

<sup>2</sup> Robert Pullein still speaks only of a treasure of the merits of Christ: *cujus merita præcedentium patrum insufficientiam supplerent, ut merita antiquorum per Christum accepta Deo digna fiant munerari coelo.*

<sup>3</sup> Thus Pope Innocent the Third, in his exposition of the second penitential psalm, says: *Satis enim apparet, quis orat, quoniam omnis sanctus, videlicet servus sanctificatus et ad quem orat, quoniam ad te, videlicet Dominum, sanctificantem, et quare orat quia pro hac, id est, pro impietatis remissione, quæ sanctificationis est causa, f. 241.*

<sup>4</sup> There were those who considered absolution as referring simply to the penalties incurred at the tribunal of the church; but Thomas Aquinas combats this opinion; as, in fact, he was obliged to do, by the connection of ideas in the church doctrine; for the remissio, quæ fit quantum ad forum ecclesiæ, valet etiam quantum ad forum Dei et præterea ecclesiæ hujusmodi indulgentias faciens majus damnificaret quam adjuvaret, quia remitteret at graviore poenas scilicet purgatorii.

over to their account. Had the doctrine of indulgence always been taught and received with these limitations, it might not have been so injurious to morality as it in fact proved to be. But the unspiritual men, who were determined to gain the utmost which they possibly could from an indulgence granted for the building of a church, for the visitation of the same, etc., sought only to fix a high value on their spiritual merchandise, and were extremely careful how they added anything in the way of limitation. William of Auxerre,<sup>2</sup> a scholastic theologian of the thirteenth century, after having laid down six propositions necessary for the understanding of the doctrine of indulgence, very naïvely observes: "If we should state all these explanations in preaching the doctrine of indulgences, the latter would not find so many purchasers; just as the laity, if they should understand that one good work is worth as much as a hundred others, performed with only the same amount of love, would not be inclined to do so many good works."<sup>3</sup> Still, however, the church does not deceive the faithful; for she teaches nothing false, but only conceals certain truths."<sup>3</sup> Also, Thomas Aquinas cites the opinion of some, who believed that the benefit of indulgences was, in the case of each individual, according to the measure of his faith and piety;<sup>4</sup>—yet this dependence of indulgences on the personal character of the subject was not expressed in the preaching of them; for the church incited men to good works by means of a *pious fraud*, like the mother who holds out an apple to her child to induce it to walk. Yet he himself repelled such a doctrine with abhorrence, declaring it to be fraught with danger, since thereby all confidence in the affirmations of the church would necessarily be weakened.

The enormous abuses which came to be connected with the matter of indulgences, called forth against it many important voices in the church; some attacking nothing but that which was

<sup>1</sup> Guilelmus Antissiodorensis.

<sup>2</sup> His words: Quia si determinarentur, non essent fideles ita proni ad dandum, sicut si prædicaretur laïcis, quod quantum valet unum opus meritorium ad vitam æternam tantum et mille facta ex tanta caritate, non essent ita proni ad faciendum bona opera.

<sup>3</sup> Ecclesia decipit fideles, tamen non mentitur. See the summa in iv. libb. sententiarum l. iv. of the chapter, de relaxationibus, quæ fiunt per claves.

<sup>4</sup> Quod indulgentiæ non tantum valent, quantum prædicantur, sed unicuique tantum valent, quantum fides et devotio sua exigit.

not grounded in the church doctrine, but was solely to be attributed to the corruption of the clergy; and some making war against the whole system of indulgences. Abelard complains of the priests that betrayed the souls committed to their spiritual oversight, not so much through ignorance as cupidity, the love of money availing more with them than the will of their Master.<sup>1</sup> Even the bishops were fiercely attacked by him. He reproached them on account of the lavish manner in which they dispensed indulgences at the dedication of churches and altars, at the consecration of burial-places, and on other occasions of popular festivity; under the show, indeed, of love, but really impelled by the grossest cupidity.<sup>2</sup> True love for their flocks, he suspected, would be shown by their bestowing these indulgences for nothing. If it lay within their power to open and shut heaven, they ought not to suffer an individual of their flocks to perish. But they might well be congratulated if they were able to open heaven even for themselves;<sup>3</sup> he declared it impossible that the arbitrary will of bishops should bring anything to pass against the justice of the divine tribunal, or that any unjust sentence should be confirmed by the Almighty. With Origen, whose words he cites, he maintained that the power conferred on the apostles to bind and to loose, had not been communicated to the bishops as the apostles' successors in office, but only to those among them who were the apostles' successors in temper of mind; just as the words, "Ye are the salt of the earth," applied only to such.<sup>4</sup>

When a bountiful indulgence was offered to the abbot Stephen of Obaize, to assist in the erection of a church which he had much at heart, he declined accepting it, saying: "We have no wish to introduce a custom whereby we should prepare a scandal for the communities, and shame for ourselves, in assuming to give an indulgence which God alone can bestow."<sup>5</sup> And when, in

1 Ut pro numerum oblatione satisfactionis inunctae poenas condonent vel relaxent, non tam attendentes, quid velit Dominus, quam quid valeat nummus.

2 Sub quadam scilicet specie caritatis, sed in veritate summae cupiditatis.

3 Quod quidem si non possunt, vel nesciunt, certe illud poeticeum, in quantum arbitror incurrunt:—

Nec prosunt domino, quae prosunt omnibus, artes.

4 See Abelard's *Ethics*, c. xxvi. Pez. l. c. f. 682.

5 Nos talem consuetudinem introducere nolumus, et populis scandalum et nobis ignominiam acquiramus circumeundo ecclesias, ostendendo beneficia, indulgentias largiendo, quas dare non poterit nisi solus Deus.

despite of this, he once allowed himself to be persuaded to receive a letter of indulgence in behalf of certain persons about to form a fraternity for the purpose of erecting a new church, and he was asked, while the letter was being drawn up, how far he would have the indulgence extend, his ancient scruples were revived, and he said: "Our own sins still weigh heavy on us, and we cannot make light of those of others."<sup>1</sup>

The Franciscan Berthold constantly declaims with the greatest vehemence against the preachers of indulgences, whom he was accustomed to call penny-preachers, and whom he describes as the deadliest traitors to souls, the murderers of true penitence: "These penny-preachers, who discourse so finely before the people concerning God, in order that they may strip them of their money; so they leave off confession, and comfort themselves with their indulgences. Because such an one (such a preacher of indulgences) can discourse so very eloquently about God, they fancy he is a saint. He is as really the devil's as he stands there and cheats Christendom. He is as much the devil's as any robber in the forest. And had I to choose, I would rather, an' there were no help for it, my soul should pass out of the mouth of a robber than out of the mouth of a penny-preacher; for the former ruins but his own soul, while the penny-preacher ruins many thousands besides. For all who are lost by means of his false indulgences, are cast to the bottom of hell, while he must suffer all their torments as his own. As Judas sold his lord, so thou sellest away from him many thousand souls, beyond all hope of retrieve." "Fie! on thee, penny-preacher, murderer of the whole world! How many souls dost thou, for the sake of thy false gain, seduce from true repentance and cast to the bottom of hell, beyond all reach of help? Thou promisest a large indulgence for a penny or a farthing; so that many thousands foolishly imagine they have expiated all their sins with their penny, or their farthing, as thou snuffest out to them. So they leave off confessing themselves; and thus go on to perdition, with none to tell them better. And for this thou shalt be cast to the bottom of hell, and all these shall be cast upon thee, thou who hast seduced and sold them away from Almighty God! Yes, souls! for a penny, or a farthing;

<sup>1</sup> Nos nostra adhuc premunt peccata nec possumus levare aliena. Lib. ii., c. xviii.



Thou murderer of true penitence ; thou hast destroyed for us true penitence. This the penny-preachers have so utterly destroyed for us, that there is now scarcely an individual who is willing to confess his sins."<sup>1</sup> He describes these preachers as being the vilest of hypocrites, who pretended to great piety, and understood how to set forth the sufferings of Christ and of the martyrs in a touching manner, so as to induce the common people to purchase their indulgences : " He dwells so much, and in so many ways, on our Lord's sufferings, that they imagine he is a true messenger of God ; then he weeps, and practises all sorts of tricks, that he may get their pennies, and their souls to boot. Oftentimes, the Netherlander affects the speech of the Highlander ;<sup>2</sup> for example, the dissembler and penny-preacher, who discourses so much about God and his mother, and his saints, and their sufferings,—and weeps, into the bargain,—so that one might swear he was a true Highlander. By his dress, also, such a person may deceive, but not for any long time by his manners."<sup>3</sup> The popes thought it necessary to enact several laws against the too wide extension of indulgences ; and these laws bear testimony also to the great mischief occasioned by them : " Whereas, through the indefinite and superfluous indulgences which many prelates boldly take it upon them to ordain, the keys of the church fall into contempt, and penance loses its virtue ; therefore, be it decreed that, at the consecration of a church, whether performed by one bishop or by several, indulgence shall not be extended to any term beyond a year, etc. The pope—who though possessed of plenary power, was still used to set these limits to himself—was held out to them as a pattern."<sup>4</sup> At a council held at Beziers in South France,<sup>5</sup> which especially set itself to oppose the sects that were now spreading with such mighty power in those districts, a canon was also drawn up against abuses in the granting of indulgences,—a step undoubtedly connected with the same object ; since the mischiefs occasioned by the preachers of indulgences assuredly supplied those sects with a great abundance of reasons for attacking the dominant church. It was decreed that " none but suitable persons, furnished with testimonies from their superiors, should be tol-

<sup>1</sup> See vol. vii., p. 390.

<sup>2</sup> Highland, symbol of heaven ; Lowland, of hell.

<sup>3</sup> See page 33.

<sup>4</sup> Concil. lat. iv. 1215, c. lxii.

<sup>5</sup> Concilium Biterrense.

rated as preachers of indulgences ; since it was certain that hireling preachers of indulgences and those who used them as hirelings, had no less by their wicked lives than by their erroneous preaching, caused great scandal by promising, for a small sum of money, to procure deliverance for the condemned in hell."<sup>1</sup>

Finally, an ordinance was passed by pope Innocent the Third, which was expressly designed to counteract the breaking up of the discipline of penance. Confession of sins to the priest had, indeed, until now, been recommended, and considered as belonging to the self-humiliation of the delinquent ; but it was only in case of mortal sins, involving the exclusion of the subject from the kingdom of heaven, that such confession was held to be indispensably necessary ; since, in this case, the three parts of penance distinguished by Peter of Lombardy, must all come together. That which had hitherto been left an optional matter, was by Innocent the Third prescribed as settled law. He directed in the twenty-first canon of the fourth Lateran council, in 1215, that each individual of the male and female sex should, after having arrived at the years of discretion, truly and faithfully confess, for himself alone, all his sins, at least once a year, to his own priest, and strive to perform according to his ability the penance imposed upon him ; and at least once a year, on the Easter festival, partake of the holy eucharist ; unless, after hearing the advice of his own priest, he thought himself, for good reasons, bound to abstain from it for a season. But if, for good and valid reasons, any one should choose to confess his sins to a foreign priest, he must first ask and obtain permission so to do from his own priest ; otherwise, the foreign priest could not exercise the power to bind and to loose. It was especially enjoined on the priest to exercise prudence and wisdom in the care of souls. He was directed to inform himself exactly with regard to the circumstances of the sinner and of his sin, in order that from these data he might be able skilfully to determine what counsel to give, and what remedies to apply. The strictest confidence with regard to the matters confessed was enjoined on the priest, with severe penalties in case of transgression. By means of this introduction of oral confession into the laws of the church, it was intended to put a check

<sup>1</sup> V. Harluin. Concil t. viii, f. 400.

on the loose administration of the penitential system generally ; to compel the priest to a more strict moral oversight over his community, and to prevent the laity from withdrawing themselves from it. A stricter discharge of the pastoral duties was thus secured, and the tie more closely knit betwixt the priest and his people. Such a regulation corresponded with the spirit of the church, which would preserve the religious consciousness of the laity in a state of entire dependence on the priest.

## SECTION FOURTH.

## HISTORY OF DOCTRINES.

I. EVOLUTION OF DOCTRINES AND OF THEOLOGY IN THE  
WESTERN CHURCH.

From the rudeness of the eleventh century we saw a new spiritual life emerging ; and here, too, the new religious awakening was accompanied with the commencement of a new creation in science. Yet these two directions of the new life, the religious and the scientific, did not always work harmoniously together, but also developed themselves independently, side by side ; and sometimes, in fact,—as one or the other of them happened to predominate,—they fell into direct opposition to one another. Accordingly, we observe the sudden appearance of a certain dialectical tendency, engendered simply by the self-feeling of the awakened understanding, and not originally animated by any religious interest, which now threatened to come into conflict with the spiritual tendencies that had sprung out of the depths of the religious life. On the one side, was the predominant life of feeling and emotion ; on the other, the predominant activity of the understanding and of conception. Already, towards the close of the preceding period, we noticed the strife between a freer mode of inquiry and one which chose to subject itself rather to the authority of church tradition : as it was presented to us, in the one case, in the person of Berengar ; in the other, in that of Lanfranc. But the triumph of Lanfranc evinced already to which side the reigning spirit was inclined ; at the same time, however, the battle was not yet decided ; but the contest must be often repeated ere such a decision could be arrived at, as to fix a standing-point for the present times.

Although there can be no doubt that the dialectical writings

of Boethius had a special influence in directing the awakened spirit of philosophical inquiry to the question respecting the objective significance of general conceptions, yet we are not to suppose that this explains everything; for the outward occasion and point of attachment for that which developes itself from an inward principle is one thing, and the true inward principle itself, grounded in the very nature of the process of philosophical development, is another. The most important antagonisms which, under different forms in different ages, are wont to busy the powers of thought, when awakening to freer self-activity, may be recognized in the present case, though men lost themselves in a multitude of less important collateral questions and unfruitful dialectical subtleties, before the main questions and antagonisms, lying at the bottom, could be brought into the clear light of consciousness. Under those antagonisms,—which set in movement the dialectic spirits of those times, relating to reality and non reality, to the objective or barely subjective significance of general conceptions,—were enveloped the gravest questions respecting the relation of thought to being, of the universal to the particular. It was the first breaking forth, though still concealed in the bud, and not come as yet to clear self-consciousness, of the controversy between a speculative and dogmatical, and an empirical and sceptical, tendency. It is obvious to remark, therefore, the great importance of the issue of such a contest, in determining the direction of the scientific, and especially, of the theological spirit.

As the dogmatical bent of Augustin exercised the most decided influence on the minds of the age, so the peculiar *realistic* element, which was so closely inwoven with his whole mode of thinking, had, at the same time with the latter, obtained the mastery; and that, too, in the same form in which it appears in his writings, namely, after that partly Platonic and partly Aristotelian mode of apprehension, according to which general conceptions (the *universalia*) were regarded as the archetypes of the divine reason (*universalia ante rem*), and as copied, struck off in the manifold diversity of phenomena—the species lying at the basis of individual beings (*universalia in re*.) But a new tendency proceeded from Roscelin, a canonical priest, who, near the close of the eleventh century, founded a peculiar dialectical

school at Compiègne. He maintained that all knowledge must proceed from experience ; individuals only had real existence ; all general conceptions were without objective significance. They were but abstractions, necessary helps of the understanding, to enable it to grasp the infinite manifoldness of things, *nomina non res* ; hence the name Nominalism, to designate this school.<sup>1</sup> The sceptical tendency of Nominalism may be clearly discerned in his own case, by observing the mode in which he disputes the objective reality of the conceptions, " whole and part," when he says : " The parts must be prior to the whole ; " " the whole presupposes the parts, and yet the parts really subsist only in reference to a whole."<sup>2</sup> An internal necessity, however, would impel the minds of this age, so predominantly dogmatical in its tendency, to resist a sceptical element so strongly expressed ; and this antagonism was the first which particularly occupied the dialecticians.

The university of Paris presented, in the twelfth century, for the first time, a school which gradually became a common centre for all scientific studies. Previous to this, it was only individual men of distinguished talents, teachers in the cathedral and monastic schools, who, by their power of influence on youthful minds, and by their reputation, collected around them the young men from various districts, far and near. So laboured the two representatives of the opposite dialectical tendencies, in two neighbouring cities,—one at Lisle, the other at Tournay. In the first-named city, Raimbert stood at the head of the Nominalist school. At Tournay, the Cathedral school had become eminent and flourishing, under the care of its great master Odo, or Udardus ;

<sup>1</sup> I will here notice how that extraordinary man, Roger Bacon, in the thirteenth century, of whom we shall have more to say hereafter, states these antagonisms: Aliqui ponunt ea (universalia) solum in anima, aliqui extra, aliqui medio modo. Opus Majus, p. i., c. vi., f. 28.

<sup>2</sup> These doctrines of Roscelin have become more accurately known by means of the fragments of Abelard's dialectics, published by Cousin (Ouvrage inédits d'Abelard. Paris, 1836). Fuit autem, memini, magistri nostri Roscellini tam insana sententia, ut nullam rem partibus constare vellet, sed sicut solis vocibus species, ita et partes adscribebat. Si quis autem rem illam, quæ domus est, rebus aliis, pariete scilicet et fundamento constare diceret, tale ipsum argumentatione impugnabat: si res illa, quæ est paries, rei illius, quæ domus est, pars sit, cum ipsa domus nihil aliud sit, quam ipsa paries et tectum et fundamentum, profecto paries sui ipsius et caeterorum pars erit. At vero quomodo sui ipsius pars fuerit? Amplius omnis pars naturaliter prior est suo toto. Quomodo autem paries prior se et aliis dicetur, cum se nullo modo prior sit? L. c. p. 471.

and he, as a realist, was a warm opponent of the dialectician in his neighbourhood. The reputation of this scholar brought together young men here from all parts of France, Germany, and the Netherlands. When we think of the rudeness of the times, we must be surprised to learn that such influence could proceed from a man of science, not merely on the narrower circle of his scholars, but upon the city itself in which he lived. Yet so we find it described by one of Raimbert's contemporaries. "If one rambled through the streets of the city, and observed the crowds of disputants, one might imagine that the citizens had abandoned all other business, and occupied themselves with philosophy alone. Coming into the vicinity of the school, one would sometimes behold Odo walking about with his scholars, and instructing them after the manner of the Peripatetics, sometimes sitting in the midst of them, and replying to the questions propounded to him. During the hours of the evening, too, he might be heard till late into the night, disputing before the church doors, or seen pointing with his finger and explaining to his scholars the course of the stars. His scholars, who numbered two hundred, were warmly and enthusiastically attached to him."<sup>1</sup>

But this undue predominance of one mental direction, the dialectical, this one-sided occupation of the mind with mere formal matter, was attended with its mischievous effects. As well the life and soul, as the material interests of science, would suffer thereby. The new dialecticians were intent on finding for everything some new expression, without any advantage to the matter in hand. In their new-coined Latin words, men fancied they had obtained science. The ingenious advocate of the rights of empirical knowledge against the arrogant pretensions of dialectics, which swallowed up all other interests, John of Salisbury, in the last times of the twelfth century, had to complain that this one-sided logical enthusiasm caused all other studies and all employment of time on the ancients to be despised; that every man was for inventing a new grammar, a new logic; that after the ancient rules had been abolished, new laws for everything were drawn from the depths of philosophy. "To call an ass or a man," says he, "by his common name, was a transgression, a thing un-

<sup>1</sup> See the history of the abbey at Tournay, by the abbot Herman, in *D'Achery Spicileg.* t. ii., f. 889.

worthy of a philosopher. It was held to be impossible to say or to do anything according to the rules of reason, unless the terms fitness and reason were expressly introduced."<sup>1</sup> "Schools," says the same writer, "became multiplied; since no man was content to be a scholar, but each, borne onward by the approbation of his adherents, would himself be the author of some new thing." When individuals who had been, for a season, exclusively occupied with these matters, became sensible of the idleness of such pursuits, or were brought, by the experiences of life, to a more serious tone of mind,<sup>2</sup> they retired from the world and became regular canonicals or monks.

Yet the change produced by such impressions was not the same in all. As it was usually the case that those who imagined they had renounced the world, not seldom betrayed by their temper that they continued to be the same as before, although changed as to form, so it turned out here that, with many, the old nature soon emerged again; and hence it was easy, as John of Salisbury says, to see, lurking under the monk's cowl, the self-conceit of the philosopher.<sup>3</sup> Others renounced, with their whole soul, the pursuits which, before, they had idly followed; and giving themselves wholly up to monkish asceticism, studied only how to make sure of salvation. The third class were composed of such as possessed a real inward call to speculation, and who, therefore, by the change of their interior life, could not be induced wholly to abandon it, inasmuch as, by so doing, they must deny the essential

<sup>1</sup> *Solam convenientiam sive rationem loquebantur. Argumentum sonabat in ore omnium et asinum nominare vel hominem aut aliquid operum naturae instar criminis erat et a philosopho alienum. Impossibile credebatur convenienter et ad rationis normam quicquam dicere aut facere, nisi convenientis et rationis mentio expressim esset inserta. Metalog. lib. i., c. lii.*

<sup>2</sup> *Recentes magistri e scholis et pulli vulnecum e nidis, sicut pari tempore morabantur, sic pariter, avolabant.*

<sup>3</sup> *Such cases must have occurred frequently, as John of Salisbury remarks: (Metalog. lib. i., c. iv.) Alii namque monachorum aut clericorum claustrum ingressi sunt et plerique suum correxerunt errorem, deprehendentes in se et aliis praedicantes, quia quicquid didicerant, vanitas vanitatum est et super omnia vanitas.*

<sup>4</sup> *The noticeable words of John of Salisbury: Si mihi non credis, claustra ingredi, scrutare mores fratrum et invenies ibi superbiam Moab et eam intensam valde, ut arrogantia absorbeat fortitudinem ejus. Miratur Benedictus et queritur, quod se quodammodo auctore latet lupo in pellibus agninus. Utique tonsuram et pullam vestem a supercilio distare causatur. Et ut rectius dixerim, supercilium arguit, eo quod tonsurae vestibusque non consonet. Ritus observationum contemnitur et sub imagine philosophantis spiritus fallacis elationis obrepat.*



character of their own minds, but only took a new direction in the same, and turned it upon objects which, after that change, more particularly occupied their attention.

An example of a change of the last-mentioned kind is furnished in the above-named Odo. Already, for a period of five years, he stood at the head of the above-mentioned realistic school; and indeed, by the severe life which he himself led, and to which he held his scholars, he had made himself universally respected and revered. But the study of the Bible and of the ancient fathers of the church, still lay remote from his pursuits, and he busied himself only with the philosophical writings of antiquity, so far as they were then known in the Latin language. Because he strove to imitate the pattern of the ancient philosophers, which, in those times of philosophical enthusiasm, could be the more easily represented as the highest ideal of perfection the less men derived their knowledge of antiquity from credible sources,<sup>1</sup> therefore many were inclined to attribute his severity of life to his emulation of those philosophers, rather than to the spirit of Christian asceticism.<sup>2</sup> On a certain time he happened to purchase of one of his scholars Augustin's work, *De libero arbitrio*, and had thrown the book into his library without taking any further thought about it. Two months afterwards, however, when he was explaining to his pupils the work of Boethius, *De consolatione philosophiae*, and in so doing was led to speak of freewill, he recollected the new addition he had lately made to his library, and ordered it to be brought to him. So strongly was he interested by it, that from thenceforth he began to expound the whole work to his scholars. Finally, in expounding the third book, he came to a passage which treats of the wretched condition of the souls absorbed in the pursuits of a worldly life, and excluded from the heavenly glory. This he thought himself bound to apply to himself and to the companions of his labours, because their science did not reach beyond the present world. He rose from his chair, and, bursting into tears, took his way to the church. The vanity of the pursuits in which he had hitherto

<sup>1</sup> We shall meet with an example of this further on in Abelard.

<sup>2</sup> The above-mentioned writer of the history of St Martin's abbey at Tours, cites it as the opinion of some: Eum hanc distractionem non exercere causa religionis, sed potius antiquae philosophiae consuetudinis.

been engaged, rose clearly before his mind ; four of his scholars joined him, prepared to follow him anywhere. He got himself admitted among the regular canonicals, became abbot, and afterwards archbishop of Cambray, and now applied his philosophical method to the defence of the doctrines of the church. He wrote a work on original sin, in which it is impossible not to perceive the influence of his philosophical realism. When the different positions of philosophy and theology thus came to be confounded together, theological controversies might easily grow out of the philosophical, and be carried on with even greater violence.<sup>1</sup>

This manifested itself in the way in which nominalism was suppressed at its first appearance, by a fusing together of the theological with the philosophical interest. Only, it may be a question whether Roscelin did not depart from the prevailing bent, not merely by his peculiar dialectical theory, but also by his theological principles, and indeed, the entire position he took in theology, thereby creating great alarm among the followers of that bent. There was unquestionably to be detected, as we have seen, in the dialects of Roscelin, a sceptical spirit, and a sceptical tendency ; and the same spirit might lead to the unsettling of everything, even in matters of Christian faith. The dangerous conclusions ascribed to Roscelin's dialectical theory by his theological opponents, had their origin no doubt in some feeling of this sort.<sup>2</sup> But it does not appear that any such sceptical tendency actually betrayed itself in his theology. We do not perceive that he actually ascribed more to reason in comparison with faith,—that he actually made the latter more dependent on the scrutiny of the former,—than other theolo-

<sup>1</sup> Characteristic of these times is an anecdote which occurs in the already mentioned life of Odo. One of the young clergymen of Tournay, who was made uneasy by the controversy between the realist and the nominalist schools, between his teacher Odo and Raimbert of Lisle, applied to a deaf-mute at Tournay, who passed for a soothsayer, to know on which side lay the truth.

<sup>2</sup> As when in a letter, not of Abelard's writing, but published in the collection of his works (p. 334), he is accused of doubting the reality of the gospel history, on the ground that such doubt necessarily followed from his principles: "If the conceptions," whole and part, "have no reality, it follows that the testimony of the gospel narrative, 'Christ ate part of a fish roasted on the coals,' cannot be really true," l. c.: *Hic sicut pseudodialecticis, ita et pseudochristianus, cum in dialectica sua nullam rem partes habere aestimat, ita divinam paginam impudenter pervertit, ut eo loco, quo dicitur Dominus partem piscis assi comedissi, partem hujus vocis, quae est piscis assi, non partem rei, intelligere conatur.*

gians. He spoke, in fact, not of a *trial* of "faith" by "reason," but of a *defending* of the former by the latter. As pagans and Jews defend their religion, so he maintained ought Christians to defend their religion;<sup>1</sup> and, in order to this, reason should minister to faith. To this, in fact, agreed also the dialectical theologians of the common stamp; nor did it in anywise conflict with the principle of the Augustinian philosophy of religion and doctrine. To be sure, everything depended on the manner according to which the idea of defending the faith should now be determined. Here there was still room for great differences of opinion. The defence of the faith which was held forth as a pretext, might be taken advantage of as a means of entering into a bolder examination of the church doctrines. Although the opposition between Roscelin and the other theologians rested on deeper grounds, yet it was only a subordinate and single point which furnished the occasion for attacking him. As he uniformly maintained that the dialectical exposition of conceptions should be made to subserve the defence of the church doctrines, so he was desirous of showing that, without his nominalism, the doctrine of the Trinity and of the incarnation of the Son of God could not be rightly presented. Considering, as he did, every universal to be a mere abstraction, and particulars as alone having reality, he argued that, if only the essence of God in the Trinity was called *una res*, and the three persons not *tres res*, the latter could not be considered as anything real. Only the one God would be the *real*; all besides, a mere nominal distinction, to which nothing real corresponded; and so, therefore, with the Son would the Father and the Holy Ghost also have become man.

It was accordingly necessary to designate the three persons as three real beings (*tres res*), the same in respect of will and power.<sup>2</sup> Such a view might, not without reason, draw down upon him the reproach of tritheism. At a council assembled in 1093, at Soissons, under the presidency of the archbishop of Rheims, Roscelin's doctrine was condemned as tritheism, and his fears of the wrath of the populace towards him, as a heretic, induced him

1 His words in Anselm's book, *De fide trinitat.* c. iii.: *Pagani defendunt legem suam, Judæi defendunt legem suam, ergo et nos Christiani debemus defendere fidem nostram.*

2 Anselm. l. c.: *Si tres personae sunt una tantum res, et non sunt tres res, unaquaeque per se separatim, sicut tres angeli aut tres animae, ita tamen ut voluntate et potentia omnino sint idem, ergo pater et spiritus sanctus cum filio incarnatus est.*

to a recantation. Thus, driven by the power of his opponents from his native land, he sought in England a place of refuge and field of labour. But he found himself deceived in his expectations; for, on the one hand, he encountered in the archbishop of Canterbury, the primate of the English church, the most zealous champion of realism and opponent of nominalism: while on the other hand, by maintaining a position in no way connected with his peculiar bent, but simply relating to an interest of the church, he incurred the violent displeasure of an important party. He set up the principle anew which had been held at an earlier period by zealots of the school of Hildebrand, and controverted by others, that sons begotten in priestly marriage—which, by the sticklers of the law of celibacy in the priests, was considered, however, a concubinage—should not be admitted to any ecclesiastical office. Now, since it was the case that, until the Hildebrandian principles had worked their way into the whole church, the number of married clergy was still very great, he must necessarily, by maintaining such a principle, excite against himself the hatred of multitudes, partly of sons from such marriages who already stood in some ecclesiastical office, partly of clergymen who lived in the bonds of wedlock, and who were desirous of handing down their office in their families. The anger of these men against him would be so much the greater, because, in such a contest, he could reckon on the support of a party at whose head stood the popes; for which reason the severe censors of morals among the clergy were ever feared and hated. Thus, driven by the wrath of his enemies from England, he returned back to France, where he was destined to engage in new controversies, till at length, wearied with disputing, he withdrew from the public stage, to a life of silent and quiet seclusion.

Roscelin's opponent, Anselm, is the man who exerted the most important influence on the theological and philosophical turn of the twelfth century. He was the Augustin of his age. What gives him his great importance, is that unity of spirit in which everything is of one piece—the harmony between life and knowledge, which, in his case, nothing disturbed. Love was the inspiring soul of his thought as of his actions. He was born at Aosta in Piedmont, in 1033. The good seed sown in his tender mind, by his pious mother, Ermenberga, seems to have had a singular

influence on the development of his powers. Even in childhood he occupied himself in meditation on divine things. Brought up among the mountains, he fancied that heaven was above their peaks, and that there God sat enthroned, surrounded by his court of state. A deep impression was left on his mind by a dream, in which he imagined that he ascended above the mountains to God, and was there refreshed by God's own hands with the bread of heaven. When a young man he was induced, by the morose temper of his father towards him, to leave the paternal roof and travel to France. After having wandered about in that country for the space of nearly three years, attracted by the fame of Lanfranc, he repaired to the monastery of Bec in Normandy, over which that teacher presided, and the dialectical bent which his mind here received, determined from that time and forever the course of his inquiries, and of his mode of thinking. In 1060, he became himself a monk in the monastery of Bec; and in 1063, prior of this monastery, as the immediate successor of his teacher, Lanfranc. His time was divided between the common exercises of devotion, the imparting of spiritual counsel, superintending the education of the youth in the monastery, guiding the souls of the monks at large, correcting the ancient manuscripts which had become disfigured with errors through the ignorance of the preceding centuries,<sup>1</sup> and study and meditation on the subject-matter of the Christian faith. Great part of the night was spent by him in these occupations; only a few hours were allowed for sleep. With the station he held in the monastery, were connected a multitude of little duties, unprofitable to the mind;<sup>2</sup> but the self-denial of love enabled him to accomplish all this business with conscientious fidelity; so that the time which he was desirous of devoting to his labours as an author, to study, contemplation, or prayer, had often to be spent in such employments.<sup>3</sup> The man of profound speculative intellect must let himself down—no easy task for him—to the business of teaching boys to decline.<sup>4</sup> He was an

1 *Libros, qui ante id temporis nimis corrupti ubique terrarum erant, corripbat*, says Eadmer, in his life of Anselm.

2 As he himself expresses it (*lib. i., ep. 42*): *Viles et steriles, quas tamen negligere non audeam, occupationes.*

3 *Lib. i. ep. 42*: *Non solum dictandi, sed et legendi et meditando sive orandi opportunitatem video remotam.*

4 As he writes to a young monk (*l. c. ep. 53*): *Tu acis, quam molestum mihi semper fuerit pueris declinare.*

enemy to the dark, rigid discipline of the monks. He endeavoured to make love the inspiring principle of education. An abbot who enjoyed a high reputation for piety having once complained to him that, with all the strict severity employed in the education of boys, still nothing was brought to pass : that, after all the stripes inflicted on them, they remained incorrigible, utterly stupid, and brutish,—Anselm replied to him : “ A beautiful result of your training, to convert men into brutes. But tell me, if you were to plant a tree in your garden, and shut it up on all sides so that its branches could not extend in any direction, what sort of a tree would it become, in case you should, a year afterward, give it freedom again ? Certainly, a good-for-nothing tree, with crooked, snarly branches. And would not the whole fault be your own, who forced the tree into such unnatural confinement.”<sup>1</sup> This comparison he applied to education after the following manner : “ So would it turn out with boys treated with the same severity, irrespective of their several different peculiarities. The evil propensities, restrained by mere force, would only thrive the more in secret ; and thus they would grow hardened against everything done for their improvement. Because they experience no love, no act of kindness or friendship from you,—they give you credit for nothing good, but imagine that all you do proceeds from hatred and malevolence. And because they have been educated by no one in true love, they can accost no one otherwise than with a cast-down countenance, and stolen glances.”<sup>2</sup> And I would fain have you tell me,” added he with some feeling : “ Why treat them with such hostility ? Are they not human beings : have they not the same nature with yourselves ? ” He then proceeded to explain how love and severity should be united in the educating of youth. He made the abbot conscious of the evil results which must necessarily follow from his mode of training. What great effects might be brought about by love, Anselm showed by his own example. He found in the monastery a boy by the name of Osbern, who was greatly prejudiced against him, and who possessed a

<sup>1</sup> *Itaque indiscrete oppressi, pravas et spinarum more perplexas inter se cogitationes congerunt, foveant, nutriunt, tantaque eas nutriendo vi suffulciunt, ut omnia, quae illorum correctioni possent adminiculi, obstinata mente subterfugiant.*

<sup>2</sup> *Cumque apud nullum fuerint in vera caritate nutriti, nullum nisi depressis supercilis, oculo obliquo valent intueri.*

most obstinate temper. But by little acts of kindness, by entering wholly into his peculiar ways, by overlooking many faults, when it could be done without disturbing the order of the monastery, he found means of overcoming, by the force of love, the resistance of an untoward disposition. He enchained the lad to himself, and then first began gradually to pursue with him a more earnest and strict course of discipline. As the boy grew up, a hearty friendship was formed between him and his teacher. Anselm promised himself great things, to be accomplished by his pupil, when a man in the service of the church. But Osbern fell into a severe fit of sickness. Then Anselm sat continually at the bedside of the beloved youth, nursing him day and night, and furnishing him with every means of spiritual and bodily support. After his death, he took care that, for a year, daily masses should be offered for his soul, and from all to whom he wrote he requested prayers in behalf of his beloved Osbern. On the education of young men generally, he bestowed the greatest care; being convinced that this period of life was best suited to the reception of divine things; that the higher impressions could then be the most easily and durably fixed. As wax, which, when neither too soft nor too hard, most perfectly and clearly gives back the impression of the seal, such was the relation of this age to boyhood on the one hand and more advanced age on the other.<sup>1</sup> He took great pains to excite in his young men an interest in the study of the ancient authors, only admonishing them to avoid everything in them which is obscene.<sup>2</sup>

But his love was shown no less to old age than to youth. He gave a proof of this in the deep interest he took in nursing Herwald, an old man so enfeebled by old age and disease as to be

<sup>1</sup> Videas hominem in vanitate hujus saeculi ab infantia usque ad profundam senectutem conversatum, sola terrena sapientem, et in his penitus obduratum, cum hoc age de spiritualibus, huic de subtilitate contemplationis divinae loquere, et perspicies eum nec quid velis quidem posse videre. Nec mirum, indurata cera est. E contrario consideres puerum, aetate ac scientia tenerum, nec bonum nec malum discernere valentem nec te quidem intelligere, de hujusmodi disserentem, nimirum mollis cera est et quasi liquens nec imaginem sigilli quoquo modo recipiens. Medius horum adolescens et juvenis est ex teneritudine atque duritia congrue temperatus, si hunc instruxeris, ad quae voles, informare valebis.

<sup>2</sup> See his exhortation to a young monk, to read as much as possible, and particularly of those authors which he had not been able to read with him: et praecipue de Virgilio et aliis auctoribus, quos a me non legisti, exceptis his, in quibus aliqua turpitudine sonat. Lib. i., ep. 55.

unable to move any member of his body except his tongue. He himself pressed the juice from grapes out of one hand into the other, and gave him to drink of it. After the death of the abbot Herluin, in 1078, Anselm was chosen as his successor; and in this new office also he made the spiritual interest his governing motive. He complained of many abbots, who neglected the spiritual, through an undue attention to the secular affairs of their convents, feeling it incumbent on them to see that nothing was lost of the property consecrated to God, *intrusted to their hands*, but allowing God's law to be obliterated from their hearts: for they were so earnest in being too cunning to be cheated by others, as to become adroit adepts in overreaching others themselves; they were so fearful of any useless expenditure, and of letting anything go without a good reason, that they became covetous, and allowed what they hoarded to rot without being useful to anybody.<sup>1</sup> A still wider field of action was opened to him, when, in 1093, he was called to England as archbishop of Canterbury. Inasmuch as he held it to be his duty, however, to maintain the independence of the church, according to the Hildebrandian principles, he became entangled by means of this high office in violent contests with the kings, William the Second, and Henry the First, which must have been extremely painful to a mind so amiable and so earnestly bent on the quiet of religious meditation. He took refuge with the pope. Urban the Second honoured in him at once the dignity of knowledge, and of the office which he held in the church. Three years he spent travelling about without a settled place of abode, in France and Italy. When in the army of the Norman duke, Roger of Sicily, whom he visited at his own request during the siege of Capua, he met among others certain Saracens, who, attracted by the fame of his amiable character, came to visit him. These he entertained in a friendly manner, and won even from them the most unfeigned respect. Soon after his return, in the year 1109, he died reconciled with all his enemies, and bestowing his blessing on all with his expiring breath.

<sup>1</sup> His words: *Sunt multi praelati nostri ordinis, qui quasi solliciti, ne destruantur res Dei in manibus eorum, agunt, ut dissipetur lex Dei in cordibus eorum, nam tantum conantur esse prudentes, ne decipiantur ab aliis, ut fiant astuti, ad decipiendum alios. Adeo sunt cauti, ne fiant prodigi et quae habent irrationabiliter perdant, ut avari fiant et quae servant, inutiliter putrescant.* Lib. ii., ep. 71.



Thus we see in him a man, whose doctrine and life were in perfect harmony with each other. While love shone eminently forth as the soul of his life, it formed also the central point of his system of faith and morals, as appears evident in that remarkable saying of his, that "if he had presented before him the hateful-ness of sin on the one side, and the torments of hell on the other, and were left to take his choice between the two, he would prefer to be pure from sin, and innocent in hell, rather than to be polluted with sin, and happy in heaven." Doubtless, in so saying, he was aware that he supposed what would be impossible. By this language he simply contradicted the sensuous and fleshly externalized notions of hell and of heaven. By the manner in which he felt himself constrained to decide in the choice between two impossible suppositions, he simply marked the necessary inner connection between sin and hell, and between holiness and heaven; he simply pointed at that which forms the peculiar ground of Christian hope in its essential inner bond of union with Christian love.<sup>1</sup> "To love others," said he, "is better than to receive proofs of love from others, for all gifts of love are of a perishable nature, but love itself is eternal, and in itself well pleasing to God."<sup>2</sup> He ever represented the disposition of love as that which alone gave their true worth to all Christian doing and suffering; so that according to the measure of this, was to be estimated the value of all good works, and of all renunciations, as he distinctly remarks in one of his letters.<sup>3</sup> "I have learned in the school of Christ, that whoever from true love to God, and to his neighbour, gives to him that needs, were it but a cup of cold water, or an alms, shall not lose his reward. The greater the love to God, and to his neighbour, which prompts a monk to deny himself the food set before him, the greater is the alms which he gives, and the greater the reward which he reaps." On his own person he practised the most rigid abstinence. He restricted, in every way, his sensual wants, so that his friends entertained fears

<sup>1</sup> This idea lies at the ground of the language which he employed to explain his meaning when the above-mentioned saying excited surprise. Cum constet, solos malos in inferno torqueri, et solos bonos in coelesti regno foveri, patet, nec bonos in inferno, si illuc intrarent, posse teneri debita poena malorum, nec malos in coelo, si forte accederent, frui valere felicitate bonorum.

<sup>2</sup> Eadmer's Account of his Life, c. v., § 41.

<sup>3</sup> Lib. i. ep. 41.

for his health; and love set them on inventing many little expedients by which to compel him to relax the severity of his self-discipline.<sup>1</sup> Even amid the splendour of the highest dignity in the English church, he preserved the rigid abstinence of the monk. We know this from a remarkable and characteristic incident, which at the same time evidences the force of love with which he bound others to his person. Queen Matilda of England, who clung to him with the deepest affection and reverence, as her ghostly father, was filled with great anxiety for him, when she had heard that, after long fasting, he was accustomed to take food, not from his own sense of hunger, but only by being reminded of it by his servant. She therefore wrote him a letter,<sup>2</sup> in which she begged him in the most touching manner, for the sake of his community, to be more indulgent to himself, lest by the severity of his abstinence he should lose the strength of his voice and thereby diminish his usefulness as a preacher, at least so far as not to be distinctly heard by those standing at a distance.<sup>3</sup> She brought up the example of Christ, who, by attending banquets as well as fasts, had sanctified eating.<sup>4</sup> Anselm replied to her, that although he could fast without being pained by hunger, yet he could and would, so far as it might be necessary and useful, strengthen his body by suitable nourishment.<sup>5</sup>

Severe as he was, however, towards himself, he was none the less indulgent towards others; and it gave him pain to see any one refrain from satisfying his hunger, out of any respect to himself. He looked with a friendly eye on those who ate at his own board, when they seemed to relish their food; he elevated his hand over them and gave them his blessing, saying, "May it do

<sup>1</sup> Eadmer relates, that only when engaged, while he was eating, in the discussion of some theological subject, he would, without thinking of it, take more food than usual, and the one who sat next to him took this opportunity to slip more bread before him.

<sup>2</sup> Lib. iii. ep. 56.

<sup>3</sup> Ne vox spiritualium aedificatrix rauescat et quae canonum ac dulce Dei verbum decoro, quieto remissione sermonis dispensare consueverat, id tanto remissius in futurum exequatur, ut quosque aliquantisper a te remotiores audientia ipsius voce privatos fructu etiam vacuos derelinquat. Nolite igitur, bone pater et sancte, nolite tam intempestive corporis viribus inedia destitui, ne orator esse desistatis.

<sup>4</sup> Christus Jesus, qui dedicavit jejunium, dedicavit et esum, vadens ad convivium nuptiarum.

<sup>5</sup> Licet sic possim sine famis molestia jejunare, satis tamen possum et volo, cum debeo, quantum expedit, corpus alimentis recreare.



you much good." He uniformly valued the spirit above the letter, and never scrupled to abate somewhat from the severity of the monastic rule, to sacrifice somewhat of the letter, whenever the spirit seemed to require it, whenever that charity which would avoid every occasion of giving pain to others, counselled him thereto. In the passage where this fact is stated by Anselm's disciple, the monk Eadmer, who wrote the account of his life, we recognise the spirit of his master, in his manner of defending this conduct against the censures he had drawn upon himself by such departures from the common usage, when he says that whoever enjoyed the good fortune of really understanding the life of Anselm, would consider it a thing far more deserving of praise, that occasionally, for good reasons, he relaxed somewhat from the severity of his habits of life, than if he had always stiffly adhered to them; for virtuous conduct consisted in acting rationally.<sup>1</sup>

One of those recluses who had so many opportunities of scattering among the crowds that flocked to visit them the word of exhortation, had begged him to give him some instructions as to the best manner of proceeding, in order to excite the laity who visited him to contempt of earthly things and longing after the kingdom of heaven. He drew up for him the following sketch: "My dear brother, God calls and asks you to bid for the kingdom of heaven. This kingdom of heaven is one whose blessedness and glory no mortal eye hath seen, no ear hath heard, and no heart of man can conceive. But that thou mayest gain some idea of it, take the following illustration. Whatever any one who is thought worthy of reigning there *wills*, that, whether in heaven or on earth, *is done*; and whatever he does *not* will, is *not* done. For so great will be the love between God and those who are to be in this kingdom,—and of the latter, one towards the other,—that all will love each other as they do themselves, and God more than they do themselves. Hence, no one there will be disposed to will anything else than what God wills, and what one wills all shall will, and what one or all may will, God shall will. It will therefore be with every individual and with all, with the whole creation and with God himself, as each shall will. And thus shall

<sup>1</sup> Nos, qui vitæ illius modum scire meruimus, magis in eo laudandum aestimamus quod a rigore sui propositæ aliquando pro ratione descendebat, quam si continue in ipso rigidus indiscrete persisteret. Ratione siquidem agi virtutis est, vitii vero contra.

all be perfect kings ; for that *shall be* which each *wills* ; and all will be at the same time with God as one king, as it were one man, because all shall will the same thing, and what they will shall be. God from heaven asks you to bid for such a good. Does any one inquire, for what price ? He is answered, He who will give the kingdom of heaven, demands no earthly price ; and to God, to whom belongs everything that exists, no one can give what he had not. And yet God does not give so great a good for nothing ; for he gives it to none who do not love it ; for no one gives that which he dearly values to him that cares nothing about it. Therefore *love* and *possess*. Finally, since to reign in heaven is nothing else than to be so united by love into one will with God, all holy angels and men, as that all at the same time possess the same power, love God more than thyself, and thou beginnest already to possess what there thou wilt have in a perfect manner. But this love cannot be a perfect one in thee, unless thou makest thy heart free from all other love ; for, like a vase which, the more you fill it with water or with any other fluid, will hold so much the less oil, so the heart excludes *this* love in the same proportion as it is carried away by some other love." Anselm was of a predominantly contemplative nature ; yet he devoted himself, unsparingly, to the public and outward duties to which he was called by his different fields of action.

Love formed, with him, the bond of union between the contemplative and the practical life. A distinguishing trait in his character was this inward placidity of mind, so well suited to religious meditation and speculation, which he never suffered to be disturbed by the multitude of cares that pressed upon him from without. In the midst of his business affairs, of his contests, and of his journeys, those speculative questions were ever thronging before his mind, which he sought to answer in the writings composed by him. What makes an important difference between Anselm and others, who passed over from simple, child-like faith to speculation, is this ; it was not, as in the case of others, the conflict of the flesh with the spirit, the reaction of natural reason against divine things,—not the stimulus of doubt, which incited him to speculation on the object-matter of faith. He was not seeking, by dint of thought, to find his way out from an inward schism to regain the lost certainty and repose of faith. The ob-

ject-matter of Christian faith was, to him, immediately certain ; his Christian consciousness was raised above all doubt. The experience of the heart was, to him, the surest evidence of the reality of that which faith guaranteed to him. But then, inasmuch as, with his sincere and undoubting faith, he united a mind profoundly inquisitive and speculative, and the latter too asserted its proper rights, he was convinced that that which approved itself to him as the highest matter in faith and in the experience of the heart, must also approve itself as such for thought ; that there is no schism in the spirit ; that that which, as the image of God, distinguishes man from the rest of creation, could not remain alien from the divine object-matter. Accordingly, he felt constrained to account to himself by a rational knowledge for that which, in itself, was to him the most certain of all things. Two remarkable<sup>1</sup> examples may serve to illustrate this connection in the life of his spirit. It was while he was still prior in the monastery of Bec, that, awakened just before matins, from sleep, he reclined on his bed, meditating how it was to be conceived that the prophets had viewed the past and the future, at once, as something present. And while absorbed in these thoughts, he sat, with his eyes fixed on the ground, he saw, directly through the wall, the monks, whose allotted business it was, passing about in the church, going up to the altar, putting everything in order for the mass, lighting the candles, and at length one of them ringing the bell to awaken the rest. When, at the sound of the bell, all the monks now rose from their beds and assembled together, Anselm was filled with amazement, and saw that it was the easiest thing for God to reveal the future, in the minds of the prophets, when he had enabled him to behold with his eyes, through so many thick partitions, what was going on in the church.<sup>2</sup> Now, whether we look upon this undeniably singular fact as the coincidence of a vision presented to the imagination with things that actually occurred outwardly, or as a real behold-

<sup>1</sup> The intimate connection between these two in Anselm, is admirably described by Eadmer: *Divinis scripturis tantam fidem adhibebat, ut indissolubili firmitate cordis crederet, nihil in eis esse, quod solidae veritatis tramitem ullo modo exiret. Quapropter (therefore this firmness of conviction was the basis of his thinking) summo studio animum ad hoc intenderat, quatenus juxta fidem suam mentis ratione mereretur percipere quae in ipsis sensit multa caligine tecta latere.*

<sup>2</sup> Eadmer, ii. 9.

ing, not confined by spatial limitations, and proceeding from some inner sensorium at the foundation of the organs of outward sense, similar to what is affirmed of the somnambulist states,—this psychological phenomenon, whatever we may think of it, manifestly furnished Anselm an analogy by which to explain the prophetic intuition. The idea lying at bottom is, that, as in the appearance in question, the separating interval of space was, for this intuition, annihilated, so the separating intervals of time are removed for the intuition of the prophets.

The second example is as follows : On a certain occasion, when Anselm was profoundly reflecting how everything that belongs to the doctrine concerning God, his essence, and his attributes, might be summed up and comprehended in one brief argument,<sup>1</sup>—the thought haunted him everywhere, so that he could neither eat nor sleep quietly. Even his devotions at matins, and other seasons of church-worship, were thereby disturbed. Already, he was on the point of repelling all these thoughts, as a temptation of Satan. But the more he struggled against them, the more importunately they thronged in upon his mind. And one night, during the celebration of vigils, his thoughts all at once became clear ; his heart swelled with delight, and he immediately recorded the train of reflection which had given him this high satisfaction,—and this was the origin of his *Proslogion*. Thus were the religious and speculative bents, in his case, united together ; and the works, from which his mind derived all its nourishment, and which, as he continually studied them, gave the impulse to all his inquiries, were the Bible and St Augustin.<sup>2</sup> Thus too in his controversy with Roscelin, the philosophical and theological interests were most closely united. Nominalism appeared to him as a mode of thinking which was utterly without power to rise above the things of sense ; which did not allow reason to come round to itself,—to the consciousness of its own peculiar essence, which, by refusing to acknowledge the reality of ideas, made all knowledge impossible. “ Reason,” says he, concerning the Nominalists, “ which should rule and direct over everything in man, is with them so beclouded by images of sense, that they cannot

<sup>1</sup> The ontological proof, hereafter to be mentioned.

<sup>2</sup> Eadmer, i. 68 : *Nihil asserere, nisi quod aut canonicis aut Augustini dictis incunctanter posse defendi videret.*

extricate themselves from their fetters, and look away from them to that which reason should contemplate alone, and purely in her own spiritual essence."<sup>1</sup> The Christian ground-doctrine, of the incarnation of God, seems to him to be one incompatible with nominalism: "For," says he, "how can one who occupies this position, conceive a union of God with human nature? If there are no persons at all except human persons, the conception of human nature, of humanity, is destitute of all reality."<sup>2</sup>

It is plain, we allow, from what has been said, how very much the tranquil course of religious and theological development in Anselm differed from that of Augustin, which passed through so many stormy trials; but both were led, by different ways, to the same result, that the right understanding of the truths of faith can proceed only from Christian consciousness,—presupposed faith and inward experience. The Augustinian principle, respecting the relation of the scientific system of doctrines to faith, "*fides precedit intellectum*," was accordingly also Anselm's, and by his means first brought over into the medieval theology. He unfolded and defended it in his controversy with Roscelin, although the latter had, properly speaking, offered nothing against it. Anselm, like others, seized hold of the words in Isaiah vii. 9,—understood according to the translation of the Vulgate,—which had been employed from very early times as a classical proof-passage on this point. "Every Christian," says he, "must ever hold fast the same faith *without doubting*; and while he loves it, and lives according to it, seek humbly to discover, so far as he may be able, the reasons why it is so."<sup>3</sup> If he is able to understand them, let him give God thanks. If he is not able, let him bow his head in reverence; for self-confident human wisdom will sooner break its own horn than succeed in overturning this rock." He rebukes those who boldly start the highest questions respect-

1 De fide trinitatis, c. ii.: Propterea a spiritualium quaestionum disputatione sunt exsufflandi. In eorum quippe animabus ratio, quae et princeps et iudex omnino omnium debet esse, quae sunt in homine, sic est imaginibus corporalibus obvoluta, ut ex eis se non possit evolvere nec ab ipsis ea, quae ipsa sola et pura contemplari debet, valeat discernere.

2 Qui non potest intelligere, aliquid esse hominem, nisi individuum, nullatenus intelliget, hominem assumptum esse a verbo, non personam, id est aliam naturam, non aliam personam esse assumptam.

3 Semper eandem fidem indubitanter tenendo, amando et secundum illam vivendo, humiliter, quantum potest, quaerere rationem, quomodo sit.

ing the faith, before they have obtained from faith the wings of the mind. Their errors he attributes directly to the inverted method which they pursued in their investigations ; to the fact that they were for having the *intellectus* precede the *fides*. When such persons were inclined to dispute on matters of which they had had no experience, Anselm said, it was as if a bat, or a nocturnal owl—creatures that can see the heavens only by night—should contend respecting the beams of the sun, at noonday, with eagles, that gaze directly at the sun himself. “First, then, the heart must be purified by faith ; the eyes must be enlightened by observing the commandments of the Lord. We must become children, in humble obedience to the divine word, before we can understand the wisdom which God has hidden from the wise and prudent and revealed unto babes. We must first renounce the flesh, and live after the Spirit, before we may venture to investigate the deep things of faith ; for the natural man has no perception of divine things. The more we practise, in active obedience, that which the Holy Scriptures teach us for practical living, and so nourish ourselves, the greater shall be our progress in that which gives satisfaction to the cravings of the mind after knowledge. He who believes not, will not experience ; and he who has not experienced, will not understand ; for, as high as actual experience is above the mere hearing of a thing, so high is *his* knowledge who has the experience of faith above his who barely knows by report. The practical is so closely connected with the theoretical, that not only can no one rise to a higher stage of knowledge without faith, and keeping the divine commandments, —but, sometimes, the very understanding bestowed is withdrawn, and faith itself destroyed, because a good conscience has been neglected.” Anselm refers here to what St Paul says, in the first chapter of Romans, respecting such as did not like to retain God in their knowledge.

His theology pursues, therefore, the two directions ; first, of defending the independence of faith, and its inviolable dignity, against a proud—or, what at least seems to him a proud—spirit of dialectical speculation ; and, secondly, of pointing out the rational mode of apprehending and unfolding the truths of faith, and showing their agreement with divinely enlightened reason. In Anselm, we find heart and reason, feelings and knowledge,



the mystical and the speculative elements, beautifully united. The substance and matter of his faith was that given him by the tradition of the church ; but his own subjective life of faith had developed itself in the study of the sacred writings. Since that which pertains to the church, and that which pertains to Christianity, were in his mind intimately fused together from the first, since with this spiritual bent he *read* and *lived* himself into the sacred Scriptures, he involuntarily moulded everything he derived from them into the Catholic form. To profoundness of feeling and thought he united acuteness of understanding ; yet, in him, profound thought predominated above acuteness, and the religious interest was everywhere the ruling one. Accordingly, it might easily come about that into the formal argument, which, on independent examination, might fail to satisfy the demands of the logician, he would unconsciously introduce matter derived from the depths of his religious consciousness, and so fancy that he had demonstrated what he was certain of prior to all proof, and what otherwise could not by such demonstration become matter of conviction. Often must we distinguish, in his case, between the profound ideas lying at bottom, and the faulty syllogistic form of their setting forth.

Thus, in Anselm, we see the different main directions of the spirit that actuated his times harmoniously combined. But the spiritual elements that were blended together in him became separated in the progress of the spiritual life of this period, and proceeded to antagonisms which belong amongst the most significant appearances of the twelfth century. Controversies arose which were at first necessary, in order to conduct the unfolding process of theology to its decision. In particular, the abbot Bernard of Clairvaux, and Abelard, in the beginning of the twelfth century, appear to us as the representatives of the two main theological directions that started forth from the unity in which they had been combined in Anselm ; one, issuing from the life of feeling, the practico-mystical ; the other, the dialectical tendency.

In the first place, as it respects Bernard, it will be necessary here to refer back, to what we observed in the history of monasticism, concerning his religious position. We saw that the experience of the heart, growing out of faith, was with him the

main thing ; that he allowed that sort of knowledge in religion alone to be the right one, which leads man back into the recesses of his own heart, and teaches him to be humble. The man, whose entire life belonged to monasticism, and that mode of intuition which lies at the bottom of it,—contemplating the matter from this point of view,—did not consider the highest aim of the Christian life as genuine Christianity required that he should do,—the humanization of the divine, the ennobling of all that is human by a divine principle of life,—but a stage of Christian perfection above the purely human ; a soaring upward of the contemplative spirit, that leaves all that is human behind it. The highest, to his apprehension, is not that which is to be reached by the harmonious development of all the powers of man's nature ; but it is the rapture of inspiration, which, overleaping all intermediate stages, antedates the intuition of the life eternal. "The greatest man," says Bernard, "is he, who, despising the use of things and of sense,—so far as human frailty may be permitted to do so,—not by a slowly ascending progression, but by a sudden spring, is sometimes wont to reach in contemplation those lofty heights."<sup>1</sup> To this kind he reckons the account of St Paul, how he was caught up to the third heaven.<sup>2</sup> He distinguishes three different stages, or positions : "That of a practically pious life, maintained amidst the relations of civil society, where sense and the things of sense are used in a sober and orderly manner, according to the will of God ; second, where one rises by a gradually progressive knowledge from the revelation of God's invisible essence, in creation, to that essence itself ; third, and highest, where the spirit collects its energies within itself, and, so far as it is divinely sustained, divests itself of things human, to rise to the contemplation of God."<sup>3</sup> At this last stage, the man attains immediately to that which is the aim of

<sup>1</sup> *Omnino maximus, qui spreto ipso usu rerum et sensuum, quantum quidem humane fragilitati fas est, non ascensoriis gradibus, sed inopinatis excessibus volare interdum contemplando ad illa sublimia consuevit. De consideratione, lib. v., c. l., § 8.*

<sup>2</sup> *Excessus, non ascensus, nam raptum potius fuisse, quam ascendisse, ipse se perhibet.*

<sup>3</sup> *Dispensativa est consideratio, sensibus sensibilibusque rebus ordinate et socialiter utens ad promerendum Deum. Aestimativa est consideratio prudenter ac diligenter quaeque scrutans ac ponderans ad vestigandum Deum. Speculativa est consideratio se in se colligens et, quantum divinitus adjuvatur, rebus humanis eximens ad contemplandum Deum.*

all aims, the experience of the divine. To the same point, the other two stages also tend, but by a longer way. That which is highest, cannot be taught by words, but only revealed through the Spirit. No language can explain it; but we may by prayer and purity of heart attain to it, after we have prepared ourselves for it by a worthy life."

Again, he compares together the three different relations of the mind to the knowledge of religious truth, expressed by opinion, faith, and intellectual apprehension (*opinio, fides, intellectus*). "Intellectual apprehension" proceeds from rational knowledge; faith reposes on authority; opinion holds only to the probable. The two former are in possession of the truth, but in different ways; faith possesses the truth, but enveloped and hid under a veil; intellect possesses it unveiled, and revealed. It is especially important to distinguish these three operations of the mind, and to hold them to their respective provinces; to take care that faith does not seize, as a matter of certainty, upon what belongs to bare opinion; or that opinion does not call in question the settled convictions of faith. If opinion affirms with authority, it is presumptuous. If faith companies with doubt, it is weak. If intellection attempts to force open the sealed treasure of faith, it is wanton self-will rebelling against the majesty of the divine. Faith is a sure prelibation of truth, as yet not made clear,—a foretaste, growing out of the bent of the will. The following characters, or marks, therefore, are brought together in faith: the bent of the will, whereby conviction is determined; practical appropriation of the truth; living fellowship with divine things, which are still hidden from knowledge. Conviction here is not determined by outward reasons, as in the case of knowledge; it proceeds from something subjective, from a bent of the disposition towards the divine; and the conviction which proceeds from this source is a sure one. Intellection is a certain and clear knowledge of the invisible. The difference, therefore, between intellection and faith, is not constituted by the degree of certainty, but by the degree of clearness; that being wrapped up in faith which is unfolded to intellection.<sup>2</sup> "There is nothing

<sup>1</sup> Voluntaria quaedam et certa praelibatio neeodum propalatae veritatis.

<sup>2</sup> Quod etsi non habet incertum, non magis quam intellectus, habet tamen involu-  
crum, quod non intellectus.

we long to know, more than that which we already know by faith ; therefore we desire that, to the certainty already given in faith, should be added the clearness of knowledge. To our blessedness nothing more will be wanting, when that which is already certain to us by faith shall also be seen by us without a veil."<sup>1</sup> It would therefore be doing Bernard injustice to assert that he altogether discarded the striving after knowledge, that he was a stranger to all such longings of the mind. The satisfaction of this need, implanted in the mind, he reckoned in fact among the things that constitute the blessedness of the eternal life ; nor would he banish such a striving even from the condition of the present life, although he himself was more inclined to that contemplation which is fed from the heart. But a striving, not conscious of its proper limits, not respecting the sacred precincts of faith, violating the simplicity and humility of faith and the warmth of feeling, the striving of speculation, was hateful to him. Had speculative theology ever marched onward in the path marked out by Anselm, Bernard could easily have come to an understanding with it ; and, although his own path was a different one, yet have entertained friendly feelings towards it. But the case was altered by the bold appearance of Abelard.

Peter Abelard, born 1079, at Palais, not far from Nantes in Brittany, was already in the first years of his youth seized with an enthusiasm for those dialectical studies. He was endowed with splendid natural gifts ; but he was perhaps too conscious also of this fact.<sup>2</sup> A too intense feeling of self, that constantly received fresh nourishment from the brilliant recognition which his talents soon met with, was the moral failing which, from the outset to the evening of his life, he had especially to contend against, and which contributed to involve him in those strong trials that finally reacted to chastise and purify his heart. He soon fell into controversy with his teachers ; for example, with that renowned dialectician, master of a realistic school, William de Champeaux of

1 Nil autem malumus scire, quam quae fide jam scimus. Nil supererit ad beatitudinem, cum, quae jam certa sunt nobis fide, erunt aequae et nuda.

2 In a work written in a later period of his life, after his various misfortunes, he says of himself: Confido in ea, quae mihi largior est, ingenti abundantia, ipso co-operante scientiarum dispensatore, non pauciora me praestitutum eloquentiae peripateticæ munimenta, quam illi praestiterunt, quos Latinorum celebrat studiosa doctrina. Dialectica ed. Cousin, p. 228.

Paris. In Melun, Corbeil, Paris, he acquired, by his proficiency in dialectics, a great name and much approbation. From the study of philosophy, he was desirous of passing over to theology; although he was still far from possessing that disposition of heart without which such studies cannot be successfully prosecuted. He went to Laon, to hear Anselm, then a famous teacher; but not finding himself satisfied with his teachings, soon had the boldness to stand forth as teacher himself, in rivalry with his master. Driven thence, he betook himself to Paris; and there, by his philosophical and theological lectures, he created a great sensation. From Rome, Italy, all parts of France, the Netherlands, Germany, young men flocked to hear him. His fame and plentiful income tempted him to remit more and more a proper watchfulness over himself, so that he gradually let drop the reins and abandoned himself to his pleasures.<sup>1</sup> He himself afterwards recognized, in the misfortunes which he thus brought upon himself, the means appointed by divine providence for removing the moral disorders of his life, among which he names in particular pride and luxury.<sup>2</sup> The outrageous inflictions he suffered, induced him to withdraw from the world, and in the year 1119 he entered, as monk, the abbey of St Denis, near Paris. Here he was importunately beset with petitions, from many of his earlier disciples and other young clergymen, to recommence, in a new sense and spirit, and for the glory of God, those courses of lectures, which he had formerly given for the purpose of gaining money and a name. The monks of St Denis, with their licentious manners, rejoiced at any opportunity of getting rid of a severe and bitter censor, and were therefore extremely urgent that he should follow this invitation. A priory belonging to this abbey, and bordering on the province of count Theobald of Champagne, was given up to him for this object; and soon he became, once more, the centre of attraction for the youth, who flocked from all quarters to his lectures, so that neither rooms nor means of subsistence sufficed

1 Abelard says of himself, in his *Historia calamitatum*: Cum jam me solum in mundo superesse philosophum aestimarem nec ullam ulterius inquietationem formidarem, frena libidini coepi laxare, qui antea vixeram continentissime. Et quo amplius in philosophia vel sacra lectione profeceram, amplius a philosophis et divinis immunditia vite recedebam.

2 Cum igitur totus in superbia atque luxuria laborarem, utriusque morbi remedium divina mihi gratia, licet nolenti, contulit.

for their accommodation.<sup>1</sup> It is true, he still continued to busy himself here also with the explanation of ancient authors, and the resolution of dialectic questions; but the new and more serious turn which misfortune had given to his mind, induced him to direct his attention more particularly to theological subjects, which he treated according to his own peculiar dialectical method.

In compliance with the wishes of his auditors, he commenced embodying his theological doctrines in a work, in which, doubtless, he intended to embrace the whole system of faith, but which did not extend beyond the doctrine of the trinity; *Theologia*, or *Introductio in Theologiam*.<sup>2</sup> From this work, it appears evident that a controversy had already broken out between the dialectical and the practical church party. Abelard writes, not without a certain degree of excitement, against the antagonists of the new dialectical method. He makes it a matter of complaint, that so many, who had no conception of a rational exposition of the doctrines of faith, sought to console themselves for their inaptitude by extolling in the highest terms that glowing zeal of faith, by virtue of which one believes without inquiry or examination.<sup>3</sup> He describes them, therefore, as the advocates of a blind belief on mere authority. He says, in opposition to such, that, in following their notions, no means would be left to refute the followers of a false religion, and to reclaim them from their errors. All idolaters, too, might plant themselves on the same principle.<sup>4</sup> If this party affirmed that the truths God had revealed could not be understood in the present life, this would

<sup>1</sup> He himself, in giving the history of his misfortune, remarks with regard to his lectures, what certainly we have no reason to consider as exaggerated: Ad quas tanta scholarium multitudo confluit, ut nec locus hospitibus nec terra sufficeret alimentis.

<sup>2</sup> In his preface, he even uses the expression: Sacrae eruditionis summa quasi divinae scripturae introductio.

<sup>3</sup> Nunc plurimi solatium suae imperitiæ quaerunt, ut cum ea de fide docere nituntur, quae ut etiam intelligi possint, disserere non sufficiunt, illum maxime fidei fervorem commendent, qui ea quae dicantur, antequam intelligat, credit, et prius his assentit ac recipit, quam quae ipsa sint vident et, an recipienda sint, agnoscat seu pro capto suo discutiat. Lib. ii., p. 1061.

<sup>4</sup> Cujusque populi fides, quantamcumque astruat falsitatem, refelli non poterit. Respondere poterit, secundum nos ipsos etiam de fide ratiocinandum non esse, nec a nobis alios impeti debere, unde nos ab aliis censemus impetendos non esse. Lib. ii., p. 1069.

lead to Montanism: it would follow from it that the sacred authors had been blind instruments of the Holy Spirit, and did not themselves understand what they wrote. A faith that sprung up so easily, that was not the result of examination, could never possess firmness. He appealed to the words of Sirach xix. 4, "He who believes soon, is fickle-minded." Men who are not of easy faith, require reasons, that may determine them to believe either rational arguments or facts. Thus Thomas, Paul, were led to the faith by facts; and the greater the difficulty which Paul encountered in making his way to the faith, the stronger his faith proved to be after his conversion." He argued, that this apostle preferred the gift of prophecy above all other gifts of the Spirit, because it enabled him to expound that which is contained in the collective matter of religious consciousness, in a way calculated to convince others; and undervalued the gift of tongues, because the former faculty was not connected with it.<sup>1</sup>

He distinguished different stages in the growth and development of faith. In the way just described, arises only the first degree of faith, religious conviction, determined by the force of rational arguments or of objective facts. This is, as yet, no such faith as has merit in the sight of God. From this is developed by the supervention of love, a faith which, without allowing itself to be led astray by outward appearances, recognizes something as indisputably true on account of God's word; where the love that trusts in God requires no other reason, as in the case of Abraham's faith.<sup>2</sup> But the first-mentioned faith is only a preparatory step, though not on that account to be despised. Abelard, accordingly, supposes the following process of development. "One first inquires into the reasons which show the truth of Christianity; thus faith obtains its warrant. Out of this proceeds next, by the power of the Holy Spirit, the confidence of religious conviction in reference to things unseen. Faith ever has reference to the invisible things of God. The visible and sensuous may furnish a foothold or occasion for faith, an outward vehicle, whereby that which is the object of faith manifests itself

<sup>1</sup> Thus he explains the prophetari: *Ea quae dicuntur exponere et eorum intelligentiam aperire.* L. c. p. 1062.

<sup>2</sup> Distinguitur itaque fides talis a fide Abrahae, qui contra spem in spem credidit, nec naturae possibilitatem, sed promittentis attendit veritatem. Lib. ii., p. 1060.

to the mind ; but not the object of faith itself. Even Thomas, to whom our Lord said, ' thou believest because thou hast seen,' did not believe on that which he saw. He *saw* the sensible appearance, and he *believed* only in God, concealed under the same.<sup>1</sup>

Among the germs of a new theological development, which Abelard only failed to prosecute far enough, and take advantage of, belongs this also, that, in allotting to faith its peculiar province and determining its limits, he separated from it things that concerned not the religious interest, things that to this were a matter of indifference ; as, for example, the question whether Christ was a man of this or that stature, whether he had preached in this or that city :<sup>2</sup> a distinction which might have led him still farther to separate that which is properly an article of faith from that which is not such, but belongs to the same class with other historical facts ; and in the sacred Scriptures themselves, to separate that which is properly the word of God, from that which is not such ; and we may actually find, in Abelard, the indications of a freer mode of apprehending the idea of inspiration. In connection with this particular, must be taken also a remark of his, in his commentary on the epistle to the Romans, that perhaps what the gospel has taught concerning faith, hope, and charity might suffice for salvation.<sup>3</sup>

Lying at the basis of all Abelard's teachings, is the distinction which he makes between religion in itself, that has its root in the

<sup>1</sup> If Abelard (lib. ii., p. 1061) called faith, as compared to intuition (*ipsarum rerum experientia per ipsam earum præsentiam = cognitio*), simply in this relation, the *existimatio non apparentium*, an explanation which was interpreted so much to his discredit, yet he in nowise intended by this to put faith on a level with other mere fancies and opinions, or to disparage its worth. At the same time, he made it prominent, that faith is the *substantia rerum non apparentium*, which, in the Sentences, soon to be more particularly described, ed. Rheinwald, c. ii. (which section on faith corresponds in all respects with the *Introduct. theol.* p. 980), he thus explains: *Fundamentum et origo, unde ad speranda aliqua perducimur, credendo scilicet primum ea esse, ut postmodum speremus. Argumentum non apparentium, hoc est probatio, quod sint aliqua non apparentia.*

<sup>2</sup> *Sunt autem plura ad Deum pertinentia, quæ credi vel non credi nostra non interest quia sive credantur sive non credantur nullum incurrimus periculum.* (The examples are taken from the Sentences.)

<sup>3</sup> Lib. i., p. 493: *Sufficere salutis fortasse poterant ea, quæ evangelium de fide et spe et caritate tradiderat.* Which assertion he contrived, however, to reconcile with the church doctrine, assuming that our Lord had reserved many things to be arranged and ordered by the apostles and later fathers, which, after having been once ordained, could not be disregarded without peril to salvation.



heart—the substance of faith in itself, and the knowledge thence derived, the development of that which is given in immediate consciousness, under the form of knowledge. Therefore, he employs in defence of the dialectic science, an argument of the same sort as the Alexandrian church-teachers had employed before him, that although nothing is gained by that science for faith in itself, yet thereby the faculty is acquired of unfolding and vindicating scientifically the truths of faith. Two individuals may be equal as to the strength of their faith and piety; and still, on the side of Christian knowledge, one may be eminently superior to the other, because he is enabled, by his earlier scientific culture, to present the common object-matter of Christian faith in a scientific form. Piety, without scientific study, can here avail nothing. He was wont, for illustration, to compare Paul and Augustin on the one hand, with Peter and Martin of Tours on the other. The two former have no advantage, in respect of piety, over the two latter; yet they are as distinguished from them in point of knowledge, as we might be led to suppose they would be, from their earlier scientific education.<sup>1</sup> These remarks of Abelard are grounded on a mode of apprehending the idea of inspiration somewhat different from the one common at that time, on a habit of distinguishing the divine and the human elements in inspiration; for it follows, indeed, from this, that the different ways in which Peter and Paul present divine truth, are to be ascribed, not so much to a divine causality, as to the difference of their human individuality, and of their human education. It is evident, what a germ was herein contained of a quite different view of the Bible, of quite different principles of biblical interpretation, from any which then prevailed. Abelard, certainly, was not aware of all the wide differences here involved; but we shall see, however, that he did consciously give another shaping to the idea of inspiration.

Furthermore, he held that, in defending divine truth against those who attacked it with the weapons of worldly science, it was absolutely necessary to place one's self at their position, and to

<sup>1</sup> Paulus quippe Apostolus licet non major merito quam Petrus videatur, vel confessor Augustinus quam Martinus, tanto tamen uterque altero majorem in doctrina gratiam post conversionem habuit, quanto antea majore literarum scientia pollebat. Lib. ii., p. 1053.

become acquainted with and apply the arts which they made use of.<sup>1</sup> We should carefully distinguish, in worldly science, that which is God's gift in it, from that which arises from man's abuse of it. "Far be it from us to believe that God, who makes use of evil itself to promote good, should not also so order all the arts which are his gifts, that they too may subserve his glory, however much they may be perverted by bad men."<sup>2</sup> Upon this principle, the connection between God's work and human culture should be recognized even in the church teachers and apostles themselves.<sup>3</sup> When Paul says, "knowledge puffeth up," the very remark presupposes that it is something good in itself; for pride fixes upon that which, in itself considered, is good. Still, Abelard by no means felt himself bound to give a complete demonstration and a complete knowledge of the doctrine of the Trinity. He distinguishes between intellection (the *intelligere*), which corresponds to the position of faith, and cognition (the *cognoscere*), or the full intuition of the life eternal.<sup>4</sup> And he expressly declared: "We do not promise, on this point, to teach the truth,—a task to which we hold that neither ourselves, nor any other mortal, is competent; but we promise to teach at least something *probable*, something which approximates near to human reason, and which stands in no contradiction with our holy faith."<sup>5</sup>

He was as far removed as possible from that rationalist view which denies miracles. He defended the idea of the supernatural against an arrogant philosophy; and we shall hereafter be led to see the connection between his view of miracles and his doctrine concerning almighty power, and the creation and government of the world. His tendency and his principles led him only so far as to combat the supernaturalism which affirmed an absolute

<sup>1</sup> Alio modo non possumus, nisi has quas noverunt rationes, ex ipsorum artibus afferamus. Lib. ii., p. 1047.

<sup>2</sup> Absit enim hoc, ut credamus Deum, qui malis quoque ipsis bene utitur, non bene etiam omnes artes, quae ejus dona sunt, ordinare, ut haec quoque ejus majestati deserviant, quantumcunque male his abutuntur perversi.

<sup>3</sup> Ne a donis ejus alienae viderentur saeculares literae, si ad nullum eis commodum uteretur. Lib. ii., p. 1063.

<sup>4</sup> In opposition to those who maintained that the perfect knowledge of the Trinity was reserved to the life eternal, Abelard says, l. c. p. 1061: Profecto aliud est intelligere seu credere, aliud cognoscere seu manifestare, cognitio, that is, ipsarum rerum, experientia per ipsam earum praesentiam.

<sup>5</sup> L. c. 1047.

antagonism between the supernatural and the natural, and to demonstrate the harmonious connection between the two. From this harmonious agreement between the supernatural and the natural, showing the work of one God in original creation and in the kingdom of grace, he proceeded, as a starting-point, to justify the employment of the worldly sciences for the defence of Christianity and of its doctrines; saying of the opponents against whom he had to contend, "that they treated the matter as if God's works of creation stood in contradiction with divine revelation and the truths of faith."<sup>1</sup> He maintained, on the contrary, that men were bound to seek the analogies of things supernatural, by tracing out the connection of all God's works in nature. In this view, he found a reason for the frequent use of parables in the Bible,—God taking similitudes from the kingdom of nature for the representation of higher truths.<sup>2</sup> Quite in accordance with this view of the connection between revelation and nature, he supposed that in history also there was no such abrupt contrariety between revelation and natural development, but sought here after intermediate links, and was disposed to find, in the natural development of reason amongst the ancients, a point of entrance for revealed truths; and this direction of thought, in which he agreed with the Alexandrian theology, would have probably led him also to similar results as it had the older Alexandrian church teachers, if the fetters of the church doctrine had not confined him.

But if the truth was, that even the Alexandrians themselves, in this striving after a point of mediation, had allowed themselves to be deceived by apparent analogies; the same might happen still more easily with Abelard, since he knew the Greek philosophers only from the reports of others, his ignorance of the Greek language not permitting him to go back to the very sources.

<sup>1</sup> Quasi sacrae fidei et divinis rationibus ipsae naturae rerum a Deo conditarum inimicae videntur. Lib. ii., p. 1064.

<sup>2</sup> In tantum vero in ipsa factura delectatus Deus, ut frequenter ipsis rerum naturis, quas creavit, se figurari magis quam verbis nostris, quae nos confinximus aut invenimus, exprimi velit, ut magis ipsa rerum similitudine, quam verborum nostrorum gaudeat proprietate, ut ad eloquentiae venustatem ipsis rerum naturis juxta aliquam similitudinem pro verbis scripturae malit uti, quam propriae locutionis integritatem sequi. L. c.

<sup>3</sup> Abelard says, in his *Logic* (ed. Cousin, p. 205), that he had read nothing of Plato's, because his works had not been translated into Latin.

While it was impossible for him to arrive at any unprejudiced view of the doctrines of the ancient philosophers, he was still less in a condition to gain any correct notions respecting their lives, and respecting antiquity generally. Having no patience with the worldly lives of many churchmen and monks of his own times, he was the more inclined to draw an idealized picture of the strictness of life maintained by the ancient philosophers, which he held up for the purpose of shaming those Christians. And in this moral perfection of the ancient philosophers, he found a reason for supposing that God allowed them to attain already to the knowledge of those truths; that he, through his grace, vouchsafed to them such illumination, in order to evince, by their example, how much more well-pleasing to him was a life abstracted from the world, than one devoted to its pleasures. Abelard supposed especially that, in the idea of humility, in the recognition of God as the fountain-head of all true wisdom, a relationship might be traced between the Socratico-Platonic and the Christian positions; and that therefore what Paul says concerning the pride of worldly wisdom could not have referred to Socrates and Plato. The whole description which Paul gives, in the first chapters of the epistle to the Romans, of the corruption of the pagan world, could, as it seemed to him, have no reference to philosophers so distinguished for their strict, abstemious lives, but must have applied to a few cases, rather than to the majority.<sup>2</sup> And it is here evident we must allow that, setting forth as he did the lives of the ancient philosophers after an idealized pattern, and approximating the antique standard more nearly to the Christian, he would thus be led to overlook that which is peculiar to the latter, the characterizing distinction between nature and grace, between all other human qualities and the specifically Christian. Still, he did not go so far as to maintain that those ancients could, by their moral perfection, without Christ, have ever attained to salvation. On the contrary, he declared expressly that faith in the Saviour is a means of salva-

<sup>1</sup> Oportebat quippe tunc etiam, ut in ipsis præsingeretur; Deus, per aliquod abundantioris gratiæ donum, quam acceptior sit ei, qui sobrie vivit et se ab illecebris hujus mundi per contemptum ejus abstrahat, quam qui voluptatibus ejus deditus, spurcitiis omnibus se immergit. Lib. i., p. 1004.

<sup>2</sup> Constat quippe philosophos maxime continentes vixisse atque ad continentiam tam scriptis, quam exemplis multas nobis exhortationes reliquisse.

tion necessary for all ; but he would not allow that this faith was wanting in the above-mentioned philosophy ; for, had not the Sybils prophesied concerning the Redeemer, some of them even more plainly than any of the prophets ? And nothing certain could be inferred from the silence of the ancients ; nor was the annunciation of a Saviour to be found in the writings of every one of the prophets.<sup>1</sup>

If we inquire into the relation of Abelard's dogmatic bent, as seen in this work, to that of Anselm, we shall find that the former agrees somewhat with the latter in his principle, that "*fides praeceedit intellectum*." He saw, also, that religion has its seat in the heart ; that the true knowledge of the truths of faith presupposed their reception by the heart, and that inner experience which comes from faith. But in his view of the way in which this faith arises,—in his notion of an "intellection" going before faith,—he turned from the direction of Anselm. He assumed, as his own position, that faith proceeds first from inquiry, that it works itself out of doubt by means of rational investigation. In this respect, then, he makes faith develop itself out of intellection, because one must first know why and what he believes before he can believe ; though, in another respect, he acknowledged that this intellection has its root in faith. He distinguished two different kinds of faith, and of intellection. If in Anselm's account of the relation of *ratio* to *fides*, we mark the impress of that quiet religious life which was never interrupted or disturbed by a doubt,—so in Abelard's theory, we may trace the reflection of his religious development, which had not been so harmonious or so peaceful. We see how the reaction of that element of the understanding, so strongly predominant in him—against doctrines of faith received by tradition—asserted its full force, and how a variety of thoughts were suggested to his mind, which might have led him entirely astray from that simple, childlike faith ; and to which he must have allowed a much freer admission than would have been warranted by the standard of that childlike faith as held by the theologians of his time. His theology took schism and doubt for its point of departure, and could never wholly repudiate its origin, but always showed evi-

<sup>1</sup> Lib. ii., pp. 1007 et 1008.

dence of having been made up of conflicting and unreconciled elements.

He himself, it is true, in the account he gives of his contests, ascribes all the attacks upon his school to the jealousy of his opponents. But although this may have been true in part, yet it was assuredly saying too much. His enthusiastic pupils, who most gladly appropriated to themselves the scientific pretensions of their master, and retailed his assertions with exaggeration, must have especially contributed to provoke attacks upon him. As to the individual who was his first and his last opponent, though he misconceived Abelard's character and motives, yet he was not governed by personal passion, but by a simple interest for the cause of religion and of truth; and he was an entire stranger to the odious heresy-hunting spirit. This was Walter of Mauretania,<sup>1</sup> also called Walter a St Victore, because he belonged to the regular clergy of that church. In intercourse with Abelard's disciples,<sup>2</sup> he had heard them repeat such assertions as these: that Abelard knew how to exhibit the mystery of the Trinity as a matter perfectly comprehensible; he could make it perfectly clear to reason how three persons were to be conceived as subsisting in the unity of essence in God; how the Son was begotten of the Father, and the Holy Spirit proceeded from Father and Son. If he urged against them passages of Holy Scripture, from which it clearly appeared that the perfect knowledge of the divine essence was reserved to the life eternal, they replied that these passages did not refer to a perfect *knowledge* that was first to be acquired in the life eternal, but to the perfect *blessedness* of the righteous in communion with God, to the *enjoyment* of which they would then first participate.<sup>3</sup> Still, Walter was careful not to charge the master with the positions advanced by his pupils; as he was

<sup>1</sup> Not Mauretania in North Africa, but a place called Montagne in Flanders.

<sup>2</sup> In the letters of this person about to be referred to, there are, it is true, no exact chronological dates; still, the whole tone of the letter leads us to conclude that there had as yet been no public attacks made on Abelard; and this is confirmed by the fact that Walter of Mauretania takes notice of Abelard's theology only in the first form under which it appeared.

<sup>3</sup> D'Archery Spicileg. t. iii., f. 524: Quod istae auctoritates non remouent ab hac vita trinitatis perfectissimam notitiam, sed perfectam delectationem de illa scientia provenientem. In the writings of Abelard himself we find, indeed, no such assertion, but only the distinction between the intellectus in this life, and the intuition of the immediately present in the life eternal.

very well aware how easily a teacher may be misconceived, and how easily it may happen for pupils to ascribe to the master their own opinions, in order to give them additional authority.<sup>1</sup> He waited till he could get sight of Abelard's book, which has been mentioned; where, again, he met with many of these positions which had offended him, as uttered by his disciples. Nor did he even then stand forth publicly against Abelard; but wrote him a letter, in which he explained at large his doubts, and invited him, by mutual communications in writing, to come to an understanding with him on these points, since in this way the whole matter might be investigated in the most quiet manner.<sup>2</sup>

Walter was, to be sure, by no means a match for so practised a dialectician. It is remarkable that he brought against him the most contradictory accusations; on the one hand, that he attributed too much to knowledge; on the other, that he spoke too sceptically,—when in the preface to his work he observed, he did not promise so much to speak the truth, as to exhibit, in compliance with the requests of his pupils, his own opinions.<sup>3</sup> Who, in discoursing of the Catholic faith, could so express himself as if he were discoursing of a mere opinion? Who, on hearing another promise, not the truth, but only his opinions, would place any faith in what he held forth? Abelard was right, however, in warning his pupils against the delusive idea that any man could present absolute truth. He was right in distinguishing the truth of faith, in itself, from a human attempt to make it intelligible. Walter, again, in endeavouring to draw sharply the line of discrimination between the hither side and the yonder side in the knowledge of divine things,—in opposition to Abelard,—committed the mistake of robbing several passages in the Gospel of St John—which refer to the connection of the hither side and the yonder side in the life of Christian faith—of their true significance, and distorting their meaning. Thus, for example, he cited against Abelard, John xvii. 3, and understood here, contrary to

<sup>1</sup> Solet autem frequenter fieri, quod discipuli discordent a sensu magistrorum sive per imperitiam verba eorum male exponendo sive ad ostensionem sui aliquas novitates inducendo, quas majoris auctoritatis magistris suis licet ignorantibus consueverunt adscribere.

<sup>2</sup> Sine ira et disceptatione, quae animos disputantium et praesentialiter colloquentium frequenter solent commovere et mentis oculum obfuscare.

<sup>3</sup> Non tam nos veritatem dicere promittentes, quam opinionis nostrae sensum, quem efflagitant exponentes. Page 974.

the connection of ideas in the evangelical writer, the eternal life as something future.<sup>1</sup> With more propriety he could appeal to 1 Corinth. xiii. 12.<sup>2</sup> The other party presented in opposition to him, however, Matth. xi. 27, and John xiv. 9. In the heat of controversy, Walter was driven to refer even these passages, also, to the future life, and to adopt an arbitrary method of interpretation often resorted to in far later times; maintaining that here, as frequently in the prophetic writings, the preterite tense was substituted for the future, in order to express certainty. Yet here, he did not feel sure of his ground, and therefore added: although these passages might, like John vi. 40, refer to the present life, still, they treated only of a position held by faith, and the imperfect knowledge connected therewith,—just as the promise in John xvi. 13 treated only of that which in *this* life it was necessary for the faithful to *know* in order to salvation.<sup>3</sup>

The doctrines taught by Abelard in the book referred to, and in his lectures, afforded sufficient occasion for representing him—judged by the standard of the common theology—as a teacher of error. Owing to the want of unprejudiced reports<sup>4</sup> it is impossible to decide how much is to be attributed, in the first open attacks against him, to a pure interest for the cause of truth, and how much to jealousy and personal passion. Different motives may have operated together. Certainly, Abelard, under the existing circumstances, could expect to experience no better fate than Roscelin. At a synod held at Soissons, in the year 1121, he yielded to the power of his adversaries, and consented to cast his book with his own hands into the fire. He was for the present condemned, as a false teacher, to confinement in a monastery,

<sup>1</sup> It would undoubtedly be more common to use these passages thus, since even Abelard already referred to such a mode of apprehending them; and did not once use the good right he had to turn such passages directly in opposition to his adversaries: Quae (which refers to the Trinity) penitus in hac vita non posse intelligi asseverant, sed hoc ipsum intelligi vitam dicunt aeternam. Juxta illud Joann. 17, 3 et iterum: Manifestabo eis meipsum. Opp. lib. ii., page 1061.

<sup>2</sup> His verbis aperte insinuat, se ad praesens imperfecte et obscure videre Deum, sed in futuro ad perfectam et claram Dei notitiam perventurum, et sicut a Deo est cognitus, ita in futuro se divinam essentiam nosciturum.

<sup>3</sup> Nec intelligendum est, quod sanctis in hac vita positus filius notificaverit omnia, quae audivit a patre, ad futurum seculum pertinentia, sed potius omnia, quae sunt eis in praesenti necessaria, ut salutem consequantur.

<sup>4</sup> For what Abelard (himself a party concerned, and very violent) says, in his *Historia Calamitatum*, cannot be considered as altogether worthy of credit.



where he was to do penance. But as Abelard's patron, bishop Gottfried of Chartres, who sought to bring the dispute to a peaceful termination at the council, had already, by way of consolation, assured him, this mode of condemning him without a hearing would only serve to call forth in the greater number of his enthusiastic adherents a livelier sympathy for his cause, in a very few days Conon, the papal legate, who had presided at that council, permitted him to return back to the abbey of St Denis. But his restless spirit, which would never allow him to be silent where any antiquated prejudice confronted him with a lie, did not permit him to remain long here in the enjoyment of quiet. The monks, embittered towards him already on account of his lectures of reform, became still more excited by an assertion of his, which threatened greatly to injure the authority and interests of the abbey; which rested solely on the tradition that the person after whom it was named, the Areopagite converted by St Paul, was the founder of the French church. Now Abelard, in attacking this error, which had stood its ground for so many centuries,<sup>1</sup> afforded the angry monks the best opportunity for revenge; since he who would rob France of her patron saint could easily be held forth as the enemy of the empire and of the nation. He fled from the persecutions which assailed him to the territory of the count Theobald of Champagne. In the district of Troyes, he built himself a hermitage of reeds and straw, which afterwards he dedicated to the Holy Spirit, the Comforter (*Paraclete*), who permitted him here to find peace after so many storms. It was absolute poverty, as he himself relates,—the want of everything necessary for the support of life, which first induced him to resume his lectures in this place. Soon, multitudes of young men, of all ranks, resorted to the spot to hear him. Those who had been brought up in splendour and luxury shrunk not from sharing his deprivations, and imitating his strict mode of life. With the labour of their own hands, or with their substance, they provided for their own bodily wants, and rebuilt his chapel with stone. But the enthusiasm with which his pupils, scattered in all directions, spoke of him and of his teachings, was the means of draw-

1 In combating the error, he still did not light upon the truth; for he suffered himself to be misled by a false statement of Bede's, and to take this Dionysius for the bishop Dionysius of Corinth.

ing upon him new persecutions. He now retired from public notice, having accepted, in the year 1128, the priory of Ruits in Brittany. But the place became very annoying to him, on account of his quarrels with the rude, undisciplined monks. In 1136, he resigned this preferment, and for a year gave lectures again in Paris. His scholars were scattered over all France; and the writings which he had published since the time of those first contests, created a great sensation; new storms were thus excited against him, and the way was now prepared for a contest of more general interest and significance than any preceding one. Let us now first cast a glance at the writings which had meanwhile been published by him, and the doctrines in them which were particularly offensive to his times, so far as the subject is not immediately connected with the history of special doctrines.

His "Introduction to Theology," which had been condemned at the council of Soissons, he sent forth, under another shape, in his work<sup>1</sup> "on Christian Theology," but without softening the harshness of those passages which, in the first edition, had given offence to many. Some of them, on the contrary, were expressed still more pointedly than before. He endeavoured, in this work, to show more clearly the agreement between the ancient philosophy and Christianity. "In life and doctrine," he maintained, "the old philosophers came very near to apostolical perfection, and were not far, if at all, removed from Christianity; indeed, the very terms philosophy and Christianity were very nearly related to each other; for Christians were so called from Christ, the true wisdom, and they who truly loved Christ might, with propriety, be called philosophers."<sup>2</sup> "If the appeal to motives of fear and reward constituted the main difference between the Jewish position of servitude and the Christian position of grace and freedom, where love is held forth as the motive of all actions; then philosophy, which represents love to God as the highest motive, was, on this point, more nearly akin to Christianity than Judaism."<sup>3</sup> If it were objected that, with those philosophers,

<sup>1</sup> In Martene et Durand Thesaur. nov. anecdot. t. v.

<sup>2</sup> Cum nos a vera philosophia, hoc est sapientia Dei patris, Christiani dicamur, vere in hoc dicendi philosophi, si vere Christum diligimus. Theol. Christian, lib. ii., t. v., f. 1210.

<sup>3</sup> Morum et honestatis rationibus secundum caritatis libertatem, quod in gratia vocati sumus, non secundum Judaicam ex timore poenarum et ambitione terrenorum, non

the matter of discussion was certainly not love to God, but only love to what is good, he replied, that "this amounted to the same thing, since God is the original fountain of all good;"<sup>1</sup> a reply, indeed, very far from satisfactorily determining anything with regard to a religious principle of action; but he affirmed that the principle of love to God was also found actually expressed in them, as the motive to all true goodness. Hence the preaching of the gospel had met with a more ready reception from the philosophers than from the Jews; for it appeared more nearly conformed to the groundwork of their principles; differing, perhaps, from what they already possessed, only in the doctrine of the resurrection and of the incarnation of the Son of God: for the morality of the gospel, strictly taken, was but a reformation of the law of nature (*reformatio legis naturalis*), and this moral law of nature the philosophers had followed. On the other hand, the Mosaic law occupied itself more with those ceremonial ordinances which had a typical significance, than with the moral element, and more with external than with internal righteousness. But the gospel, like philosophy, estimated the worth of all actions by the disposition of the heart. Thus Abelard, from paying no regard to the connection between the ethical and dogmatic elements in Christianity, and hence failing to give prominence to what constitutes the grand distinction between the ancient and the Christian principle in morals, was brought up at a point where he seemed compelled to place Christianity in closer relation with the Hellenic philosophy than with Judaism; and the question would naturally suggest itself, What need, then, of Christianity? Has it only the merit of having perfected philosophical morality, and introduced it into the general consciousness of mankind? This was a position which Abelard, as we shall see by comparing it with his other doctrines, was very far from taking. At the same time we must not forget, that his impatience with the rudeness of his times, made him the more inclined to extol the life of antiquity. "Would that, by the examples of the

(this *non* is without doubt a false reading, for it manifestly stands in contradiction with what follows), *ex desiderio aeternorum, nobis plurimum philosophos certum est assentire.*

<sup>1</sup> Quodsi id minus videtur esse ad meritum salvationis, quod dicitur amore virtutis et non potius amore Dei, ac si virtutem vel aliquod bonum opus habere possimus, quod non secundum ipsum Deum ac propter ipsum ait.

heathens," says he, "the abbots of these times might at least be made ashamed of themselves, who, in the very eyes of their brethren the monks, that live on a spare and scanty diet, gorge, without blushing, vast quantities of the most costly viands."<sup>1</sup> He contrasts the example of Plato, who banished poets from his republic, with the bishops of his time, who, on high festivals, instead of wholly spending the sacred time in giving praise to God, invited jesters, dancers, and singers of libidinous songs to their tables, entertaining themselves the whole day and night with such company, and then rewarding them with great presents at the expense of the poor.<sup>2</sup> Nay more, they even profaned, with such sports, the very churches themselves.<sup>3</sup>

The ideas of Abelard, set forth already in his "Introduction," on the relation of *ratio* to *fides*, on the intellection proceeding from the interior religious life, we meet once more in this new form of his work. He declares himself strongly opposed to an aristocracy of knowledge in Christianity. He acknowledges that a right understanding of religious truths can only be obtained through the enlightening influences of the Holy Spirit; and that such influences are bestowed on none but the pure in heart. More was attained here by a religious life, than by intellectual talents. Nor could it be otherwise; for, if it were, our Lord would have signified that talents were more acceptable to him than a holy life. From the religion that has its seat in the feelings, everything should proceed, and back upon the same everything should react. He supposes a mutual action and reaction between knowing and feeling: "The more we feel of God, the more we love him; and, with progress in the knowledge of him, the flame of love grows brighter." Yet he is aware of the fact that religious life and intellectual culture do not always keep

<sup>1</sup> Erubescant ad hæc hujus temporis abbates, quibus summa religionis monasticæ cura commissæ est, erubescant, inquam, et respiscant saltem gentiliû exemplo commoti, quod in oculis fratrum vilia pulmentorum pabula ruminantium exquisita fercula ac multiplicia impudenter devorant, f. 1215.

<sup>2</sup> Quid in solennibus magnarum festivitatum diebus, quæ penitus in laudibus Dei expendi debent, joculariores, saltatores, incantatores turpium acciunt ad mensam, totam diem et noctem cum illis feriant atque sabbatizant, magnis postmodum eos remunerant præmiis quæ de ecclesiasticis rapiunt beneficiis, de oblationibus pauperum ut immolent certe daemoniis?

<sup>3</sup> Parum fortassis et hoc diabolus reputat, quod extra sacra loca basilicarum gerunt nisi etiam scenicos turpitudines in ecclesiam Dei introducat. f. 1240.

pace with each other; that a man may have more in his immediate religious consciousness than he is able to express or explain; since he may be destitute of the necessary organ for this, or the requisite degree of mental cultivation: "although they who to us seem simple and ignorant, and yet possess piety so much the more fervid, want only the ability to express that knowledge which divine inspiration bestows on them."<sup>1</sup> He himself declaimed against those of his contemporaries who set up to be teachers of theology without reforming their lives, and who, while living to the flesh, pretended to a special knowledge of the divine mysteries.

Furthermore, he published, after this work, his Commentary on the Epistle to the Romans, in which the dogmatic and ethical digressions constitute what is most peculiar.<sup>2</sup> Among those doctrines of this book which excited special remark, belongs Abelard's opinion respecting disinterested love to God. He held that the love which seeks a reward, and is not exercised towards God simply for his own sake, deserved not to be called love at all. The majority of men, indeed nearly all, had fallen into so wrong a state of feeling as to be ready to avow that, if they did not hope to obtain some benefit from God, they would cease to worship and love him. But God, even when he punishes, ought none the less to be loved; since he would not do this unless

<sup>1</sup> Quo plus de Deo a nobis sentitur, plus a nobis intelligitur et cum profectu intelligentiæ caritatis accenditur flamma, licet hi qui simplices ac idiotæ nobis videntur et ideo vehementer sint ferventes nec tantum exprimere aut disserere queant, quantum iis intelligentiæ divina inspiratio confert. Lib. iii., f. 1250.

<sup>2</sup> In a passage of this tract (lib. i., p. 513) he cites the first book, as follows: "In theologiae nostrae opusculo," and the passage he cites, the hint at the doctrine of the Trinity in the writings of the ancient philosophers, is actually to be found there. On the contrary (lib. i., p. 554), he speaks of his Theology as a work which still remained to be published: "Theologiae nostrae tractatui reservamus." But the consistency of these two statements with each other is explained by the fact that, in the last case, he is discoursing on the point how justificatio per Christum is to be understood,—a question he has not treated in his Theologia christiana, which has come down to us. It is evident, then, that he had it in view to extend that sketch, which embraced but a small part of the doctrines of faith, to the whole sum of those doctrines, as he was accustomed to hold them forth in his lectures, of which we have a copy in his *Sententiae*, published by Professor Rheinwald; and in this further prosecution of his theological system, then had in view, he intended to enter into the investigation of this question also. But the agitations of his life did not allow him an opportunity of executing his purpose. He also had it in view at that time to put forth a work on the subject of Ethics. Lib. ii., p. 560: 'Nostrae id ethicæ discussioni reservemus.'

justice required it, and so in his justice God would manifest himself as worthy of love. "Whoever seeks in God, not himself, but something else, does not in reality love *him*, but that other thing. But perhaps it will be said: although we seek our blessedness in God, yet it is a pure and sincere love; for supreme blessedness consists, indeed, in the very fact that God communicates himself to us."<sup>1</sup> To this he replies: "It is only then a pure love to God, when it has for its object only God as he is in himself; without respect to that which he communicates to us. In this case, we shall alike love him, in whatever way he may treat us or others. Such, in fact, is the true love of the wife for her husband,—of the father for his son; it will remain the same, even though they may experience nothing but detriment on account of the object of their love. "O that we might have," says he, "so upright a disposition of heart towards the Lord, as to love him far more on his own account, because he is so good in himself, than on account of the benefits which he brings to us! So would our righteousness fully render to him what he claims, that, because he is supremely good, he should be supremely loved by all. Fear, and hope of reward, are but the first step in piety: 'The fear of the Lord is the *beginning* of wisdom.' But the perfection of it, is pure love to God for his own sake."<sup>2</sup>

It is manifest, when we consider the doctrines of Bernard,<sup>3</sup> already explained, concerning the different stages or degrees of love, that these two men, who were so diametrically opposed to each other in their general mode of thinking, nevertheless agreed in what they regarded as moral perfection, with only this difference: that Bernard, that experienced and careful guide of souls, understood better how to distinguish the different stages of development in the religious life, and to let himself down to their necessities. Of the middle theory, attempted by Hugo a St Victore, we shall speak hereafter.

Abelard was the first, also, among the men of the new scientific direction, to compose a particular work on morals; namely, his *Scito te ipsum*.<sup>4</sup> Here, however, he put forth many a bold assertion, which sometimes for good reason, sometimes with-

<sup>1</sup> Quoniam Deus seipso nos, non alia re est remuneraturus, et seipsum, quo nihil majus est, nobis est daturus.

<sup>2</sup> Page 622, et seqq.

<sup>3</sup> Page 502.

<sup>4</sup> Pez. t. iii., p. ii., f. 646.

out any at all, would be likely to appear offensive to the church-theologians of his time.

Like Augustin, to whose authority, moreover, he appealed, Abelard stood forth in opposition to the externalizing and isolating tendency favoured by the practice of the church, which led men, in estimating the morality of actions, to regard rather the *materiel* of the action, the *opus operatum* of good works, than the standard of the inward disposition. As already in his Commentary on the Epistle to the Romans we saw him pointing to the pure love of God as the motive of all true goodness, so here to that outward, *quantitive* method of estimating moral actions, he opposed the principle that everything depended on the intention. This principle was, to be sure, not peculiar to him; it had passed over, through the influence of the Augustinian spirit, into the theological consciousness of his times, and in it theologians of opposite tendencies were agreed. Thus the mystic Richard a St Victore observes: "A work without a good intention is like a body without life. That which appears to be good is still not good without this."<sup>1</sup> By Abelard, this generally acknowledged principle was only placed at the head, and with the consequences flowing from it, still further unfolded. "All actions," said he, "abstractly and externally considered, are in themselves indifferent; the intention only gives them moral worth. Only when considered in connection with the intention of the agent are they capable of moral adjudication. That is the tree which yields either good fruit or bad."<sup>2</sup> This proposition he took up again in his work on Ethics, unfolding it still farther, with the important consequences which it involved. "God," he affirmed, "judges actions by the intention, not by the outward act."<sup>3</sup> "Two men may do the same thing; and yet it shall be entirely different, considered in reference to the different intentions of the

<sup>1</sup> Quod est corpus sine vita, hoc est opus sine intentione bona. Sicut vita a corde procedit, et se per omnia membra diffundit, sic et intentio bona de consilio surgit et virtutum opera ad meriti vegetationem animare consuevit. De statu interioris hominis Tractat. i., c. vii.

<sup>2</sup> Quia opera indifferentia sunt in se, nec bona nec mala, sive remuneratione digna videantur, nisi secundum radicem intentionis, quae est arbor bonum vel malum profrens fructum. Comment. in Roman. lib. i., p. 522.

<sup>3</sup> Non quae fiunt, sed quo animo fiunt, pensat Deus nec in opere, sed in intentione meritum operantis vel laus consistit. Omnia in se indifferentia nec nisi pro intentione agentis bona vel mala discenda sunt.

doers. The elect and the reprobate may perform the same works; the intention with which they perform them alone separates the one from the other." Thus he lighted upon the right way of deciding the contested question, whether there were actions indifferent (*adiaphora*); in how far all or none might be without any moral character. Nevertheless, he was, on the one hand, too much confined by the doctrines of the church, from which he by no means wished to depart, to follow out in a consistent manner all the consequences which his penetrating mind saw to be deducible from this weighty and pregnant principle; while, on the other hand, he was betrayed into false positions by pushing what was right in itself to an extreme, and was thus very apt in combating one error to fall into the opposite. He would drive a proposition, true in itself, to such lengths as could hardly fail to result in that sophistical method of treating morals, which presents the whole too much on the subjective side. For as the objective and subjective elements belong together, no action can be correctly estimated except in connection with the intention expressed by it; but neither can a right moral intention express itself except in the form of an action corresponding to the moral law; and therefore, to separate elements which should be so closely connected, could only lead to a one-sided theory, and errors directly opposed to each other in the system of morals.

Thus, for example, from the proposition above mentioned, he derives the consequence that, "as morality is only grounded in that which stands within man's power, the *intentio animi*, not in the outward act, the performance or non-performance of which depends on circumstances that do not stand under man's control, so the completed action contributes nothing towards increasing the moral worth, which lies exclusively in the intention. If we call a man's intention a good one, and his work a good one, still, we have not here two things that are good, but only one good thing in the intention."<sup>1</sup> But, in fixing his eye on this single

<sup>1</sup> Cum dicimus intentionem hominis bonam et opus illius bonum, duo quidem distinguimus, intentionem scilicet ac opus, unam tamen bonitatem intentionis. This favourite position of Abelard, which certainly was often advanced by him in his lectures, is found also in the *Dialogus inter philosophum, Judaeum et Christianum*, published from the treasures of the imperial library at Vienna, by Dr Rheinwald, in the year 1831, page 115: Non actionis vel bonae vel malae, nisi secundum intentionis radicem judicantur, sed omnes ex se indifferentes sunt, et si diligentes inspicimus nihil ad meritum con-



element, he overlooks the consideration that it may depend not only on the circumstances, but also on the strength or feebleness of the "intention;" whether that intention which, in order to its actual realization, may have to pass through many intermediate steps, and overcome many obstacles, really attains to its end or not.

Again, this vaguely stated proposition might be so understood as if, in estimating the morality of an action, everything depended on the subjective intention, or purpose, and not at all on the objective act; so that every man might be justified on the ground of his good intentions, although he may have failed of doing right, through error. And so the intention at bottom would have to be approved in many actions bad in themselves. Accordingly, we find him proposing the following question: "How are we to judge, then, concerning those who persecuted Christ himself or the Christians, thinking that they thereby did what was acceptable to God; persons who from the position they occupied, from the degree of their knowledge, could not do otherwise, or, if they had done otherwise, would have sinned against their consciences?" His loosely conceived principle must have led him to pronounce the doings of such persons good, as proceeding from a right intention. But when he came actually to adopt this result, to which he saw himself forced by his premises; on the one hand, the door was thrown open for all manner of arbitrary judgments in morals; while on the other, he found himself involved in a dispute with regard to those principles, by which the actions of unbelievers were judged according to the standard doctrine of the church, and driven into many heretical assertions. This contradiction he was desirous of avoiding. Accordingly, he acquiesced in the judgment which, conformably to the church principles, must be pronounced on all actions of unbelievers, although by so doing he contradicted himself; and in acknowledging the condemnation of unbelievers, he took refuge, as was customary for those to do who held the doctrine of absolute predestination, in the incomprehensibleness of the divine decrees. Yet in his own expressions are to be found thoughts which, had they only been still farther unfolded, would have enabled him to avoid this con-

*ferunt, quæ nequaquam ex se bonæ sunt aut malæ, cum ipsæ videlicet tam reprobis quam electis æque convenient.*

tradition, not indeed with the doctrines of the church, but at least with himself, and to find a solution of that difficulty, by which solution the holiness of the moral law would be secured against all arbitrary procedures. He remarks, for instance, "that what had been said of good intentions, did by no means apply to everything a man might *believe he did* with good intention, when this intention itself was a mistaken one, when the eye of the soul was not single, so as to be able to discover clearly, and guard against error;" and he refers the saying of Christ, respecting the eye as the light of the body, to the purity and clearness of the intention, which spreads its light over the whole life. It was only necessary, in truth, that he should have applied these thoughts to a more exact determination of the principle which he had expressed, in order to secure it against all misunderstanding and all false application. The pretended *bona intentio*, that proceeds from an error grounded in a faulty darkening of the understanding, is really, in this view, to be called no good intention at all. The good intention, is only a pure and clear intention.

With this principle, that in morals all depends on the intention that governs the life, was joined, in the theory of Abelard, a view strictly connected, no doubt, with the whole history of his own moral progress, for which an essential modification of the anthropology of the church could not fail to proceed. Abelard, in truth, resembled Augustin, in this respect, that he had many occasions of experiencing in his own case the might of the flesh in resistance to the spirit. But while Augustin was inclined, when the spirit had obtained the victory in him, so much the more sharply to condemn all striving of the flesh against the spirit, Abelard, on the other hand, was determined, by the memory of his earlier experiences, to pass a milder judgment on such appearances. "It is not the temptations of lust," he thinks, "that are sinful; but the morality depends here on the fact whether the ruling bias of the will overcomes these temptations or yields to them. One man has, by nature, stronger propensities to this sin, another to that. This temptation to sin, is not sin; it serves rather for the exercise of virtue in him who

victoriously sustains the contest. Sin is only when one suffers himself to be drawn by those solicitations into transgression of the divine law, into practical contempt of God. Sin, generally, is but the not doing or not omitting to do on God's account what one should do or omit doing on God's account. The true merit of virtue consists in this: that, in conflict with our ourselves, we do God's will, overcoming those hindrances in our nature, where the might of sinful lust asserts itself.<sup>1</sup> What would there be great in obeying God's will, if our inclinations were always in harmony with the same? From such a position it seems to follow, that the more there is in a man of that excitement to lust, if he do but combat and overcome it, the greater will be his virtue: that generally, without some conflict of flesh with spirit, no virtue can be conceived to exist; and that this susceptibility was originally planted in human nature as a thing necessary to moral development: which thoughts, prosecuted to a farther extent, would have led him to a Pelagian anthropology; from which, however, he was at the farthest remove.

Since Abelard, then, referred everything in moral judgments to the intention, and nothing to the act in itself, it presented itself to him as a necessary conclusion, that moral worth could be truly estimated by God only, to whom the intention of the heart is manifest. And hence followed the necessity of drawing sharp the line of discrimination between every human tribunal, not only civil, but ecclesiastical, and the tribunal of God; which distinction led him to many important deductions with regard to the spiritual jurisdiction of bishops, deductions that might easily involve him in controversy with the reigning system of the church.

His view of the essence of true repentance would be determined accordingly. He would allow that alone to be true repentance, which proceeded from love to God, and pain for having offended him; and on this principle he attacked with a boldness that cared for no consequences, the method of penance, as administered by the bishops and priests of his time.<sup>2</sup>

Another thing serving to illustrate the peculiar bent of

<sup>1</sup> His words: *Quid enim magnum pro Deo facimus, si nihil nostrae voluntati adversum toleramus, sed magis quod volumus, implemus.*

<sup>2</sup> See the citation on p. 6.

Abelard, is a work of his, recently come to light,<sup>1</sup> which, like its fellows, must have given great offence to the church-theologians,—the book which appeared under the title “*Sic et Non*,” (Yes and No.) Following the same plan with the Monophysite Stephen Gobarus, of more ancient times, he brought together the sayings of the older church-teachers on different subjects of faith and of morals, in a hundred and fifty-seven rubrics. But while, according to the common method of procedure, men endeavoured to set forth, in the ancient dogmatic tradition, only those points in which there was an agreement, Abelard, on the other hand, like that old Monophysite, preferred rather to give prominence to those points where the church-teachers contradicted one another in their answers to various questions. When such contrary opinions were brought together in other cases, it was simply for the purpose of attempting to reconcile them by means of some dialectical process. But Abelard left these opposite declarations standing side by side, without any attempt at reconciliation. It was his object, it would seem, to operate against that tendency which required entire uniformity in dogmatical expression, by exhibiting to view the opposition of opinions that existed amongst the most important church-teachers themselves. He wanted to show those who were ready to fix the stigma of heresy on any dogmatical propositions that deviated from the common form, how easy it was to find offensive things even in the most highly revered teachers of the church. Perhaps not without some reference to the conduct of his adversaries towards himself, he says: “Who does not see how impertinent it is for one man to set himself up as judge over the sense and understanding of another, when it is to God alone that the hearts and thoughts of all men lie open; and when he warns us against this arrogant presumption, saying, ‘Judge not, that ye be not judged?’ And the apostle says: ‘Judge nothing before the time, till the Lord come, who shall bring to light the hidden things of darkness, and make known the secrets of the heart.’”<sup>2</sup> As if he had plainly said: ‘In such matters, leave him to judge who alone knows all things, and explores the very thoughts of men.’”<sup>3</sup>

<sup>1</sup> Published by Cousin, in the collection above mentioned.

<sup>2</sup> 1 Corinth. iv. 5.

<sup>3</sup> See the Prologue to the book “*Sic et non*,” p. 5, ed. Cousin.

We have already seen, on a former page, how the remarks of Abelard, on the relation of the apostles to one another, were based on a view of inspiration that deviated from the common one,—a view that forbade him to extend the immediate suggestion of the Holy Spirit to all in like measure, and led him to make a more distinct separation of the divine from the human. Now that which we must recognize as lying at the basis of Abelard's earlier remarks, is clearly expressed by him in the prologue to this book. "It is plain," says he, "that the prophets themselves sometimes failed of possessing the gift of prophecy, and that, from the custom of prophesying, they uttered some things, when they supposed they had the spirit of prophecy, which were erroneous, and the product of their own minds. And this was permitted in them, that it might serve to keep them humble, and that they might learn more clearly to distinguish between what they were by their own minds, and what they were by the Spirit of God, and understand that it was a gift of God, when the Spirit of the Infallible dwelt in them. Nor even when they possessed this Spirit did he work everything in them after the same manner, or cause them to see alike; for as he does not bestow all gifts at once on the same individual, so neither does he enlighten the soul of him whom he fills on all subjects, but reveals sometimes this and sometimes that, and in revealing one thing hides another.<sup>1</sup> If, therefore, it is manifest that the prophets and apostles themselves were not wholly exempt from error, how can we be surprised to find that, in the voluminous writings of the church-fathers, many things have been erroneously stated.<sup>2</sup> But though many things may have been erroneously stated by them, yet such statements are not falsehoods, but errors of ignorance. It was their belief that by such statements they should best subserve the edification of others. They acted by the impulse of

1 Constat vero, et prophetas ipsos quandoque prophetiae gratia caruisse, et nonnulla ex usu prophetandi, cum se spiritum prophetiae habere crederent, per spiritum suum falsa protulisse; et hoc eis ad humilitatis custodiam permissum esse, ut sic videlicet verius cognoscerent, quales per spiritum Dei et quales per suum existerent, et se eum, qui mentiri vel falli nescit, ex dono habere, cum haberent. Qui etiam eum haberent, sicut non omnia uni confert dona, ita nec de omnibus mentem ejus, quem replet, illuminato, sed modo hoc, modo illud revelat et cum unum sperit, alterum occultat.

2 Quid itaque mirum, cum ipsos etiam prophetas et apostolos ab errore non penitus fuisse constat alienos, si in tam multiplici sanctorum patrum scriptura nonnulla propter supra positam causam erronee prolata seu scripta videantur?

charity; and God looks at the intention." It was one of Abelard's favourite sayings, that the "intention" is the "eye of the mind," to which he would add also that fine remark of Augustin, often cited by him: "*Habe caritatem et fac quicquid vis.*"

We have said already that Abelard distinguished, in the truths transmitted by the sacred writings, those properly belonging to faith and the religious interests generally, and those having no immediate concern with these interests. So, too, in the sayings of the church-fathers, he distinguishes the errors that stand in no necessary connection with these interests from errors which affect the vital essence of the faith; and this distinction led him, perhaps, to conclude that the idea of inspiration, also, in the sacred Scriptures, was not to be applied to the portion that treats of such indifferent matters. "Although God," he remarks here, "left holy men themselves to commit mistakes in things tending to no injury of the faith, yet even this is not without its benefit to those to whom all things work together for good. The church-teachers themselves were conscious of this liability, and therefore felt themselves bound to make many corrections in their own works, and by so doing have conceded also to those who come after them the right of correcting them,—or, of refusing to follow them, when it was not in their power to retract or correct their own errors." At the close of this prologue, he observes that he had compiled this collection of opposite statements with a view to incite the reader to the search after the truth, and to sharpen his faculties by the labour of investigation. And here he appeals to the words of Aristotle: that "it is not easy for a man to assert anything with confidence unless he has first repeatedly examined into the matter; and that it is not without its use to have doubted of everything."<sup>1</sup> "For doubt," he adds, "leads us to inquiry, and by inquiry we arrive at the truth,"<sup>2</sup> as the very Truth himself says: 'Seek, and ye shall find.' Christ himself, when, at the age of twelve, he instead of teaching sat and inquired in the temple, would teach us by his own example that we should learn by inquiry." It is obvious in what contrariety to the repose of childlike faith, that characterizes the religious spirit of his time, the tendency expressed in these words must

<sup>1</sup> Aristotle's *Categories*, § 7, ed. Bekker, i. p. 8.

<sup>2</sup> *Dubitando enim ad inquisitionem venimus, inquirendo veritatem percipimus.*

have stood. A critical direction in opposition to implicit faith, and aiming to arrive at the knowledge of the truth through doubt, was a foretoken of developments which could beat their way through only at a much later period.

We have seen before, that Abelard could not present a full exhibition of his doctrinal system in his "*Theologia Christiana*." But in his lectures he had given to his hearers his complete system of the doctrines of faith; and of these lectures many copies were in circulation, and contained matter which tended to increase the inclination to put down Abelard as a heretic. To be sure, he had a right to complain when extracts from those copies of his lectures on theology, which his opponents had contrived to get into their hands, were used in the same way as if they had been so written out by himself, although it must have been altogether a matter of uncertainty how far his hearers had rightly understood him, and faithfully taken down his remarks.<sup>1</sup>

Thus the new writings published by Abelard himself, the

1 Concerning the propositions of Abelard which were accused of being heretical, it was said: *Haec capitula partim in libro Theologiae magistri Petri, partim in libro sententiarum ejusdem, partim in libro, cujus titulus est: "Seito te ipsum," reperta sunt.* But Abelard, in his apology, complained that a book, called the *Sentences*, was cited as his, when he had never written such a book. He attributes the false charge to ignorance or ill-will. But also Walter of Mauretania, in his work, "*Contra quatuor Galliae Labyrinthos*," cites what, without any doubt, is the same work, of which he says that it has the title, "*Incipiunt sententiae divinitatis*." (The *Theological Sentences*.) Yet Walter himself was uncertain to what extent this work belonged to Abelard, since he says: *Fertur hic liber Petri Abelardi fuisse, aut ex libris ejus excerptus.* From this, we may gather that the opponents of Abelard must at least have had a certain appearance of right, in making use of this book as one that came from him; but that Abelard also must have had good grounds for affirming that he had never written such a book. Now Professor Rheinwald, who has done so much towards giving an account of the literary labours of Abelard, published in 1836, from manuscripts in the library of Munich, a book intitled "*Sententiae Abelardi*." This book perfectly agrees, in many passages, with Abelard's "*Theologia Christiana*," but expresses a good deal in a more concise form; while the doctrinal system in it is carried out to the conclusion. Everything is explained, if, with Gieseler, we suppose that the *Sententiae* were copies of Abelard's lectures on the doctrines of faith, which had been scattered abroad in different transcripts; such as had been made by his auditors according to their necessities. The transcript which Walter of Mauretania had before him, contained also the words of the address with which Abelard began his lectures: *Omnes sitientes venite ad aquas et bibite, amici, inebriamini carissimi.* See Buolaei, *Hist. univers. Paris*, iii., f. 200. The copy published by Rheinwald appears, from what may be gathered from comparing it with Abelard's other writings, to be a faithful one, and may doubtless be used to fill up the vacancy in that exhibition of his doctrines, which we have taken from works which came immediately from his own hand.

widely dispersed copies of his lectures, and the high encomiums of his scholars scattered through all France, drew upon him once more the attention of those who believed themselves called to watch over the interests of the orthodox faith; and that, to his injury. William, once abbot of St Thierry, now a monk in the Cistercian abbey at Signy, first stood forth to complain against him. He sent to Gottfried bishop of Chartres, and to Bernard abbot of Clairvaux, certain papers filled with invectives against Abelard, and professing to expose his heresies in a number of theses taken from his work on theology.<sup>1</sup> In an accompanying letter, he expatiated on the danger which threatened the church from the writings of one who exercised the great influence of Abelard: "Abelard once more writes and teaches new doctrines. His books pass beyond the seas and over the Alps; his new opinions about the faith are disseminated through the provinces and the empire, are frequently held forth, and boldly defended; so that they are said to have authority even in the Roman curia (scholars of his, even amongst the cardinals)." One proof of the blind zeal that governed this man, is the fact that Abelard's two tracts, the "*Scito te ipsum*," and the "*Sic et non*," looked already suspicious on account of their, to him, "extraordinary titles;" and because these books had not been so greatly multiplied by transcripts as the work on Theology, and he himself had never got sight of them,—he gathered from this that they shrunk from the light.<sup>2</sup> Bernard had his attention directed also, from other quarters, to the erroneous doctrines spread by Abelard and his school; and several other offensive propositions were pointed out to him in Abelard's *Scito te ipsum*, and in his Commentary on the Epistle to the Romans. At first, he is said to have expostulated with Abelard in a private manner, and exhorted him to desist from holding forth such doctrines, and also to prevent his scholars from repeating them. But the two men differed too much from each other in the whole bent of their minds, and perhaps also were already too much excited against

<sup>1</sup> We find this writing complete in the Bibliotheca Cisterciensis of Tissier, t. iv., f. 112, seqq.

<sup>2</sup> De quibus timeo, ne sicut monstrosi sunt nominis, sic etiam monstrosi sint dogmatis.

<sup>3</sup> Sicut dicunt, oderunt lucem nec etiam quaesit a inveniuntur.



each other, to have it in their power to come to any mutual understanding. Personal contact would serve, therefore, only to increase the alienation already existing between them.<sup>1</sup> When Abelard was compelled to hear that he had been stigmatized as a heretic,—believing that it was in his power to defend himself against all the charges brought against his orthodoxy, he determined to anticipate the condemnation which threatened him,—and, applying to the archbishop of Sens, demanded to be heard before a synod, and to be allowed to defend himself against his accusers. Archbishop Senglier, therefore, invited the abbot Bernard to appear with Abelard at the synod, which was held in the year 1140, at Sens. Bernard was at the beginning not inclined to enter into a dispute with his rival. He did not consider himself to be a match for one who had been a practised dialectician from his youth. It was the concern of the bishops to judge with regard to doctrines; nothing more was required than simply to look at Abelard's writings, which amply sufficed to establish a complaint against him. The doctrines of faith had been fixed and settled once for all; and must not be made to depend on human disputations.<sup>2</sup> But he did not persist in declining this invitation, if indeed he was serious in declining it at all; and perhaps he might foresee that the bishops would never allow the matter to come to a dispute between him and Abelard. Many of the dialectic theologians attended this synod. It was a contest not barely between two individuals, but between two opposite directions of the theological spirit, and both parties were eagerly watching for the issue. Though Bernard's zeal in this affair sprung from a purely Christian interest, yet his mode of procedure seems not to have been so wholly unobjectionable; as, indeed, the zeal of polemical controversy but rarely knows how to preserve itself altogether pure. While his object was to

<sup>1</sup> In the third account of Bernard's life (c. v., § 11), it is related that, by his mild and amiable language, he had already brought Abelard to that state, that he had retired into himself, and promised, according to Bernard's opinion, to correct everything in his works. But this saying of an enthusiastic admirer cannot pass for credible testimony. The French bishops, it is true, mentioned to the pope, that Bernard had often endeavoured *privatim*, to set Abelard right; but they by no means mention any such promise given by the latter, to which he had been unfaithful; but they report, what is in itself more credible, that he felt himself hurt by those suggestions.

<sup>2</sup> Ep. 189.

procure the condemnation of Abelard at the council, he professed nothing but that charity which seeks the recovery of a brother in error; yet, under the cloak of this sacred name, he scattered seeds of hatred. In the name of Christian love he called on the people, in his sermons, to pray for Abelard's conversion, but at the same time stirred up the popular fury against him as a godless heretic, presenting him in this light before men who were incapable of understanding a single one of the complaints brought against him, and before whom he could not defend himself. With good reason, perhaps, might the youthful Berengar, who warmly stood forth as a witness and advocate in defence of his teacher Abelard, attach to such conduct the suspicion of hypocrisy, a sin which is so very apt to mix in, even when they are unconscious of it, with the polemics of *pious* men, and *not of such only*. With good reason might he tell Bernard, that Christian charity would have rather prompted him to pray for Abelard in silence.<sup>1</sup> Although the satirical account which Abelard's enthusiastic disciple has given of this council is not to be implicitly relied on, yet this much of truth doubtless lies at the bottom of it, that the assembly was one incapable of entering into a calm investigation. More partial to the general views and spirit of Bernard than to the opposite, they were easily governed by his authority. The propositions of Abelard, as stated to them by him, were soon condemned as heretical. On the next day, however, Abelard was asked whether he acknowledged that such propositions had been advanced by him, whether, acknowledging them to be his, he was ready to defend or to correct them. But as Abelard had no reason to expect a calm trial from men who, without hearing what he had to say, had already pronounced sentence of condemnation on the propositions attributed to him, he did not attempt replying to these interrogatories, but appealed to the pope; most probably relying on his pupils or on the friends of his school, amongst the cardinals. Now it was not necessary, it is true,<sup>2</sup> that all further

<sup>1</sup> The words of Bernard in his tract in defence of Abelard: *Concionabaris ad populum, ut orationem funderet ad Deum pro eo, interius autem disponebas eum proscribendum ab orbe Christiano. Quid vulgus faceret? Quid vulgus oraret, quum pro quo esset orandum nesciret? Tu vir Dei, qui miracula feceras, qui ad pedes Jesu cum Maria sedebas, purissimum sacrae orationis thus coram supernis obtutibus adolere deberes, ut reus tuus Petrus respiceret.*

<sup>2</sup> The council contradicts itself, in saying of Abelard, in its letter to the pope (*ep.*

proceedings of the council against him should be arrested by this appeal. According to the old ecclesiastical laws, and according to the principles of the Gallican church, they were not required to acknowledge as of any valdity an appeal made before judgment was pronounced, from a tribunal to which the appellant himself had first applied.<sup>1</sup> They concluded, however, to follow the custom which then prevailed, and which was favoured by the Roman court, according to which appeals to Rome were to be admitted without limitation. It was necessary, in fact, to avoid everything that might tend to favour his cause at the Roman court, where Abelard was not without his friends; and therefore, both parties had recourse to the pope. The council addressed him a letter, in which they complained, that not alone by students in the schools, but publicly, in all places, disputes were held upon the Trinity.<sup>2</sup> They besought the pope to confirm their sentence of condemnation on the propositions alleged to have been advanced by Abelard, of which, however, they sent him but a portion; that he would pass sentence against all who persisted in obstinately defending them; that he would condemn Abelard's writings,<sup>3</sup> command him to be silent, and forbid him for the future either to lecture or to write.<sup>4</sup> The abbot of Clairvaux himself also wrote a private letter to the pope, to which he added a list of the propositions of Abelard found to be heretical, together with a full exposition of his principal errors. He says of him, that, wishing to explain everything on grounds of reason, even that which is beyond reason, he acted as contrary to reason as he did to faith; for what was more contrary to reason, than for one to attempt with reason to go beyond reason; and what more contrary to faith, than to refuse to believe that which is

337): *Visis diffidere et subterfugere, respondere noluit, sed quamvis libera sibi daretur audientia, tutumque locum et aequos haberet iudices*,—and yet declaring that Abelard's pretended theses had already been condemned the day before.

1 To this the words refer in the letter of the council: *Licet appellatio ista minus canonica videretur*.

2 *Cum per totam fere Galliam in civitatibus, vicis et castellis, a scholaribus non solum intra scholas, sed etiam triviatim nec a literatis et provecis tantum, sed a pueris et simplicibus aut certe stultis de sancta trinitate disputaretur*.

3 *Quaedam, ut per haec audita reliqui corpus operis facilius aestimetis*.

4 Without any accurate designation of the works intended, with the altogether arbitrary explanation: *Libros ejus perverso sine dubio dogmata respersos condemnaret*.

<sup>5</sup> Ep. 337.

unattainable by reason ?<sup>1</sup> In opposition to Abelard, who applied<sup>2</sup> to that blind faith which is not the result of examination, the words of the Preacher (c. 19), Bernard affirms, that Solomon says this, not with reference to faith in God, but with reference to men's credulity in their relations to one another; for pope Gregory the Great (H. xxvi. in Evang.) says, the faith that reposes on arguments of reason has no merit whatever; while he praises the apostles, who followed our Lord at the bidding of a word. The disciples were blamed, because it was so difficult for them to believe. Zacharias was punished (Luke i.) because he required reasons for believing. He referred, moreover, to the example of faith in Mary and in Abraham. But it is evident, from the explanations already given, that Abelard also acknowledged the faith that proceeds from a submission of the heart to be acceptable to God, and indispensable to true piety. It was only to the preparatory inquiry, which precedes such faith, to the way and mode of attaining to such faith, suited to certain individualities of character, and to the intellection (*intellectus*) that grew out of such faith, that the controversy related. Yet Bernard attributed the errors of Abelard to his desire of comprehending that which is above reason, and reserved to faith alone.

Moreover, he accused him of saying that faith was mere opinion; of representing it as something quite unsettled and wavering. He here took the liberty of converting his own inferences into actual positions of Abelard, for the purpose of showing that, by Abelard's doctrine, the whole foundation of Christian faith and Christian hope was left tottering. But we have already seen that, in the place referred to, Abelard is only speaking of the scientific mode of apprehending a dogma, not of the essential contents of the faith itself. Bernard, on the other hand, says: "Far be it from us to suppose that anything in our faith, or in our hope, depends on doubtful opinions or conjectures, that all does not much rather repose on a sure and settled foundation of truth, as it has been established by God's own declarations, by miracles, the birth of the Virgin, the blood of the Saviour, and

<sup>1</sup> Quid enim magis contra rationem, quam ratione rationem conari transcendere ? Et quid magis contra fidem, quam credere nolle, quicquid non possis ratione attingere.

<sup>2</sup> See page 113.

the majesty of his resurrection. To this is added, finally, the internal witness of the Holy Spirit, which testifies with our spirit, that we are the children of God. Who, then, can call faith an opinion, but he who has not as yet received that spirit, or who has no knowledge of the gospel, or who holds it to be a fable?" He refers to the passage in Heb. xi. 1, acknowledging that Abelard also had made use of those words. The term *substance*, in this passage, he says, denotes something certain and fixed, as opposed to the unsettledness of human opinion.

Bernard wrote also to the cardinals in Rome several letters, in which he directed their attention to the dangers threatening the simplicity and purity of the faith, and complained that Abelard felt confident he had followers in the Roman court itself.

But how very far Abelard was from any intention of doing injury to the Christian faith, appears evident from his own declarations, made during the time of these disputes to the abbess Heloise, who seems to have been disturbed by the reports concerning his erroneous doctrines. He guards himself against the eulogies of those who expressed a high estimation of his intellect, but not of his faith,—who recognized in him the philosopher, but not the Christian. Christianity, the Bible, he here declares to be the matters of highest interest for him, besides which all others fall into comparative insignificance;<sup>1</sup> for to him Christ is the sole foundation of salvation. And he then proceeds to lay down a full confession of his orthodoxy.<sup>2</sup>

In those hopes which he had placed on his friends at Rome, Abelard found himself wholly disappointed. The influence of Bernard there was too powerful, to allow any chance for the adherents of Abelard to effect anything against it; and we must admit, also, that his peculiar theological bent was not of a character suited to fall in with the reigning spirit of the church in these times. If it was not checked, if it should be allowed freely to develop itself, it would be continually coming more and more into collision with the church system. Moreover, the connection between Abelard's cause and that of Arnold of Brescia,

<sup>1</sup> Nolo sic esse philosophus, ut recalcitrem Paulo. Non sic esse Aristoteles, ut seclur a Christo, non enim aliud nomen est sub coelo, in quo oporteat me saluum fieri.

<sup>2</sup> Abelard's disciple Berengar has cited this letter in his tract written in Abelard's defence. Opp. p. 308.

could not fail of contributing to make the tendency which he represented appear suspicious, and fraught with danger. When he arrived at Lyons, on his way to Rome, the decision which had already been given there reached him. The pope issued two briefs to the archbishops of Rheims and of Sens, and to the abbot Bernard. In one of them, he declared the propositions of Abelard, that had been sent to him, and—which really, for an ecclesiastical decision, was extremely loose and indefinite language—all his perverse doctrines which were not specified however, to be condemned; on himself, as a heretic, was imposed the duty of perpetual silence. Sentence of ex-communication was pronounced on all his adherents. By a second writing, Innocent bestowed on the three persons above mentioned, full powers to confine Abelard, and Arnold of Brescia, in separate monasteries, and to burn all their writings. But the forsaken Abelard found refuge with Peter, the venerable abbot of Cluny. This person, who, above all other pious men, was distinguished for gentleness, and an open sense for every good trait in others, highly respected Abelard's zeal for science, and his great talents, and could discern the marks of piety, even in an individuality of character so different from his own. He was desirous of making the mental gifts and scientific attainments of the great scholar useful to his monks, while at the same time he provided, in their midst, a secure and peaceful resting-place for the evening of his unsettled and distracted life. With the assistance of the abbot of Citeaux, he effected a reconciliation between Bernard and Abelard.<sup>1</sup> He procured for him the pope's absolution, and adopted him amongst his monks at Cluny.

Abelard afterwards published a Confession, which he thus begins: "Everything, however well said, may be perverted. I myself, though I have composed but a few treatises, and those of small extent, have not been able to escape censure; though in truth, in the things on account of which I have been violently attacked, I can (as God knows) see no fault whatsoever on my part; and if any such fault can be discovered, I have no disposition to defend it obstinately. I have perhaps, from mistake, written many things not after the right manner; but I call God to witness that, in the things for which I am accused,

I have maintained nothing out of a malicious will, or out of pride. In my lectures, I have said many things before many. Publicly, I have spoken what seemed to me calculated for the edification of faith, or of morals; and what I have written, I have cheerfully communicated to all, that I might have them for my judges, and not for my pupils." Many of the propositions found to be offensive, he explained in a milder sense; with regard to others, he protested against the conclusions derived from them, which he would not admit. In the history of particular dogmas, we shall compare Abelard's original teachings with the explanations presented in this apology. It is our intention to cite here only his explanation with regard to the above-presented ethical propositions. "Sins committed through ignorance, amount to guilt, particularly when, from negligence, we know not that which we ought to know. I affirm that the crucifiers of Christ committed the greatest crime. I affirm that all who equally love God, and their neighbour,—all who are equally good,—are equals in merit, and nothing of merit is lost in the sight of God, when a good will fails of an opportunity to execute its purposes." It is plain, that the ethical principles before presented, are here also held fast by him; only, they are more cautiously expressed, and guarded against the extravagant statements to which he had given occasion. In general, we find no evidence that a change had really taken place in his mode of thinking, or that he was visited, as some asserted, with remorse, on account of the course he had pursued. The contrary rather may be gathered from a larger work (under the title *Apologia*), written in justification of himself; where he defends his doctrines, at length, against the charges of Bernard, and accuses the latter of misrepresenting and perverting them;—saying of him, that he thrust himself forward as a judge on matters which he did not understand.<sup>1</sup>

How far Abelard was in spirit from yielding to his opponents, how completely, on the contrary, he triumphed over them, in his own consciousness, might be gathered, moreover, from a dialogue

<sup>1</sup> See the *Disputatio anonymi* against Abelard, in the *Bibliotheca Cisterciensis*, t. iv., f. 239. Here the author objects to him, quod abbatem literatissimum et, quod majus est, religiosissimum vocat inexpertum artis illius, quae magistra est disserendi.

that appeared under his name, "On the Supreme Good,"<sup>1</sup> in which a philosopher, a Jew, and a Christian are the interlocutors,—for this production must have been composed after the events just described; and yet we find in it the same bold assertions respecting the relation of *fides* to *ratio*, as in the works already cited, and they are carried out with the same degree of acuteness. It may admit of a question, however, whether this production did not proceed from some one of his enthusiastic and free-spirited scholars.<sup>2</sup>

After Abelard had laboured for a while among the monks of Cluny, his activity was arrested by an illness, and the abbot Peter, whose esteem and love for him had been increased by personal intercourse, removed him to an appropriate place for the recovery of his health, in the priory of St Marcel, at Chalons on the Saone, where he enjoyed the benefit of careful nursing; and here he died, on the 21st of April, A.D. 1142. The abbot Peter drew up, in a letter to the abbess Heloise,<sup>3</sup> a report of his truly Christian walk during the last years of his life, and of the devout

1 Petri Abaelardi Dialogus inter philosophum, Judæum et Christianum, e codicibus bibliothecæ Caesareæ Vindobonensis ed. Rheinwald. Berolini, 1831.

2 In the life prefixed to this Dialogue we find nothing which does not agree perfectly with Abelard's mode of thinking. All the propositions scattered through his writings which have been cited, that gave offence to his opponents, were here introduced in the course of the conversation; but still, it cannot be gathered from this, that he himself was the author of it: for he had ready-witted scholars, who had made his doctrines and his mode of thinking wholly their own, could present them in a talented manner, and in their youthful pride rose, still more than their master, above all regard to circumstances; as, for instance, that clergyman Pierre Berengar, the bold and witty defender of Abelard. Now it is to be remarked, that there are preserved in different libraries (see Hist. lit. de la France, t. xii., p. 132), two manuscript works under the name of Abelard, a dialogue of a philosopher with a Jew, and a dialogue of a philosopher with a Christian. If they are rightly ascribed to him, then these two separate dialogues are works distinct from the one published by Rheinwald. Perhaps the two former pieces formed the basis of the last; and if the two single dialogues came from Abelard, this may not have been the case with the dialogue which was formed out of the blending together of those two. In addition to this, we find, in the collective edition of Abelard's works, p. 326, after several letters of Berengar, something that does not belong to those letters, the fragment of a dialogue containing Abelard's ideas concerning the relationship betwixt the ancient philosophy and Christianity, representing the Christians as disciples of the Logos, as the genuine logicians, and Christianity as the true logic,—a dialogue between P. A. (Peter Abelard) and P. (perhaps Peter Berengar). Perhaps this dialogue may be one of the two that still remain hidden in manuscript; and this clue, if followed out, might lead us to consider Berengar as the author of the dialogue here mentioned, perhaps also of the one published under the name of Abelard. It still remains to institute a faithful comparison between the style of this dialogue and the style of Abelard and of Berengar.

3 Lib. iv., ep. 21.



manner in which he died. He calls him the servant of Christ, the true Christian philosopher.<sup>1</sup>

An important sign of the times, an event attended with grave consequences for the next succeeding course of the development of theology, was such a termination of this controversy between the representatives of the antagonistic tendencies of spirit. At the same time, however, it should not be so understood, as if the whole tendency of the dialectic, speculative theology, had expired in the person of Abelard. Even Abelard's opponents themselves were by no means in favour of condemning this tendency in itself considered. Even Bernard recognized its rights; and this tendency of spirit was too closely inwoven with the very being of the times to be suppressed by magisterial denunciations. One point only was decided, that this tendency should be checked and moderated; that the rational element should not have an undue preponderance to the prejudice of the ecclesiastical and practical direction; that it should not be rent from its connection with the other spiritual forces that determined the character of the age. Men in whom was to be found this harmonious union of spiritual elements, stood high in the general esteem, and in intimate connection with Bernard himself, when Abelard was condemned; and their orthodoxy was disputed by no one.

Amongst these was Hugo, a canonical of the church of St Victor at Paris. He was born at Ypres, towards the close of the eleventh century, and came, when a boy, to Halberstadt, where his uncle was archdeacon. He himself records how hard it was for him, in his boyish years, to exchange the poor little cottage in which he was born, for a stately dwelling in the land of strangers.<sup>2</sup> Brought up in the abbey of Hamersleben, he was received

<sup>1</sup> He says of him: *Qui singulari scientiæ magisterio toti pæne orbi terrarum notus, et ubique famosus erat, in illius discipulatu, qui dixit: discite a me, quia mitis sum et humilis corde, mitis et humilis perseverans, ad ipsum, ut dignum est credere, sic transiit.*—In the inscription, which he placed on his tomb:—

Gallorum Socrates, Plato maximus Hesperiarum,  
Noster Aristoteles, logicis, quicumque fuerunt,  
Aut par aut melior, studiorum cognitum orbi  
Princeps, ingenio varius, subtilis et acer,  
Omnia vi superans rationis et arte loquendi  
Abelardus erat. Sed tunc magis omnia vicit  
Cum Cluniacensem monachum moremque professus  
Ad Christi veram transiit philosophiam.

<sup>2</sup> In his *Eruditio didascalica*, lib. vii., c. xx.: *Ego a puero exulavi et scio, quo*

in the year 1118 into the foundation of regular canonicals, bearing the name of St Victor at Paris, and contributed greatly to the high renown of this establishment. In him, we see the representative of a school distinguished in the twelfth century for its hearty religious spirit and its tendency to practical reform; a school which, though it united more or less the mystico-contemplative with the speculative element, yet constantly kept up the contest with the predominating dialectic tendency. Hugo entitled himself to the honour of being called the second Augustin.<sup>1</sup> If, in Abelard, we see those spiritual tendencies of his times, which had been harmoniously united by Anselm, brought into conflict with each other, we see them once more reconciled in Hugo; but with this difference, that in him the dialectical element is not so strong as it was in Anselm. In his doctrinal investigations, he often has reference to, and contends against Abelard, though without mentioning his name.<sup>2</sup>

The empirical department of knowledge generally, and in theology the study of the older church teachers, and of the Bible, was by him made specially prominent in opposition to the one-sided speculative and all-innovating tendency. Thus, for example, in his Rules of Study, written for monks,<sup>3</sup> he declaims against the pride of those one-sided *a priori* methods, which, neglecting the empirical sciences, begin at once with philosophy.<sup>4</sup> "It is impossible," he says, "to arrive at anything great, without commencing with the little. It is impossible to become a grammarian, without beginning with the alphabet." To such methods, he opposes the one he had followed himself;—he relates how,

moerore animus arctum aliquando pauperis tugurii fundum deserat, qua libertate postea marmoreos lares et tecta laqueata despicit.

<sup>1</sup> Qui secundus Augustinus in scientia dictus est. Thomas Cantiprat. lib. ii., c. xvi. Duaci, 1627, p. 215.

<sup>2</sup> The principal works of his that belong here, are the *De sacramentis fidei* and the *Summa sententiarum*. That the *Tractatus theologicus*, ascribed to Hildebert, archbishop of Mans or Tours, is but a fragment from the latter work, and that the former therefore deserves no place among the scholastic theologians among whom he has been named, must be clear to any one who compares the two works. Dr Liebner, the author of the fine monography on Hugo, is entitled to the praise of having, by his thorough analysis, caused this to be generally acknowledged. See Studien und Kritiken, Jahrg, 1831, 2tes Heft.

<sup>3</sup> Eruditio didascalica.

<sup>4</sup> Lib. vi., c. iii.: Scio quosdam, qui statim philosophari volunt, fabulas pseudo apostolis relinquendas ajunt.

from his youth up, he had striven to learn everything that came within his reach.<sup>1</sup> His principle was, "Study everything; thou wilt afterwards see that nothing is superfluous." He speaks against those who, if they could boast of having heard this or that great man, thought they were already something great themselves; those who talked of the Holy Scriptures as if they were so simple that it needed no teaching to understand them. He says of these, that, under the specious name of simplicity, they virtually denied the profoundness of meaning in the Holy Scriptures.<sup>2</sup> He divides those who occupied themselves with the study of the Bible, into three classes; the first, comprising such as were aiming in this way to acquire for themselves honour and riches; whose disposition was a most depraved and deplorable one. Next, those who search the sacred volume for the wonderful and mysterious,<sup>3</sup> instead of that which would tend to their salvation; who gaze with astonishment on the revelation of God's almighty power, instead of contemplating with love the revelation of his divine compassion; who are impelled only by an aimless thirst for knowledge. Of such he says, they treated God's revelations as an exhibition; and, like people going to a show, went to them for entertainment and not to obtain nourishment for the heart. The third class embraced those, whom alone he passes without censure, men who study the sacred Scriptures that they may be able to give a reason for their faith, to refute gainsayers, to instruct the ignorant, and that they may be inflamed themselves with a deeper love, the more profoundly they search into the divine mysteries. And so he always ends in speaking of theological study, with a reference to the practical purpose to be answered and the practical need to be satisfied.

Hugo appears as a strenuous advocate for the independence of the religious sphere, of religious faith, as a province lying above the worldly consciousness and the worldly tendencies of the soul. He uttered the profoundest remarks respecting this sacred province

<sup>1</sup> The object for which he enters into these details, in the third chapter of the above-mentioned work, is, *ut ostendam tibi, illum incedere aptissime, qui incedit ordinate, neque ut quidam, qui, dum magnum saltum facere volunt, in praecipitium incidunt.*

<sup>2</sup> L. c. lib. iii., c. xiv.

<sup>3</sup> *Quos audire verba Dei et opera ejus discere delectat, non quia salutifera, sed quia mirabilia sunt. Scrutari arcana et inaudita cognoscere volunt, multa scire et nihil facere.*

in the human spirit, this spot in it consecrated to the revelation of God. His ideas are as follows : " Three eyes have been given to man ; the eye of sense, for the sensible objects lying without him ; another eye, whereby the soul is enabled to know itself, and what is within itself,—the eye of reason ; a third eye, within itself, to perceive God and divine things,—the eye of contemplation." We have here important distinctions between the sensuous consciousness of the world, the rational consciousness of self, and the consciousness of God. " But, by reason of sin, the eye of contemplation is extinguished, that of reason obscured. Now, as the eye of contemplation, whereby man might come to the knowledge of God and of divine things, no longer dwells in him, therefore faith must take its place." Adopting the definition of faith in the eleventh chapter of the Epistle to the Hebrews, he remarks : " Faith is called the substance of things invisible, because that which, as yet, is not an object of open vision, is by faith, in a certain sense, made present to the soul,—actually dwells in it."<sup>1</sup> Nor is there anything else whereby the things of God could be demonstrated, since they are higher than all others ; nothing resembles them which could serve us as a bridge to that higher knowledge. But a credible witness is the experience of the faithful in all ages, who would not have sacrificed their all to the earnest desire after eternal life, if they had not had an experience of its reality that transcends our knowledge. In faith resides a certainty, which is more than opinion, yet falls short of absolute knowledge. Two things must meet together in faith : knowledge and feeling, or the bent of the affections (*affectus*)—objective and subjective elements. There is a conviction, then, which is determined by feeling.<sup>2</sup> Faith cannot exist, therefore, wholly without knowledge ; but it is here necessary to distinguish two kinds of knowledge,—a preliminary one, and a knowledge that is first evolved out of faith. Faith presupposes the *general knowledge* of the *being* of its object ; but only from faith proceeds the knowledge of the *quality* of the object, which know-

<sup>1</sup> Fides substantia illorum, quia per solam fidem subsistunt nunc in nobis.

<sup>2</sup> Fides in affectu habet substantiam, quia affectus ipse fides est, in cognitione habet materiam, quis de illo et ad illud, quod in cognitione est, fides est credere igitur in affectu est, quod vere creditur in cognitione est.

ledge will be perfect in the heavenly world.<sup>1</sup> Hence the faith of the theologian and that of the logician stand, he says, in an inverse order to each other; for in the latter, faith proceeds first from the understanding (*intellectus*); in the former, the understanding proceeds from faith. Hence, in the latter, that is the original which in the former is the derived; and in the former, that is the original which in the latter is the derived. In the one case, feeling is the original, and knowledge by reason the derived: in the other, knowledge on rational grounds comes first, and the feeling of conviction, of certainty, of rational satisfaction, that proceeds from and accompanies it, is the derived. "The merit of faith (*meritum fidei*) consists in the fact that our conviction is determined by the affections, when no adequate knowledge is yet present. By faith, we render ourselves worthy of knowledge; as perfect knowledge is the final reward of faith in the life eternal. To this knowledge by faith corresponds the way in which God reveals himself in creation, neither entirely concealing, nor yet wholly unveiling himself. Were the former the case, there would be no guilt in unbelief. Were the latter the case, there would be no merit in faith. The merit is based, in fact, on that bias of the will whereby the heart turns away from the world to God, and resigns itself to the godlike.<sup>2</sup> Inasmuch then as in faith, knowledge and feeling (*affectus*) should meet together, their relation to each other may differ in different cases. Knowledge and feeling may both be present in equal measure, or one preponderate over the other. But the *worth* (*meritum*) of faith is determined chiefly by the degree of feeling. Hence our Lord says to the Canaanitish woman, whose knowledge was small, but whose trust was great: "Woman, great is thy faith." He distinguishes among believers the following gradations. First are those who, in believing, simply follow their pious feelings, without being able to state the grounds on which they believe. Next, those who are able to state the grounds which determine them to believe as they do. Finally, those who, by purity of heart, begin already to have some inward taste of

<sup>1</sup> Ad hoc, ut fides actu habeatur de aliquo, primum oportet scire, quod ipsum sit, secundo credere, tertia intelligere, quid ipsum sit, quod plene erit in patria.

<sup>2</sup> Hence this definition of faith: Voluntaria quaedam certitudo absentium supra opinionem et infra scientiam constituta. Misc. i. 18.

that which they believe,<sup>1</sup> and by purification of the mind rise to certainty. The gradual progress of the Christian life, up to this stage of it, he describes as follows: "By the devotion that proceeds from faith, the believer's heart is purified, so that, with pure heart, he begins already to have some foretaste of that which, with faith and devotion, he longs to know. The pure heart daily makes progress through its experiences of a daily intercourse with God,<sup>2</sup> and it attains thereby to such a certainty as to begin already to have God present by contemplation; so that in no way, even though a whole world full of miracles should interpose, could it be drawn away again from its faith in him, and its love to him."<sup>3</sup> We find here described such an immediate certainty of Christian consciousness as no longer needs outward support, inasmuch as it carries the evidence of the truth in itself,<sup>4</sup>—a certainty superior to all proof from single miracles; whence we may infer that Hugo was far from attributing an undue importance to miracles, singly contemplated.

According as theologians placed the essence of religion in knowledge, or in the life of the heart, the affections,—a difference which here lay at the bottom, at least, though no one may have thought of accounting to himself for such opposite modes of apprehension—accordingly would they be inclined to decide the question, as to how far a knowledge of the articles of faith was requisite to salvation. They who started from the position that the essence of religion consists in knowledge, were driven by their own principle to strain the requisitions with regard to the extent of the knowledge necessary in order to salvation, to the highest point. To these Hugo would necessarily be opposed, since he placed the essence of faith in the affections. Therefore he declared that, in regard to the essence of true faith, much more depended on the degree of devotion than on the extent of knowledge:<sup>5</sup> for divine grace did not look at the amount of knowledge

<sup>1</sup> *Puritate cordis et munda conscientia interius jam gustare insipiunt, quod fide credunt.*

<sup>2</sup> *Munda conscientia invisibilibus documentis et secreta et familiari visitatione de Deo suo quotidie eruditus.*

<sup>3</sup> *Ut nulla jam ratione, ab ejus fide et dilectione, etiamsi totus mundus in miracula vertatur, avelli queat.*

<sup>4</sup> He therefore describes this stage as a *per veritatem apprehendere*.

<sup>5</sup> On the other hand, speaking of the advocates of the opposite opinion, he says *Beatificandam putant hi fidem veram in multitudine cognitionis potius, quam in magnitudine devotionis.*

united with the faith, but at the degree of devotion with which that which constituted the object of faith was loved.

On this question arose a remarkable controversy, which, in a time of more cultivated and prevailingly scientific reflection, when theological antagonisms could have been permitted to express themselves more fully out, and to unfold themselves with all their consequences into clearer consciousness, would have led to important oppositions in the mode of judging of doctrinal differences, and in the interpretation of the Old Testament.<sup>1</sup> It was the men of excessive strictness in doctrine, the hyperorthodox, as Hugo calls them,<sup>2</sup> who, without paying any regard to the different grades of mental cultivation, required of all alike, that claimed to be called believers, the same measure and the same accuracy in the knowledge of the articles of faith, and supposed that the like was possessed also by the good men of the Old Testament, though in their case the knowledge had reference to things that could only be fulfilled in the future. The course taken by Hugo to refute this opinion evinces both the penetration and profoundness of his views and the liberality of his mind. "From this supposition," he remarks, "it would follow that, in the times of the Old Testament, either the number of those that obtained salvation was too small, or the number of those that were specially enlightened, too great. For we must either suppose that only the few who, as prophets, were enabled by special illumination to look clearly into the future, were saved; or else we must suppose that all the pious of those times enjoyed the same special prophetic illumination. The last supposition would tend

<sup>1</sup> Hugo had already expressed his views on this point, in a letter addressed to Bernard of Clairvaux; and had requested the latter to give his own opinion on this and several other points. Bernard replies, in his *Tractatus ad Hugonem*, p. ii., opusc. 10 (according to Mabillon c. iii.), and declares his entire agreement with Hugo. It is singular, however, to observe the verbal coincidence between Bernard's remarks and Hugo's exposition, lib. i., *De sacramentis fidei*, p. x., c. vi. As Bernard himself says: *Ad refellendum tu tanta in tua epistola posuisse videris, ut nil addendum penitus putem et paene, quid addi possit, non inveniam*, so it is the less possible to suppose that Hugo should have inserted so much important matter from Bernard's letter into his own exposition, word for word. Besides, Hugo's originality of mind renders this very improbable. But neither again is it quite conceivable, that Bernard should have transcribed from Hugo's letter, word for word. It may be questioned, therefore, whether Bernard's letter may not have received additions from some other hand.

<sup>2</sup> He classes them with those, *qui quasi quadam, pietate impii in Deum efficiuntur et dum ultra id, quod in veritate est, sentiunt, in ipsam veritatem offendunt.*

most to the honour of divine grace ; but it would be contradictory to the position which the New Testament holds in relation to the Old ; since it would follow from it that, instead of the New Testament possessing the advantage over the Old of more abounding grace, the Old Testament would possess that advantage over the New. The times of the new covenant would not be distinguished, as they are declared to be, above those of the old, by the general outpouring of the Holy Ghost ; on the contrary, there would be a withholding of that fulness of the Spirit that had been poured out in the times of the old covenant. Paul would have boasted, without good reason, that he had neither received the gospel of man, nor by man, but by the revelation of Jesus Christ, if such an illumination had already before his own times been bestowed on the entire people of God. Christ himself would have had no good reason for saying that among them that are born of women there had not risen a greater than John the Baptist. John fell once more into doubt, whether or no Jesus was the Messiah ; while, on the other hand, thousands that lived under the Old Testament dispensation, must, according to the supposition in question, have possessed on all points a knowledge amounting to certainty. With what propriety could Christ, on this supposition, have said to his disciples : ‘ Blessed are your eyes, for they see,’ thus placing them so far above the enlightened men of the Old Testament (Luke x., John xv) ? By this he certainly intimates that they were to know, more clearly and more fully, those things which under the Old Testament had only been obscurely and imperfectly divined.<sup>1</sup> Nor can this be supposed to refer to the mere outward beholding of our Lord with the eye of sense, or the mere outward hearing of his words with the ear of sense ; for what need of this, if they were already fully instructed in all things by the illumination of the Spirit ? especially as our Lord says : ‘ The flesh profiteth nothing ; it is the Spirit that quickeneth.’ The intuition of the Spirit, then, is more than bare outward perception. Now, if the prophets and the enlightened men of the Old Testament were not all enabled alike to understand all things, but some understood more, others less, according

<sup>1</sup> Ut clarius largiusque perciperent, quod vix tenuiter obscureque præsenserant.



to the measure bestowed on them by the Spirit, and that without detracting from their holiness and perfection, then how much more might the simple ones among the pious remain ignorant of the time, the form, the way, and the order, in which redemption was to be accomplished, without prejudice to their salvation, if they only persevered in faith and hope to the end?" Hugo adverted to the different measure of knowledge which, without impairing the unity of faith, might exist among Christians of the same period. "How many there are," he says, "among Christian people, even at the present time, who firmly believe in a future world and an eternal life, and fervently long after it, but are still very far from being able to form the remotest conception of what it consists in. In like manner, before the appearance of Christ, there were many that firmly believed on the Almighty God who promised them salvation, and that hoped for salvation from Him, and through this faith and this hope actually obtained salvation, although they ever remained in ignorance respecting the time, the way, and the order, in which the promised salvation would be accomplished. The very apostles themselves found it extremely difficult to understand how the sufferings of Christ were necessary to man's salvation; and therefore it was, that what Christ said to them on this subject continued for so long a time to be obscure to them. Accordingly, it is the same fundamental article of faith, virtually including in it all the rest, on the embracing of which salvation has ever depended. The matter of this faith was ever the same; it became more clearly and fully unfolded, but it never changed.<sup>1</sup> Before the law, faith was exercised in God as Creator, and salvation was expected from him; but through whom, and in what way this salvation was to be brought about, was unknown to believers, if we except a few to whom it was made known by a special gift of illumination. Under the law the Saviour was already promised as a person; but whether this person was to be a man, an angel, or God, was not yet revealed. Faith in God, as Creator and Redeemer, is the common ground of faith for all periods in the evolution of the kingdom of God, connected with which there may exist different measures of know-

<sup>1</sup> *Crevit itaque per tempora fides in omnibus, ut major esset, sed mutata non est, ut alia esset.*

ledge in different periods and among different classes of men in the same period. Still, the simple and the enlightened are bound together by the same faith."

In the controversy alluded to on a former page, concerning the nature of true love to God, Hugo endeavoured to prepare the way for a better understanding of the matter, by introducing some just and well-considered distinctions: but here, too, he stood forth as the opponent of Abelard. After having laid it down that it was only necessary to love God in order to possess him, that God is always present to love,<sup>1</sup> he goes on to say: "But, perhaps, if thou lovest and servest God with a view to receive a reward from him, thou wilt be a hireling. So say certain foolish men, so foolish as not even to understand themselves.<sup>2</sup> We love and serve God, say they, but we seek no reward, lest we be hirelings; we do not ask, even, for himself. He will give if it pleases him; but we do not ask it. We love him with a simple, disinterested, childlike love. Listen, ye wise people! We love him, say they, but we ask not for him. We love him, that is, but we care nothing about him. I, as a man, would not desire to be so loved by you. If you so loved me as to care nothing about me, I should care nothing about your love. Consider whether that is worth offering to God which a man might rightly despise. People who talk thus, do not understand the nature of love? What else does loving mean than a desire to have what we love? A desire to have, not something other than the object of love, but that object itself, this is disinterested love. There is no love without longing after that which is the object of the love.<sup>3</sup> Shouldst thou hold eternal life itself to be other than the supreme good, which is God, and serve him in order to obtain that, it would be no pure service, no pure love."<sup>4</sup>

Here we cannot forbear to remark, that this view of disinterested love to God and eternal life, holding the exact mean betwixt a fleshly Eudemonism on the one hand, and the extravagance of a mysticism leading to self-annihilation, on the other, is

<sup>1</sup> Si amare, habetur. Si diligitur, gustatur. Præsens est dilectioni.

<sup>2</sup> Stulti quidam et tam stulti, ut seipsos non intelligant.

<sup>3</sup> Qui hoc dicunt, virtutem dilectionis non intelligunt. Quid enim diligere, nisi ipsum velle habere. Non aliud ab ipso, sed ipsum, hoc est gratis. Alioquin non amare, si non desiderares.

<sup>4</sup> De sacramentis fidei, p. xiii. lib. ii. c. viii.

to be found in one who, in respect to mental cultivation, certainly cannot be compared with either Abelard or Hugo, but belongs rather to the more narrow minds of his time,—Gerhoh, of Reichersberg. “Though God is loved and worshipped,” says he, “yet is he not loved without reward, though he must be loved without respect to the reward.<sup>1</sup> True love neither is empty, nor yet seeks a reward,—for it seeks not its own; it lets men do everything out of freewill. True love is satisfied with itself; it has a reward, but it is just that which is the object of love.”<sup>2</sup> After having declared himself opposed to the expectations of a sensuous Eudemonism, he goes on to say: “They who know that they are to find their satisfaction and their bliss in that eternal life, in that righteousness alone after which they now hunger, need not be hired by a reward to long after it, any more than a hungry man needs to be hired to eat, or a thirsty man to drink.”<sup>3</sup> Those who seek eternal instead of temporal good in eternal life, but an eternal good that resembles temporal, he calls dreamers: “For in the kingdom of heaven nothing will be found like that which they dream about,—there, God will be all in all; the only cause of joy there will be God himself;<sup>4</sup> a remarkable evidence, certainly, of the Christian spirit that animated the thinking of this period, when a man no better cultivated than we find this Gerhoh to have been, could still write after this fashion.

We see still another besides Hugo, who contrived to unite the dialectic bent of mind with the church theology, and who composed a work in this same spirit and according to this same method, on the system of faith, and who continued at the same time to be universally respected, namely, Robert Pull, or Pullein.<sup>5</sup> He taught, unmolested, at the university of Oxford, where he became chancellor. Pope Eugene the Third, wishing to secure the talents

<sup>1</sup> Non sine premio diligitur Deus, etsi absque premii sit intuitu diligendus.

<sup>2</sup> Vacua namque vel infructuosa veracitas esse non potest nec tamen mercenaria est, quippe non quaerit quae sua sunt, sponte afficit et spontaneum facit. Verus amor seipso contentus est, habet praemium, sed quod amatur. We recognize here the verbal agreement with Bernard (see vol. vii. p. 345), whose sayings Gerhoh doubtless had before him, or else recollected.

<sup>3</sup> Qui scientes in vita aeterna solius justitiae, quam nunc esuriunt, se deliciis fovendos et saturandos, non indigent praemiis conducere ad hanc appetendam et quaerendam, sicut nullus esuriens, ut comedat, nullus sitiens, ut bibat, conducitur.

<sup>4</sup> In the above cited Commentary on the Psalms, f. 895.

<sup>5</sup> His Sententiae, in eight parts.

and character, which had been so well tried in the service of science, for the general guidance of the church, called him to Rome, in the capacity of cardinal and chancellor of the Roman church; and the abbot Bernard, who spoke of him as his old friend, and acknowledged his merits, called upon him, when he was elevated to this dignity, to do as much in the practical service of the church, as he had before done for theological culture.<sup>1</sup>

Somewhat later, however, the abbot Bernard fell into controversy with another representative of the dialectico-theological tendency. And, indeed, the subject was here an entirely different one. It did not involve in it an opposition of theological spirit so deeply seated as in the controversy between Bernard and Abelard; therefore the dispute did not possess the same objective interest. Even from his own point of view, Bernard needed not to see the great danger he thought he saw; nor would he have seen it, perhaps, if it had not been for various influences foreign from the matter itself. Gilbert de la Poree, archbishop of Poitiers, the person with whom this controversy broke out, was by no means to be compared, as a bold and original thinker, with Abelard. He kept himself, together with his dialectic theology, within the common limits. He followed that view of the relation of "reason" to "faith," which had prevailed since the time of Abelard; doubtless he was aware, also, of the limits of "reason,"<sup>2</sup> though the little we know of him would lead us to regard him rather as a dry dialectician, than as one possessed of the profound intellect and heart of an Anselm. Abelard, his dialectical opponent, had already, at the council of Sens, forewarned him, in the well-known words of Horace: "*Nam tua res agitur, paries quum proximus ardet,*"<sup>3</sup> of the danger to which he also was exposed as a representative of the same dialectical theology.

Two of his clergy, some time after this, brought a complaint

<sup>1</sup> *Hactenus quippe eruditioni multorum fideliter et utiliter instabas, coelo et terra testibus, sed jam tempus faciendi Domino, ne patiaris, quod in te est, dissibi ab impiis, legem ejus.* Ep. 362.

<sup>2</sup> As may be gathered from the words with which he concludes his Commentary on the first book of Boethius de trinitate; for in explaining here the sense of Boethius, he no doubt expresses also his own opinion, that the *rationem argumenta* are merely subervient to the Catholicorum sententiae sponte, id est sine rationum argumentis firmissimae. Quod si humanae naturae infirmitas nequivit adscendere ultra se, ut scilicet ineffabilia ex rationum locis ostenderet, quantum intelligentiae imbecillitatis subtrahit, tantum incomprehensibilibus semper haerentis voluntatis vota supplebunt.

<sup>3</sup> Horat. lib. i, ep. 18, v. 84.

against him before pope Eugene the Third as holding heretical opinions on the doctrine of the Trinity ; and Bernard put himself at the head of the party opposed to him. But Bernard could not force the matter through here so easily as he had done in the controversy with Abelard. At the council of Rheims, in 1148, where pope Eugene the Third was personally present and heard the representations of Gilbert and his opponents, opinions were divided. Gilbert found friends among the cardinals, who were not pleased at the dependence of the pope on his old teacher, a French abbot. A confession drawn up by Bernard, in opposition to Gilbert's errors, could not obtain the authority of a confession publicly recognized by the church ; and Gilbert had the advantage at least so far as this, that he was permitted, after submitting to the pope's decision, to return home with honour to his diocese, where he ever afterwards remained unmolested,—a partial triumph of the dialectic school,—an evidence that this tendency could no longer be entirely banished. And about this time appeared an individual by whom a reconciliation was effected between the two conflicting tendencies of the church, and of speculation, in a form which came, afterwards, to be more and more generally recognized. This was Peter Lombard of Novara, whose theological studies at the Parisian university had met the approbation of Bernard himself, and who in the year 1159 was made bishop of Paris, soon after which, in 1160, he died. Following a method which had long been practised, but which he applied more skilfully than others, he composed a manual of doctrine, under the title of *Quatuor libri sententiarum*. By laying for his foundation a collection of sayings from the older church teachers, particularly Augustin and Gregory the Great, he met the wishes of the reigning church party ; and by the great variety of questions which he propounded, by his method of arranging his whole matter according to certain general grounds of distribution, of citing opposite opinions from the fathers, which he endeavoured to reconcile by means of accurate distinctions, he presented a point of attachment for those inclined to dialectics. This method, and its ingenious application ; the rich store of matter reduced to a compact brevity ; the sobriety and moderation of the theological spirit therein exhibited, procured for this work an ever-increasing popularity, so that it became the standard manual of the following

centuries, and was adopted by the most distinguished teachers, who wrote commentaries upon it.<sup>1</sup> The school of Peter Lombard was continued by his disciple, Peter of Poitiers,<sup>2</sup> chancellor of the university of Paris; yet even this school had still to pass through many contests, partly with the ecclesiastical and partly with the mystical tendency.

As representatives of the first-mentioned form of opposition, we may notice particularly Gerhof of Reichersberg, and Walter of Mauretania. Gerhof, who was so zealous in opposing abuses in the church, declared no less earnestly against those who passed over from the worldly sciences to theology, and applied a worldly sense to the judgment of divine things. Though they cited many passages from the Holy Scriptures, yet these disciples of anti-christ were strangers to that spirit of truth which teaches the disciples all truth.<sup>3</sup> Walter of Mauretania, at that time prior over the foundation of the regular canonicals of St Victor at Paris, was, indeed, as we have seen, one of Abelard's first antagonists; but he departed further, as he grew older, from that moderation which he had shown at first. When Peter of Poitiers was the only living representative of the dialectico-theological tendency of the twelfth century, Walter wrote against it a work placing together in the same category Abelard and Gilbert of Poitiers, Peter Lombard and Peter of Poitiers, little as the two latter could be associated, as men of the same spirit, with the two former. This was his work, *Contra quatuor Galliae Labyrinthos*. He maintained that the course pursued by these theologians, of applying dialectics, raising questions on every point, stating

<sup>1</sup> An able compend, strictly following, however, the original production, is the work on the Sentences, composed by a certain magister Bandiuns, otherwise unknown. (*Sententiarum libri quatuor*.) This work announces itself as a Compendium circa res divinas; yet professes to be by no means a mere extract from the larger work of another author although it must have already been perceived to be so by others, as may be gathered from its title as it is cited in one manuscript in Pez: *Thesaurus anecdotorum novissimus*, t. i, Dissert. Isagog. f. xlvii, namely: "Abbreviatio de libro sacramentorum magistri Petri Parisiensis episcopi fideliter acta." But as to Peter of Lombardy, we may be certain that he was not the man to need any *such previous labour*.

<sup>2</sup> His *Libri Sententiarum*, in eight parts.

<sup>3</sup> Multi, qui cum sint animales, non percipientes ea, quae sunt spiritus, saecularibus literis eruditi, ab illa sapientia, quae terrena est, animalis, diabolica, transeunt ad dijudicanda coelestia. Possunt quidem istiusmodi homines terreni rotare verba spumantia buccis crepantibus de scripturis veritatis, sed ipse spiritus veritatis, qui docet omnem veritatem discipulos Christi, longe abest ab istis discipulis Antichristi. See the Commentary on Ps. lxxii, in the edition of Pez, f. 1479, often cited in the foregoing volume.

opposite opinions, tended to unsettle everything in religion ; nothing would be left fixed and certain.<sup>1</sup> The more passionate and coarse this attack on all dialectic investigation, the less power it would have in suppressing the dialectical tendency which was so deeply rooted in the spirit of the age. Nor was the mystic Joachim equal to a contest with the dialecticians in the dogmatical province. Pope Innocent the Third, who had himself studied under the Parisian theologians, and in whose canonical decisions the scholastic form there acquired is doubtless to be recognized, pronounced in favour of Peter Lombard at the Lateran council, in the year 1215.

But the mystical bent of theology was not less deeply rooted in the very spirit of these centuries than the dialectic ; nor had either power enough to overcome the other. And it greatly contributed to promote a healthy action of the spiritual life, that they should mutually act as checks on each other, and mutually supply each other's defects. The dialectic theology, without some such check, would have become, through the excessive predominance of the notional conception, too far estranged from the life of the heart ; and the mystic theology, by reason of the great uniformity of feelings, intuitions, and thoughts moving in a narrow circle ; the excessive license, the vague, undefined, and fluxional character of its matter, would have proved injurious to the spiritual life. It was necessary that it should be closely accompanied with a stronger tendency to the objective, a more severe and discriminating mode of thought, a richer fund of ideas.

One of Bernard's contemporaries was the German mystic, abbot Rupert of Deutz, but not to be compared with him for force and depth. He was the author of a diffuse commentary, full of arbitrary, allegorizing expositions on various books of Scripture and passages of sacred history. Another writer de-

<sup>1</sup> In the prologue, he calls them *uno spiritu Aristotelico afflatus*. He says of them : *Totos dies et noctes tenent, ut interrogent vel respondeant vel dent propositiones vel accipiant, assumant, affirmant atque concludant*. He says of this method : *Sicut enim rerum ita propositionum infinita conversio est, unum idemque verum est et falsum et neutrum, adhibitis mille differentiis facillime negat et probat. Si eis credis, utrum Deus annon Deus, utrum Christus homo annon homo, aliquid annon aliquid, nihil annon nihil, Christus annon Christus sit nescis*. Du Boulay, *Hist. univers. Paris*, t. ii. f. 402, where he gives extracts from the four books of this work.

serving to be mentioned here is Richard, who went from Scotland, united with the Victorines in Paris, became a disciple of Hugo, and was prior in that foundation till his death, in the year 1173. Though he had not so much to do with the movements of the dialectic theology as his teacher Hugo, yet, by his uniting a speculative element with the contemplative, we see that he was a true disciple of the latter. He would by no means prohibit reason and the intellect from attempting to explore into divine things. But he considers purification of the heart a necessary pre-requisite in order to correctness of understanding. He holds it necessary that the matter known, should be a matter of the heart, something that determines the affections; that reason should be conscious of its own limits, should learn how to distinguish things relatively and absolutely supra-rational from those which it is capable of knowing out of itself; and, with Bernard, he believes in a stage of ecstatic intuition, not mediated by any process of thought, but exalted above thought. The mystic theology led man from the outward world into that inner sanctuary of the spirit which is akin to God; from the depths of self-knowledge conducted him to the heights of the knowledge of God. "The rational mind," says Richard, "finds, without doubt, in itself the most excellent mirror wherein to see God. For if God's invisible essence may be known from his works, where can we find those marks that lead to the knowledge of him more clearly stamped than in that which is his own image? Every one, therefore, who longs to see God, should cleanse the mirror of his own spirit.<sup>1</sup> Nothing," says he, "is capable of judging correctly, which does not know itself. He knows not how all the glory of the world lies under his feet, who has not learned to estimate the dignity of his own nature. If thou art not yet capable of entering into thyself, how wilt thou be capable of exploring what is within thee, and above thee."<sup>2</sup> "The truth imparted by the divine grace of knowledge," says he, "must be stamped also by our own efforts, under the co-operation of divine grace, upon our in-

<sup>1</sup> De præparatione animi ad contemplationem, c. lxxii.

<sup>2</sup> Nihil recte aestimat, qui seipsum ignorat. Nescit quem sub pedibus suis omnis mundana gloria jaceat, qui conditionis suae dignitatem non pensat. Si nondum idoneus es, quomodo ad illa rimanda idoneus eris, quae sunt intra vel supra teipsum. De contemplatione, c. vi.



clinations.<sup>1</sup> What better is the science of holiness without a good disposition, than a picture without life?"<sup>2</sup> In that which constitutes the object of faith, he distinguishes what is above reason, and aside of reason (the *supra rationem* and the *praeter rationem*); but adds, that the latter holds of the relation to human, not of the relation to the divine reason.<sup>3</sup> "As it respects the truths of revelation which are above reason, all evidences and analogies fall short of them, it is true; but to him who has once been conducted by revelation to faith, reasons and analogies flow in abundance from all sides, which serve for the confirmation or defence of his convictions."<sup>4</sup> But those other truths, to which he applies the predicate *praeter rationem*, seem to have all analogies and all rational grounds against them.<sup>5</sup> He distinguishes the three following stages of religious development: that in which God is seen by faith; that in which he is known by reason; that in which he is beheld by contemplation.<sup>6</sup> "To the first and second stages men may ascend; but to the third they can never arrive except by ecstatic transportation of the spirit above itself.<sup>7</sup> The soul, raised above itself, beholds things too high for reason in the light of the Godhead, where the thinking reason retires back."<sup>8</sup> This highest moment of inspiration, he considers, it is true, as a thing not to be attained by any efforts, as something which is solely the gift of God. Yet he says: "None obtain so great grace without strenuous efforts, and ardent longing."<sup>9</sup> And he supposes such a connection of this loftiest ecstatic moment with the whole of consciousness, that one

<sup>1</sup> Veritatis imago, quae ex inspirante gratia impressa est cognitioni, per humanam industriam et coöperantem gratiam imprimatur et affectioni. De statu interioris hominis, c. xxvi.

<sup>2</sup> Scientia sanctitatis sine intentione bona quid aliud est quam imago sine vita? De eruditione hominis interioris, c. xxxviii.

<sup>3</sup> Quicquid enim in illa summa et divina essentia esse constiterit, summa et incommutabili ratione subiecit. De contemplatione, c. iii.

<sup>4</sup> Fideli menti multae undique rationes occurrunt, multa denique argumenta emergunt.

<sup>5</sup> Tam exempla quam argumenta contradicunt. L. c.

<sup>6</sup> Aliter Deus videtur per fidem, aliter cognoscitur per rationem, atque aliter cernitur per contemplationem.

<sup>7</sup> Nisi per mentis excessum supra seipsos rapti numquam pertingunt.

<sup>8</sup> Mens enim ad illud, quod supra se, elevata et in extasi raptâ, de divinitatis lumine conspiciat, omnis humana ratio succumbit.

<sup>9</sup> De praeparatione animi ad contemplationem, c. lxxiii. et lxxiv.

may afterwards, by thought, reproduce the matter of such intuitions, and bring them down to the common understanding by rational arguments and illustrations (the *ἐρμηνεία* of the *γλῶσσα*).<sup>1</sup> But he declaims against certain false philosophers who appeared in these times (among whom he would doubtless include Abelard), men whose sole aim was to invent something new, and get themselves a name; whose wisdom was born and died with themselves. To show the vanity of these endeavours, he points to such examples of conversion among the disciples of this sham wisdom as have been mentioned on a former page.<sup>2</sup> "That once glorious wisdom of the world has so utterly become foolishness, that we see every day countless numbers, who once professed it, begin to deride and abhor it, desiring to know nothing save Jesus Christ, and him crucified. Behold, how many that formerly laboured in the shop of Aristotle, following a sounder conviction, learn finally to labour in the office of our Saviour."<sup>3</sup>

The "Meditations" of Guigo<sup>4</sup> (the fifth prior of the Carthusians, one of Bernard's earlier contemporaries) are especially distinguished for an ethical element of mysticism. "The more noble and mighty any creature is," says he, among other things, "the more willingly does he subject himself to the truth; nay, his nobleness and his might depend on this very self-subjection to the truth. The way to God is easy, for a man walks in it by unburdening himself. It would be hard, were it necessary for him to take up a load. Throw off, then, every burden, by denying all else, and thyself."<sup>5</sup>

It is not to be doubted that in the great metropolis of scientific and theological education at Paris, the powerful influence of the Victorine school on the interior life was greatly needed, to counteract the ungodly courses pursued by the theologians who fell in with the tendency to a dead, formal knowledge; for we hear

<sup>1</sup> Id quod per excessum mens vidit multa retractatione vehementique discussione capabile seu etiam comprehensibile sibi efficit et tum rationum attestatione, tum similitudinum adaptatione ad communem intelligentiam deducit,—or in other words: Theophaniam raptim perceptam ad communem intelligentiam paululum inclinamus. De contemplatione, c. xii.

<sup>2</sup> Page 89.

<sup>3</sup> L. c. c. ii.

<sup>4</sup> In the Biblioth. patr., Lugd. t. xxii.

<sup>5</sup> Facile est iter ad Deum, quoniam exonerando itur. Esset autem grave, si onerando iretur. In tantum ergo te exonera, ut dimissis omnibus, te ipsum abneget.

those who were most zealously devoted to the interests of the church, complaining that the lives of both teachers and pupils were in direct contradiction to a study professing to relate wholly to divine things. Jacob of Vitry, who had himself studied at Paris, depicts in the most vivid colours the loose morals of the students, by whom the more seriously disposed were hooted at with contempt; the worldly tastes, jealousies, envyings, and cupidity of the teachers, whose knowledge he likens to sounding brass and tinkling cymbals.<sup>1</sup>

In the last times of the twelfth century, Peter Cantor, a man with the spirit of a reformer, and a practical, scriptural turn of mind, held a prominent place among the Victorines. He had his surname from the office which he filled in that foundation. Afterwards, from the year 1194, he was bishop of Tournay. He fought with great earnestness against secularization in the church; he saw the impossibility of effecting a renovation of church life without an improvement in theological studies. For the instruction and admonition of the young men that consecrated themselves to the service of the church, he composed his *Summa*,<sup>2</sup> a

<sup>1</sup> Jacob of Vitry in his *Historia occidentalis*, c. vii., p. 277, seqq.: Tunc autem amplius in clero quam in alio populo dissoluta pernitiōsa exempla multos hospites undique ad eam affluētes corrumpebant.—In una et eadem domo scholae erant superius, prostibula inferius.—Si qui secundum apostolicum mandatum sobrie et juste et pie inter illos vivere voluissent, avari et miseri et hypocritae, superstitioni confestim ab impudiciis et mollibus judicabantur. Respecting the teachers of theology, he says: Docentes et non facientes facti sunt velut aes sonans et cymbalum tinniens. Non solem autem sibi inuidebant et scholares aliorum blanditiis attrahebant gloriam propriam quæerentes, de fructu autem animarum non curantes, præbendas sibi multiplicabant et vendebant dignitates. We may here add the description of William of Paris: "Adeo tepide, adeo remisse verba Dei annunciant, ut extincta in labiis eorum penitus videantur, propter quod, sicut et ipsi frigidi sunt et extincti, sic frigidos et extinctos relinquunt et utinam non faciant adhuc peiores." He adduces the example of a friend of his, who, to avoid becoming colder and colder under the sermons and lectures at Paris, and having every spark of his spiritual life finally extinguished (ne tandem spirituali gelicidio exstingeretur), had fled from the spot and betaken himself to monks of fervent piety. Vide de moribus, c. viii., t. i., f. 120. He laments over the Parisian teachers, who exerted themselves only to increase the number of their hearers, and not to promote their spiritual improvement: "Non de profectu eorum spirituali cūrent, sed de repletionē scholarum suarum nec minus turpiter quam invēcunde sonat creberrime in labiis hujusmodi magistrorum: Hic est clericus meus, hic incepit sub me." He then remarks that many such had by their own fault lost their hearers, so as finally to be obliged to discontinue their lectures, "Quia promissionibus et muneribus instār meretricum eos (auditores) vel emunt vel conducunt, interdum etiā precibus, et terroribus extorquent ab iis, ut ita dicam, violentia audientem." L. c. c. ccix.

<sup>2</sup> His *Summa theologiae*, or *Verbum abbreviatum*, published by the Benedictine Gallopin, at Bergen, A.D. 1639.

work treating for the most part of moral and ecclesiastical matters. The same Jacob of Vitry, who so vividly described the corruption of the Parisian theologians, signalizes him as a light that shone far and wide; a man, who accomplished so much the greater things, as his life and his teaching were both of a piece.<sup>1</sup> He declared himself opposed to that mode of treating theology which chiefly busied itself with vain and fruitless questions, to the neglect of those matters which tended to the sanctification and benefit of the church.<sup>2</sup> He spoke against those who laboured by their arbitrary interpretations to bring the unchangeable, eternally valid commands of our Lord into harmony with their fleshly lusts; explaining away whatever was too high for them, as barely temporal and local, as a *consilium* and not a *praeceptum*.<sup>3</sup> "How is it," he asks, "that we who hold everything in Christ's teaching to be easy and clear, have, by our explanations and allegories, departed farther from the life-giving spirit and the plain letter of the gospel, than the Jews did from that letter which killeth?"<sup>4</sup> The unpractical direction given to theological culture was attacked also by archdeacon Peter of Blois: "What does it profit them," says he,<sup>5</sup> speaking of the theologians, "to spend their days in studies that can find their application neither at home nor in war, nor in the court nor in the cloister, nor in the senate nor in the church, nor anywhere else, save only in the schools?" He declaims, like Hugo a St Victore, and John of Salisbury, whose scholar he was, against the men who drove into purely speculative matters before they had learned anything else;<sup>6</sup> against those who, in their eagerness after the latest

<sup>1</sup> *Morum honestate pondus et gravitatem conferens doctrinae suae, coepit enim facere et docere, velut lucerna ardens et lucens, et civitas supra montem posita.* Hist. occident. c. viii. He finally resigned his bishopric, became a monk among the Cistercians, and died before he had closed his novitiate. Caesarius of Heisterbach, who reports this, says of him: *Vita et exemplo multos aedificaverat.* Distinct. xii., c. xlviii., f. 353.

<sup>2</sup> In the above mentioned *Verbum abbreviatum*, p. 7: *Non ergo clamandum in disputationibus theologiae, non disputandum de frivolis sed, ut ait Seneca, de justitia, de pietate, de frugalitate, de utraque pudicitia mentis scilicet et corporis mihi disputa. Deponamus igitur hujus declamationis acutae concinnationes, quaestiunculas inutiles.*

<sup>3</sup> *Qui mandata ipsa confirmata in saeculum saeculi dicit esse temporalia, localia, personalia et praecepta consilia, addens et subtrahens, interpretans et exponens ad voluntatem et libitum suum. Qui ob hoc solum, quod mandata Dei nolunt implere opere, laborant nimis in expositione eorum.*

L. c. p. 211.

<sup>5</sup> Ep. 101.

<sup>6</sup> *Quia antequam disciplinis elementaribus imbuantur, docentur inquirere de puncto*

novelty, left all that was old in utter neglect. "Of what use is it," says he, "to heap up copies of lectures, to commit to memory the *Summas*, to condemn the writings of the ancients, and to reject everything that is not to be found in the teacher's notes?"<sup>1</sup> He declaimed against that bold speculation on divine things which would own no limits, and against the unfruitful disputes of the schools.<sup>2</sup> The essence of faith consisted, in his opinion, in its power of grasping that which is not attainable by reason. Where reason discovers its impotence, there the might of faith, he thought, was most conspicuously manifested. It was the interest of reason to repose on faith; for the merit of faith redounded not to its own benefit, but directly to that of reason. For faith must one day cease, and make way for perfect knowledge. But reason would remain forever constantly passing on from one stage of development to another, and would one day discover how she owed it to faith, kept in this present life, that after faith had ceased she had risen to perfect knowledge.<sup>3</sup> Peter of Blois found reason to complain also of theologians, who, having spent almost their whole lives in the study of the ancients, of philosophy, or of the civil law, had become so wholly estranged from the study of the Bible as to have lost all sense<sup>4</sup> for depth in simplicity, so that the language of the Bible seemed to them childish and spiritless.

Bishop Stephen of Tournay (earlier, president of the abbey of

de linea, de superficie, de quantitate animae, de fato, de pronitate naturae, de casu et libero arbitrio, de materia et motu, quid sit tempus, quid locus, de essentia universalium et aliis quampluribus, quae plenioris scientiae fundamentum et eminentiores exigunt intellectus.

1 Quae utilitas est, schedulas evolvere, firmare verbotenus summas, et sophismatum verutias inversare, damnare scripta veterum et reprobare omnia, quae non inveniuntur in suorum schedulis magistrorum.

2 Hodie (says he, ep. 140) varia est inter multos sententiarum contentio, factaeque sunt aquae Siloës, quae cum silentio currebant, aquae contradictionis, apud quas demeruerunt Moses et Aron terrae promissionis introitum.

3 Attingit fides, quod non praesumit ratio, et, quod mirabilis est, ex rationis defectu fortius convalescit. Apprehendit fides per gratiam, quod non potuit ratio capere per seipsam, ratio succumbit, ut fides amplius mereatur, nec invidet ratio merito fidei, sed libenter et humiliter acquiescit. Quod enim fides meretur, non sibi ipsi meretur, sed potius rationi. Sane fides evacuetur et ratio permanebit.

4 Peter of Blois writes to such an one, ep. 76: In fabulis paganorum, in philosophorum studiis, tandem in jure civili dies tuos usque in senium expendisti et contra omnium diligentium te voluntatem sacram theologiae paginam damnabiliter horruisti. The same writer had called the sermo evangelicus durus, insipidus, infantilis.

St Genovese at Paris) wrote to one of the immediate successors of pope Alexander the Third a remarkable letter,<sup>1</sup> in which he bitterly complained of the thirst for novelty among the theologians, of the profane liberties taken in treating the mysteries of faith, of the contradictory opinions held by theological teachers; and called upon the pope to introduce greater uniformity of doctrine into the universities. "The study of sacred science with us, he writes, has fallen into confusion, the students approving of naught but what is new, and the teachers thinking more of their reputation than of the interests of truth, continually giving out new summaries and commentaries on theology, for the purpose of attracting and deceiving their hearers;<sup>2</sup> as if the works of the holy fathers, that have explained the sacred Scriptures in the same spirit with which the apostles and prophets wrote them, did not suffice. Against the ecclesiastical laws disputes are publicly held on God's incomprehensible essence. Loquacious flesh and blood contend irreverently about the incarnation of the Word; the indivisible Trinity is divided and rent to pieces in the streets; so that already there are as many errors as there are teachers, as many scandals as lecture-halls, as many blasphemies as streets."<sup>3</sup> He complains, in violent language, of the licentiousness that had found its way among the faculty of liberal arts; that beardless youth set themselves up for teachers, and, with contempt of all ancient rules, and of all the books standing in cherished authority, catch those that hear them in the webs of their sophistry.<sup>4</sup> Accordingly, he entreats the pope to thrust in here the hand of

<sup>1</sup> Ep. 241, p. 366, in the edition of Claude Du Molinet. Paris, 1682. One of the letters which are not yet to be found in the earlier imperfect edition of Masson and in the Bibl. patr. Lugd.

<sup>2</sup> *Lapsa sunt apud nos in confusione officinarum sacrarum studia literarum, dum et discipuli solis novitatibus applaudunt et magistri gloriæ potius invigilant, quam doctrinæ, novas recentesque summulas et commentaria firmantia super theologia passim conscribunt, quibus auditores suos demulceant, detineant, decipiant.*

<sup>3</sup> *Disputatur publice contra sacras constitutiones de incomprehensibili Deitate, de incarnatione verbi verbosa caro et sanguis irreverenter litigat. Individua trinitas in triviis secatur et disoerpiratur, ut tot jam sint errores, quot doctores, tot scandala, quot auditoria, tot blasphemiae, quot plateae.*

<sup>4</sup> *Quod facultates, quas liberales appellant, amissa libertate pristina in tantam servitutem dejiciantur, ut comatuli adolescentes earum magisteria impudenter usurpent et in cathedra seniorum sedeant imberbes et qui nondum norunt esse discipuli, laborant, ut nominentur magistri. Omisissis regulis artium abjectisque libris authenticis, artificio muscas tanquam ingnavium verborum et sophismatibus suis tanquam araneorum tendiculis includunt.*

reform, so that by his authority uniformity of doctrine and discipline might be restored, and that divine teachings might not be rendered contemptible by becoming vulgar, so that it might not be said in corners: Here is Christ, or there is Christ; so that the holy might not be given unto the dogs, the pearls cast before swine, for them to trample under their feet. The popes, however, were not inclined to be hurried at once, by such remonstrances of individuals, into any arbitrary interference. The spirit of the church, of which they were the organs, demanded a certain manifoldness of development.

The dialectic theology, after having triumphantly passed through the conflicts of the twelfth century, was handed over to the thirteenth, by Alanus (Alain), dignified by his age, on account of the variety of his attainments, and the diligence of his pen, with the name of universal teacher, Alanus the Great (Alanus Magnus), and surnamed Insulensis, after the place of his birth, Lille ab Insula. Here he was born, before 1128; he taught at Paris, became a Cistercian monk, and died in the year 1202.<sup>1</sup> What chiefly characterizes this schoolman is, his departure from the method of the Sententiaries, by entering into a purely rational exposition of his subject-matter. In an *Ars Catholicae fidei*, dedicated to pope Clement the Third, he undertook to expound, in five books, all the doctrines of faith in a connected chain of brief propositions, one of which should be clearly deducible from the other. It was designed to furnish arguments for the faith, which an acute mind could hardly resist, so that he who would not believe the prophets and the gospel, should at least be convinced by demonstration of human reason. But he added, that these arguments would by no means suffice to produce faith; for a faith that proceeded from nothing but reason would be without merit (*meritum*). "It will be our privilege and glory in heaven," says he, "to comprehend with perfect knowledge, what we now see only in a glass darkly."<sup>2</sup> After the same method, he compiled also a series of brief propositions, as *Regulae theologicae*, which he accompanied with illustrations.<sup>3</sup>

<sup>1</sup> Most celebrated in his own age for his poem, called Anticlaudianus; also, author of  
a *Summa de arte praedicandi*.

<sup>2</sup> The cited work published in Pez, *Thesaurus anecdotorum novissimus*, t. i. f. 476.

<sup>3</sup> Published by Mingarelli, in the *Anecdotorum fasciculus*. Romae, 1766.

In the twelfth century, traces of the influence of the Aristotelian dialectics may already be discerned; though, at first, only single logical writings of that great philosopher could have been known. But far more important became this influence, and far greater the new spring which was thereby given to dialectics and speculation in the following century, when men became better acquainted with Aristotle, partly from translations made at second-hand from the Arabic, partly from such as were made directly from the original Greek,<sup>1</sup> and his metaphysical and ethical works came to be studied with great diligence. But this new direction, again, had to encounter, much violent opposition. A speculative system, which, near the beginning of the thirteenth century,<sup>2</sup> had become widely popular at Paris, and which was really calculated to undermine all the religious faith of the times, could not fail to appear as a dangerous symptom to those who had to watch over the doctrines of the church; and the real source of such doctrines being unknown, and wrongly attributed by some to the Aristotelian philosophy, it was natural that the latter should be looked upon with suspicion. Pope Gregory the Ninth issued, in 1228, a letter to the university of Paris, warning its teachers<sup>3</sup> against the presumptuous and false use of philosophy in matters of faith. He complained, probably not without reason, of the forced interpretations whereby it was attempted to bring the declarations of Holy Scripture into harmony with the doctrines of such philosophers as had never known the true God.<sup>4</sup> He told these teachers that, by undertaking to prove everything on philosophical grounds, they made faith superfluous.<sup>5</sup> In what light the arrogance of the new dialectic tendency appeared to the religious spirit of the times, is illustrated by the fable into which the history of one of the first zealous supporters of the Aristotelian philosophy, and of its application to theology, Simon of Tournay,<sup>6</sup> was converted.

<sup>1</sup> See on this point, *Recherches critiques sur l'âge et l'origine des traductions latines d'Aristote*, par M. Jourdain. Paris, 1819.

<sup>2</sup> The doctrines of Almaric of Bena, of which we shall speak in another connection.

<sup>3</sup> Of whom he says: *Præsumptores hujusmodi doctrinam naturalem amplexantes verborum folia et non fructus auditoribus suis apponunt.*

<sup>4</sup> *Ad sensum doctrinae philosophorum ignorantium Deum sacra eloquia extortis expositionibus, imo distortis infectunt.*

<sup>5</sup> *Dum fidem conantur plus debito ratione adstruere naturali, nonne illam reddunt quodammodo inutilem et inanem?*

<sup>6</sup> A writer belonging to the second half of the thirteenth century, Henry of Ghent,



This individual, having passed from the study of philosophy to that of theology, and for several years given lectures on the latter subject, had, in the beginning of the thirteenth century, acquired such extraordinary celebrity, that none but the most capacious edifices could hold the crowds of his hearers. In a certain lecture, having started a variety of doubts on the doctrine of the Trinity, he deferred the resolution of them to the next day. The whole tribe of theological students flocked with eager expectation the next day to his lecture room, when he explained all the difficulties in so satisfactory a manner that the whole assembly were struck with one sentiment of admiration. Several of them, who were intimate with him, now went up and earnestly besought him, that he would dictate the lecture over again for them to copy, that all this knowledge might not be lost. Scouting such a consequence, with a burst of laughter, he exclaimed : " O my little Jesus, little Jesus, how much have I helped to establish and glorify thy doctrine ! Verily, had I a mind to stand forth as its opponent, I might bring still stronger arguments against it." But no sooner was this uttered than he found himself unable to speak another word ; he had lost both voice and memory. He had to spend two years in learning over again the alphabet ; and only with the greatest difficulty succeeded in recommitting to memory so as feebly to stammer out the Lord's prayer and the creed.<sup>1</sup>

archdeacon of Tournay, who, in his work on the ecclesiastical authors of his own time, c. 24 (published by Fabricius, in his *Bibliotheca ecclesiastica*), gives the simplest account of him, refers to his writings, a *liber sententiarum suarum*, moreover, the exposition of the quæstiones, quas in scholis suis disputatas terminavit, an explication of the Athanasian creed,—and could say nothing worse of him than this : *Dum nimis et in hoc et in aliis scriptis suis Aristotelem sequitur, a nonnullis modernis haereses arguitur*. This latter fact, together perhaps with the many peculiarities of the man, and the accident he met with during his celebrated academical labours, and which put an end to them, may have given occasion to the whole of this singular legend. If some of his writings were published, we might be able to form a correct judgment of the whole matter. The copy of the very lecture with which this whole story was connected seems to be still extant, according to the report of the History of French literature composed by the Benedictines of S. Maur.

<sup>1</sup> So states Matthew of Paris, at the year 1202 (ed. Lond. 1686, f. 173) and he adds : *Hoc igitur miraculum multorum scholarium suppressit arrogantiam et jactantiam refrænavit*. He appeals to the oral account of an eye witness, who had studied in Paris, and afterwards became bishop of Durham. That which contradicts and that which agrees with this account, in Thomas Cantimpré's report of the same incident, while it testifies against the literal truth of the story, yet supports the fact lying at the foundation of it.

Yet the philosophy of Aristotle, after the way had been so well prepared for its influence by the progress of events in the twelfth century, laid too strong a hold on the scientific minds to be rent away so easily. And when only the outward results were looked at, when it was observed that men of universally acknowledged piety, eminent for their zeal in behalf of the interests of faith and of the church, drew from this philosophy their weapons for the defence of the truths of faith, it could not be believed that from such a quarter any danger was to be feared. So this philosophy came at length to be patronized and protected even by the popes.

What gave Aristotle this great power of attracting the minds of men, was the combination, so peculiar to him, of dialectical acuteness with sound experimental observation, the comprehensive range of his inquiries, the fruitfulness of his logical formulas, which the great teachers of this century knew how to turn to such good purpose.

In earlier centuries, we noticed, indeed, a great difference between the influences of the Platonic and of the Aristotelian philosophy. We observed that, by the latter, was called forth a one-

He transfers to him that assertion respecting the three deceivers of the world, which was ascribed by others to the emperor Frederic the Second. He says that this Simon, at the close of one of his lectures, uttered a blasphemy of this sort, and as soon as he had expressed it, was attacked by a fit of epilepsy, and three days afterwards fell into the condition described by Matthew of Paris, in which condition he remained till he died. He mentions also, as a characteristic trait, that Simon, whom he represents as a man of unchaste manners,—Matthew of Paris states also that he had two sons,—could at last only pronounce the names of his concubines, but not the title of the work of Boethius on the Trinity, which he before knew almost entirely by heart; see Apes, lib. ii., c. xlviii. But really, if this Simon,—as would seem probable from the chronology,—was the same person with the one whom Stephen of Tournay recommended to the archbishop of Rheims, he is represented on this occasion in a very favourable light. This Stephen recommended him in connection with a controversy which he had with his bishop and the other canonicals,—and which, too, may have contributed to bring him into bad repute,—to the archbishop of Rheims: *Inde est quod magistro Simoni viro inter scholares cathedrus egregio non necesse est verbosas emendicare preces aut laudum venalium coram vobis praeconia erogare. Gratosum et commendabilem faciunt eum hinc auctoritas morum, hinc peritia literarum.* Ep. 79. Bibl. patr. Lugd. t. xxv., f. 17. But the testimony of this person is here certainly of peculiar weight, since he was one of the zealous advocates for the church party, and of the opponents to licentiousness of doctrine,—being inclined, indeed, to confine speculation within too narrow limits, as is plain from the letter quoted on a former page, 167. The author of the article on Simon of Tournay, in the *Hist. lit. de la France*, t. xvi., who gives a list of his works preserved in the Parisian libraries, found nothing in them which could serve either to establish or to explain the charges that had been brought against him. See l. c. p. 394.

sided direction of the understanding, which stood chiefly in a negative relation to the dogmas of the church ; while the Platonic philosophy, which had more to stir the feelings, and to excite religious intuition, might be reconciled with the church doctrines and used for their support. But the positive element of the Christian and churchly spirit in the thirteenth century was too powerful, the mystical element was too much fused and blended with the dialectic, in all the great minds of the age, to render it possible, on the whole, for a negative tendency, in reference to the church, to be called forth by the Aristotelian philosophy. And along with the Aristotelian element was combined also, in the case of these teachers, a not less powerfully working Platonic one, which had been conveyed into them by Augustin, by the Pseudo-Dionysian writings, and by Arabic and Latin translations of the Platonists ; as, in fact, the Aristotelian philosophy, even among the Arabians, whose philosophical culture spread to the Christian nations, was penetrated with elements of New Platonism.<sup>1</sup> By distinguishing the different positions of nature and of grace, of the natural and of the supernatural, they might undertake to bring the doctrines of Aristotle into harmony with those of revelation ; and we shall see how this distinction was connected with their whole mode of contemplation.

The characteristic feature in the method of these men consisted in this : to start a multitude of isolated questions on all the subjects of which they treated, to state the arguments on both sides, and then sum up with a brief decision (*conclusio* or *resolutio*), in which regard was had to the arguments on both sides. This method served greatly to promote the habit of contemplating a subject on its several sides, as well as to exercise acuteness. Much that was brought forward in later times, on deistical grounds, against the doctrines of revelation, is to be found already in the writings of these schoolmen, among the negative grounds, to which they had regard ; and it is evident how carefully they had examined every objection that could be raised against their own theological position. But this method of questioning and defining, was unfavourable to a coherent organic comprehension and development. It afforded abundant nourishment for a species of

<sup>1</sup> See the very interesting and instructive tract, *Essai sur les écoles philosophiques chez les Arabes*, par A. Schmolders Paris, 1842. p. 95, etc.

sophistry, though it might be unconscious sophistry, which was skilful in finding many reasons for that which was untrue or but half true. Add to this, that the above-mentioned theologians, while they kept themselves within those limits of inquiry prescribed by the doctrines of the church, must undertake to prove everything they found contained there, though this was by no means a purposed accommodation; but the fact was, that the view of Christianity presented by the church tradition, had, after an unconscious and involuntary manner, blended itself with their whole life and mode of thinking. There were two authorities by which the minds of men were governed: in the province of natural reason, the authority of Aristotle, called pre-eminently the philosopher; in the Christian province, the authority of the church tradition. From the contrariety between these two authorities, and the results to which theologians, whose thinking was directed by the spirit of Christianity, so far as it could move with freedom at all, were led, there arose among them inconsistencies and contradictions, which, by some artifice or other, they must needs reconcile or cover over.

The most important representatives and schools of the scholastic theology, proceeded from the two orders of the mendicant friars: from the order of the Franciscans, the Englishman Alexander of Hales, and the Italian Bonaventura. The history of the Franciscan order led us often to speak of the last-named individual, who entered the order in 1238, at the age of sixteen, took up its defence with enthusiasm, and finally was placed at its head as general. Bonaventura's original name, like that of his father, was John of Fidanza. He was born at Bagnarea, not far from Viterbo in Italy, about the year 1221, and lived to assist at the general council of Lyons in 1274, during the session of which he died. In him, we find once more united the mystical and the dialectic theology. He distinguished himself as a writer of mystical and practical works on Christianity, and of a commentary on the *Sentences*. In the order of the Dominicans appeared Albertus Magnus and Thomas Aquinas. Albert the Great was descended from an ancient princely family, and was born at Lauingen, not far from Dillingen, in the year 1193, entered the Dominican order in 1223, and studied at Paris, Padua, and Bologna; he taught in Hildesheim, Freiburg, Regensburg,

Strasburg, Paris, and Cologne. The last-mentioned city was more particularly the seat of his activity as a teacher. In 1260, he was compelled, by pope Alexander the Fourth, to accept the bishopric of Regensburg. But after he had sustained the duties of this office two years, anxious to be released from the perplexing crowd of foreign affairs which devolved on German bishops, and to return to his former quiet life, consecrated to religion and science, he obtained a dismissal from pope Urban the Fourth, and then devoted himself wholly, till the close of his life at Cologne, to his labours as a writer and teacher, though he was often called upon to transact business connected with the episcopal office within the diocese of Cologne. He is said to have been present at the general council of Lyons in 1274; and he died on the 15th of November in the year 1280.<sup>1</sup> His great mind grasped the whole compass of human knowledge, as it existed in his time. He abounded in profound, suggestive ideas, with which he fructified the minds of his contemporaries, and in far-reaching anticipations of truth. On the theological development of this century and the succeeding ones, a still more powerful influence was exerted by his great disciple, Thomas Aquinas.

He was born in the year 1225 or 1227,<sup>2</sup> at the castle of Rocca Sicca, belonging to his family, not far from the city of Aquino, on the dividing line between the States of the Church and the Neapolitan territory. He was descended from a very noble family. At the age of five, he was placed in the abbey of Monte Cassino to be educated, where he received the first rudiments of learning. Afterwards he repaired, for the prosecution of his studies, to the university at Naples. At this time, the preachers of the mendicant orders were exercising a great power over the minds of the youth, and successfully endeavouring to win over the distinguished young men to their order; and it so happened that Thomas also was attracted by the charm of this novel appearance; and, without the knowledge of his friends, entered, in 1243, when a young man, the Dominican order. His pious mother, Theodora, was at first not displeased with this resolution

<sup>1</sup> See Echard, t. i. f. 162.

<sup>2</sup> The year of his birth is disputed, because it cannot be exactly determined whether he was forty-eight or fifty years old at the time of his death.

of her son ; she only wished to see him. But the monks, who were little accustomed to pay respect to the ties and feelings of nature, felt themselves bound to prevent such an interview, fearing lest the promising young man might be taken away from them by force. But their pains to keep the son from the sight of his mother, had an effect directly contrary to that which they intended. The enraged mother complained to her sons, who were serving in the army of the emperor Frederic the Second, and adjured them, as they valued her motherly blessing, to obtain her child for her once more. They went and actually succeeded in getting the young Thomas from the order, and making themselves master of his person. But no force could compel him to lay aside the dress of his order. Two years' imprisonment in a castle could not break his will. He spent these days of solitude in studying through the Bible and the works of Peter Lombard. His mother, being at length convinced that it was impossible to conquer his will, assisted, herself, in letting him down with a cord from the window, so that he could escape. Here several companions of his order stood waiting to receive him, and he was welcomed back, with great joy, by the Dominicans in Naples. Soon after this he was sent to Cologne, to pursue his studies under the guidance of the great German teacher, Albert. His taciturn disposition procured for him here the surname *bos mutus*, and nobody dreamed of what was within him. On a certain occasion, however, when he distinguished himself beyond the expectations of all, in an academical disputation, Albert the Great exclaimed : " We call him the *mute ox*, but he will turn out a teacher whose voice will be heard through the whole world." At some later period he was sent to Paris, where he obtained his academical degree. In the year 1253, he was made doctor of theology ; and in the twenty years till his death, he composed his great and numerous works, on subjects philosophical and theological, among which latter may be mentioned his *Summa theologiae*, his Commentary on the Sentences, his Apologetical work against the heathens, and several of his *opuscula*. This department of his labours deserves the more to be admired, because it was not the only one. He was an active teacher of youth ; and his lectures were so attractive that it was hardly possible to find a hall large enough to hold the multitude of his auditors. He

preached, also ; and he taught, not only in Paris, but sometimes also at the university of Naples ; and was therefore occasionally interrupted in his other labours by his journeys to and from Italy.<sup>1</sup> He is said to have employed three or four amanuenses, to all whom he dictated at once on different subjects. His writings show that his thoughts on divine things flowed from a full heart ; he was conscious of the necessary connection subsisting between thought and feeling. Every day he was accustomed to have something read to him from a work of edification (Rufin's *Collationes patrum*) ; and when he was asked why he took this time from his speculative studies, he replied that he thought the excitement of devotion prepared him for soaring upwards to speculation. When the feelings are enkindled by devotion, the thoughts would more easily ascend to the highest matters. He never began to study, to dispute, to give lectures, to write, or to dictate, without first betaking himself to prayer for divine illumination. Whenever doubts confronted him in his investigations, he left off meditating, in order to seek divine guidance in prayer.<sup>3</sup> In secular affairs, too, his clear, discriminating understanding is said to have shown aptitude and ability ; and hence Louis the Ninth of France was in the habit of consulting him even on the affairs of government. Once, when busily engaged on his *Summa theologiae*, he was obliged, against his will, to appear at the table of this monarch. But he took his seat there fully absorbed in his own thoughts. Suddenly striking his fist on the table, he exclaimed : "There ! the Manicheans are down." Wrapped up in his speculations, he thought he had just discovered a conclusive argument against Manicheanism, and had lost all recollection of the place where he was. His prior, sitting next to him, seized his arm, and reminded him that he was at the king's table.

<sup>1</sup> The author of the Life of Thomas Aquinas (William of Thoco), says, at the 7th of March, c. iv. : Unum videtur Dens in dicto doctore, dum viveret, manifestum ostendisse miraculum, ut tam modico tempore, forte in viginti annis, qui inter magisterium ejus et obitum in vita fluxerunt, bis eundo Parisios et in Italiam redeundo, tot potuerit libros per suos scriptores in scriptis redigere.

<sup>2</sup> William of Thoco cites as a reason (iii. 22) : Quia frequenter contingit, quod dum intellectus superius subtilia speculatur, affectus inferius a devotione remittitur.

<sup>3</sup> William of Thoco finely remarks on this subject : Unde videbatur in ejus anima intellectus et affectus sicut invicem se comprehendunt, ut affectus orando mereretur ad divina ingredi, et intellectus hujus merito intueri quae altius intelligeret, quo affectio ardentius in id, quod luce caperet, amore flagraret.

Then Thomas came to his senses, and excused himself to the monarch. But the pious king enjoyed it, and was much edified to find that the honour of such an invitation and of such company could not divert one whose thoughts were wholly absorbed in higher things, from his meditations on divine matters. He considered it important, that not one of these thoughts should be lost, and sent immediately for a scribe, to whom Thomas was obliged to dictate the whole. This great theologian died on his journey to the general council of Lyons, whither he was summoned by the pope, in 1274.

Besides these theologians of the mendicant orders, we should mention one distinguished man, who was pre-eminent alike in practical and theoretical matters,—in the practical government of the church, as a bishop, preacher, and pastor; and in science, as an apologist, dogmatician, and moral theologian. This was William of Auvergne<sup>1</sup> (born at Aurillac), who was chosen bishop of Paris in 1228, and died in the year 1248.<sup>2</sup>

One of the extraordinary men of the thirteenth century, who stood forth to resist the ruling authorities of their times, was the Englishman Roger Bacon, a man of a free spirit beyond all others, full of great ideas of reform; ideas that contained the germs of new creations, reaching farther in their consequences and results than he himself, firmly rooted as, with all his aspirations, he still was in the times in which he lived, either understood or intended. He was born near Ilchester in Somersetshire, in 1214. He was educated under the influence of that free-hearted man, so full of the spirit of reform, Robert Grosshead (Grouthead), mentioned already on a former page;<sup>3</sup> who, as bishop of Lincoln, and under the name of *Robertus Lincolniensis*, held an important rank among the scholastic theologians of this period;<sup>4</sup> and whom Bacon himself was accustomed to name with

<sup>1</sup> Hence known also under the name of Guilelmus Alvernus.

<sup>2</sup> His apologetical work, *De fide et legibus*, also aimed against Mohammedanism; his ethical writings, *De virtutibus, moribus, vitiis et peccatis, de temptationibus et resistentiis*,—his writings on particular points of doctrine, his more comprehensive work, *De universo*, his tract, *De rhetorica divina* (on the art of correct prayer). His works were published, in two folio volumes, at Paris, in 1674. His particular doctrinal and ethical writings are so wrought out as to form, together, one whole.

<sup>3</sup> See vol. vii., p. 248.

<sup>4</sup> It is to be lamented that we know so little of him in this respect, as nothing has been published from his greater works.



peculiar reverence, as one of the great scholars of that age.<sup>1</sup> He entered, by the advice of his patron,—who at first expected much good from the orders of mendicant friars,—into the Franciscan order; but the free direction which his mind took exposed him to many persecutions in the same. For many years he languished in the confinement of a cell, until, by the interposition of powerful patrons, he obtained his freedom. He died at Oxford in the year 1294.

In the work containing his ideas on the reform of science, the *Opus majus*,<sup>2</sup> which he composed by invitation of pope Clement the Fourth, to whom he dedicated it,<sup>3</sup> he denounced dependence on authority and custom as a source of the great majority of errors, and advocated free inquiry after truth. He said that the church fathers themselves laid no claim to infallibility. They had corrected themselves, had disputed with one another; as, for example, Augustin with Jerome. Men should not feel bound by their authority, therefore, where they have erred; but imitate them in seeking a continually progressive improvement. "Had they lived to our times, they would have altered for the better many more things than they had done."<sup>4</sup> He cites the dispute between Paul and Peter at Antioch, to show that holy men had mutually corrected each other, and firmly withstood each other.<sup>5</sup> He adopted the idea of the church theocracy from the prevailing view of his times, altering it only in the essential point, that he was for having the sacred Scriptures the guiding and determining principle for everything, whether relating to

<sup>1</sup> Solum dominus Robertus, dictus Grossum Caput, novit scientias. *Opus majus*, f. 46.

<sup>2</sup> Ed. Jebb. Londini, 1733.

<sup>3</sup> Which, however, is perhaps not yet completely published.

<sup>4</sup> P. 10-17: Ne igitur nos simus causa erroris nostri et fiat magnum sapientiae impedimentum ex eo, quod vias sanctorum et sapientum non intelligimus, ut expedit, possumus auctoritate sanctorum et sapientum antiquorum considerare pia mente et animo reverenti propter veritatis dignitatem, quae omnibus antefertur, si sancti et sapientes aliqua, quae humanam imperfectionem important, protulerunt, in quibus seu affirmatis seu negatis non oportet quod nos imitemus ex fronte. Scimus quidem, quod non solum dederunt nobis consilium et licentiam hoc faciendi, sed conspicimur, quod ipsi multa posuerunt magna auctoritate, quae postea majori humilitate retractaverunt et ideo latuit in iis magna imperfectio prioribus temporibus. Quod si vixissent usque nunc, multa plura correxissent et mutassent.

<sup>5</sup> Sancti etiam ipsi mutuo suas correxerunt positiones et sibi invicem fortiter resistebant.

knowledge or to life. All the wisdom requisite for the determination of all the relations of life, and all science were, in their principle and source, to be found in the Holy Scriptures.<sup>1</sup> There was but one perfect wisdom given by the one only God for the entire human family, which was wholly contained in the sacred Scriptures; but it was to be deduced and evolved from them by philosophy and the canonical law.<sup>2</sup> A reformation according to this method, in all studies, should be introduced. The entire church would then be governed again as it was in the times of the saints; in all the affairs of the church, among princes and laymen, a universal peace would then prevail. As the church among the Jews was governed by the law of God, so must it be again among the Christians.<sup>3</sup> In principle, at least, everything must be governed by that law. All evils, through the various ranks of society, he traced to ignorance of the Holy Scriptures, the source of faith and the rule of life. So zealous was he in favour of the general study of the Scriptures, that he would have all the laity read, and so be able to make use of them. Nor should they rest satisfied with the Vulgate, which he saw needed correction; but they should study the Old and New Testaments in the original texts. By means of a universal grammar, discovered by himself, he engaged to give any man, in three days, such knowledge of the Hebrew, Greek, and Latin tongues as would enable him to understand the Scriptures in each of these languages.

Considering it, as he did, a matter of so much importance that everything should be referred to the study of the Bible, he could not but lament that this was so much neglected by the theologians, and, compared with the study of the new dialectic theology, thrown wholly into the background; that any man who, at

<sup>1</sup> *Tota sapientia est ibi principaliter contenta et fontaliter*, in his tract, not yet published also, addressed to pope Clement the Fourth: *De laude scripturæ sacrae*, from which weighty extracts have been communicated in *Usserii historia dogmatica de scripturis*, ed. Wharton. Londini, 1690, p. 421.

<sup>2</sup> *Ut sicut in pugno colligitur, quod latius in palma explicatur, sic tota sapientia utilis homini continetur in sacris literis, licet non tota explicetur, sed ejus explicatio est jus canonicum et philosophia, nam utrumque jacet in visceribus sacrae scripturæ et de his exivit et super hoc fundantur omnia, quæ utiliter dicuntur in jure canonico et philosophia.* L. c.

<sup>3</sup> *Quod regimen ecclesiæ, sicut per legem Dei regebatur antiquitus apud Hebræos, sic esse nunc apud Christianos.*

Paris or Bologna, would give lectures on the Bible, must, in respect to time and place, give way to him who would read on the Sentences.<sup>1</sup> Theology, he said, in these schools, took just the opposite course of the other faculties; for, in the other faculties, the text always went for more than the commentary; and he who rightly understood the text was considered as having a correct understanding of the whole; and yet the text, in theology, was one infinitely higher than that in any of the other faculties. It was a text brought into the world through the mouth of our Lord and of the saints, and so great, that an entire life would scarce suffice to explain it wholly.<sup>2</sup>

We may remark, also, by the way, that Roger Bacon coincides with another original man of this age, Raymund Lull, in pointing out the necessity of a complete scientific education for missionaries, and particularly in insisting that missions, undertaken without any correct ideas of geography and ethnography, must necessarily prove failures; all which he explained at large.<sup>3</sup>

As Roger Bacon suggested the necessity of an emendation of the extremely corrupted Vulgate, of which the manuscripts varied from each other to an astonishing extent,<sup>4</sup> so the need of this came now to be felt by all; and by the general chapter of the Dominican order one of their own body, Hugo de St Chers (*a Sancto Caro*), so called from his birthplace, near Vienna, a man distinguished for his knowledge of Hebrew and Chaldee, afterwards elevated to the dignity of a cardinal, was appointed to

<sup>1</sup> Boulaeus quotes the remarkable words from a chapter not yet published of the *Opus majus*: De theologorum peccatis, Hist. univers. Paris, t. iii., f. 383. Baccalaureus, qui legit textum, succumbit lectori sententiarum. Parisiis ille, qui legit sententias, habet principalem horam legendi secundum suam voluntatem, habet socium et cameram apud religiosos, sed qui legit bibham, caret his et mendicat horam legendi secundum quod placet lectori sententiarum.

<sup>2</sup> Quod textus hic de ore Domini et sanctorum allatus mundo est, ita magnus, quod vix sufficeret aliquis lector ad perlegendum eum in tota vita sua.

<sup>3</sup> *Opus majus*, f. 189: Haec cognitio locorum mundi valde necessaria est reipublicae fidelium et conversioni infidelium, et ad obviandum infidelibus et antichristo. Qui loca mundi ignorat, nescit non solum quo vadit, sed quo tendat et ideo sive pro conversione infidelium proficiscatur aut pro aliis ecclesiae negotiis, necesse est, ut sciat ritus et conditiones omnium nationum, quatenus proposito certo locum proprium petat.

<sup>4</sup> He says in his tract already cited, de laude scripturae sacrae: A viginti retro annis inter minores et Scholares, potissimum vero praedicatores, mos inolevit, quod quilibet corrigat pro sua voluntate et quilibet mutet, quod non intelligit, quod non licet facere in libris poetarum.

prepare an improved edition of the Vulgate.<sup>1</sup> The same schoolman composed likewise a concordance and commentary on the Bible.

In the history of systematic theology, that extraordinary man, little known as a theologian,—whom we have so often had occasion to mention on account of his many-sided activity,—Raymund Lull, holds an important place. Although, as appears evident from the history of his life which we have given, he had not formed himself in the school of any one of the great teachers of his time, but was for the most part a self-taught man,—still, he must be regarded as one link in this connected series; and the great influence of the questions which occupied the theologians of his age is shown in his case also, in a way not to be mistaken. We have seen how intimately the speculative and practical were blended together in him; how his speculative turn entered even into his enthusiasm for the cause of missions, and his zeal as an apologist. His contests, growing out of this latter interest, with the school of Averrhoes, with the sect proceeding from that school which affirmed the irreconcilable opposition between faith and knowledge, would naturally lead him to make the relation subsisting between these two a matter of special investigation. It is true, the enthusiasm for truth which filled his mind, the union of a fervid imagination with logical formalism, led him to form extravagant hopes of a fancied absolute method adapted to all science,—applicable, also, to the truths of Christianity, and by which these truths might be demonstrated in a convincing manner to every man. Yet his writings generally abound,—far more than that formal system of science, his *Ars Magna*,—in deep apologetic ideas. The enthusiasm of a most fervent love to God, a zeal equally intense for the cause of faith and the interests of reason and science, expressed themselves everywhere in his works.

We perceive some progress of systematic development in the fact that the scholastic theologians of the thirteenth century, before proceeding to the treatment of particular subjects, busied

<sup>1</sup> The work sketched out by him in the year 1286: *Sacra biblia recognita et emendata, id est, a scriptorum vitiis expurgata, additis ad marginem variis lectionibus codicum Mss. Hebræorum, Græcorum, et veterum Latinorum codicum, ætate Caroli magni scriptorum.*

themselves with preliminary inquiries respecting the idea and essence of theology itself; as to whether theology could be called a science, and in what sense; as to the relation in which its peculiar province stood to other departments of knowledge; as to the relation of faith to knowledge; as to the object-matter and the unity of theology; as to whether it was a speculative or a practical science. In their way of investigating and answering these questions, the same differences in the mode of apprehending the idea and essence of religion lie already at bottom, which became more fully and distinctly expressed in far later times. In general they abode faithfully by the principle expressed by Augustin and Anselm, in making dogmatical knowledge proceed from the basis of Christian experience, and designating it as the special business of dogmatics scientifically to unfold and vindicate the matter received in and through faith.

This is distinctly expressed and profoundly set forth by the first of these theologians with whom we shall occupy ourselves, Alexander of Hales. "If we compare," says he, "the way in which the relation of faith or conviction to knowledge is determined in theology with the way in which it is done in the other sciences, we shall find that the order is a reverse one. In the other sciences, conviction is brought about by the activity of reason, or mediated by thought, and scientific knowledge precedes conviction; while the reverse holds true of religious matters. It is not till we have appropriated them by faith, that we can attain to a knowledge of them conformable to reason. These things can be understood only by those who are of a pure heart; and of this purity we become possessed by keeping God's commandments. The faith by which we come to conviction is the light of the soul: the more one is enlightened by this light, the more will his mind's eye be sharpened by it, to account for the matters believed on rational grounds."<sup>1</sup> He distinguishes a certainty of speculation, and a certainty of experience, a certainty grounded in the intellectual agencies, and another grounded in the feelings. Of the latter

<sup>1</sup> In *Logicis ratio creat fidem, unde argumentum est ratio rei dubiae faciens fidem. In theologicis vero est converso, quia fides creat rationem, unde fides est argumentum faciens rationem. Fides enim, qua creditur, est lumen animarum, quo quanto quis magis illustratur, tanto magis est perspicax ad inveniendas rationes, quibus probantur credenda.*

kind, is the certainty of faith; and, with reference to this kind of certainty, theology is superior to the other sciences.<sup>1</sup> "Everything depends here on distinguishing one from another the different points of view, or positions occupied by the spiritual life. The same thing cannot be certain for all. The certainty of which we here speak, presupposes, as a subjectively conditioned certainty, resting on inward experience, a certain stage arrived at, and position occupied by the higher life. That which is certain to the spiritual man, is by no means so to the natural man, who, as Paul says, perceives not the things of the Spirit." He distinguishes the science which aims to guide reason to the knowledge of the truth, from that which aims to excite the feelings of piety.<sup>2</sup> "But of what use is it," he goes on to ask, "for us to seek also to know, on rational grounds, that which is already certain to us by faith? It serves, in the first place, to advance our own progress. For we must ever strive to explore more deeply into the contents of the truth we have appropriated by faith; and the grace of faith affords the mind the light for this purpose. Next, it should serve to promote the faith of the simple. For as men are incited to love God by the bestowment of temporal blessings, so they may be led by rational grounds to a higher stage of faith. Again it may be employed as a means of conducting unbelievers to the faith. Yet this can be only a preparation; for true faith, which alone is acceptable to God, does not rest on arguments of reason, but proceeds from the immediate contact of the spirit with the highest truth manifesting itself to the spirit.<sup>3</sup> It is like the relation of those Samaritans to the woman who first pointed them to Christ, when they said to her: "Now we believe, not because of thy sayings, but because we have heard him ourselves." He affirms that theology is more a matter of temper and disposition, than of systematic knowledge; it is rather wisdom than science.<sup>4</sup> He particularizes Christ and the redemption,

<sup>1</sup> The distinction between *certitudo speculativa* and *certitudo experientiae*, *certitudo secundum intellectum* and *secundum affectum*, quod est per modum gustus.

<sup>2</sup> Alius modus debet esse scientiae, quae habet informare affectum secundum pietatem, alius scientiae, quae habet informare intellectum solum ad cognoscendam veritatem.

<sup>3</sup> Habet rationem credendorum, non tamen ei innuitur, imo acquiescit ipsi veritati per testimonium primae veritatis. Fides inspirata ad assentiendum primae veritati sive primo vero propter seipsum.

<sup>4</sup> Haec scientia magis est virtutis quam artis, et sapientia magis quam scientia.

as the proper object of theology, the central point, to which everything else refers.<sup>1</sup>

With Alexander of Hales agrees Bonaventura. He distinguishes the position held by natural reason, and that of reason exalted by faith, to which is imparted on that very account the gift of a higher knowledge, a knowledge not grounded in its natural powers, but communicated to it by the illumination of the divine spirit. Faith elevates the soul to a point where it harmonizes with divine truths; science, to the point where it understands the matter believed. On the question, therefore, whether the truths of faith are above reason, we must carefully distinguish from one another these two positions.<sup>2</sup> The worth of faith depends on the fact, that here, conviction is not determined by arguments of reason, but by love.<sup>3</sup> In theology, the theoretic and the practical, feeling and knowing, meet and unite together.<sup>4</sup> The truths of faith, though, like other truths, matters of knowledge, are distinguished from others in this respect, that, by their essence, they operate on the heart or the feelings.<sup>5</sup> Such a knowledge as this—Christ died for us—moves the heart, not hardened, to love and devotion, which cannot be said of mathematical truths.

Albert the Great also pronounces theology a practical science, because it has reference to that whereby man is to be rendered capable of attaining to his ultimate end, the bliss that consists in communion with God.<sup>6</sup> It is required as a compliment to human knowledge. The light of natural reason is not sufficient for the knowledge of that which is necessary in order to our salvation; we need those truths, besides, which can be known only by supernatural light.<sup>7</sup>

1 Theologia: scientia de substantia divina cognoscenda per Christum in opere reparationis.

2 Credibile super rationem quantum ad scientiam acquisitam per rationem evidentem, non supra rationem elevatam per fidem et per donum scientiæ et intellectus. Fides enim elevat ad assentiendum, scientia et intellectus elevat ad ea, quæ credita sunt, intelligendum.

3 Non assentit propter rationem, sed propter amorem ejus cui assentit.

4 Cognitio et affectus.

5 Fides sic est in intellectu, ut quantum est de sui ratione, nata sit, movere affectum.

6 Finis, conjungi intellectu et affectu et substantia cum eo, quod colitur, prout est finis beatificans et ideo ista scientia proprie est affectiva id est veritatis, quæ non sequestratur a ratione boni et ideo perficit et intellectum et affectum.

7 Ex illuminatione connaturali nobis non sufficienter innotescunt, quæ ad salutem

All these theologians proceed on the assumption that, as man is destined for a supernatural end, transcending the limits of his nature, in which end he is to find his felicity, so he needs a supernatural means ; a thought which, we allow, stands closely connected with the separation they make, in anthropology, between the natural and the supernatural, as it regards man's original state (of which, more hereafter). Accordingly, Thomas Aquinas endeavours to demonstrate in this way the necessity of a supernatural revelation for mankind ; which necessity he deduces from the fact that the end for which man is destined lies beyond the reach of the natural creation. The speculative spirit of Thomas Aquinas, like that of Aristotle, whose opinion he here adopts, places contemplation as the highest end and good of the spirit. But then he distinguishes the contemplation of God, mediated through the knowledge of God by the creation, from that which springs from the immediate intuition of God's essence. As all creatures are endowed with the requisite powers and means for fulfilling their destination, so also is man in respect to the end corresponding to his nature, as it is in itself. This end, therefore, reason may arrive at, by the force that resides in itself ; and this was the highest end known to the ancient philosophers, beyond which they could not go. But it is by faith we first come to the knowledge of that perfect contemplation of God which constitutes the bliss to which we shall arrive in our heavenly home. Now this highest supernatural end must have a corresponding means leading to it ; that man may be led to it, not by knowledge drawn from the works of creation, but by a knowledge given immediately by divine light. But aside from the consideration of the matter which is such as can become known to man only through a supernatural revelation, even in reference to the knowledge of those truths which it is possible to reach by reason, the necessity of a revelation appears ; for, without this, only a few men, capable of philosophical cultivation, and these only by means of a long and tedious course of mental development, could arrive at such knowledge. Moreover, the knowledge would not be so certain ; it would be liable to be mixed up with

*necessaria sunt. Unde omnibus aliis traditis scientiis lecta tanquam omnium perfectiva necessaria est, in qua supermundana illuminatione innotescunt ea, quae ad salutem hominis pertinent.*



many errors.<sup>1</sup> By virtue of this distinction between a supernatural and a natural end of man, he rebuts the objection often urged by those who stood on naturalistic or rationalistic grounds, against the reception of a supernatural revelation, namely, that it would be placing man below all the other creatures, to suppose him the only one not provided with all the requisite powers for attaining his ultimate end. The setting aside of this objection was provided for in the statement already made, that the end of human development reaches higher than the whole creation ; and hence the necessity of a corresponding instrumentality.<sup>2</sup> In accordance with these premises, he goes on to remark, that " As the other sciences proceed from principles evidenced by the light of natural reason, so theology proceeds from principles made clear by the light of faith. We ought not to be surprised that those truths should be just as strange to unbelievers, as the truths of natural reason would be to us, without the light of natural reason. As, in the other sciences, it is impossible to argue from those highest principles with those who are not agreed in recognizing those principles, or with those who positively deny them ; so no other means are left for convincing such as do not admit the fundamental truths themselves which are given by revelation."<sup>3</sup> Accordingly, he remarks of the attempts in the proper sense to demonstrate the Trinity by natural reasons : " That the interests of faith are thereby injured in two ways ; first, the dignity of faith itself is impaired ; for it has respect to things invisible, things exalted above reason, Heb. xi. 1. Next, professing to demonstrate what it is impossible to demonstrate, the doctrines of faith are exposed to the ridicule of unbelievers, if the latter are so mistaken as to suppose that our faith reposes on such arguments."

1 Ad ea etiam, quae de Deo ratione humana investigari possunt, necessarium fuit hominem instrui revelatione divina, quia veritas de Deo per rationem investigata a paucis et per longum tempus et cum admixtione multorum errorum homini proveniret.

2 Illud, quod acquirit bonitatem perfectam pluribus auxiliis et motibus est nobilius eo quod imperfectam bonitatem acquirit paucioribus vel per seipsum, et hoc modo se habet homo respectu aliarum creaturarum, qui factus est ad ipsius divinae gloriae participationem.

3 Quod sicut habitus principiorum primorum non acquiritur per alias scientias, sed habetur a natura, ita etiam in hac doctrina non acquiritur habitus fidei, qui est quasi habitus principiorum.

As Thomas Aquinas, on the one hand, maintained that the doctrines of revelation are above reason, and, with a moderation the more to be admired, because it proceeded from a mind so acute and profoundly speculative by nature, endeavoured to fix the boundaries of rational demonstration; so, on the other hand, he stood forth the opponent of a party who held, that an irreconcilable opposition existed between faith and reason. Those who affirmed this, were certainly not the advocates of an abrupt supernaturalism, but rather of a pantheistic and rationalistic infidelity, which came from Spain, having originated in the school of Averrhoes; and now, under the pretext of this irreconcilable opposition between revelation and reason, between theological and philosophical truth, was endeavouring to propagate itself. Under such an opposition might be concealed a negative tendency; negative, in that it afterwards bowed to the authority of the church, holding that from the church alone could be received those higher truths which contradicted natural reason. Thomas Aquinas maintained, in opposition to this tendency, that the truths of faith could not possibly contradict the fundamental axioms recognized as necessary truths by natural reason; for if they could, then since God, the author of our nature, implanted these truths in that nature, it would follow that God contradicted himself.<sup>1</sup> Besides, our minds would be hindered, by conflicting ideas, from making any progress in the knowledge of truth; a condition of being such as could not possibly proceed from God. That which is natural cannot be altered, so long as nature remains the same. But contradicting convictions cannot subsist together. Therefore, it would be impossible for a conviction to be imparted to man by God, which contradicts natural knowledge. To confirm this, he cites, with a profound sense of the spirit of the passage, Rom. x. 8. That, however, which is *above* reason, is by many wrongly held to be *contradictory* to reason. From all this it follows, that the objections brought against the truths of faith can possess only a shadow of truth; they must be *sophistical*. And so reason, though she cannot, it is true, de-

<sup>1</sup> Principiorum autem naturaliter notorum cognitio nobis divinitus est indita, cum ipse Deus sit auctor nostrae naturae. Haec ergo principia etiam divina sapientia, continet. Quicquid igitur principii hujusmodi contrarium est, est divinae sapientiae contrarium, non igitur a Deo esse potest.

monstrate the truths of faith which are above reason, may detect and expose the shallowness of the arguments brought against them.<sup>1</sup> As grace does not destroy nature, but completes it, so natural reason must be subservient to faith, as also the natural inclinations should be subservient to Christian love.<sup>2</sup> Here he applies the passage of Scripture which speaks of the bringing of reason into captivity to the obedience of faith, 2 Corinth. x. 5. We shall, indeed, fully comprehend the truths of faith only then, when we shall have attained to the intuition of the divine essence; but reason, even here below, is doubtless competent to discover many analogies serving to illustrate them. True, such analogies are insufficient to make these truths comprehensible; still, it is profitable for the human mind to exercise itself in such however feeble attempts, provided it does so without pretending to comprehend or to demonstrate; because no higher source of enjoyment is to be found than that of being able to know even a small portion of the highest things. This should be used for the instruction and the comfort of believers, but not for the refutation of adversaries. —Although theology takes cognizance of a great variety of apparently foreign subjects, belonging to different parts of philosophy, still, in the opinion of Thomas Aquinas, its unity as a science is not at all impaired thereby; for everything in it is bound together by virtue of *one* formal relation. It treats, it is true, of God, and at the same time of the creature, though not after the same manner; but it treats everything with a like reference to God, as the principle and end of all,<sup>4</sup> and everything, so far as it may be contemplated, as what God has revealed. Theology, therefore, is a certain transcript of the divine knowledge; embracing within its compass all things, as God knows all things in knowing himself.<sup>5</sup> Since Thomas entertained the same views respecting the progressive stages of religious convic-

1 Cum enim fides infallibili veritati innitatur, impossibile autem sit, de vero demonstrari contrarium, manifestum est, probationes quae contra fidem inducuntur, non esse demonstrationes, sed solubilia argumenta.

2 Cum gratia non tollat naturam, sed perficiat, oportet, quod naturalis ratio subserviat fidei, sicut et naturalis inclinatio voluntatis obsequitur caritati.

3 Quod ad eam potest aliquas veras similitudines colligere.

4 Non determinat de Deo et de creaturis aequo, sed de Deo principaliter et de creaturis secundum quod referuntur ad Deum, ut ad principium vel finem.

5 Ut sit sacra doctrina sic velut quaedam impressio divinae scientiae, quae est una simplex omnium.

tion, and respecting the relation of faith to knowledge, with the earlier scholastic theologians, he would be likely to decide as they did on the question whether theology is a *speculative* or a *practical* science. Still, he expresses himself differently, though without differing from them at bottom, in the views which he entertained. All depends on the meaning which he attaches to the word *theoretical*. Its meaning is determined, in his case, by the fact that he places the bliss of the righteous in the contemplation of God, representing everything else as means to form man for this ultimate end. "Although," says he, "theology contains much that belongs partly to speculative, partly to practical philosophy, still, it is more speculative than practical, because it occupies itself far more with divine things than with human actions, and treats of the latter only with reference to the end that man may be rendered capable thereby of that perfect knowledge in which consists eternal happiness."<sup>1</sup>

Profound discussions concerning the essence of religious conviction, concerning the idea of faith, and the process of its development, we find in William of Paris. The view of faith common to all these theologians, that it is a determination of the "intellect," proceeding from the heart, or disposition, is explicated by him in an original and lively manner. He distinguishes *that* conviction, which proceeds from objective truth through the medium of demonstration and thought, where the matter itself is so constituted as necessarily to produce acquiescence of the mind, and *that* conviction which proceeds from the subjective temper of the heart, the bent of the will, which determines man to adopt, among his convictions, even that which, in itself, may not appear credible to the natural "intellect."<sup>2</sup> Hence faith is to be denominated a virtue,—the force of a temper exercising its power over the "intellect," enabling reason to overcome the darkness pressing in upon it from without, to overcome the reaction of doubt, and shedding its own light upon that which, in itself, would appear dark, so that it becomes light and clear to the

1 Quia principaliter agit de rebus divinis, quam de actibus humanis, de quibus agit, secundum quod per eos ordinatur homo ad perfectam Dei cognitionem, in qua aeterna beatitudo consistit.

2 Aliud est credere ex probabilitate sive ex evidentia ipsius crediti, aliud ex virtute credentis. De fide, c. i.

mind.<sup>1</sup> If the entire human soul is to be received into glory, and the necessary medium for its glorification in that life is grace in this, and the intellect is to share in the same glory with the other powers, then the intellect must first be clothed upon with grace in the present life, and this is the work of faith. If the human soul ought to be governed by religion, and nothing foreign from religion ought to abide in it, then the eye of the soul itself, the "intellect," should be governed by religion; but faith is, of necessity, the whole religion of the "intellect," or the first thing in it. Furthermore, man is bound to deny himself and submit to God as well with the bent of the "intellect" as of the "affections." But on the part of the "intellect," this act is none other than that which is denoted by the term "faith." This theologian, therefore, reckons to the essence of faith the conflict with self, and considers self-denial as the negative moment in the act by which reason submits to God. Faith, according to him, can only arise and assert itself in contest with the reactions of natural reason, which will not let man receive that which does not harmonize with itself. Conflict and warfare belong to the essence of faith.<sup>2</sup> Faith is strong in proportion as conviction proceeds from its own inward energy, and requires no other supports, such as arguments of reason or miracles, which are merely crutches to uphold the weak in faith. More sublime, more noble and certain, is that knowledge which proceeds from a virtue, than that which proceeds from a science; because virtue is something more inward, more deep-rooted in the very essence of the mind itself.<sup>3</sup> As religious faith is a light flowing directly from the very fountain of light, so it is a higher thing than the light, which

1 Manifestum, quod credere improbabilia fortitudinis est atque vigoris nostri intellectus, sicut amare molesta et ignominiosa fortitudinis est et vigoris nostri affectus. Fortitudo intellectus, quae tenebras improbabilitatis irrumpat et vineat et luminositate propria ea, quae illa abscondere contendit lucida et aperta, hoc est credita faciat.

2 De operationibus intellectus solum credere bellum habet, omne bellum bellica virtute seu fortitudine agendum est. Virtus or fortitudo intellectus manifests itself in faith. It is evident how intimately connected with his views of the nature of faith were the remarks with which this bishop endeavoured to comfort a clergyman (see on a former page, 46) who was troubled with doubts.

3 Propter hoc virtus est certior quam ars, quia intimior et hoc utroque modo, quia magis profundans in nos, magis enim penetrat mentem et inficit virtus quam ars, et a profundioribus rerum ipsarum (that which is the most profound in the things themselves) est.

comes through the medium and reflection of something else, as in science and in every other sort of conviction.<sup>1</sup> This faith (living faith) is not merely a light, by which the matter believed is revealed, but also a life, which impels to the doing of that which is believed, and to the eschewing of the contrary.<sup>2</sup> It is a life-giving ray from the fountain-source of life,—a part of that life itself which is denominated the life of faith, descending on the intellect, that head of the human soul, for the purpose of quickening, establishing, and arming it. Dead faith, if faith it may be called, he compares with those motions or spasmodic contractions, resembling life, which may sometimes be observed in the limbs of animals that are dead.<sup>3</sup>

It is evident from what has already been said concerning the scientific bent of Roger Bacon, that *he* could not tolerate any schism between faith and knowledge, but would look upon Christianity,—which, in his view, should appropriate to itself all that is true in that earlier, preparatory evolution, the philosophy of antiquity,—would look upon this as the perfection of science. “All truth, he says, “springs from the same source, from the divine light which, according to the gospel of St John, enlightens every man that cometh into the world. Human reason is only a capacity to be filled, and knowledge can be imparted to it only by *that* reason which alone is reason *in actu*.”<sup>4</sup> He adduces the testimony of Augustin, that men know whatever they know of truth, only in the eternal truth and the eternal laws.<sup>5</sup> Now as

<sup>1</sup> Cum ipsa descendat a primo lumine, nobilior est atque sublimior, quam scientiæ vel credulitates, quæ a rebus per reflexionem illuminationis, quam a lumine primo recipiunt, ad intellectum nostrum accedunt.

<sup>2</sup> Non solum modo lumen ad ostendendum credita, sed etiam vita, ad movendum ad illa facienda vel declinanda.

<sup>3</sup> Sic et mortuo intellectu per extinctionem fidei aliqui similes motus inveniuntur, non autem motus perfecti, ut ambulatio, quæ non invenitur in animali mortuo, neque volatus.

<sup>4</sup> The distinction between the intellectus agens, *ἐνεργεια, ποιητικός*, and the intellectus possibilis, *δυνάμις, παθητικός*, according to Aristotle. Roger Bacon contends against that view according to which only two different spheres are thereby denoted in the human soul itself, as Aristotle certainly affirms in his work on the soul, iii. 5. See Trendelenburg on this place. He supposes, on the contrary, that, under the intellectus agens, must be conceived an intellectus different from the human soul, influens et illuminans possibilem intellectum ad cognitionem veritatis.

<sup>5</sup> Quod non cognoscimus aliquam veritatem nisi in veritate increata et in regulis æternis.

God enlightened the souls of the philosophers in the knowledge of certain truths, so their labours are not foreign and aside from the divine wisdom.<sup>1</sup> The *practical* is what Bacon contemplates as the *ultimate* end to which all else must be subservient. The will or practical reason is something higher than the speculative reason; virtue and bliss are infinitely superior to mere knowledge, and far more necessary for us.<sup>2</sup> Hence speculative philosophy stands, to moral philosophy, in the relation of a means to an end; and its end is, to prepare principles for the latter. But that which unbelievers consider as moral philosophy, is, with Christian philosophers, in the proper and complete sense, theology. Philosophy respects that which is common to all things and sciences; hence it determines the number of the sciences, and the peculiar province of each; it must therefore, by the consciousness of its own inadequacy to reach the knowledge of those things which it is most necessary for man to know, come to see that there must be a science exalted above philosophy, whose peculiar nature it describes generally, though it cannot set forth its particular contents.<sup>3</sup> This higher science is the science that treats of divine things; and it can proceed only from Christianity.

Roger Bacon distinguishes this province of philosophy, perfected by Christianity, from the province of theology, which concerns itself with the exposition of the truths of faith communicated by revelation. This Christian philosophy stands, according to him, in the same relation to theology in which speculative philosophy, in the ante-Christian times stood to moral philosophy.<sup>4</sup> It adopts that which is true from the earlier speculation, and with it unites those truths, to the consciousness of which reason first attained under the light of Christianity by virtue of the impulse given to it by the same, but to the recognition of which reason may now be led of itself, though it was not competent to discover them of

1 Opus majus, p. ii. c. v.

2 Voluntas seu intellectus practicus nobilior quam speculativus et virtus cum felicitate excollet in infinitum scientiam nudam et nobis est magis necessaria sine comparatione. P. iii. f. 47.

3 Quod oportet esse aliam scientiam ultra philosophiam, cujus proprietates tangit in universali, licet in particulari non possit eam assignare.

4 Speculatio Christianorum præcedens legem suam debet super speculationem alterius legis addere ea, quæ valent ad legem Christi docendam et probandam, ut surgat una speculatio completa, cujus initium erit speculativa philosophorum infidelium et complementum ejus superinductum theologiæ et secundum proprietatem legis Christianæ.

itself. Thus will this Christian philosophy lead to faith, while it takes nothing from the articles of faith, for the purposes of proof, but employs many common truths of reason, which any wise man would easily recognize when presented before him by another, although he would never have come to the knowledge of them, if left to himself.<sup>1</sup> And this it must do, not only in order to the completion of philosophy, but also on account of the Christian consciousness, whose office it is to conduct all truth up to divine truth, so that the one may be subjected and rendered subservient to the other.<sup>2</sup>

Roger Bacon did not otherwise depart, however, in his general mode of apprehending the idea of that which properly constitutes faith, from the theologians of this century. He too made reason (*ratio*) proceed from the faith (*fides*), that had grown out of another process of development; though Christian philosophy, which is indebted to faith alone for its existence, may, as he supposes, be to others a preparation for faith, in order to which, however, still more than itself is required. "A great joy," says he, "we may gain for our faith, when philosophers, who follow only the decisions of reason, agree with us, and so confirm the confession of the Christian faith; not that we are to seek after rational grounds before faith, but only after it; so that, made sure by a double confirmation, we praise God for our salvation, which we can hold fast without wavering."<sup>3</sup>

In Raymund Lull we have seen, already, when contemplating his missionary labours, the zealous opponent of the doctrine, which affirmed the existence of a necessary schism between faith and knowledge. Glowing love to God, imparted life to his intellect; but that love would tolerate nothing foreign beside it. It absorbed every power of the soul into itself. God, of whom he was certain, as the object of his enthusiastic love, he was desirous

<sup>1</sup> Philosophi infideles multa ignorant in particulari de divinis, quae si proponerentur iis, ut probarentur per principia philosophiae completae, hoc est per vivacitates rationis quae sumant originem a philosophia infidelium, licet complementum a fide Christi, reciperent sine contradictione, et gaudent de proposita sibi veritate, quia avidi sunt et magis studiosi quam Christiani. Also, from what is here said, we may perceive, as well as from what we have earlier remarked, that Roger Bacon must have agreed with Raymund Lull in his view of the relation of science to missions.

<sup>2</sup> Propter conscientiam Christianam, quae habet omnem veritatem ducere ad divinam, ut ei subjiaciatur et famuletur. Opus majus, f. 41, seqq.

<sup>3</sup> L. c. f. 160.



of having also as an object of knowledge; with the collected energy of all its powers would his great mind soar upward to him. The longing of his love aspired beyond the limits of this earthly existence, and would antedate the intuition of the eternal life. "Elevate thy knowledge," says he,<sup>1</sup> "and thy love will be elevated. Heaven is not so lofty as the love of a holy man. The more thou wilt labour to rise upward, the more shalt thou rise upward."<sup>2</sup> In a tract finished at Montpellier, in the year 1304, "On the agreement between faith and knowledge," he relates the following story, to show what an obstacle the pretended opposition between faith and knowledge was to the spread of Christianity. Miranmolin, a certain king of Tunis, well skilled in logic and natural science, once had a dispute with a monk, who with several others visited his country for the purpose of establishing a mission in it. This monk was well versed in morals and history, and also in the Arabic language; but he had little knowledge of logic and natural science. On the score of morals the monk showed, conclusively, that Mohammed's doctrines were false; whereupon the prince declared that he was ready to become a Christian if the monk could prove to him the truth of the Christian doctrine. Said the latter, "The Christian doctrine is too exalted to be proved by argument: Believe only, and thou shalt be saved." To this the king replied, "That is but a positive thing; in that way, I should be unwilling to exchange my own faith for another."<sup>3</sup> He was now neither Christian, Saracen, nor Jew,—and he expelled those missionaries from his kingdom.<sup>4</sup> Raymund distinguishes different degrees of the *credere* and the *intelligere*; consequently, also, different ways and manners in which one conditions the other, and in which the *intelligere* depends on the *credere* as its necessary presupposition: hence, the different sense which he gives to the commonly received proposition. "If thou believest not, thou canst not understand." In the first place, the mind cannot have an understanding of the truths of faith, so long as it is thoroughly prejudiced against them; and, assuming that

<sup>1</sup> In the first part of his tract *De centum nominibus Dei*, opp. t. vi.

<sup>2</sup> *Eleva tuum intelligere et elevabis tuum amare. Coelum non est tam altum, sicut amare sancti hominis. Quo magis laborabis ad ascendendum, eo magis ascendes.*

<sup>3</sup> *De convenientia fidei et intellectus in objecto*, t. iii.

<sup>4</sup> Raymond heard this from the mouth of the man himself. "Et ego vidi fratrem cum suis sociis et eum locutus cum ipsis."

they involve impossibilities, will not cease from its repugnance to them. The first step in order to arrive at a certain understanding, and to attain from this point to faith, is to get free from that prejudice of hostility to the truth,—to suppose, or presume for the present, that the object-matter of faith is not impossible, so that the way may be open for inquiry.<sup>1</sup> The mind being essentially the same in unbelievers and believers, the former must be capable of convincing themselves of the truths of faith, if only they are so disposed; but investigation is impossible, unless it be assumed that a thing is either true or false.<sup>2</sup> Such is the action and reaction between truth and falsehood, that one is proved or destroyed with the other. He starts the query,<sup>3</sup> whether God is more an object of faith than of knowledge,<sup>4</sup> which he answers in the negative; and whether exaltation of knowledge is the diminution of faith, which also he answers in the negative. Knowledge and faith harmonize together, because both are acts of the mind, and the higher the mind rises in the knowledge of God, the higher it rises also in faith, and the converse.<sup>6</sup> If it were not to be presumed that man may attain in the present life to the knowledge of the Divine Trinity, of the incarnation of God, and of the other articles of faith, lest he might lose the merit of faith, then it would follow that the ultimate end of man's creation is, that he may attain to great merit and great glory, and not that God may be greatly known and loved by man: that the end, therefore, is rather that men may be glorified than that God may be known and loved. He treats of the same subject in a disputation which he held with an anchorite on some doubtful questions in the sentences of Peter Lombard.<sup>7</sup> He relates that while he was studying at Paris,

<sup>1</sup> In quantum intellectus supponit in principio, quando inquit, possibile esse, habet modum inquirendi veritatem, quam supponit, et si per credulitatem affirmat, in Deo non esse trinitatem, non potest ulterius progredi, quia non habet modum inquirendi. Vide the tract De anima rationali, p. xi., opp. t. vi, f. 51.

<sup>2</sup> De contemplatione Dei, vol. ii., lib. iii., Distinct. 29, c. lxxiii., t. ix., f. 409.

<sup>3</sup> T. iv., Quaestio 201.

<sup>4</sup> Magis credibilis quam intelligibilis.

<sup>5</sup> Qu. 202: Utrum exaltatio cognitionis intellectus sit diminutio fidei.

<sup>6</sup> Ita credere et scire habent concordantiam secundum suos actus et habitus et secundum suas potentias.

<sup>7</sup> Disputatio eremitae et Raymundi super aliquibus dubiis quaestionibus sententiarum Petri Lombardi.

looking at the wretched condition of the world, he was deeply pained; and particularly when he found that, by means of the *Ars generalis*, given him for the purpose of enlightening the darkness of this world, he had not succeeded as yet in advancing the interests of Christ's church as he wished to do. Full of these painful thoughts, he once left the city and wandered away alone by the banks of the Seine, reflecting within himself how the evil could be remedied. There he found an anchorite, resting under the shade of a tree; one, who, after having long pursued his studies at Paris, had retired to this spot, for the purpose of searching after the truth. This solitary proposed to him many doubts relative to the work on the Sentences, which he, with the help of the principles of his *Ars generalis*, promised to resolve.<sup>1</sup> Among these, was the question, whether theology is properly a science. He distinguishes, for the purpose of satisfactorily answering this question, what belongs to a thing, as to its essence and idea, and what takes place only under certain circumstances and relations.<sup>2</sup> To the mind (*intellectus*) belongs, in the former sense, only the *intelligere*; in the other sense, faith. Only when the mind is prevented, by certain hindrances, from rising to knowledge, faith takes its place, so that the mind by this means may lay hold of the truth.<sup>3</sup> As in the absence of an object of sensuous perception, the image of it in the fancy takes its place, so when the thinking mind is hindered from gaining a knowledge of the doctrines of faith by the necessary principles of truth—as in the case of day labourers, women, peasants, and others, who can only hold fast to what is taught them,—the truth presents itself to the mind only in the form of faith.<sup>4</sup> But theology is in the proper sense a science, because *intelligere* belongs in the proper sense to the essence of the "intellect," still more than *to warm* belongs to the essence of fire; *to see*, to the essence of the eye. As God is, in the highest sense, good and great, he communicates himself to the created intellect in proportion to its capacity of receiving into itself his image and per-

<sup>1</sup> He says, *Ars generalis*, quam mihi Deus ostendit in quodam monte.

<sup>2</sup> *Proprie* and *appropriate*.

<sup>3</sup> *Credere* est illi *appropriatum*, per *supremum* objectum, ut per *fidem* possit attingere illam *veritatem*, quam *demonstrative* non potest attingere propter aliquod *impedimentum*, quod habet *ratione* subjecti, aut *materiale*.

<sup>4</sup> *Restauratur* *veritas* *articulorum* in *credulitate* *intellectus*, qui *ipsam* *credit*.

fections. If it belongs to the very essence of mind, that it should know those objects, for knowing which it properly was not created, how much more should its essence be directed to the end of knowing the highest objects for which it was pre-eminently created? Raymund holds that the end for which mind was created, is to refer itself with all its powers to God: it were impossible, therefore, that any power of the mind should be able to appropriate to itself other objects than those highest, for which the mind, as to its essence, was created.<sup>1</sup> He brings up the possible objections to this position: for example, that it would follow from it, that man's finite mind may comprehend the infinite. "This," says he, "would by no means follow. If we tasted a drop of sea-water, we should infer at once, from its saltness, that the water of the sea generally is salt; still, we should know this better, if we could taste *all* the water of the sea." So he supposes that the human mind, though, as he acknowledges himself, the comparison is not altogether apposite,<sup>2</sup> attains to a knowledge of the Trinity that is sufficient for it; but can attain to nothing beyond this. Such knowledge is beyond all comparison less in relation to the whole, than the drop in relation to the sea.<sup>3</sup> How far he was from believing it possible to obtain an absolute knowledge of the being of God, is evident from the fact that he supposes one great end of the striving after such a knowledge to be, that the mind might become conscious of its own limit.<sup>4</sup> The more it strives, the more it learns to adore the incomprehensible glory of the divine essence. He was the less capable of admitting the possibility of an absolute knowledge of the essence of God, be-

<sup>1</sup> Aliud objectum illi minus principale esset illi magis appetibile, quam suum objectum magis principale, quod esset impossibile, et idem esset suo modo de voluntate, cui theologia non esset proprium objectum ad amandum et sic de memoria ad recolendum, quod est valde inconveniens.

<sup>2</sup> Licet exemplum sit grossum, cum de Deo et creatura non possimus aequaliter exemplificare.

<sup>3</sup> Sicut (et multo minus sine aliqua comparatione) tuus gustus non comprehendit totum aquam maris.

<sup>4</sup> Words to God: Secunda intentio, quare tuus subditis inquirat habere cognitionem de tua honorata essentia est, ut possit captivare et terminare virtutes suae animae in inquisitione, quam faciet, quia intrat in inquisitionem, in qua deficiet sua cognitio et omnes suae virtutes.

<sup>5</sup> Quo plus anima deficit in attingendo et sciendo esse tue essentiae, eo plus cognoscit excellentiam ipsius, quae est adeo magna et adeo nobilis, quod nulla anima possit sufficere ad percipiendum et attingendum totam ipsam.

cause he did not admit the possibility of such a knowledge even with regard to the essence of the soul itself. After having pointed out four respects, in which a knowledge of the soul is possible to man, he names a fifth in which it cannot be an object of human knowledge, namely, the soul, considered as to its intrinsic essence.<sup>1</sup>

Raymund composed a tract on the Strife between faith and the understanding.<sup>2</sup> The understanding says to faith: "You are the preparatory step by which I arrive at the right state of mind, in order to rise to the contemplation of the highest things." The "habit" of faith passes over to the understanding,<sup>3</sup> and thus faith is in the understanding and the understanding in faith. While the understanding is rising by knowledge to that stage where faith already stands, faith, by believing, rises from this point to a still higher stage above the understanding.<sup>4</sup> The understanding says to faith: "As oil swims on the water, so thy place is always above mine. And the reason is, because it is thy nature to ascend, and it costs thee no labour; while I must toil incessantly, that, by knowing, I may mount a little higher." So the buoyancy of faith sets it constantly above the efforts of thought. In his principal work (*De contemplatione*),<sup>5</sup> "On the harmony and opposition between faith and rational knowledge,"<sup>6</sup> he says: Faith *stands* in lofty things, and chooses never to descend to rational grounds, while reason *soars upward* to lofty things, which she then brings down to understanding and knowledge. When faith stands in lofty things and reason soars up to her, then both are in harmony, because faith gives elevation to reason, and reason is energized and ennobled by the lofty aspiring of faith, so as to attempt to master by knowledge what faith has already reached by believing. And if reason cannot ascend

1 Si postea inquirat, quid sit essentia animae in se ipsa, deficit suus intellectus et sua perceptio et non potest ultra progredi per cognitionem, imo retrocedit per ignorantiam, quo plus vult inquirere istam quintam rem, quam homo non potest cognoscere in praesenti vita in rebus spiritualibus. De contemplatione in Deum, lib. iii., c. clxxvi., t. ix., f. 420.

2 Disputatio fidei et intellectus, finished at Montpellier in October of the year 1308.

3 Quod tu fides sis dispositio et praeparatio, per quam ego de Deo sum dispositus ad altas res, nam in hoc quod ego per te suppono credendo, per quod possum ascendere, habituo me de te et sic tu es in me et ego in te.

4 Quando ascendo in gradum, in quo tu es, intelligendo, tu ascendis credendo in altiorum gradum supra me.

5 Distinct. 28, c. clvi., f. 354.

6 Concordantiae et contrarietates inter fidem et rationem.

to those heights which faith has attained, yet the more reason elevates itself and puts forth its efforts, to know those exalted things, the higher does faith mount upward. Hence, reason and faith mount upwards by help of each other; hence, there is harmony and good-will between them, and they mutually strengthen each other. As it is the nature and property of fire to ascend higher than the other elements, so it is the nature of faith to soar higher than reason, because the activity of reason in man is compounded of sense and intellect; but the activity of faith is not a compound but a simple thing. It dwells above the loftiest summits of the known intelligible.<sup>1</sup> No real opposition can exist between faith and reason. Nothing false, nothing concerning which reason might show that it contradicts our ideas of divine perfection, can be an object of faith. Faith calls forth reason from potential to actual existence;<sup>2</sup> when faith, in conformity to reason, embraces the law of religion with love; and reason calls forth faith from potential to actual existence, by proving that man is bound in reason to believe those articles, which by reason alone he could never come to the knowledge of. While reason confines the understanding within the limits prescribed to it by nature, because she has no means of extending them further, true faith gives freedom and largeness to the understanding, because she does not allow it to be confined to the limits within which reason has inclosed it."<sup>3</sup> Raymund distinguishes<sup>4</sup> potential faith, actual faith, and a third kind, which, as it proceeds from the potential and the actual, stands midway between the two. Actual faith and reason cannot be together at once in relation to the same object; rational knowledge cannot gain entrance into the soul unless it has been evacuated and filled with knowledge by faith.<sup>5</sup> Although reason does not employ itself on the objects

<sup>1</sup> *Fides habet naturam ascendendi altius quam ratio, quia operatio rationis in homine est composita ex sensualitate et intellectualitate, sed operatio fidei non est composita, imo est res simplex et stans super extremitates intellectualitatum intellectarum.*

<sup>2</sup> *Facit venire rationem de potentia in actum.*

<sup>3</sup> *Sicut ratio captivat et incarcerat intellectum hominis intra terminos, intra quos est terminatus, quia non habet, cum quo eos possit ampliare et extendere, ita vera fides liberat et magnificat ipsum intellectum, quia non constringit eum intra terminos, intra quos ratio habet eum terminatum.*

<sup>4</sup> *T. x., Distinct. 36, c. cccxxviii.*

<sup>5</sup> *Non potest in animum intrare ratio, nisi evacuando eam fide et implendo scientia et cognitione.*



of faith, when it reflects on other things, yet faith in the third sense, still abides in the soul.<sup>1</sup> In the present life, faith must take the place of reason, because the latter, through defect arising from the body, cannot always be active. It will be otherwise in the life eternal, when reason will be wholly glorified in union with the divine essence.<sup>2</sup> False faith may acquire great power by custom and education, so that every faculty of the soul may be under its sway; but, by the force of necessary rational grounds,<sup>3</sup> this false faith, that has become a man's nature, may be banished from the soul; for reason possesses more power over the soul of man than custom and education.

Having thus presented the characteristic features of the general directions and tendencies of the theological spirit, we now proceed to the exposition of the several parts in detail; and first, to the doctrine concerning God, where Anselm of Canterbury is to be mentioned as the author of the ontological proof of the existence of God. As we have already remarked generally in speaking of him, we must, in order to understand and appreciate him rightly, carefully distinguish the ideas lying at bottom and closely cohering with his whole philosophico-theological bent,—from the syllogistic form, under which all that sprang out of these ideas was digested and unfolded. We find already, in Augustin, those fundamental ideas which Anselm has unfolded in his work *De veritate*, and in his *Monologium*. As a defender of realism in opposition to nominalism, Anselm stood up for a higher objectivity and necessity in human thought, which he derives from the relation existing at bottom between the human spirit and the Supreme Spirit, from whom all truth proceeds. “The creaturely mind can create nothing, but only perceive that which is communicated to it by the revelation of the Supreme Mind.<sup>4</sup> Whatever is true and good leads upward to the primal Source of all that is true and good, whose revelation all truth and goodness is.

<sup>1</sup> Remanet et non privatur suo esse.

<sup>2</sup> Cap. cxxxix: Quia anima non potest habere suas virtutes in actu, dum est in corpore sine adiutorio ipsius, propterea fides est in homine per hoc, quod ratio per defectum corporis non possit esse semper in actu, sed non erit in alio saeculo, quia impossibile erit, in eo esse fidem tam actualiter quam potentialiter, quod ratio semper erit actualiter et nunquam privabitur actualitate, imo continuo et infinite glorificabitur in tua essentia divina.

<sup>3</sup> Propter rationem potentiae rationali.

<sup>4</sup> Lux illa, de qua micat omne verum, quod rationali menti lucet. Monolog. c. xiv.

All truth presupposes an unchangeable, necessary Being, without which there would be no truth. Without God, no truth; truth in thought presupposes truth of being.<sup>1</sup> As all other knowing and thinking presuppose the idea of God, so this idea in the human mind carries the evidence of its reality in itself. As everything else testifies of it and presupposes it, it can itself be derived from no other source than from an original revelation to the human spirit from the spirit to whom it corresponds.<sup>2</sup> The idea of God is, therefore, a necessary and undeniable one; the denial of it involves a self-contradiction. The fool may, indeed, say within himself, There is no God, but he cannot actually think there is no God (Ps. liii. 1). It is one thing to repeat over the words to one's self,—to present the thought so far as the form, the mere signs, are concerned; but it is quite another, to take up the contents of the thought into one's consciousness, which is actual thought. As it is impossible that fire should really be thought water, so it is impossible that God should really be denied by thought.<sup>3</sup>

We must distinguish the idea of the absolute, and the idea of the living God,—that which is undeniable to the thinking reason, and that which is so to the religious consciousness. But Anselm, having blended and confounded together the logical and religious elements, holds them inseparably united. The idea of the absolute, undeniable to the thinking reason, is with him transformed at once into the idea of the living God, undeniable to the religious consciousness. The *logical* necessity grounded in the laws of human thought, and the *real* necessity grounded in the essence, —the totality of human nature, with him, coalesce together.

<sup>1</sup> Omnes de veritate significationis loquuntur, veritatem vero, quae est in rerum essentia, pauci considerant. De veritate, c. ix. Cum veritas, quae est in rerum existentia, sit effectus summae veritatis, ipsa quoque causa est veritatis, quae cognitionis est, et ejus, quae est in propositione.

<sup>2</sup> An non invenit anima Deum, quem invenit esse lucem et veritatem? Quomodo namque intellexit hoc, nisi videndo lucem et veritatem? Aut potuit omnino aliquid intelligere de te, nisi per lucem tuam et veritatem tuam? Prologium, c. xiv.

<sup>3</sup> Aliter cogitatur res, cum vox eam significans cogitatur, aliter cum id ipsum, quod est res, intelligitur. Illo itaque modo potest cogitari Deus non esse, isto vero minime. Nullus quippe intelligens id quod sunt ignis et aqua, potest cogitare ignem esse aquam secundum rem, licet hoc possit secundum voces. Ita igitur nemo intelligens id quod Deus est, potest cogitare quia Deus non est, licet haec verba dicat in corde, aut sine ulla aut cum aliqua extranea significatione. Prolog. c. iv.



Again, after he had recognized the necessity, thus grounded in the essence of the mind,—of presupposing the existence of God, he should for that very reason, have been deterred from any attempt to prove it in the same manner as he would prove anything else. He should have been satisfied to lead back the mind into itself, into the depths of its own proper essence, in order that it might become conscious to itself of this necessity. But Anselm, who imagined that he was bound to prove, in strict syllogistic form, whatever presented itself to him as necessary truth, now seeks, from this position as a starting-point, to make out an argument by which the existence of God, and everything it is necessary to know respecting the divine attributes, should be demonstrated by one brief and summary process.<sup>1</sup> This thought did not allow him any rest, day or night; it disturbed, which grievously annoyed him, his hours of devotion. He had already begun, therefore, to look upon it as a temptation from Satan, and strove to banish the idea from his mind. But the more he strove against it the more closely it pursued him, so that he could not keep it away at all; till one night, while he was observing his vigils, the light suddenly burst upon his soul like a flash, and he was enraptured with the thought that he had discovered the long-sought argument. Thus arose his ontological proof at first, in the following form: "God is the most perfect of beings, than whom nothing higher can be conceived; but that which has actual existence is something higher than that which is barely conceived; therefore, from the idea of such a highest being, follows also his existence. Else, he would not be that which the idea asserts; it would in fact be possible to conceive of something higher; namely, the most perfect essence as existing;"<sup>2</sup> a form of proof which, as such, is certainly chargeable with the fallacy of a *petitio principii*. It is one in which things differing in kind,—the *conception*, complete in all its characters,

<sup>1</sup> Eadmer de vita Anselmi: Incidit sibi in mentem, investigare, utrum uno solo et brevi argumento probari posset, id quod de Deo creditur et praedicatur.

<sup>2</sup> Anselm in his *Proslogium*: Convincitur insipiens, esse vel in intellectu aliquid, quo nihil majus cogitare potest, quia hoc, cum audit, intelligit, et quicquid intelligitur, in intellectu est, et certe id, quo majus cogitari nequit, non potest esse in intellectu solo. Si enim vel in solo intellectu est, potest, cogitari esse et in re, quod majus est. Si ergo id, quo majus cogitari non potest, est in solo intellectu, id ipsum, quo majus cogitari non potest, est, quo majus cogitari potest, sed certe hoc esse non potest.

and *existence*, which does not belong among these characters,—are confounded together. Nevertheless, faulty as this form of proof was, in a formal point of view, still, at the bottom of it lay this truth: that to the creaturely reason it is necessary to recognize an absolute being, to which it must feel bound to subject itself; just as we find it expressed in the following words of one of his prayers,—words which evidence how intimately the religious and philosophical elements were blended together in his case: “Thou art so truthful, O Lord, my God, that non-existence cannot even be conceived of thee; and with good reason,—for if any spirit could conceive anything better than thyself, the creature might rise superior to the Creator, and pass judgment on him.”

The monk Gaunilo<sup>1</sup> stood forth as Anselm's opponent: and he succeeded in detecting the fallacy in the form of the argument: “It was as if one should describe the magnificence of a lost island, and then, from the fact that I was able to conceive of such an island, infer its existence.” We must admit, however, there is a difference between the case of some contingent thing, and that of the idea of the absolute. For the rest, even Gaunilo, who distinguished himself by the dignified tone of his polemics, felt—although he did not dwell upon it—that it was necessary to distinguish, in Anselm's case, between what existed in the depths of his own immediate religious consciousness and what he set forth in the syllogistic form. It was necessary to acknowledge that Anselm was right at bottom, and in his design, but failed only in the *form* of his argument.<sup>2</sup> Anselm defended the form of his argument against Gaunilo, in his *Liber apologeticus*. The comparison of the idea of the absolute with the image of a lost island, he could not look upon as of any force. “If that could be predicated,” says he, “of such a lost island,—which holds good of the idea of the absolute alone, namely, that it is that than which nothing greater can be conceived,—then, beyond a doubt, existence would be implied in the conception.”

<sup>1</sup> In his *Liber pro insipiente*.

<sup>2</sup> His words: *Caetera libelli illius, pii ac sancti affectus intimo quodam odore fragrantis, ut nullo modo propter illa, quae in initiis recte quidem sensa, sed minus firmiter argumentata sunt, ista sint contemnenda.*

<sup>3</sup> *Fidens loquor, quia si quis invenerit mihi aliquid aut reipsa aut sola cogitatione*

The scholastics of the thirteenth century understood very well how to separate the false from the true in Anselm's argumentation. Alexander of Hales distinguishes, in the first place, two kinds of knowledge; knowledge in act, and knowledge in habit (*cognitio in actu et in habitu*), an idea fully unfolded in consciousness, and an idea lying at the bottom, in consciousness, as an undeveloped germ. It is in the latter and not the former way, that the idea of God is always present in the human mind. It is something original and undeniable to the human spirit,—that which meets and answers to the original revelation of the highest truth to the human mind.<sup>1</sup> While he supposes such a *habitus naturaliter impressus primae veritatis* in the human mind, he pre-supposes also an original correlation, at bottom, of the human mind to this *prima veritas*,—an original connection between the human spirit and the Supreme, absolute Spirit. "Yet," he remarks, "it does not follow from this fundamental relation that all men become conscious to themselves of the idea of God, and that it meets with recognition from them as an actual reality; for, with regard to this knowledge in act (*cognitio in actu*), we must distinguish two separate tendencies of the soul, according as either the higher faculty of reason is developed and active in it,—and it is directed upon that original revelation of God, hence perceives it, since the mind cannot avoid being conscious of that which is the principle of its own essence,—or the lower powers only are active, as in the case of the soul that surrenders itself to earthly things when the consciousness of God is repressed in it by this predominantly worldly tendency,—and so, the fool may deny the existence of God."<sup>2</sup> Again, he distin-

existens, praeter quod majus cogitari non possit, cui aptare valeat connexionem hujus meae cogitationis, inveniam et dabo illi perditam insulam amplius non perdam.

1 *Cognitio de Deo in habitu naturaliter nobis impressa, habitus naturaliter impressus primae veritatis in intellectu, quo potest convincere, ipsum esse et non potest ipsum ignorari ab anima rationali.*

2 *Cognitio in actu duplex est, una est, cum movetur anima secundum partem superiorem rationis et habitum similitudinis primae veritatis superiori parti rationis impressum eo modo, quo recolit suum principium per hoc quod videt se non esse a se et hoc etiam modo non potest ignorare, Deum esse in ratione sui principii, alia est, cum movetur anima secundum partem inferiorem rationis, quae est ad contemplandas creaturas, et hoc modo potest ignorare, esse Deum, si per peccatum et errorem aversa a Deo obtenebratur eo modo, quo dicit Apostolus R. I. cum Deum cognovissent, non sicut Deum glorificaverunt, sed evanuerunt in cogitationibus suis, etc.*

guishes in relation to knowledge, a common and a particular reason (*ratio communis* and a *ratio propria*),—the idea, as a universal, and its particular application. So he recognizes also, in the worship of God, the idea of God, in its universal essence, lying at the ground ; some error, only in its application.

Thomas Aquinas says : “ The knowledge of God is, in a certain general and confused way, implanted in all,<sup>1</sup> in that man is so created that he can find his happiness only in God, and the craving after happiness resides by nature in all men ; yet, although the longing after the highest good can find its satisfaction only in God, many do not attain to this consciousness.” He does not admit the validity of Anselm’s argument from the idea to the reality.<sup>2</sup>

We see, in the history of the world, fundamental tendencies, in their incipient stages, announcing their presence by various signs,—seeking to start forth, and continually repressed again by mightier forces ere they can succeed to push their way through and assert themselves in opposition to these forces. Thus Christian theism, which in the first centuries had come off victorious in the contest with absolute dualism, had now to enter into another contest with absolute monism or pantheism. This latter theory might seek to fasten itself on Christianity at that point where it stands forth in antagonism to abstract deism and absolute dualism. Thus we discerned such an appearance already in the system of John Scotus Erigena ; this century, however, was too little prepared as yet for such a speculative direction of thought either to adopt or to understand it. It passed away at this time, without leaving a vestige behind. But the speculative spirit, that went over from the twelfth to the thirteenth century, had prepared the way for it, so that the work in which John Scotus had unfolded his system could acquire an influence in the thirteenth century which it was unable to exercise at the time of its first appearance. This influence was promoted by the theology

<sup>1</sup> Cognoscere Deum esse in aliquo communi sub quadam confusione est nobis naturaliter insertum.

<sup>2</sup> Dato etiam, quod quilibet intelligat, hoc nomine Deus significari id quod dicitur, scilicet illud, quo majus cogitari non potest, non tamen propter hoc sequitur, quod intelligat, id, quod significatur per nomen, esse in rerum natura, sed in apprehensione intellectus tantum.

of the pseudo-Dionysian writings (which were themselves among the elements whence the system of Scotus had sprung), by the writings of the new Platonicians and of the Arabian philosophers,<sup>1</sup> circulated in Latin translations, and particularly by the work *De causis*, translated from the Arabic, and circulated under the name of Aristotle,—a work which was much studied and which acquired great authority over the minds of men in the thirteenth century.<sup>2</sup>

This production contains, throughout, the principles of the neo-Platonic monism, as the same was reduced to form and systematic coherence by Plotinus,—the doctrine of the absolute as the super-existent, from which issues forth the whole developing process of being, proceeding by regular gradations, the idea of creation transformed into the doctrine of a process of evolution grounded in immanent necessity.<sup>3</sup> Thomas Aquinas, who composed a commentary on this work, seeks to explain its propositions, which refused to accommodate themselves to his Christian theism, by presenting them under a mitigated form.<sup>4</sup> He himself did not escape wholly untouched by the influence of the ideas set forth in this tract; for, indeed, the rigid consistency of speculation con-

1 The great influence of this school has been noticed in the excellent work of Dr Schmölders, already referred to, *Essai sur les écoles philosophiques chez les Arabes*, Paris, 1842.

2 Jourdain, in the work already referred to: *Recherches critiques*, etc., p. 212, first directed attention to this source and to the great influence of this book in the thirteenth century; though he goes to an extreme in undervaluing the undeniable influence of Scotus. Albertus Magnus took pains to expound the doctrines of this book, in his *Liber secundus de terminatione causarum primariorum*, Tractatus i. in his opp. ed. Lugd. 1651, t. v. f. 563. He ascribes the book to a certain Jew, David, who had combined Aristotelian doctrines with those of the Arabian philosopher. Thomas Aquinas, who wrote a commentary on this book (in the edition of his works, Paris, 1660, t. iv. where may be found printed also the book itself), rightly perceived that the work contained neo-Platonic, rather than Aristotelian doctrines, and held it to be a translation of some writing of Proclus.

3 Of the highest principle, it is said that it is called spirit, indeed, being the cause of spirit; but that in reality it is something far higher, and in general, nothing determinate could be predicated of it: *Non cadunt super primam causam meditatio neque sensus neque intelligentia et ipsa quidem non signatur, nisi a causa secunda, quae est intelligentia, et non nominatur nisi per nomen causati sui primi, verumtamen per modum sublimiorem*. Opp. Thomae, cit. t. iv. f. 481.

4 The above-cited passage concerning the absolute he explains as relating to the infinitude of the divine being, as compared with all determinate limited modes of existence: *Causa prima est supra ens, in quantum est ipsum esse infinitum, ens autem dicitur, quod finite participat esse, et hoc est proportionatum intellectui nostro*.

ducted even him to a one-sided monism. While, then, this predominating tendency in the speculative theology of the thirteenth century was still held in check by the stronger force of the Christian principle,—and while with the majority, therefore, the Christian consciousness that governed the mode of thinking operated to prevent the full and logical evolution of these ideas, so that they must submit to be blended with a Christian theism with which they had but little affinity,—we cannot be surprised to find that there were individuals who felt impelled to express and evolve the same thoughts in a manner more consistent, and more directly at variance with the theism that governed the consciousness of their age. Such was the relation in which Almaric of Bena, and his disciple David of Dinanto, stood to the times in which they lived.<sup>1</sup>

The former was so called from the birth-place in the diocese of Chartres. In the beginning of the thirteenth century, he taught at Paris. After gaining a high reputation by his lectures on dialectics, he passed over to theology, and now created a great sensation by many of the opinions he advanced; among which may be mentioned, in particular, the following: “As no man can be saved without believing in the sufferings and resurrection of Christ, so neither can he be saved without believing that he *himself* is a member of Christ.” This, he maintained, was a necessary article of faith. Such an assertion might no doubt have been called forth by the reaction of the Christian mind, and particularly of the mystic element in it, against the churchly, theocratical point of view,—by a tendency that placed the immediate reference of the religious consciousness to Christ in opposition to its dependence on the

<sup>1</sup> The same ideas lie, in truth, at the foundation of the system of Scotus, that are unfolded in the book, *De causis*, which book exercised a more general influence than the heretical Scotus could do. But that the work of Scotus also had a special influence on these two men, is evident from incontestable marks. Albertus Magnus in the first part of his *Summa* (*Tract. iv. Quæst. 20, Membr. ii.*) cites the book of David of Dinanto *de tomis, hoc est de divisionibus*, which makes mention of the work of Scotus, *De divisione Naturæ*. Moreover, the propositions ascribed to Almaric, as they are cited by Martinus Polonus in his *Supputationes* to Marianus Scotus, hint at the same: *Ideas, quæ sunt in mente divina, creare et creari*,—the doctrine that, as all things proceeded from God, so all will return back to him again; that God is known only in his Theophanies; that, without the first sin, the separation of sexes would not have taken place; that Christ, after his resurrection, belonged no longer to any particular sex. The historian who cites these dogmas, says himself, too: *Qui omnes errores inveniuntur in libro, qui intitulatur peri physicon.*

church. Now we cannot fail to remark, it is true, in Almaric also, the antagonism of a subjectivity carried to excess against the objectivity of the church catholicism; but at bottom of it lies, not a theistic, but a pantheistic view of the world; and only in connection with this latter, can that which he meant be understood, in the sense in which he meant it. Taken in an isolated manner by itself, this proposition was susceptible of various interpretations; and, accordingly, when it was for the first time publicly advanced, it was only by virtue of the church instinct that men suspected the anti-Christian element in it, without understanding its true significance in the connection of that teacher's ideas. The Parisian university, in 1204, condemned the doctrines of Almaric, and expelled him from the professorial chair. He appealed to pope Innocent the Third, who confirmed, however, that decision. Upon this, he returned, in 1207, to Paris, and offered the recantation that had been prescribed to him; soon after which he died. It was not known, however, that he had left any school behind him. By his disciple, David of Dinanto, these doctrines were propagated, and carried to a still further length. David exerted an influence also by his writings, in which he expounded them.

We recognize here the principles of that monism, the sources of which have been pointed out; the doctrine of one being, lying at the ground of all, which being can be known only in its manifold forms of manifestation;—the whole universe only a manifestation of the divine essence. David of Dinanto<sup>1</sup> defined God as the *principium materiale omnium rerum*. He distinguished three principles; the first indivisible principle, matter, the *substratum* of the corporeal world; the first indivisible out of which proceeds the soul; namely, spirit (*nus*); the first indivisible in the eternal substances (*ideas*), namely, God. Between these three, he affirmed, there can be no distinction; else we must suppose a still higher essence, from which all these three were derived, and of which they partake after different manners. No other supposition remains, then, than that these three are altogether identical,—different designations of the one divine essence, according

<sup>1</sup> Vide Albert. M. Summa theol. Pars. i., Tractat. iv. Quæst. 20. Membr. ii., ed. Lugd. t. xvii. f. 76, and Thomas Aquinas in Sentent. lib. ii., Distinct. 17. Quæst. i., Artic. i., ed. Venet. t. x., p. 235.

to different relations of the same to the corporeal, the spiritual, and the ideal worlds.<sup>1</sup> Thomas Aquinas<sup>2</sup> makes a difference between the doctrine of Almaric and that of David of Dinanto. The school of the former, he said, considered God as the *principium formale* of all things; the second, taught that God is the *materia prima*. According to this latter doctrine, they might consider all nature as the body of God,—God as the one subject in all. Nothing else has any true being; all things else are mere accidents, under which God, to whom alone being is to be attributed, veils himself,—*accidentia sine subjecto*. The church doctrine of the Lord's supper they explained as a symbolical clothing of this truth. The consecrating priest, they supposed, did not here first produce the body of Christ, the body of God, but he only denoted that which, without any act of his, was already present, and brought it, by his words, to the consciousness of the community.<sup>3</sup> Taking this ground, they could say every true Christian must be conscious of the fact, that God has become man in him, even as he became man in Christ; and it is now evident, also, that the doctrine of Almaric which we first cited should be understood as taken in connection with these ideas. Although an abstract speculative system was not calculated, especially at this time, to spread among the laity, yet through the element of mysticism, which itself was hidden under a Christian guise, it was attempted, and that not without success, to diffuse these doctrines even among laymen. Books were composed for this purpose in the French language. Pantheism, with

1 Albertus cites the argumentation in David of Dinanto as follows: Quaero, si nus et materia prima differant an non? Si differunt, sub aliquo communi, a quo illa differentia egreditur, differunt et illud commune per differentias formabile est in utrumque. Quod autem unum formabile est in plures, materia est vel ad minus principium materiale. Si ergo dicatur una materia esse materiae primae et nois, aut differunt aut non. Si differunt, oportet, quod sub aliquo communi, a quo differentiae illae exeunt, differant, et sequitur ex hoc, quod illud commune genus sit ad illa. Ex hoc videtur relinqui, quod deus et nois et materia prima idem sunt secundum id, quod sunt, quia quaecunque sunt et nulla differentia differunt, eadem sunt.

2 Summa Pars. i. Quaest. iii., artic. viii.

3 From the Acts of a Parisian council of the year 1210, which have been published by Martene and Durand in the Thesaurus novus anecdotorum, t. iv., f. 163: Deus visibilibus erat indutus instrumentis, quibus videri poterat a creaturis et accidentibus corrumpi poterat extrinsecis. Ante verborum prolationem visibilibus panis accidentibus subesse corpus Christi. Id, quod ibi fuerat prius formis visibilibus, prolatione verborum subesse ostenditur.



all the practical consequences that flow from it, was more boldly and abruptly expressed than perhaps the original founders of this school had intended. That distinction of the three ages which had attached itself to the doctrine of the Trinity, and which we noticed in the doctrines of the abbot Joachim, was employed by this sect also, after their own peculiar manner. As the predominant revelation of God the Father, in the Old Testament, was followed by the revelation of the Son, by which the forms of worship under the legal dispensation were done away; so now the age of the Holy Ghost was at hand,—the incarnation of the Holy Ghost in entire humanity, the being of God under the form of the Holy Ghost after an equal measure in all the faithful; that is, the dependence of the religious consciousness upon any one individual as a person in whom God is incarnate, would cease, and the consciousness of all alike, that God exists in them, has in them assumed human nature, would come in place of it. The sacraments, under which the Son of God had been worshipped, would then be done away; religion would be made wholly independent of ceremonies, of everything positive. The members of this sect are the ones in whom the incarnation of the Holy Ghost has begun, the forerunners of the above-described period of the Holy Spirit. Several other opinions are charged upon members of this sect, which certainly accord with their general mode of thinking; as, for example, that God had spoken in Ovid as well as in Augustin;<sup>1</sup> that the only heaven and the only hell are in the present life; that those who possess the true knowledge no longer need faith or hope; they have attained already to the true resurrection, the true paradise, the real heaven;<sup>2</sup> that he who lives in mortal sin, has hell in himself, but it was much the same thing as having a rotten tooth in the mouth.<sup>3</sup> These people opposed the worship of saints as a species of idolatry. They called the ruling church Babylon; the pope, antichrist. It is said, also, that many of them were carried along by pantheistic mysticism, by the tendency to a one-sided inwardness, into a sort

<sup>1</sup> Caesar. Heisterbach, l. c. v. 22.

<sup>2</sup> In the report in Martene and Durand: *Spiritus sanctus in iis incarnatus iis omnia revelabat, et haec revelatio nihil aliud erat quam mortuorum resurrectio. Inde semetipsos jam resuscitados asserebant, fidem et spem ab eorum cordibus excludabant, se soli scientiae mentientes subjacere*,—with which also agrees the report of Caesarius.

<sup>3</sup> The account given by Caesarius of Heisterbach.

of ethical *adiaphorism*, which sanctioned the worst excesses. The maxim, that a man's condition depended, not so much on outward works as on inward disposition, on love; as on the fact of his being conscious of having God within him, is said to have been pushed by many even to such consequences as the above. William of Aria, a goldsmith, stood forth as a preacher among this sect. He announced the coming of judgments on a corrupt church, and the evolution of the new period of the Holy Ghost that was now near at hand. In the year 1210, this sect was discovered; several clergymen and laymen, who refused to recant, were burnt at the stake. Bernard, a priest, carried his pantheistic delusion to such a length as to declare, that, so far as he had being, they could not burn him, for, so far as he existed, he was God himself. One of the pernicious consequences of such phenomena was, that men were led by occasion of them, to look upon every freer movement of the religious spirit with a more suspicious eye. With the writings of David of Dinanto, all theological works in the French language were burnt and forbidden.

This pantheistic monism was now attacked by the most distinguished scholastic theologians. Albertus Magnus maintained, in opposition to it, that God is not the material nor the essential but the causative being of all existence; and the causative as the efficient, formal, and final cause, the efficient, formative principle, and the end of all existence; the original type to which all existence must be traced, according to which everything has been formed, and which everything is appointed to represent; as in truth, the original type has an existence of itself, independent of the things that are formed after it, and in order to represent it.<sup>1</sup> Thomas Aquinas expresses himself after a similar manner: God is the *esse omnium effective et exemplariter*, but not *per essentialiam*.

As we have an example here, showing that the foreign elements of the neo-Platonic monism, which the speculative theology of this century strove to blend into one whole with the Christian faith, would resist all such attempts, and prove rebellious to this faith itself,—so we have another example of a like incongruity in the ideas of the Aristotelian philosophy, adopted by this theology as

<sup>1</sup> Sicut paradigma, a quo fiunt, et ad quod formantur, et ad quod finiuntur, cum tamen intrinsecum sit extra facta formata et finita existens et nihil sit de esse eorum.

absolute truths of reason, with which the truths of faith could not be at variance. There arose a view of the Aristotelian doctrines, growing out of the doctrines of the Arabian philosopher Averrhoës, which threatened to dissolve this league between philosophy and faith, and which, if consistently carried out, would also—like the doctrine of Almaric, that started from a neo-Platonic principle—necessarily pass over into a pantheistic mode of thinking. It was affirmed that the thinking reason is in all men identically the same, that there is but one intelligence in all. Those who set forth this as a doctrine of Aristotle, and—what in their opinion was the same thing—a doctrine that resulted with necessity from the fundamental position of bare rational knowledge or of philosophy, were well aware of the consequences—irreconcilable with the Christian faith and the doctrines of the church—which flowed from such an assertion, and represented themselves, at least, as being very far from adopting these consequences. But this subjection to the authority of faith, expressed in connection with this acknowledged opposition between reason and faith, was of such a nature as could not fail to awaken suspicions respecting the honesty of their professions, or at least respecting the seriousness and liveliness of their religious interest; as for example, when one occupying this ground asserted: “By my reason, I conclude, with necessity, that mind is numerically but one, but by my faith, I firmly maintain the contrary;”<sup>1</sup> when he expressed himself with regard to the Christian position, which was incapable of being reconciled with the above proposition, in the cold and indifferent way: “The Latins do not admit this, according to their principles, because, perhaps, *their law* stands in contradiction with it;” where Thomas Aquinas, who cites this language,<sup>2</sup> justly takes offence, that one who pretended to be a Christian, could thus speak of Christianity, as the law of a strange religion; could designate the doctrines of faith as *positiones Catholicorum*. It is obvious to remark how mischievous would be the spread of a doctrine so hostile to the fundamental grounds of Christian conviction; how pernicious this disguised schism between subjective

<sup>1</sup> Per rationem concludo de necessitate, quod intellectus est unus numero, firmiter tamen teneo oppositum per fidem.

<sup>2</sup> In his Opusc. ix., De unitate intellectus contra Averroistas in vol. xix. of the Venetian edition.

conviction and the doctrines of the church, this homage, altogether hypocritical, or at any rate not springing from the lively feeling of an inner necessity, to the authority of the church, must prove, when such views found currency, as they already began to do even among laymen.<sup>1</sup> These doctrines, then, Thomas Aquinas felt himself called upon to combat, not only in his general work concerning the whole body of the doctrines of faith,<sup>2</sup> but also in a small treatise, which he composed expressly on this subject. He was not satisfied with appealing to the consequences hostile to the Christian faith which must flow from such opinions, —to the fact, that thereby the doctrines of personal immortality, and of a final retribution, would be annihilated,—but while he strongly protested against that pretended opposition between the truths of faith and the truths of philosophy,<sup>3</sup> he endeavoured to show, also, that this doctrine was contrary to reason and by no means a genuine doctrine of Aristotle.

The doctrine concerning the divine attributes gained rich accessions by the labours of these theologians. Several new investigations were evoked by Abelard. One of the charges brought against him was, that he had denied the essential omnipresence of God. Walter of Mauretania, mentioned on a former page, thought that he had heard an opinion of this sort uttered by Abelard himself.<sup>4</sup> Also, Hugo a St Victore speaks<sup>5</sup> of certain sophists, who maintained that God was omnipresent only in virtue of his power, but not in virtue of his essence;<sup>6</sup> since otherwise, God would be affected by the impurity in the world. According to

<sup>1</sup> See the Life of Thomas Aquinas, already referred to, c. iv. A knight, who was called upon to do penance for his crimes, gave for his reply, that if Peter obtained salvation, he also was sure of it, for there was but one and the same spirit in himself and in Peter.

<sup>2</sup> See in lib. ii., Sentent. Dist. 17. Quæst. ii., artic. i.

<sup>3</sup> He says, in opposition to that statement: Cum autem de necessitate concludi non possit nisi verum necessarium, cujus oppositum est falsum et impossibile, sequitur secundum ejus dictum, quod fides sit de falso et impossibili, quod etiam Deus facere non potest. Quod fidelium aures ferre non possunt.

<sup>4</sup> His words addressed to Abelard, in D'Archery, Spicilegia, t. iiii., f. 525, Præterea notificæ mibi, si adhuc creditis, quod Deus essentialiter non sit in mundo vel alibi. Quod, si bene meminî audiavi vos fateri, quando novissime invicem contulimus de quibusdam sententiis. From which very words it is quite evident that he might easily have misunderstood Abelard.

<sup>5</sup> In his Summa Tractat. i., c. iv.

<sup>6</sup> Quidam calumniatores veritatis dicunt, Deum per potentiam et non per essentiam ubique esse.

this statement, Abelard, like the Socinians in later times, supposed a being of God without the world,—in the sense of limitation,—so that this “without” should be understood as spatial, and, separating from one another the essence of God and his acts, reduced his omnipresence simply to the fact that God’s agency extends to everything in the world. But if we consult Abelard’s own explanations of the matter, we see plainly that he was very far from entertaining any such views. What he says is this: “We cannot conceive of God’s being present *anywhere* after a spatial manner, but we must understand his omnipresence as an omnipresent agency.” He meant only to give prominence to this idea, that God is omnipresent in his agency without spatial presence or spatial change, without departing from that immutability of his essence which ever holds the like relation to space and time;—that space presents no limitation, has no existence for him.<sup>1</sup> But even this, which Abelard said concerning an active omnipresence of God,—directly for the purpose of excluding all spatial representations, gave occasion to the misconception, that he denied the essential omnipresence of God, and referred it simply to his agency, separated from his essence. In his *Introductio in Theologiam*,<sup>2</sup> he says: “As spirit generally is spatially present nowhere, and spatially moves itself in no direction, so this holds good pre-eminently of God, since he, by his essence, is everywhere present.”<sup>3</sup> In accordance with this must those passages of sacred Scripture be understood, which speak of God as coming or descending; by which, is not meant a movement in space, but a new effect, proceeding from that agency of God, which is circumscribed by no space.<sup>4</sup> Thus, for example, when it is said that he comes to or departs from this or that individual,

1 In the Apologetical Dialogue, concerning the relation of which to Abelard’s authorship we have spoken above, and in which we, at any rate, find the correct exposition of his doctrines, it is said: Ipse, qui sic nunc quoque sine positione locali sicut ante tempora consistens, non tam in loco esse ducendus est, qui nullatenus localis est, quam in se cuncta concludere loca. Qui enim ante omnia sine loco exstitit, nec sibi ipsius modum (no limits for himself) sed nobis loca fabricavit. Per potentiam suam tam intra omnia quam extra; by which is denoted that this category of space, inner or outer, cannot be applied to God’s being and action. L. c. p. 95, seqq.

2 Lib. iii., p. 1126.

3 Ubique per substantiam, ubique essentialiter, semper substantiae praesentia in omnibus est locis.

4 Non aliquis ejus localis accessus, sed aliquis novae operationis effectus ostenditur.

the reference is to the communication or withdrawal of his gifts."<sup>1</sup> In this way, too, he keeps clear of a misconception with regard to the incarnation of God, which arose from its being so sensuously apprehended: "When God is said to come upon the Virgin, this should be understood of some peculiar relation of God's all-pervading agency.<sup>2</sup> By his descent upon the Virgin, nothing else was denoted than that letting down of himself whereby he entered into union with human nature.<sup>3</sup> That God is essentially everywhere, is a proposition referring to his power or agency which is nowhere inactive, but manifests its action in all places. As, without God's preserving agency nothing could subsist even for a moment, so this very conception involves in it, that it is by the energy of his essence God exists and acts everywhere." From these remarks, it is already quite evident that Abelard does not, by what he says concerning the divine omnipresence, as an active one, by any means exclude essential omnipresence; and he himself takes care to guard against any such interpretation, by adding: "It is common to say of a monarch, that he has a long arm, because he makes his power felt even in distant regions; he does so, however, not by his essence, but by means of his representatives."<sup>6</sup> Abelard thought he had hit upon an analogy by which we might form some right conception of the divine omnipresence, in the mode in which the soul is present in all parts of the body.<sup>7</sup> Thus, also, he expressed himself in his

<sup>1</sup> Cum in quosdam venire vel a quibusdam recedere dicitur, juxta donorum suorum collationem vel subtractionem intelligitur id, non secundum localem ejus adventum vel recessum, qui ubique per praesentiam suae substantiae semper existens, non habet, quo moveri localiter possit.

<sup>2</sup> Cum itaque Deus in virginem venire dicitur, secundum aequam (perhaps aliquam) efficaciam, non secundum localem accessiorem intelligi debet.

<sup>3</sup> Quid est enim aliud, cum in virginem descendisse, ut incarnaretur, nisi ut nostram assumeret infirmitatem, ac humiliasse, ut haec quidem humiliatio ejus videlicet intelligatur descensus?

<sup>4</sup> Quod tamen ubique esse per substantiam dicitur, juxta ejus potentiam vel operationem dici arbitror, ac si videlicet diceretur, ita ei cuncta loca esse praesentia, ut in eis aliquid operari nunquam cesset, nec ejus potentia sit alicubi otiosa.

<sup>5</sup> Nam et ipsa loca et quicquid est in eis, nisi per ipsum conserventur, manere non possunt, et per substantiam in eis esse dicitur, ubi per propriae virtutem substantiae aliquid nunquam operari cesset vel ea ipsa servando vel aliquid in iis per seipsum ministrando.

<sup>6</sup> Non tamen hoc per substantiam facere sufficiunt, quod per vicarios agunt.

<sup>7</sup> Anima per operationem vegetandi ac sentiendi singulis membris tota inest, ut singula vegetet et in singulis sentiat.

lectures, as we may see in his so-called *Sentences*:<sup>1</sup> "God is everywhere present by his essence, because he everywhere acts immediately by himself, without needing the instrumentality of others. For although a king may act, by his power, through the whole extent of his dominion, yet he is not everywhere by his essence; since he cannot act at once throughout his whole empire without employing ministers and servants." It deserves to be noticed, also, that Abelard applied the idea of omnipresence to time as well as to space.<sup>2</sup> Hugo a Sancto Victore defends the doctrine of an essential presence of God,<sup>3</sup> perhaps in opposition to Abelard's misunderstood explication.<sup>4</sup> He lays down the trilemma: Either God is nowhere according to his essence, or, he is in some place without being everywhere, or, he is everywhere. The first and second cannot be true; only the third supposition, therefore, remains: "Though we cannot perfectly comprehend," he says, "yet we must believe, without doubting, that God is, in essence, everywhere." According to Hugo's notions, moreover, the idea of the divine omnipresence is coincident with the truth that all things subsist in dependence on God's preserving agency.<sup>5</sup> The same connection of ideas was adopted by the scholastic theologians of the thirteenth century: "God is everywhere present in space," says Thomas Aquinas, "inasmuch as he communicates to all that is in space being, force, and activity."<sup>6</sup>

In treating the doctrine of the divine omnipotence, the schoolmen of the twelfth century met with similar difficulties to those with the solution of which Origen had busied himself. Two different rocks were to be avoided: they must not, under the name of omnipotence, attribute to God an infinite arbitrary will; nor,

<sup>1</sup> Cap. xix., p. 50.

<sup>2</sup> *Omnis locus ei præsens, sic et omne tempus*, in the place just quoted.

<sup>3</sup> L. c. *Summa Tract. i., c. iv.*

<sup>4</sup> As in Abelard's *Sentences* a passage of Augustin is quoted, and also Hugo declaims against such an appeal to words of Augustin, this may indicate that he actually directed his polemics against Abelard; perhaps against some of his expressions in his lectures, according to some of the copies circulated about.

<sup>5</sup> *Nec sine eo potest aliquid subsistere etiam per momentum ex omnibus, quæ fecit, quia omnia continet et penetrat et nullo continetur.*

<sup>6</sup> *Summa*, p. i. Qu. viii., art. i. et ii.

<sup>7</sup> *Ut dans eis esse et virtutem et operationem, quod dat esse omnibus locis, quæ replent omnia loca.*

in seeking to avoid this danger, represent the divine being as dependent on a natural necessity, or derogate anything from his absolute freedom. By the prudent precaution and pious modesty of the speculations by which he endeavours to guard against both these errors, Anselm especially distinguishes himself. He says: "The freedom and will of God we must, conformably to reason, so understand as to place nothing in him that is derogatory from his dignity. The true idea of freedom regards that only which is befitting and becoming the divine excellence.<sup>1</sup> When it is said, 'What God wills is good, and what he wills not is not good,' this is not to be so understood as if, supposing God should will anything that is bad, it would be good because he willed it; for it does not follow that, if God should lie, it would be right to lie; but rather, that a being who lied could not be God. As truly as God is God, it is impossible for us to conceive that he should will that which is bad., An hypothetical proposition of this sort is much the same as if we should set together the two impossible things,—if water is dry, fire is water. When we talk, in the case of God, of a necessity to will that which is good, the expression is an improper one. What we denominate necessity, is nothing else than the immutability of his goodness, which he has from himself, which is not derived to him from some other quarter."<sup>2</sup> Thus he rebuts the objection that God, if he cannot do otherwise than will that which is good, deserves no thanks. It is not a natural necessity, but the immutability of his eternal, holy will, and therefore is he the more to be praised in all his goodness.<sup>4</sup>

But Abelard's speculations could not be confined within the limits which the pious spirit of Anselm prescribed to itself. He

<sup>1</sup> In his Dialogue, *cur Deus homo* lib. i. c. xii.: Libertatem et voluntatem Dei sic debemus rationabiliter intelligere, ut dignitati illius non videamur repugnare. Libertas enim non est nisi ad hoc, quod expedit aut quod decet.

<sup>2</sup> Non sequitur: si Deus vult mentiri, justum esse mentiri, sed potius Deum illum non esse.

<sup>3</sup> Quae necessitas non est aliud, quam immutabilitas honestatis ejus, quam a se ipso et non ab alio habet, et ideo improprie dicitur necessitas.

<sup>4</sup> Lib. ii. c. x: Recte asseritur ipse sibi dedisse justitiam et seipsum justum fecisse. Ideo laudandus est de sua justitia, nec necessitate, sed libertate justus est, quia improprie dicitur necessitas, ubi nec coactio ulla est nec prohibitio. Quapropter quoniam Deus perfecte habet a se quicquid habet, ille maxime laudandus est de bonis, quae habet et servat, non ulla necessitate, sed propria et aeterna immutabilitate.



says first : " We should be cautious not to admit into the idea of omnipotence, anything that is grounded in deficiencies and limitations of creaturely existence,"<sup>2</sup> and on this side, he falls in with Anselm. But he adds : " We may, in a certain sense, refer everything which it lies in man's power to do, to the divine omnipotence, in so far as in him we live, move, and have our being, and he works all in all.<sup>3</sup> For he employs us as instruments to accomplish that which he wills ; and it may, in a certain sense, be said, that *he* brings about that which he suffers us to bring about. But he goes still farther, and starts the question whether God could do more, other, and better than he has actually done ; which he answers in the negative ; though he acknowledges, indeed, how offensive this must appear to some.<sup>4</sup> The consideration seemed to him of irresistible weight, that God, who is the supreme reason, can do nothing except what is in conformity with reason ; that what he does is always the best, and that by virtue of his goodness he can do no other than this.<sup>5</sup> He brings up objections to this statement, and then seeks to refute them. On this supposition, God's omnipotence would have narrower limits than man's ability ; for man can do a great many things otherwise than he actually does. And he brings up the words of Christ, when he said : " If I prayed to my Father, he would send ten thousand angels." In reply to the first objection, he remarks : " That we can do many things that we ought not to do, is to be ascribed to our weakness rather than to our dignity. We should be better if we could not do that which is evil." In reply to the second objection, he says : " Most assuredly, God would have done this if Christ had prayed ; but that Christ should request this is the very thing that was impossible, since it was contrary to his temper." And thus, generally, he meets these and the like objections by distinguishing an hypothetical

<sup>1</sup> Introductio, lib. iii. p. 1109.

<sup>2</sup> Alioquin e converso impotentiam diceremus potentiam et potentiam impotentiam.

<sup>3</sup> Non absurde tamen et de his omnibus, quae efficere possumus, Deum potentem praedicabimus et omnia, quae agimus, ejus potentiae tribuimus, in quo vivimus, movemur et sumus, et " qui omnia operatur in omnibus."

<sup>4</sup> Licet haec nostra opinio paucos aut nullos habeat assentatores et plurimum a dictis sanctorum et aliquantulum a ratione dissentire videatur.

<sup>5</sup> Cum videlicet in singulis faciendis vel dimittendis rationabilem habeat causam, cur ab ipso fiant vel dimittantur nec ispe quicquam, quia summa ratio est, contra id quod rationi congruit, aut velle aut agere queat.

and an absolute possibility and necessity. To those who said : If God could not act differently, we should be under no obligation of gratitude to him, he replies : " It was really to be denominated nothing else than a certain necessity of his essence or of his goodness, one with his will, and no constraint."<sup>1</sup> " Since his goodness is so great that it moves him of himself to all good acts, he ought therefore to be the more loved and honoured on account of his own proper essence, because this goodness dwells not in him in an accidental, but in an essential and immediate way.<sup>2</sup> For should we be less thankful to a person who afforded us help in distress, if his love were so great that he could not do otherwise, but felt constrained by the force of his love to help us ?" This explanation he repeated in his *Theologia Christiana*.<sup>3</sup> " God is ever and at all times so consumed, to express ourselves after the manner of men, by his inexpressible goodness, that what he wills, he wills necessarily ; and what he does, he does necessarily ; just as everything that is grounded in the essence of God, dwells in it after an eternal and necessary manner."<sup>4</sup> The extreme timidity that filled the mind of Abelard, lest he should say something which might be hurtful to the religious interest, expresses itself in what he remarks, under his sense of the difficulties that pressed him : " But as it is our endeavour to preserve spotless the honour of God in all things, and to glorify him to the utmost of our ability, so let us trustfully invoke his assistance, that he who frees his chosen from their sins, would make me free from the confusion of words, and that, by his grace, he would deliver me from the snare of this or that expression, to the glory of his own name, so that we may not be found

1 Hic enim quaedam naturae vel bonitatis ejus necessitas ab ejus voluntate non est separata nec coactio dicenda est, qua etiam nolens id facere cogatur.

2 Cum ejus tanta sit bonitas atque optima voluntas, ut ad faciendum non invitum eum, sed spontaneum inclinet, tanto amplius ex propria natura diligendus est atque hinc glorificandus, quanto haec bonitas ejus non ei per accidens, sed substantialiter atque incommutabiliter inest.

3 L. c. Martene et Durand thesaur. anecdotor. t. v. f. 1367.

4 Ex ipsa sua et ineffabili bonitate adeo semper, ut humano more loquar, accensus, ut quae vult necessario velit et quae facit, necessario faciat. Non enim carere sua potest bona voluntate, quam habet, cum sit ei naturalis et coaeterna, non adventitia, sicut nostra est nobis, et omne, quod in natura est divinitatis, necessario ei atque omnibus modis inevitabiliter inest, utpote justitia, pietas, misericordia et quaecumque erga creaturas bona voluntas.

chargeable in his sight, either with falsehood or presumption towards him. For it is he who tries the heart and the reins, who regards, in all, the disposition of the heart rather than the outward action, and asks not what has been done, but with what intention it was done."<sup>1</sup> After the same manner, he touches upon this point in the published copies of his lectures.<sup>2</sup> He observes of those who urged similar reasons to the ones just cited, against these tenets, that they did not seem to him rightly to understand, either the wisdom of God, or the declarations of Scripture or of the church fathers. He then<sup>3</sup> notices the opinion of those who endeavoured to solve the difficulty in the doctrine of omnipotence by saying that God could do this or that if he pleased. He objects to them, that they represented God anthropopathically, as if deliberating with himself before he came to a decision. Now as this doctrine of Abelard was also fairly attacked by his opponents, he was obliged to speak of it in his apology; where he declared that he held fast everything that was essential to him, and avoided that which had given offence to many. "I believe that God can do only what it is befitting him to do (which was acknowledged even by Anselm); and that he can do much that he will not do." This he might indeed have said, on his old grounds, provided the "can" were understood abstractly, concerning which he makes no further explanation here.<sup>4</sup>

Hugo a St Victore controverted in both of his works the doctrine of Abelard, but without naming him. He declaims against those who affirmed that God was so bound by the measure and law of his own works, that he could do nothing other and nothing better than what he had done; those who set limits to God's infinite power. He describes them as men who had lost themselves in their own curious speculations,<sup>5</sup> men swollen with

1 Ne nos mendacii vel praesumptionis in eum ab ipso arguamur, qui probator cordis et renum magis in omnibus in intentionem attendit, quam actionem, nec quae fiunt, sed quo animo fiunt. T. v. f. 1368.

2 Sententiae, ed. Rheinwald, c. xx.

3 Page 55.

4 Ea solummodo Deum posse facere credo, quae ipsum facere convenit, et multa facere potest, quae nunquam faciet.

5 De sacrament. lib. i. c. xxii.: Illi nostri scrutatores, qui defecerunt scrutantes scrutationes.

the conceit of their own knowledge;<sup>1</sup> and yet Abelard would doubtless have taken up into his doctrine all that Hugo said on the other side, and appropriated it as a still further determination of that doctrine. He applies here, in speaking of the divine will, a distinction which afterwards acquired great importance in the doctrinal controversies; the distinction of will in itself, as the interior action of God, *voluntas* as *beneplacitum Dei*; and that which presents itself phenomenally, as an object of the divine will, *signum beneplaciti*.<sup>2</sup> Now, if we understand the divine will in the former sense, God can do nothing and will nothing except what he wills; for his will is identical with his being and power.<sup>3</sup> But if we speak of his will in the other sense, the case is altered. All that God has created can be better than it is, if God so wills. He can make what he has created into something better; which does not suppose that it was bad before, but that he raises what he had created good to a still higher degree of perfection; not that God, so far as he himself is concerned, ought to have done better, but that it may become better through his operation, while he himself remains immutably the same.<sup>4</sup> He agrees with Abelard and Anselm, in extending the idea of the divine omnipotence to everything that is a positive power, and therefore excluding only that which has its ground rather in a deficiency or limitation of the creature. But it is a remark of Hugo's, important in its connection with the theistic principle, that, as time is not commensurate with God's eternity, nor space with God's immensity, so neither are the works of God commensurate with his omnipotence.<sup>5</sup>

The dogmatists of the thirteenth century, also, declared against

<sup>1</sup> Summa Tract. i. c. xxiv. : Quosdam scientia inflatos.

<sup>2</sup> Sicut praeceptio et prohibitio signa sunt voluntatis divinae, ita et operatio et permissio Summa Tract. i. c. xiii. This distinction was employed already by Abelard, without his denoting it in this particular form, Introd. in theol. opp. page 1111: Velle Deus duobus modis dicitur aut secundum providentiae suae ordinationem aut secundum consilii adhortationem.

<sup>3</sup> Si de ipsa Dei voluntate loquimur, quae est hoc quod ipse, nihil potest facere, nisi quod vult et nihil potest velle, nisi quod vult, idem est enim velle quod esse, et idem etiam velle quod posse.

<sup>4</sup> Non ut ipse quantum ad se melius faciat sed ut, quod fecit, ipso identidem operante et in eodem perseverante melius fiat.

<sup>5</sup> Omnia potest Deus, quae posse potentia est.

<sup>6</sup> Sicut aeternitatem non aequat tempus, nec immensitatem locus, sic nec potentiam opus.

Abelard's doctrine, though, at the same time, his name was not mentioned. Thomas Aquinas says: "As the power of God is one, not only with his essence but also with his wisdom, so it may be rightly said, that nothing is in God's power which is not grounded in the order of divine wisdom; for the divine wisdom embraces the whole extent of the divine power. Nevertheless, the order implanted in things by the divine wisdom is not commensurate with that wisdom itself, so that the latter is limited to that order. If the end for which things were made stood in a commensurate relation to those things, it might be said that wisdom is confined to a certain determinate order, that this determinate order must necessarily take place, in order that this determinate end of wisdom may be attained. But the divine goodness is an end standing in no relation of comparison with created things.<sup>1</sup> Hence it follows, that the divine goodness may manifest itself in manifold ways, in ways other than the actual ones; that it is not tied to this particular order of things; therefore we must hold absolutely, that God can do otherwise than he does." Thus he comes upon the distinction between the divine power, as it reveals itself in the order of the universe established by divine wisdom, and the divine power absolutely, which holds of everything that does not involve a contradiction, *potentia Dei ordinaria et absoluta*. We must admit he has by no means resolved all the difficulties brought up by Abelard; and the distinction he makes might be adopted and employed also by Abelard, in his own way.

In their attempts towards a rational mode of apprehending the doctrine of the Trinity, the schoolmen of this period pursued the same method with Augustin, in making the analogy between the creaturely and the supreme Spirit, their starting-point. This matter was first profoundly investigated and set forth by Anselm. "We can know God," says he, "not from himself, but only after the analogy of his creatures. That will best subserve this knowledge, therefore, which presents the highest degree of resemblance to God. If everything, so far as it has being, is an image of the highest being, this must hold good in the most eminent degree of that which is highest in the whole creation; this is the

<sup>1</sup> Sed divina bonitas est finis, *improportionabiliter* excedens res creatas.

rational spirit. The more, then, it endeavours to enter into itself, for the purpose of coming to the knowledge of its own essence, the more will it succeed in elevating itself to the knowledge of God.<sup>1</sup> Hence this spirit may rightly be denominated a mirror to itself, in which to contemplate the image of him whom it cannot, as yet, behold face to face." Thus Anselm starts from the analogy of human consciousness, in order to mount upwards to the idea of the Trinity. "As it belongs to the essence of the creaturely spirit to come to the knowledge of itself, and thus to produce an image of itself within itself, we must conceive the same to hold true, after the highest manner, of the divine Being. The supreme Wisdom knows himself after an eternal manner, which is nothing other than the eternal Word; his most perfect image, of the same essence with himself.<sup>2</sup> As, again, everything produced by human art existed first in the idea of the producing mind; as this idea remains even when the work is destroyed, and is itself, in this respect, one with the art of the producing mind; so it is not another but the same Word, in whom God knows himself, and by whom all things were created. This divine idea is the ground of the existence of the creatures in manifestation, and precedes them; it is unchangeable and remains, even if the changeable creature perishes. The creatures possess, in this divine Word, a higher being than in themselves, in manifestation; they are, in so far, one with the divine Word himself.<sup>3</sup> Now if our knowledge of things only receives into itself an image of the same, which is not adequate to that which they are essentially in themselves, it is evident that we are still less capable of comprehending that higher being of things, as they exist in the divine Word, which is represented in created being only as in an image, and that Word itself.<sup>4</sup> It is a relation with which

<sup>1</sup> Quid igitur apertius, quam quia mens rationalis quanto studiosius ad se discendum intendit, tanto efficacius ad illius cognitionem ascendit? Monolog. c. lxvi.

<sup>2</sup> Hoc itaque modo quis neget, summam sapientiam, cum se dicendo intelligit, gignere consubstantiali sibi similitudinem suam, id est verbum suum?

<sup>3</sup> In seipsis sunt essentia mutabilis, secundum immutabilem rationem creata, in ipso vero sunt ipsa prima essentia et prima existendi veritas.

<sup>4</sup> Cum constat, quia omnis creata substantia tanto verius est in verbo, id est intelligentia creatoris, quam in seipso, quanto verius existit creatrix quam creata essentia, quomodo comprehendat humana mens, cujusmodi sit illud dicere et illa scientia, quae sic longe superior et verior est creatis substantiis si nostra scientia tam longe superatur ab illis, quantum earum similitudo distat ab earum essentia?

nothing else can be compared, that what the supreme Mind and his eternal Word are in their essence, and in their relation to the creation, is complete by itself in each, and at the same time in both; and still, no plurality in the two arises therefrom. This community of being is incapable of being expressed by words.<sup>1</sup> The most suitable and befitting words by which to denote this relation, that one proceeds from the other and is yet perfectly equal to the same, are the term birth, the name Son. Here, alone, the fact is perfectly exemplified, that the act of producing requires the co-operation of nothing else, and that what is produced represents the image of the producer without any dissimilitude.<sup>2</sup> As self-knowledge presupposes the remembrance of one's self (the thought of one's self), so this memoria, from which is produced the Word, corresponds to the Father. As God knows himself, he loves himself; and as the love of God to himself presupposes in him the remembrance of himself and the knowledge of himself, so this is denoted by the procession of the Holy Ghost from both. All three pass completely into each other, constituting the one supreme Essence." By means of this concatenation of ideas, Anselm defended the doctrine of the Western church concerning the procession of the Holy Ghost from Father and Son. Being present during the time of his banishment from England, in 1098, at the council of Bari in Apulia, where the differences between the two churches came up for discussion, he was called upon to defend the Western doctrine concerning the Holy Ghost, against the Greeks; and, as his mode of stating the doctrine met with general approbation, he was commissioned by the pope to reduce it to writing.

In his doctrine of the Trinity, which drew upon him so many attacks, Abelard followed a similar method; only with a difference arising out of his different mode of contemplating the relation of faith to rational knowledge; which led him to consider that analogy as constituting proper evidence for a truth grounded in the essence of reason, although this truth might first be clearly

1 Constat igitur, quia exprimi non potest, quid duo sint, summus spiritus et verbum ejus, quamvis quibusdam singulorum proprietatibus cogantur esse duo.

2 Nam in rebus aliis, quas parentis prolesque certum est habitudinem habere, nulla sic gignitur, ut nulla admixta dissimilitudine omnimodam similitudinem parentis exhibeat, ut omnino nullius indigens sola per se ad gignendam prolem sufficiat.

brought up to consciousness by a supernatural revelation, which by others was represented as being only an analogy illustrating some truth communicated by supernatural revelation. He wished to show that the doctrine of the Trinity is a necessary idea of reason, without which God cannot be rightly known as the highest Good; and hence even the better class of the pagan philosophers had arrived at this knowledge. He would make it out, that this doctrine only served to express, in an exhaustive manner, the idea of God as the supremely good;—God as the omnipotence of the Father, as the wisdom of the Son, as the love or goodness of the Holy Ghost; and what is said of the relation of the three persons to each other, corresponds to the relation of these three ideas to each other. “By the name Father is denoted that power of the divine majesty whereby God is able to bring to pass whatsoever he wills; the Word, or the Son, denotes that wisdom whereby he knows all things, and nothing remains hid from him; the Holy Ghost, the goodness or the love whereby he orders and directs all things to the best end.<sup>1</sup> It is because these three ideas contain the whole, that, in imploring the divine grace to accomplish anything by our means, we say, In the name of the Father, and of the Son, and of the Holy Ghost,—testifying, by our mention of the divine power, wisdom, and goodness, that everything which God does, is done in a glorious manner. As the eternal wisdom presupposes omnipotence,—is itself a certain power,—so this relation of the derived to the original is expressed by the idea of eternal generation. But there is no place for love except between two; and the symbol of procession is suited to denote the essence and action of love, which is a proceeding forth of one being to another. Love is an outgoing from one’s self, a communication of one’s self to another; the will to enter into union, into society, with another.”<sup>2</sup> In several places

1 Sicut Dei patris vocabulo divinae majestatis potentiae exprimitur specialiter, ita filii seu verbi appellatione sapientiae Dei significatur, qua cuncta discernere valet, ut in nulla penitus decipi queat. At vero Spiritus sancti vocabulo ipsa ejus caritas, seu benignitas exprimitur, qua videlicet optime cuncta vult fieri seu disponi et eo modo singula provenire, quo melius possunt, aliis quoque bene utens et optime singula disponens et ad optimum finem quoque perducens. *Introduct. lib. i., p. 986.*

2 Nemo ad semetipsum caritatem dicitur habere, sed dilectionem in alterum extendit, ut esse caritas possit. Procedere itaque Dei est esse ad aliquam rem per affectum caritatis quodammodo extendere, ut eam videlicet diligat ac ei per amorem se conjungat. *Introduct. lib. ii., p. 1085.*



he says: "By the Holy Ghost is signified the goodness of God, whereby he dispenses life and blessing from himself; exerts his agency on his creatures."<sup>1</sup> Yet in a more recent passage, in the new revision of his *Christian Theology*,<sup>2</sup> he says: "The mutual love of Father and Son to each other is also denominated the Holy Ghost, and not barely God's love to his creatures; since otherwise the necessary existence of the Holy Ghost and of the Trinity would not seem so clearly evident; for as creatures have not a necessary existence, the love of God to them is not a necessary love; and so the Holy Ghost would not have a necessary existence."<sup>3</sup> But God is self-sufficient, unchangeable in all the goodness that belongs to his being."

As a visible illustration of the relation of the three persons to each other, he employs the comparison of a seal made of brass: "Here we have the brass material, lying at the foundation; the image of the king, engraven on the brass; the form, composed of both, the seal."<sup>4</sup> Or the impression on wax, where, in like manner, the material, the form, and that which is made up of both, may be distinguished."<sup>5</sup> He, like earlier writers, thinks that the dispute with the Greeks might be brought to an end, if it should be said, the Holy Ghost proceeds, in the most original sense, from the Father as the unbegotten;<sup>6</sup> but he also proceeds from the Son, or through the Son, when he brings the divine ideas, received from wisdom, into actual realization. Richard a St Victore also resorted to a comparison of the same sort with

<sup>1</sup> *Maxime Deus, cum nullius indiget, erga ipsum benignitatis affectu commoveri non potest, ut sibi aliud ex benignitate impendat, sed erga creaturas tantum, quae divinae gratiae beneficiis indigent, non solum ut sint, sed ut bene sint. Quo itaque modo Deus a se ipso ad creaturas exire dicitur, per benignitatis affectum vel effectum, quem in creaturis habeat, dicatur.* L. c. p. 1086.

<sup>2</sup> *Theologia christiana, lib. iv., f. 1340.*

<sup>3</sup> *Possset quippe esse, ut nulla creatura unquam esset, cum nulla ex necessitate sit, ac per hoc consequens videtur, ut jam nec affectus ipsius, quem videlicet erga creaturas habet, ex necessitate sit ac per hoc Spiritus ipse ex necessitate non sit, quem dicimus ipsum affectum Dei esse sive amorem.*

<sup>4</sup> *Ipsium aes materia, ex qua factura unquam esset, figura ipsa imaginis regiae forma ejus, ipsum sigillum, ex his duobus materiatur atque formatum, quibus videlicet convenientibus ipsum est compositum atque effectum.* *Introduct. lib. ii., p. 1081.*

<sup>5</sup> *Theol. christ. lib. iv., f. 1317. L. c.*

<sup>6</sup> *Hoc fortasse modo si a solo patre procedere spiritum Graeci intelligant, eo scilicet quod ab ipso sit quasi a summo et non existente ab alio, nulla est sententiae controversia, sed verborum diversitas.* *Introduct. lib. ii., p. 1095.*

that of Abelard; though he did not lay so much stress upon it, as an *argument*, to show the necessity of the doctrine of the Trinity. He too says that although the power, wisdom, and goodness of the Father, Son, and Holy Ghost are the same; yet, in many parts of Scripture, power seems to be ascribed particularly to the Father, wisdom to the Son, and goodness to the Holy Ghost.<sup>1</sup> And to a query of the abbot Bernard, who descried something in such declarations resembling what had been so offensive to him in Abelard, he replied as follows: "I will very cheerfully tell you my opinion—What power, what wisdom, what love or goodness is, we all know. From that, then, which is manifest and known to us, we are so constituted, if I mistake not, as to frame to ourselves a conception of that which transcends the measure of human capacity; for in these three attributes is expressed a certain image of the Trinity, and a mirror, as it were, is given us, whereby we may come, from the things that are made, to the knowledge of the invisible essence of God."<sup>2</sup> He too, like Abelard, finds the relation of the three persons to each other answering to the relation of these three conceptions to each other.<sup>3</sup>

Hugo a St Victore, like Anselm, places God's image in the human spirit at the foundation: The spirit; the knowledge begotten by it out of itself, or wisdom; and the love proceeding from both, with which it embraces its wisdom.<sup>4</sup> But in God, these are no changeable affections, as in man. Each is one with its essence; this *higher* relation is denoted by the Trinity."<sup>5</sup>

1 Quamvis una eademque sit potentia et bonitas patris et filii et spiritus sancti, secundum quendam tamen modum loquendi in quibusdam scripturae locis potentia patri, sapientia filio, benignitas spiritui sancto (quasi specialiter) videntur assignari. De statu interioris hominis, c. iii., f. 89.

2 In his tract De tribus appropriatis personis in trinitate, f. 271: In his, quae manifesta et nobis nota sunt, erudimur (ni fallor) ad eorum notionem, quae humanae capacitatis modum excedunt. In his enim tribus forma quaedam et imago summae trinitatis exprimitur et quoddam nobis velut speculum proponitur, ut invisibilia Dei per ea, quae facta sunt, intellecta conspiciantur.

3 In hac itaque rerum trinitate sola potentia non est de reliquarum aliqua, sapientia autem est de potentia sola, bonitas vero de potentia simul et sapientia.

4 Quoniam ex se ipsa nascitur sapientia, quae est in ipso, et quoniam ipsa diligit sapientiam suam et ita procedit sapientia de mente et de mente et sapientia procedit amor, quo ipsa mens diligit sapientiam genitam a se.

5 Quod ideo non sunt personae, quia sunt affectiones mutabiles circa animam. Aliquando enim anima est sine notitia et amore, nec potest dici notitia hominis esse homo, vel amor hominis est homo, sed sapientia Dei Deus est, amor Dei Deus est, quia non

Richard a St Victore endeavours to prove that the relation of the three persons to each other is a necessary relation, thus: "The Supreme Being must have an object worthy of his love, which he loves as himself. Hence the conception of the Father as the eternal cause of his equal Son. The latter having all things in common with the former, must have omnipotence also: accordingly, the third person must derive his existence from both."<sup>1</sup> Alanus says briefly, adopting the language of Hermes Trismegistus: "Unity begets unity, and reflects its own ardour (love) back upon itself; thus the procession of the Holy Ghost from both, is denoted as having its causative ground in the Father."<sup>2</sup>

Unedifying were the disputes which grew out of the improper transfer of opposite theories respecting universal conceptions to the doctrine of the Trinity. While Roscelin exposed himself to be called a tritheist by his nominalism, Gilbert of Poitiers, like John Philoponus, in earlier times,<sup>3</sup> drew upon himself the same reproach by taking the contrary position of the Aristotelian realism. The obscure, confused, and abstruse style in which this Gilbert wrote, served to prolong the dispute, while the parties could never come to an understanding with each other. His purpose was to avoid Sabellianism; to which, as he supposed, the comparisons just cited, with which it was attempted to prove or to illustrate the doctrine of the Trinity, might easily lead, if great care were not taken to keep separate things related and

est in Deo aliud ab ipso. Summa sent. Tract. i., c. vi., De sacramentis, lib. i., p. iii., c. xxiii.

1 Oportet condignum habere, ut sit, quem possit et merito debeat ut seipsum diligere. Si igitur primordiale personam veraciter constat esse summe bonam, nolle omnino non poterit, quod summa caritas exigit. Et si veraciter eam omnipotentem esse, quicquid esse voluerit, non poterit non esse. Exigente itaque caritate condignum habere volet et exigente potestate habebit quem habere placet. Ecce quod perfectio personae unius est causa existentiae alterius. And then: Si igitur idem posse est absque dubio ambobus commune, consequens est, tertiam in trinitate personam ex ambobus et esse accepisse existentiam habere. In his work De trinitate, lib. v., c. vii. et viii.

2 Monas gignit monadem et in se suum reflectit ardorem.—Iste ardor ita procedit a monade id est a patre, quod ipsum non deserit, quia ejusdem est essentiae cum ipso vel in se alterum (his second self, the other altogether coequal to him) id est in filium suum reflectit ardorem, id est spiritum sanctum, sed ita procedit a patre, quod ejus auctoritate procedit a filio. See the *Regulae theologicae*, p. 180, seqq. Ed. Mingarelli.

<sup>3</sup> In despite of all Dr Barr may have said, in his *Geschichte der Dreieinigkeitslehre*, ii. p. 510, where he rightly finds fault with an inaccurate expression in my St Bernard, this comparison is an altogether correct one.

things different.<sup>1</sup> This danger he would avoid by distinguishing the different senses, in which the name of God is used ; inasmuch as we understand by it either the one divine essence, the *substantia, qua est Deus* ; the one substantial ground which is contained in the three persons ; just as the one essence of the kind is contained in the individuals belonging to this kind ;<sup>2</sup> the *forma constitutiva in rebus* ; or, on the other hand, the persons distinguished one from the other by their personal properties, of which persons, each by itself is called God, the *substantia, quae est Deus*.<sup>3</sup> Yet Gilbert himself acknowledged the inadequacy of this transfer of creaturely relations to God, and expressed himself on this point to the effect, that the conception of one common substance could not be applied to the simple essence of God in the same sense as it is applied to composite beings.<sup>4</sup> Happily these disputes, which occupied men's minds more than the object deserved, had no further influence on the determination of the

1 Errant aliqui in comparationibus, imo ex comparationibus, cum aut si quid in his est dissimile, illas omnino abjiciendas existimant, aut in his, propter quas non sit illarum inductio, easdem usurpant, ut Sabelliani. Qui cum audiunt unius substantiae tres esse personas, et propter eam, quae ex illarum proprietatibus est, diversitatem aut aequalitatem aut comparationem aut coaeternitatem aut processionem ostendendam, inductas similitudines legunt, scilicet vel unius animae mentem, notitiam, amorem vel unius mentis memoriam, intelligentiam, voluntatem vel unius radii splendorem et calorem vel hujusmodi alias, putant, quod sicut unus solus est radius, de quo dicuntur calor et splendor aut una sola est mens, de qua et memoria et intelligentia et voluntas aut una sola anima, de qua et mens et notitia et amor, ita quoque unus solus subsistens sit, qui cum sit natura Deus, idem ipse personalibus proprietatibus sit pater et filius et spiritus sanctus. See the Commentary on Boëth. f. 1150, already cited on page 157.

2 The *alêoe* is contradiistinguished from the individual being, from the *ύλη*, *forma et materia*. See the above-cited Commentary, f. 1140.

3 He says, concerning the Sabellians: Quos hic ipse error patenter ostendit omnino nescire hujus nominis, quod est substantia, multiplicem in naturalibus usum, videlicet non modo id, quod est, verum etiam id, quo est, hoc nomine nuncupari.—Eorum qui sunt Deus, numeratio facta est, ejus vero, quo sunt Deus repetitio. In the above-cited Commentary, f. 1150, seqq.

4 Ex aliqua rationis proportionem transsumptum sermonem rem ipsam, sicut est, minime posse explicare et praeter rationis plenitudinem sensum mentis in eo, quod non nisi ex parte concipi potest, laborare. L. c. f. 1164.

5 It marks the character of these times that, as we have already noticed on page 91, a reputed soothsayer was consulted about the controversy between the Nominalists and Realists ; and a Parisian magister sought, in the revelations of Hildegard, a decision of the contested points handled by Gilbert. And the latter declared, appealing to the revelations imparted to her, that, in speaking of God, essence and properties cannot be separated. Everything that is declared of God denote himself, in his essence: Quia homo hanc potestatem non habet, ut de Deo dicat, sicut de humanitate hominis et sicut de colore facti operis de manu hominis. Deus plenus est et integer et ideo non potest divid

doctrine of the Trinity. A confession of faith, which the abbot Bernard opposed to the doctrine of Gilbert, could not force its way into general recognition. Abelard declared, that the being of God cannot come under the categories;<sup>1</sup> and Peter Lombard, that the determinations of the church were designed rather to exclude from the simplicity of the divine essence what was not in it than to place anything therein.<sup>2</sup>

The theologians of the thirteenth century followed out the ideas which had already been advanced on this doctrine in the preceding age.

Alexander of Hales says: "To the essence of the Supreme Good belongs that highest communication of himself which is denoted by the generation of the Son. As the fullest communication of nature stands in generation, so the most perfect communication of will stands in love; we must therefore attribute both kinds of self-communication to the Supreme Good."<sup>3</sup> Albert the Great unfolds the matter thus: "Spirit can produce only by first sketching the idea of its work within itself, an offspring of spirit exactly answering to the work."<sup>4</sup> Next, is required an instrumentality, analogous to the essence of spirit, for the realization of the idea thus sketched forth. An idea of this sort must be simple, and of like essence with the highest acting principle, when this is so simple, that in it being, essence, and activity are all one.<sup>5</sup> The way in which God reveals himself in time, to make his rational creatures holy, and unite them to himself, necessarily presupposes that eternal act of the self-communication of God, by virtue of which the Holy Ghost proceeds from Father and

*sermone, sicut homo dividi potest. See the Correspondence of Hildegard, which has been published by Martene and Durand, in the Veterum scriptorum et monumentorum collectio amplissima, t. ii. f. 1098, ep. 66.*

<sup>1</sup> Patet a tractatu philosophorum rerum omnium naturas in decem prædicamenta distribuentium illam summam majestatem esse exclusam omnino nec ullo modo regulas aut traditiones eorum ad illam summam atque ineffabilem celsitudinem conscendere. *Introduct. ad. theol. lib. ii. p. 1073.*

<sup>2</sup> Magis videtur horum verborum usus introductus ratione removendi atque excludendi a simplicitate deitatis, quæ ibi non sunt, quam ponendi aliqua. *Lib. ii. Dist. 24.*

<sup>3</sup> Est igitur in summo bono diffusio generationis, quam consequitur differentia generantis et geniti, patris et filii et erit ibi diffusio per modum dilectionis, quam dicimus processionem spiritus sancti.

<sup>4</sup> Format ex se rationem operis et speciem, quæ est sicut proles ipsius intellectus, intellectui agenti similis in quantum agens est.

<sup>5</sup> Formans, formatum, spiritus rector formæ.

Son. Through the Holy Ghost one love is diffused through all holy souls; this is the prototype of all creaturely love, that from which all creaturely love is derived.<sup>1</sup> In itself, this is something immutable; neither increasing nor diminishing. We are the ones that increase or diminish as we become more or less assimilated to this supreme love in disposition, feeling, and action."<sup>2</sup> Thomas Aquinas also pursues the same analogy, with a view to prepare the way for understanding the doctrine of the Trinity, and he traces it out, as we shall see, in a profound manner; but he is careful at the same time to guard against the supposition as if the Trinity could thus be really demonstrated. "Only when we assume this doctrine as given, do such arguments have any significance."<sup>3</sup> He endeavours to show how this is so in particular cases.<sup>4</sup> But what Thomas Aquinas thinks that he is able to make out, is this,—that if the doctrine of the Trinity which is not to be proved *a priori*, is assumed by us as a doctrine of revelation, then the whole creation, and above all, the nature and essence of man's spirit, bear witness in favour of it. "The perfect way in which the Son and the Holy Ghost derive their essence from the Father,<sup>5</sup> is the primal ground and cause of the procession of the creatures from God. As the origin of the creation represents the perfection of the divine being only after an imperfect manner, so we are led back by it to the perfect type which completely includes in it all the divine perfections, namely, the Son, as the original type and pattern of the way in which creatures have their existence from God. And as all creatures owe their existence to the free goodness of the divine will, so this leads us back to *one* principle, constituting the ground of every free communication of

1 Una caritas diffusa per omnes animas sanctas per spiritum sanctum, ad quam sicut exemplar omnis dilectio refertur et comparatione illius et assimilatione caritas dici meretur, primum formale omnis dilectionis.

2 Quanto plus vel minus per assimilationem habitu et effectum et actu appropinquamus.

3 Trinitate posita congruunt huiusmodi rationes.

4 E. g. The infinite goodness of God reveals itself in creation. It by no means follows from this, that anything infinite proceeds from God, but it is enough, that each in its own measure participates of the divine goodness. Moreover, the argument that without society there is no blessedness, does not admit of being applied to a Being in himself all sufficient. While the words ascribed to Hermes Trismegist: *monas monadem genuit et in se ipsum reflexit ardorem*, were by many applied to the Trinity, he, on the contrary, thinks that these words found their fulfilment in the work of creation; nam unus Deus produxit unum mundum propter sui ipsius amorem.

5 The processio personarum, quae perfecta est.

God.<sup>1</sup> This is love ; the *procedere per modum amoris* in the person of the Holy Ghost ; the primal form of all communication of divine love. The *processio* is, in this case, not an act passing without the divine essence, and giving birth to something different from God, but one which abides within the agent himself. The more perfect this act of spiritual procession, the more completely one and identical is that which proceeds forth with that from which it proceeds forth.<sup>2</sup> Such acts of the spirit are knowing and willing, or loving (*intelligere* and *velle*). The more perfect the act of knowledge, the more completely is that which is known one with that which knows : the more perfect the love, the more completely the object of love becomes one with that which loves.<sup>3</sup> It is true, that *voluntas* and *intellectus* are in God one and the same : but in the order of conception, love, that comes from the will, certainly presupposes something received into the intellect, in order that it may be the object of love.<sup>4</sup> Hence, the procession of the Holy Ghost presupposes the generation of the Logos." He now seeks to show, from the same analogy, why it is that the idea of generation is applied more particularly to the Logos, and that of procession to the Holy Ghost. "The act of intelligence (*intelligere*) supposes an image of the object known, therefore corresponding to God's knowledge of himself is the generation of his Son as his perfect image. Love, on the other hand, denotes an inclination of the spirit towards another.<sup>5</sup> The Holy Ghost is the mutual love between the Father and the Son ; therefore, the procession from both corresponds to the being of the Holy Ghost. As the Father expresses (*knows*)

1 Quod sit quasi ratio totius liberalis collationis.

2 Id quod procedit ad intra processu intelligibili, non oportet esse diversum ; imo quanto perfectius procedit, tanto magis est unum cum eo, a quo procedit.

3 Manifestum est, quod quanto aliquid intelligitur, tanto conceptio intellectualis est magis intima intelligenti et magis unum, nam intellectus secundum hoc quod actu intelligit, secundum hoc fit unum cum intellecto.—Secundum operationem voluntatis invenitur in nobis quaedam alia processio, scilicet processio amoris, secundum quam amatum est in amante, sicut per conceptionem verbi res dicta vel intellecta est in intelligente.

4 Non enim est processio amoris nisi in ordine ad processionem verbi, nihil enim potest voluntate amari, nisi sit in intellectu conceptum.

5 Haec est differentia inter intellectum et voluntatem, quod intellectus sit in actu secundum suam similitudinem, voluntas autem sit in actu, non per hoc, quod aliqua similitudo voluti sit in voluntate, sed ex hoc, quod voluntas habet quandam inclinationem in rem volitam, as he afterwards says, secundum rationem impellentis et moventis in aliquid.

within himself the essence of all the creatures through the begotten Word, inasmuch as the begotten Word represents the Father and all the creatures after a perfect manner, so he *loves* himself and all the creatures in the Holy Ghost." Thomas declares that a knowledge of the doctrine of the Trinity is necessary in order to a right understanding of the doctrine of creation. "When it is taught that God created all things by his Word, this doctrine excludes the error of those who suppose that God produced all things by a natural necessity. By the doctrine of the procession of love, it is shown that God produced the creatures not because he needed to do so, nor for any other reason urging him from without, but from love to his own goodness. But especially is this doctrine necessary in order to right views respecting the salvation of mankind; since this has been brought about by the incarnate Son, and by the gift of the Holy Ghost."

With this theory correspond also the views expressed by Raymond Lull. The divine principle of all existence, he finds in the Father: the instrumental cause, in the Son; the end, where all things find their rest, he designates as the Holy Ghost.<sup>1</sup> "Because in the Holy Ghost all things find their end and their rest, he begets no other person. The Father and Son have respect through love to one end, and the same is the Holy Ghost.<sup>2</sup> All that God knows *within* himself (in contradistinction from his knowledge of things placed without himself) is God. In so far as love within God's essence terminates in a product, it is a person; in so far as it is not anything produced, it is his own essence. In so far as the Father knows himself as Father, he begets the Son. Because the Father and Son through love contemplate each other, they beget the Holy Ghost. The divine productivity begins with the Father and terminates in the Holy Ghost."<sup>3</sup> "The distinction of the divine persons," says he,

<sup>1</sup> Quaelibet divinarum rationum est principium per patrem in filio et per filium est medium et per spiritum sanctum est quies et finis.

<sup>2</sup> Quaelibet divinarum rationum est principium per patrem in filio et per filium est medium et per spiritum sanctum est quies et finis. Id, propter quod spiritus sanctus non producit personam, est, ut appetitus cujuslibet rationis in illo habet finem et quietem. Quia pater et filius per amorem se habent ad unum finem, ille finis est spiritus sanctus. See the section concerning the Son of God, in the *liber proverbiorum*.

<sup>3</sup> What he here says of the divine productivity, he expresses also in his *proverbia*, in the following enigmatical style: Deus, in quantum intelligit, se posse Deum, producit



"leads us to perceive that the divine perfections are not inactive by reason of their infinite fulness.<sup>1</sup> Because God is quite as much God by acting as by being, he has, by his own essence, different persons. No existence is possible without distinction."<sup>2</sup> Like Abelard, he considered the Trinity as an exhaustive designation of the most perfect essence.<sup>3</sup> In his disputes with the Mohammedans, he frequently employed the following argument: "Without the doctrine of the Trinity, we should be driven to suppose an eternal creation; otherwise, we must detract from the idea of God's perfection. The goodness of God cannot be conceived as inoperative. But without the doctrine of the Trinity we should be compelled to represent it to ourselves as being so until the creation. To the very essence of the highest goodness belongs self-communication. This can be conceived as a perfect act only in the doctrine of the Trinity."

Thomas Aquinas acknowledges, that a beginning of creation is simply a matter of faith; that such a beginning cannot be proved by arguments; the hypothesis of an eternal creation cannot be refuted. Thereby the causality of God in relation to the world is by no means denied: since we must conceive of God's act of creation as out of time, as an act not in succession. And if it be conceived as always existing, the world is not made eternal, in the same sense as God is, because the divine being excludes all succession.<sup>4</sup>

The teleological point of view led the schoolmen to investigate the question respecting the end of the creation. Bonaventura starts the inquiry, whether the glory of God, or the good of the

Deum et in quantum intelligit se esse Deum, non producit Deum. Quia pater et filius intelligunt, quod possint Deum, producant Deum.

<sup>1</sup> Distinctio divinarum personarum est, ut divinae rationes non sint otiosae de infinitate.

<sup>2</sup> Quia Deus est tantum Deus per agere, quantum per existere, habet in sua essentia distinctas personas. Nulla substantia potest esse sine distinctione, sine distinctione non esset quidquam.

<sup>3</sup> Tua perfectio laudetur et benedicatur, quae demonstratur in te ratione tua sanctae trinitatis, quia ratione personae patris intelligimus tuam potestatem esse perfectam, et ratione personae filii intelligimus tuam sapientiam esse perfectam et ratione personae spiritus sancti intelligimus tuum benignum amorem esse plenum omni perfectione. Liber contemplationis in Deum, vol. i., lib. ii., *Distinct.* 22, c. c., t. ix., f. 219.

<sup>4</sup> Quia esse divinum est esse totum simul absque successione. S. Theol. p. i., Qu. 46, art. ii.

creature, is to be considered as this ultimate end ; which question came to the knowledge of the schoolmen in its connection with the inquiry respecting the supreme good, and that in its connection with and bearing on the system of morals. Bonaventura, after having stated the reasons on both sides, determines in favour of the former. " The highest end is God's glory ; for God creates all things for his own sake ; not to obtain glory for himself,—which would be inconsistent with his all-sufficiency,—or to augment that glory, but in order to display and ~~to communicate it~~ ; and in the manifestation of God's glory, and a participation in it, consists the highest good of his creatures.—Although in creatures it would be selfish to seek their own glory, yet it is otherwise with God ; for here there can be no difference between the particular and the universal good. He is himself the highest good. If he had not respect therefore, in all he does, to himself, what he does would not be good."

The shaping of the theology of which we are now endeavouring to give an account, certainly proceeded from an age of predominating supernaturalism, when the latter occupied and pervaded the whole spiritual atmosphere. The idea of the miracle, therefore, exercised a vast power on the minds of theologians. Since it was the fact, however, as we have shown by many examples, that the prevailing view of the miracle was not an isolating, fleshly-Jewish view of the matter, but the genuinely Christian mode of taking the miracle in connection with everything else belonging to the evolution of the divine life, so that the latter was considered the end and centre of all ; therefore, these theologians felt constrained to define the miracle, not according to the dead, mechanical view of God's relation to the world, but according to their own view of that relation,—a view which was animated, no less by a lively religious than by a profoundly speculative spirit. They must seek to point out the congruity of such an idea with their view of the creation, as a timeless act of God, with the active omnipresence of God, with a divine plan of the universe, binding together everything in organical coherence. Let us consider all this more in detail.

Abelard regarded the whole course of the world as a realization of the ideal order of the universe planned by the divine reason. By the one day, in the history of the creation, he under-

stands: "That whole activity of God, by virtue of which he planned in his own mind the entire circle of existence, realized in the work of the six days."<sup>1</sup> In the phenomenal world is manifested, what was present in the divine idea; the work and the idea correspond exactly together.<sup>2</sup> It is this system of the ideal order of the world which is meant, when the Word of God is spoken of in which he created all things. It is evident from this that there is nothing accidental, sudden, isolated; nothing that is not in conformity with reason.<sup>3</sup> Hence, the Platonic distinction between a *mundus intelligibilis* (κοσμος νοητός) and a *mundus sensibilis* (κοσμος αίσθητός) seems to him to be according to truth. "If we look at this system only, which is grounded in the divine plan of the universe, there are no exceptions; everything belongs to it in like manner, as internal parts: in this regard, there is no difference between natural and supernatural." He considers, it is true, everything that takes place, as in like manner a work of God's omnipotence, as we might infer from his conception of that attribute above explained. And for this very reason, he must say, that in relation to the divine omnipotence, abstractly considered, nothing is a miracle:<sup>4</sup> but he distinguishes, in the effects of God's omnipotence, those which correspond to the powers and laws originally placed in the creation, whereby the latter are only called into activity, and those, to which those powers and laws would be inadequate, which evidence new powers introduced by God into the creation. This is what is meant when things are said to take place contrary to the "course of nature;" that is, the ordinary course of nature. This is what is meant by the supernatural.<sup>5</sup> Concerning such effects as these last,

<sup>1</sup> Diem unum vocat totam illorum operum Dei consummationem, prius in mente habitam et in opere postmodum sexta die completam. Expositio in Hexameron. l. c. Martene et Durand, t. v., f. 1372.

<sup>2</sup> Quasi enim de sinu quodam secreti sui singula Deus producit, dum exhibet opere, quod antea conceperat mente nec a conceptu dissidet opus, dum quod mente disponitur, opere completur.

<sup>3</sup> Cuncta Deum condidisse in verbo, hoc est in sapientia sua ostenditur, id est nihil subito, vel temere, sed omnia rationabiliter ac provide. L. c. f. 1369.

<sup>4</sup> Excellentia divinae potentiae, quam constat ex propria natura quicquid decrevit posse.

<sup>5</sup> Contra naturam vel praeter naturam fieri, eo quod primordialium causarum institutio ad hoc minime sufficere posset, nisi Deus praeter solitum propria voluntate vim quandam rebus impertiret, ut hoc inde fieri posset. Theol. christian. lib. iii., f. 1133.

he says, that God thereby puts to shame the rules of the philosophers, because they are facts which the original laws of creation are inadequate to account for.<sup>1</sup> "When," says Abelard, "we examine into the powers of nature, or natural causes, we by no means look at that original act of God that formed the plan of the universe, where the agency of nature is to be considered identical with the will of God: but we have regard in this case solely to the work of the six days, the groundwork of the constitution of the world as then given.<sup>2</sup> We speak of that original constitution of nature which was so arranged as to bring to pass all things out of itself, without a miracle."<sup>3</sup> He compares miracles, considered as effects of a new power introduced by God into the system of nature, with the original creative act of God, which first called the universe into being, when his will alone held the place of nature in all that he did.<sup>4</sup> By thus distinguishing from one another the ideal, divine constitution of the world, embracing at once natural and supernatural, and the ordinary course of nature corresponding to the powers and laws originally planted by God in nature, Abelard confuted that presumption of worldly wisdom, which, referring all phenomena to one law, denied the possibility of miracles. "When philosophers," says he, "call an event that takes place by miracle an impossibility, or a thing contrary to the course of nature,—as, for instance, the birth from a virgin, the seeing of the blind,—they really have regard to the ordinary course of nature, or original natural causes;<sup>5</sup> not to the sublimity of the divine power, which is able to bring to pass all that it has

<sup>1</sup> Deus philosophorum regulas in factis suis frequenter cassat, cum videlicet aliqua nova contra naturam facit sive supra naturam, hoc est supra hoc, quod prima institutio rerum potest. L. c. lib. ii., f. 1074.

<sup>2</sup> Nullatenus nos modo, cum in aliquibus rerum effectis vim naturae vel causas naturales requirimus, id nos facere secundum illam priorem Dei operationem in constitutione mundi, ubi sola Dei voluntas naturae efficaciam habuit in illis tunc creandis vel disponendis, sed tantum ab illa operatione sex diebus completa. Expositio in Hexaem. L. c. Martene et Durand, t. v. f. 1378.

<sup>3</sup> Deinceps vim naturae pensare solemus, tunc videlicet rebus ipsis jam ita praeparatis, ut ad quaelibet sine miraculis facienda illa eorum constituti vel praeparatio sufficeret.

<sup>4</sup> Unde illa, quae per miracula fiunt, magis contra vel supra naturam, quam secundum naturam fieri fatemur, cum ad illud scilicet faciendum nequaquam illo rerum praeparatio prior sufficere possit, nisi quandam vim novam rebus ipsis Deus conferret, sicut et in illis sex diebus faciebat, ubi sola ejus voluntas vim naturae obtinebat in singulis efficiendis.

<sup>5</sup> Ad usitatum naturae cursum vel ad primordiales rerum causas respiciunt. Introd. ad theol. lib. iii., p. 1133.

determined, and to change the very nature of things, so as to bring to pass uncommon events as it pleases.<sup>1</sup> The mistake of these philosophers is that they confine their views to the nature of things created, and to every day experience, and pay no regard, or scarcely any, to the divine omnipotence, which controls all nature, and whose will nature, properly so called, obeys.<sup>2</sup> When they call a thing, therefore, possible or impossible, conformable or contrary to nature, they do not measure that thing by the standard of the divine omnipotence."

It is plain from what has been said, that Abelard himself, in rejecting, as we have before related, the miraculous stories of his own times, did so by no means on the ground of philosophical principles, hostile to the reception of miracles. Nor was it his opinion that miracles must necessarily be confined to a certain limited period in the history of the church. On the contrary, he declared against those who said that miracles had ceased, because the church no longer needed them for the conversion of unbelievers. "As faith without works is dead," said he, "miracles no doubt are needed, together with other means for the quickening of faith. And even if we stop with the conversion of unbelievers, as the end of miracles, there is no lack, even now, of heretics, pagans, and Jews." He ascribed the cessation of miracles to the fault of his contemporaries. It was because so very few were to be found who were worthy of such a grace; because every man desired it, not for the saving good of others, but for the gratification of his own vanity. To such extent had that faith disappeared, of which our Saviour spake, when he said, "If ye had faith like a grain of mustard-seed."

Though Abelard was attacked on many sides from the supernaturalistic position held by the majority in his times, still, the endeavour to find a point of conciliation between the supernatural and the natural, was common to all the great teachers of the thirteenth century. They supposed, with Abelard, things relatively rather than absolutely supernatural. To distinguish in what sense a thing might be conceived to take place, *contra* or *supra naturam*, and in what sense not,—all depended, in their opinion, upon

1 Quam videlicet constat ex propria natura quicquid decrevit posse et præter solitum ipsas rerum naturas quocunque voluerit modo permutare.

2 Omnes eorum regulas infra eam vel extra eam penitus consistere.

rightly distinguishing the different conceptions of nature itself. Thus Alexander of Hales distinguishes nature, as self-active, and as passive, receptive (the *potentia activa* and *susceptiva*, the *possibilitas activa* and *passiva*), nature as the material lying at the ground of all things, and nature considered as the form of manifestations. "As it concerns the former, nature is so constituted by the Creator of nature—who embraces all things in his plan of creation, whose works all cohere together—as to produce whatsoever can in any way be formed out of her or be wrought in her, whether it be in the ordinary course of nature, or by miracles. She is so constituted, that the divine will, which all things must subserve, is accomplished in her; and in this respect, there is nothing contrary to the course of nature, nothing supernatural.<sup>1</sup> But miracles are effects which suppose the creative inworking of God, to the accomplishing of which the self-activity of nature is inadequate; and so in this respect, as transcending nature, they are to be denominated supernatural, and things at variance with the form in which the self-activity of nature exhibits itself. The miracle, as a new form struck upon nature, is *contra naturam* (*praeter* or *supra naturam* as *potentia activa*, *potentia ad actum*; *contra naturam*, *quae dicitur forma*).” Accordingly, in reference to the *potentia obedientialis* or *passiva* in nature, he could say of the miracle, that the constitution for it, is one hidden in nature, which is brought into activity by the divine omnipotence; and he could therefore define the miracle as an act of God, calling forth that which is hidden in nature (hidden, that is, in relation to the *potentia obedientiae*) into activity, as a display of his almighty wisdom.<sup>2</sup>

So too, Albertus Magnus takes the supernatural in connection with the divine constitution of the world. He sees in everything that takes place, be it natural or supernatural, the realization of the constitution of the world in the divine reason, or the eternal Word, which alike embraces all things,—the divine ideas (*rationes, quae sunt in verbo*), in which everything that comes into being shines beforehand; in which it was predetermined what

<sup>1</sup> Nothing *contra naturam*, quae est materia primitus ordinata possibilis ad formas, quae sunt cursu naturae et quae sunt cursu mirabili, potentia obedientiae ad omnia opera divina sive mediante natura sive immediate creata est a principio.

<sup>2</sup> Miraculum est opus occultas naturas in actum reducens ad ostensionem sapientiae virtuosae. Summae, p. ii. Qu. 42.

should exist, and when, and after what manner it should exist. These are the *primordiales rerum causae simpliciter*. They exist from eternity; and in these, God prefigures what should come into being in the works of nature, of grace, and in the kingdom of glory, according to the ordinary course of nature, or according to the order of grace or by miracles; and nothing can ever take place except what has here been determined. He distinguishes, like Alexander of Hales, that which is grounded in the receptive, original constitution of nature, is prepared in it as to possibility, and that which may come to exist through the agency of the powers dwelling in her, her own self-activity. "If we look at the former,<sup>1</sup> there is given in every creature the capacity for everything, which can be formed out of it by the will of God. And in this regard, one may say, that in nature, in the original creation, was implanted this possibility, as well in relation to that which takes place according to the ordinary course of nature as in relation to miracles.<sup>2</sup> In this sense, an event may not be contradictory to nature, even though it should contradict the ordinary course of nature.<sup>3</sup> But if we look at the second, that which takes place according to the ordinary course of nature is grounded in the original forces of nature (*materiae naturali insertum*), is implanted in the matter of the world; but what takes place in a miraculous manner, lies hid within God's almighty power and constitution of the world; for God has from eternity arranged, in his eternal Word, whatsoever takes place, and when and how it should take place, and with this divine arrangement nothing can interfere.<sup>4</sup> If we understand nature in the highest sense, the *primordiales causas primae conditionis* and *rationes causales*, then nothing seems to take place contrary to the original nature of things (*contra naturam primo insitam rebus*); for, in the sense described, God has also im-

<sup>1</sup> The *prima radix possibilitatis obedientiae*.

<sup>2</sup> Possibilitas tam ad consuetum naturae, quam ad miracula in principio conditionis inserta est *materiae naturali*.

<sup>3</sup> Not quod Deus faciat contra legem naturae aequissimam et naturalissimam, quam ipse naturae indidit, sed contra consuetum et nobis notum cursum naturae.

<sup>4</sup> Hence the distinction: *Potentiae sive rationes sive virtutes* ad miracula non sunt inditae *materiae mundi* nisi per potentiam obedientiae, per rationes autem causales in Deo sunt.

planted the *causales rationes et primordiales* of miracles in things. With these God cannot be at variance, any more than he can deny himself, deny his own wisdom.<sup>1</sup> It is necessary, therefore, to distinguish from one another that which nature is capable of producing by the forces implanted in her, and by her own agency, and that in which she shows herself simply passive in relation to a higher inworking. Thus, God has furnished nature with everything requisite for the realization of the ends correspondent to her, but so constituted her, at the same time, that she should receive into herself still higher powers, and produce still higher effects."<sup>2</sup> He distinguishes that which takes place *contra, præter, and supra naturam*. The first, is when God, according to his secret plan of the world, the ideas in which all things were prefigured (*ex causis rationalibus in se ipso absconditis*) produces, from some object or other, a thing which had not already been prefigured and prepared in it by the seminal principle implanted within it (*quod seminaliter non inest in ipso*). *Præter naturam*, is that which does not in itself, indeed, transcend the power of nature, that which has been produced from these powers, bearing within themselves, by constitution and in the germ, everything that is at sometime or other to appear in manifestation;<sup>3</sup> but which, however, could not of itself proceed from the developing process of nature from within herself, but presupposes a certain inworking from without upon the forces hidden within her,<sup>4</sup> an impulse whereby the process of natural development is hastened, the separated forces in her are rapidly concentrated, so that something is accomplished at once, which nature could have produced only through a gradual and slow development.<sup>5</sup> *Supra naturam*, but not *contra naturam*, is that which could not come

1 Sicut non potest facere contra seipsum, ita non potest facere contra rationes illas et contra opus suum sapienter dispositum.

2 Quod creator nihil commodorum negavit naturæ in his, quæ sunt in natura secundum causales rationes sufficienter deducentes ad actum, quia in his passivum proportionatum est activo et e converso activum passivo. In his autem, quæ tantum obediuntialiter sunt in natura et quæ secundum causales rationes pertinent ad causam superiorem, negavit commoda, quia hæc ad naturam non pertinent, sed ad causam superiorem.

3 The causæ seminales.

4 Non modo natura ab intrinsecus generante, sed extrinsecus adhibitis motibus et fomentis.

5 Hoc quod secundum ordinem naturæ paulatim operantis produceretur, velocius et repente producit.



about indeed at all by natural powers, which therefore is purely supernatural, like the second; but which still, however, stands so related to nature, as to find first in her its completion; as, for example, the appearance of Christ.<sup>1</sup> "He affirms, again, a certain analogy between the natural and supernatural, in so far as, in fact, even that whereby corrupted nature is restored, must be the same with or something similar to that whereof the nature was originally constituted."<sup>2</sup> Thomas Aquinas unfolds this idea as follows:<sup>3</sup> "If we look at the order of the world as it proceeds from the primal cause, nothing can happen contrary to this order of the world, which has its ground in God; for if God brought to pass anything at variance with it, he would act against his foreknowledge, his will, or his goodness. But if we look at the order of the world, as it is grounded in the cosmical chain of causes and effects,<sup>4</sup> then God may bring to pass something *praeter ordinem rerum*, understood according to this latter sense; because he is not tied and limited to this series of causes and effects; but, on the contrary, the order of the world thereon reposing depends on him, as it proceeds from him, not by any necessity of nature, but by his own freewill. As the *ordo naturae* is implanted by God in things (*ordo rebus inditus*), so that which takes place *praeter hunc ordinem*, is not contrary to nature." He now raises the objection, "God would be a mutable being, if he acted contrary to the order of things established by himself." To this he replies: That God, in implanting a certain order in things, still reserved to himself the right of sometimes, for cause, acting otherwise.<sup>5</sup> Considered in reference to the divine omnipotence, nothing, we must allow, can be called a miracle; for, compared with this, everything is little.

1 Quod in potestate naturae nullo modo potest esse, et tamen ad naturam se habet ut perfectio naturae.

2 Sunt ad simile in specie causae seminales et obedienciales, et hoc ideo, quod seminales sunt ad institutionem naturae, obedienciales autem et causales ad corruptae naturae restaurationem nec potest corrupta natura restaurari nisi per eadem aut similia, quibus instituta est, et ideo omne miraculum deducit ad aliquid simile naturae. See the Summa, p. ii. Tract. viii. Quaest. xxx. seqq.

3 Summa, lib. i. Quaest. cv. Artic. vi.

4 The causae secundae.

5 Quod Deus sic rebus certum ordinem indidit, ut tamen sibi ipsi reservaret, quod ipse aliquando aliter ex causa esset facturum. Unde, cum praeter hunc ordinem agit, non mutatur.

The miracle is so called only in reference to the capability of nature, which some event transcends.<sup>1</sup> Hence, different degrees of miraculous power may be supposed. In his inquiry respecting the idea of the miracle, in his commentary on the Sentences,<sup>2</sup> he starts, like Albertus Magnus, with making the distinction between the *rationes causales vel obedietales*, and the *rationes seminales* in nature. And he, too, places the supernatural, not in an infringement of the former, but of the latter. Accurately understood, however, the miracle, even in relation to the latter, is not an event running counter to them, but exalted above them—one that takes place independent of them:<sup>3</sup> an event exalted above them when God produces an effect, which nature must ever fall short of, as the form of a glorified body; or when he produces an effect, to which nature is competent, without the mediation of natural causes, as in the changing of water into wine. But he does nothing contrary to nature; for he cannot so order it that the operative causes in nature, while still remaining the same in kind, should produce essentially different effects, any more than that a thing should be the same and different at the same time. In the second book,<sup>4</sup> he distinguishes two several conceptions of the miraculous; the relatively such to a particular individual, when the natural causes which give rise to the phenomenon are concealed from him; and the miraculous in itself, the cause of which is one *simpliciter occulta*; so that if the powers of nature had been followed, it must have taken place otherwise.<sup>5</sup> Of this kind is whatever is brought to pass immediately by the divine power, which is the most hidden of causes. How miracles are comprised in the divine order of the world, and serve along with the effects that proceed for natural causes to reveal the divine providence, he explains again in his work *Contra*

1 Quod nihil potest dici miraculum ex comparatione potentiae divinae, quia quodcumque factum divinae potentiae comparatum est minimum. Sed dicitur aliquid miraculum per comparationem ad facultatem naturae, quam excedit. Summa, lib. I, Qu. cv. Art. viii.

2 Dist. 42, Qu. ii. Art. ii.

3 Proprie loquendo tunc etiam contra eas non facit, sed praeter eas vel supra eas.

4 Distinct. 18, Quaest. i., Artic. iii.

5 Ita etiam, quod in re est aliqua virtus secundum rei veritatem, per quam aliter debeat contingere.

6 Haec proprie miracula, quasi in seipsis et simpliciter mira.

*gentes*,<sup>1</sup> in perfect accordance with what he teaches in the *Summa*. "There are, indeed," he says in this latter work, "many abnormal effects in nature, which do not correspond with what usually takes place, while still the order of providence in nowise changes. If, then, it may be so brought about by creaturely power, that the course of nature, without any change of the divine providence may suffer such change as to allow of phenomena deviating from what commonly appear, then, *a fortiori*, the divine power may, without any infringement on providence, sometimes bring to pass an event otherwise than as it would take place in the natural order of things. This serves especially to make it manifest that all nature is subject to God's will; and that the order of nature does not spring from a natural necessity, but from his freewill. And it can be no matter of surprise that God should effect something in nature with a view to reveal himself to the souls of men, when we consider that rational beings are the end in which all corporeal being terminates. But the end of rational beings is the knowledge of God; it can be no matter of surprise, therefore, if a change should take place in corporeal nature for the purpose of communicating to rational beings the knowledge of God." Raymund Lull refers those who refuse to admit anything supernatural, to the creation of the world from nothing, as the greatest miracle.<sup>2</sup> "In nature," says he, "are many and great mysteries; and the human understanding is not competent to know and comprehend all the works of nature; for the power of nature to work according to her own course is far greater than the power of the human soul to understand the works of nature."<sup>3</sup> If, then, man finds himself so limited in the knowledge of nature, how should he be able to understand everything supernatural; especially if he is disposed to conceive what lies beyond the limits of nature as something embraced

1 Lib. iii., c. xcix.

2 Valde mirum est, Domine, de hominibus discredentibus, nam quoniam negant et discredunt esse rem contra cursum naturae, quare non respiciunt nec perpendunt esse mundi, quod est magis impossibile secundum cursum naturae, quam sit impossibile, te esse Deum et hominem simul? nam mundus de privatione devenit in esse per tuam voluntatem et non per cursum naturae, t. ix., f. 39.

3 Adeo magna et multa sunt secreta naturae, quod non possint omnia percipi ab homine, quoniam multo major est possibilitas, quam natura habet ad operandum secundum suum cursum.

within them?"<sup>1</sup> "Neither the natural nor the supernatural," he affirms, "can be rightly understood except in their connection with each other. The understanding of the one conditions the understanding of the other."<sup>2</sup> The tendency to the supernatural he considers as the characteristic of the Christian age and position, proceeding from faith in the incarnation of God, as compared with antiquity, which leaned towards nature.<sup>3</sup>

In connection with the doctrine of miracles, we should here notice the peculiar views of Roger Bacon, who endeavours to explain certain marvels wrought by the power of man's *word*, from the potentiated natural power of mind, to which the uttered word serves as a natural organ. "Every action of man is stronger and mightier when he bends his mind thereto with firmness of purpose, and confidently expects to compass what he aims at. And because the word is formed out of the thought and longing of man's heart, and man has his joy in it, and it is the most connatural instrument of the rational soul, therefore has it the power of producing the greatest effects of all that is done by man; especially when it proceeds from a sure intention, a great desire, and a strong confidence. A proof of this is, that all the miracles wrought by holy men were, from the first, performed by the power of words."<sup>4</sup>

• When we enter into the investigations of these theologians respecting the relation of the divine foreknowledge and prede-

<sup>1</sup> Et maxime si hoc inquiritur intra terminos naturae, intra quos non sunt inclusae res, quae non sunt secundum cursum naturae? t. ix., f. 401.

<sup>2</sup> Opera naturae percipiuntur per opera, quae sunt supra naturam, et opera, quae sunt supra naturam, percipiuntur per opera naturae, quoniam alia sunt aliis occasio, ut percipiantur. L. c. f. 402.

<sup>3</sup> Benedictus sis, Domine, quia a tempora tuae incarnationis plus tractant et cogitant homines in tuis operibus, quam in operibus naturae, et per hoc significatur, quod ipsi sint plus in tempore gratiae post tuam incarnationem, quam ante ipsam, quando philosophi plus tractabant de operibus naturae, quam de tuis. De contemplat. in Deum, vol. ii., lib. iii., Dist. 28. c. cli. f. 349.

<sup>4</sup> Omnis operatio hominis est fortior et impetuosior, quando ad eam est multum sollicitus et voluntarius et fixo proposito firmat intentionem et sperat firmiter, se posse consequi, quod intendit. Quia verbum ab interioribus membris naturalibus generatur et formatur ex cogitatione et sollicitudine, et delectatur homo in eo, et propriissimum est instrumentum animae rationalis, ideo, maximam efficaciam habet inter omnia, quae fiunt ab homine, praecipue cum ex intentione certa, desiderio magno et vehementi confidentia profertur, Cujus signum est, quod omnia fere miracula, quae facta sunt per sanctos a principio fiebant per virtutem verborum. Opus majus, f. 252.

tionation to creaturely freedom, we ought not to forget that the Augustinian system swayed the religious consciousness and thinking of this age; as, in fact, this ground-tendency ever constituted the most important difference, though the one of which there was the least consciousness on both sides, between the occidental and the oriental churches. Starting from the principles of Augustin, these writers were carried, by the stern consistency of monistic speculation, to the point of sacrificing the freedom of the creature, notwithstanding all their pains to rescue it. And here, too, while we see how a well-authorized practical interest was forced to give way, in speculative minds, to the stiff and rigid consistency of thought, we cannot fail to mark also the extent of mischief which arose from a confounding of the philosophical and religious points of view in theology. But the power of the ethical element within them, and their good sense, appear in this, that they attempted, at least in appearance, to maintain freedom, to remove the causality of evil from God, and to avoid everything calculated to shock the moral sensibility of mankind. Their skilful dialectics, and their custom of resorting to the arts which Augustin had already employed in such a variety of ways, stood them greatly in stead.

Anselm composed a tract on the question, How divine foreknowledge and predestination could be reconciled with freewill? He makes out an answer by resorting to distinctions, which might serve the purpose, no doubt, of guarding against many misconceptions, many extravagant and ugly positions; but which were not suited to remove the real difficulty. His doctrine is this: "Divine foreknowledge by no means excludes free self-determination. The necessary and the free, God knows beforehand, each in its own way. All depends on distinguishing the standing-point of eternity and that of development in time. As there is no contradiction in this, that, viewed from the standing-point of eternity, everything is an immediate present, which in the unfolding of time is a past and a future, so it easily admits also of being reconciled, that what from the standing-point of eternity exhibits itself as immutable and necessary, should, in relation to temporal development, appear to be free and mutable, as dependent on the creaturely free self-determination.<sup>1</sup> Paul,

<sup>1</sup> Hoc propositum, secundum quod vocati sunt sancti, in aeternitate, in qua non est

in Rom. viii. 28, employs the perfect tense,—even when speaking of an action yet future,—for the purpose of denoting, by this circumstance, that he had not in view here a temporal action, but was constrained to use this expression—by the poverty of language—to denote the immediate presence of eternity;<sup>1</sup> since that which is once past is immutable, like the eternal.”<sup>2</sup> Now it is quite evident that, by this distinction of the two points of view, nothing is gained as yet for the defence of freedom. This distinction would much rather serve directly to make contingency a mere appearance, necessary in order to temporal development,—so that what is fixed in the divine plan of the world as something necessary, should be actually realized, only in the form of a seeming contingency. Anselm himself cannot avoid observing the consequences which might be derived from his positions: “Must not the causes of good and evil fall back then, on God, if he knows nothing as a mere fact (therefore, not even evil), but his foreknowledge precedes everything?” To this he answers, that “Everything positive comes from God; but evil is a negative thing. Even in evil actions, all that is positive comes from him, but not evil, which consists just in the want of that *rectitudo voluntatis*, which comes from God.”<sup>3</sup> By these distinctions, however, when taken in connection with the positions above noticed, the acknowledgment of a freedom simply self-determining,—not determined from without, as the cause of evil,—is by no means placed clearly beyond doubt. There is something more real in the acute distinctions, by means of which Hugo a St Victore endeavours to make the freedom in sin consistent with the acknowledgment of the divine omnipotence and providence to which all things are subjected. He says: “We must distinguish from each other the act of willing in itself, and the direction of the will to a particular object. Willing in itself, is purely the act of the man; but as soon as it directs itself to particular objects, it finds itself limited by the divine

praeteritum vel futurum, sed tantum praesens, immutabile est, sed in ipsis hominibus ex libertate arbitrii aliquando est mutabile.

<sup>1</sup> Propter indigentiam verbi, significantis aeternam praesentiam, usum esse verbis praeteritae significationis.

<sup>2</sup> Ad similitudinem aeterni praesentis omnino immutabilia.

<sup>3</sup> Deus facit omnes actiones et omnes motus, quia ipse facit res, a quibus et ex quibus et per quas et in quibus fiunt.

order of the world, so that it can take only the direction where the way has been left open for it by the latter. Accordingly, evil, in its manifestation, is limited by the divine order of the world; and must, like all things else, be subservient to the same."<sup>1</sup>

Proceeding on the foundation laid in the twelfth century, the theologians of the thirteenth carried their investigations still further. Alexander of Hales, also, starts with the position that what takes place in time cannot stand to the divine knowledge in the relation of a mere datum or fact, because the temporal cannot be conceived as the cause of the eternal, nor the knowledge of God as depending on something else. In order to reconcile the divine foreknowledge with the contingency of free actions, he distinguishes that which is necessary in itself, and that which is necessary in certain connections, under certain suppositions,—unconditional and conditioned necessity.<sup>2</sup> Alexander of Hales is the first of these schoolmen in whom we meet with the notion of a "fate;" and this notion from henceforth becomes a dominant one in the scholastic theology. When we look at the divine order of the world, as it exists in the divine reason, we have the idea of Providence. When we look at its manifestations, in the series of causes and effects in the phenomenal world, we are presented with the idea of "fate."<sup>3</sup> Foreknowledge, in so far as it is the *exemplaris ratio* in the *arte divina*, is called *providentia*; in so far as it exhibits itself in *re vel effectu operis*, it is called *fatum*. Freewill and fate stand in no contradiction with each other; for if by fate must be understood the co-operation of all causes directed by some higher law, then freewill is one of those causes.<sup>4</sup> By it, the operations of free, as well as of natural causes, are all

1 In velle et vitium est, in quantum velle ex voluntate mala, et ordo est, in quantum ad hoc vel ad hoc ex disponente est. Potest ergo voluntas mala in se corrumpi et resolvi per proprium vitium, quod ei aliunde non datur, sed non potest per velle extra se precipitari, nisi qua ei via aperitur. God is not auctor ruendi, sed incedendi ordinator. De sacramentis fidei, lib. i. p. v. c. xxix.

2 Necessitas consequentiae et necessitas consequentiae, necessitas antecedens et necessitas consequens, necessitas absoluta et ordinis.

3 The distinction: Dispositio, quae est in disponente et dispositio, quae est in re-disposita. Dispositio in disponente est exemplar, dispositio in disposito est ordo deductus ab ipso exemplarij et est forma exemplata in ipsa re.

4 Ipsum liberum nostrum arbitrium est una causarum, secundum cujus ordinationem ad suos effectus currit series fati.

directed together, after a manner corresponding to their respective and proper essences. The actions of freewill are prevented, only by the connection in which fate places them, from overstepping the limits prescribed by Divine Providence.<sup>1</sup> God knows evil, but it is from the good ; as the same art embraces the knowledge of that which agrees with its laws, and of that which violates them. So, if light could see itself and its effects, it would know that one thing is receptive of light, and another not ; which is the same as darkness ;—by means of itself, then, it would know itself and darkness.” Alexander of Hales reckons evil as something that contributes to display the harmony of the universe : “ By comparison with the evil, the good shines forth more conspicuously in its own essence.”<sup>2</sup> After the same manner, Albertus Magnus : “ The primal ground and original type of all that is done, or can be done, whether by men or by angels, is the divine Providence.”<sup>3</sup> Fate is that orderly arrangement, originating in Providence, which is stamped on the whole series of created things, and reveals itself in the connection of natural and voluntary causes.<sup>4</sup> Providence and fate are distinguished from each other, as type and antitype,—formative cause and the form actually incorporated in things.<sup>5</sup> The *causae contingentes*, as well as freewill,—the true and proximate causes of whatever takes place,—though subordinated to fate, do not lose their causality ; and thus the same effects under different relations spring from providence, from fate, and from freewill. By fate, evil itself is ordered for good,—that is to say, so ordered that good must come out of it ;<sup>6</sup> and evil, in relation to the whole, is evil no longer ; it is taken up by the order of fate, which does not compel to evil, but subdues it to order when it has once broken in.”<sup>7</sup> Albert endeavours to point out, from the analogy of nature, the connection between God’s creative, preserving, and

<sup>1</sup> Connexione fatali cōcentratur ab evagatione limitum divinae providentiæ sive determinatorum a divina providentia.

<sup>2</sup> Propter ipsam bonorum pulchritudinem permisit Deus mala fieri.

<sup>3</sup> Prima ratio et forma exemplaris.

<sup>4</sup> The dispositio exemplata a providentia, influxa et impressa rebus creatis secundum totum ordinem causarum naturalium et voluntariarum rebus inhaerens et quasi impressa et incorporata rebus creatis.

<sup>5</sup> Ut exemplar et exemplatum, causa influens et forma influxa.

<sup>6</sup> Ipsum malum ordinem boni habet, ut scilicet bonum eliciatur ab ipso.

<sup>7</sup> Quæ non cogit ad malum, sed etiam ipsum factum ordinat.



governing agency, the connection between creation and providence,—how one is already implied in the other : “As in nature, it is the same power which brings forth a formative principle in the seed, produces from the seed, and guides that which is produced, in its development,<sup>1</sup> by extending its influence to each member in particular, and at the same time communicates to the entire product a quality and character, by virtue of which each individual member is conducted onward to its proper destination, and each finds its right place in the order of the whole;” so in the Creator of the whole world, the power is the same by which he created the world, and by which he continues to work in each individual thing, and in the organism of the whole;—appointing to each its proper place and guiding the development of all the individuals in the connected system, so that every individual maintains its proper position in the order of the whole.<sup>2</sup>

The rigid consistency of thought, stiffly adhering to an abstract unity of principle, and impelling to the denial of freedom, in spite of every seeming affirmation of it, is most strongly apparent in Thomas Aquinas, as every one must see who—without allowing himself to be embarrassed by isolated expressions—brings together all that he says in different places into systematic connection; we shall endeavour to gather together the main points of his doctrine under such a total intuition. “God knows all things in an eternal manner, as immediately present.<sup>3</sup> Hence, things contingent are also known by God after an infallible manner, as present; and still, the future is a thing contingent, when taken in connection *with the causes* from which it immediately proceeds.<sup>4</sup> Although the highest cause is one that operates with necessity, yet the effect may be something contingent, on account of the proximate cause, which is one that operates contingently.” He affirms that God’s will works many, not all things, after a necessary manner. Now, as a reason for this proposition, it was

<sup>1</sup> Una et eadem virtus, quae formativa est in semine et factiva sive generativa nati, quae efficitur regitiva ejus, quod natum est.

<sup>2</sup> Eo quod influit unicuique membro particulariter et toti simul talem dispositionem, per quam unumquodque ad suum ordinem deducitur et singula in toto suis nectuntur ordinibus naturalibus.

<sup>3</sup> Ut quaequae ordinibus suis connectantur. Only occasionaliter ex ordinatione providentiae mala fieri est bonum et utile et universitati et facienti et patienti.

<sup>4</sup> Ejus intuitus fertur ab aeterno supra omnia, prout sunt in sua praesentialitate.

<sup>5</sup> Et tamen sunt futura contingentia, suis causis proximis comparata.

said by many that God works partly by necessary, and partly by contingent, causes. But against this view he had two objections: "First, the effect of the first cause may, in relation to the second cause, be a contingent one; if the effect of the first cause is hindered by the deficiency of the second, as the effect of the sun may be hindered by a defect in the plant. But no defect in a second cause can prevent the will of God from bringing about its effect. Next, if we stopped short with the distinction of contingent and necessary causes, it would follow from this, that something might proceed from the former in opposition to the will of God; which could not be reconciled with the fact of the divine omnipotence. Hence, we must prefer to seek the reason of it in the will of God. As this is the most mighty cause, so it follows not only that everything takes place that he wills, but also in the manner that he wills. But now it is God's will that some things should take place in a necessary, and others in a contingent manner, in order to the preservation of the order of the universe.<sup>1</sup> There are, then, but two different forms ordered to this end by God himself, in which forms his will is realized."<sup>2</sup> Connected with this is also the fact that Thomas Aquinas, in opposition to those who supposed a *grace* conditioned on the right use of free-will, and a *predestination* conditioned on the divine foreknowledge with regard to this right use, maintained that all this is already comprised among the effects of predestination and presupposed by it.<sup>3</sup> It was impossible to distinguish what proceeded from freewill and what from predestination; as it was impossible also to distinguish what proceeded from the first, and what from the second cause; for the divine providence brings forth its effects *through* the agency of second causes. "All leads back to the goodness of God. To this must be traced the reason why some are predestinated, others reprobated. The goodness of God, which in itself is simple, must manifest itself in the phenomenal world after manifold ways; because created things cannot arrive at the simplicity of the divine essence. Hence, different grades, from the

<sup>1</sup> Ut sit ordo in rebus ad complementum universi.

<sup>2</sup> Non igitur propterea effectus voliti a Deo eveniunt contingenter, quia causae proximae sunt contingentes, sed propterea, quia Deus voluit eos contingenter, evenire, contingentes causas ad eos praeeparavit.

<sup>3</sup> Manifestum est, quod id quod est gratiae est praedestinationis effectus, et hoc non potest poni ut ratio praedestinationis, cum hoc sub praedestinatione concludatur.

highest to the lowest point of the scale, were required in order to the completion of the universe. And to preserve these manifold stages and gradations in things, God permits many things evil to happen in order that much good may not be prevented.<sup>1</sup> The human race, as a whole, may be contemplated as the universe. It was God's will to manifest his goodness to a part of mankind,—those whom he had foreordained to this end, in the form of mercy sparing them; to others, the reprobate, in the form of punitive justice. And this is the reason why he elected some and rejected others; and the ground of this difference lies only in the divine will. It is the same with nature, where, indeed, a reason can be given why God caused a part of the one original matter to take the form of fire or of water; namely, in order that a diversity might exist among natural things; but why one part of the matter exists under this form and another part under that depends upon the simple will of God,—just as it depends solely on the will of the artisan why one stone is in this and another in that part of the wall,—though his art may render a reason why in general some stones are in this others in that particular wall.<sup>2</sup> This idea of a necessary manifoldness in the universe is generally a predominant one with him. Such a manifoldness of creatures is necessary in order that one may supply what another lacks in manifesting the divine goodness.<sup>3</sup> Thus also evil appears to him as necessary, in order to the completion of the universe in its manifoldness. “The universe is better and more complete, if there are some beings in it capable of falling from goodness, and who sometimes do actually fall, in that God does

1 *Necesse est, quod divina bonitas, quae in se est una et simplex, multiformiter repraesentetur in rebus, propter hoc quod res creatae ad simplicitatem divinam attingere non possunt. Et inde est, quod ad completionem universi requiruntur diversi gradus rerum, quarum quaedam altum et quaedam infimum locum teneant in universo. Et ut uniformitas graduum conservetur in rebus, Deus permittit aliqua mala fieri, ne multa bona impediuntur.*

2 *Summa, p. i., Quaest. xxiii., Artic. v.*

3 *Produxit res in esse, propter suam bonitatem communicandam creaturis et per eas repraesentandam, et quia per unam creaturam sufficienter repraesentari non potest, produxit multas creaturas et diversas, ut quod deest uni ad repraesentandam divinam bonitatem, suppleatur ex alia; nam bonitas, quae in Deo est simpliciter et uniformiter, in creaturis est multipliciter et divisim, unde perfectius participat divinam bonitatem et repraesentat eam totum universum, quam alia quaecunque creatura. Quaest. xlvii., Artic. i.*

not prevent it; because it is the part of providence not to destroy nature, but to preserve it.<sup>1</sup> It is in the very nature of things, however, that a being who is capable of falling should sometimes actually fall.<sup>2</sup> And since, as Augustin remarks, God is so mighty that he can make even evil subservient to good, so much good would be wanting if there were no evil.<sup>3</sup> In evil, as action, everything positive<sup>4</sup> leads back to the first cause; but not so in reference to evil in itself, which consists in apostasy; just as in the case of a person who limps, all that belongs to the motion proceeds from the moving power, but that which is defective, not from this, but from the defect in the bone."<sup>5</sup>

Knowledge in God, Thomas compares with the knowledge of the artist in relation to his work. "Knowledge, as knowledge, does not imply indeed causality; but in so far as it is a knowledge belonging to the artist who forms, it stands in the relation of causality to that which is produced by his art. The knowledge of the artist, first shows the end; next, the will proposes this end; then the will prescribes the action, by which the idea conceived by knowledge is to be realized. But whatever occurs in the execution, through any deviation from the idea of the artist, or from the end proposed, cannot be referred to the knowledge of the artist, as the cause; therefore evil, which is a deviation from the divine idea and the divine end, cannot be referred to God's knowledge as the cause.<sup>6</sup> According to this it might seem as if, in the opinion of Thomas, evil must be considered as a thing having no place in the divine idea; that it is to be ascribed, as being a deviation from that idea, to creaturely freedom; hence arises a contrariety between that idea and its manifestation. Then the redemption only would be referred back to the divine causality, as an act of God for the removal of this contrariety that had sprung out of the abuse of creaturely freedom. But if

<sup>1</sup> According to Dionysius Areopagita.

<sup>2</sup> *Ipsa autem natura rerum hoc habet, ut quae deficere possunt, quandoque deficient.*

<sup>3</sup> *Quaest. xlviii., Artic. ii.*

<sup>4</sup> *Id quod habet entitatis et perfectionis.*

<sup>5</sup> *Et similiter quicquid est entitatis et actionis in actione mala, reducitur in Deum sicut in causam, sed quod est ibi defectus, non causatur a Deo, sed ex causa secunda deficiente.*

<sup>6</sup> *Unde patet, quod malum, quod est deviatio a forma et a fine, non causatur a scientia Dei. In Sentent., lib. i., Distinct. 38, Quaest. i., Artic. i.*

we take what Thomas here says in connection with those thoughts of his which we have just before explained, it will be evident that he cannot ascribe so much importance to creaturely freedom, to the working of second causes, as to suppose that the accomplishment of the divine ideas should actually be hindered thereby for a single moment. According to his mode of contemplation, everything must, in the last resort, certainly be referred back to the divine causality; and everything appears only as a necessary instrumentality for its going into effect in the development of time. Evil itself appears as something necessary in the connected series of these instrumentalities; only, as evil, it has no place with the rest, in the divine idea. If we consider, again, that according to the doctrine of Thomas, God's knowledge is one with his being, his essence, it follows from this, that the form in which everything is evolved in the phenomenal world, necessarily corresponds to the way in which everything is ordained from eternity in that knowledge which is identical with the divine being. No room is left remaining here for creaturely freedom as true causality. Consistently carried out, such a proposition would have produced a pantheistic monism, which, however, as the antagonist of Almaric of Bena, he would avoid. We have no need, on this point, to confine ourselves barely to the commentary of Thomas, on the book *De Causis*, with regard to which it might be said that, treating the matter altogether objectively, he has unfolded the views of another, rather than his own. Even where he exhibits none but his own ideas, we shall still meet with such thoughts. "God," says he, "knows all things in himself;<sup>1</sup> his being is his knowing; under the form of knowledge, all effects are prefigured in the highest cause. God works in all; yet in each according to its own peculiar constitution;<sup>2</sup> hence he works in natural things so as to communicate to them the power for activity, and to determine their nature to this or that action;

<sup>1</sup> Quod ipsum esse causae agentis primae est ejus intelligere. Unde quicunque effectus praeexistunt in Deo, sicut in causa prima, necesse est, quod sint in ipso ejus intelligere et quod omnia in eo sint secundum modum intelligibilem. Nam omne, quod est in altero, est in eo secundum modum ejus in quo est. Summa, p. i. Quaest. xiv. Artic. v. God knows all things in se ipso, in quantum essentia sua continet similitudinem aliorum ab ipso. The scientia Dei non causa mali, sed boni, per quod cognoscitur malum. L. c. Artic. x.

<sup>2</sup> Ita tamen, quod in unoquoque secundum ejus conditionem.

but he works in the free will so as to impart to it the power to act ; and, under God's agency, the free will is active ;<sup>1</sup> but still, the determination and the end of the action stands in the power of the free will ; therefore, the control over its own actions remains to it, though not so as in the case of the first cause ;" and by the limitation here introduced, the whole may again be brought round to the proposition that all must, in the end, be referred back to the *causa prima*, which works through all the instrumentalities established by itself.<sup>2</sup>

How far Thomas is from really acknowledging the free will to be an independent causality, appears evident from the way in which he repels the objection that, by his doctrine, free will is annihilated. He says, God works in the free will as the nature of it requires that he should ; although, therefore, he changes the will of man to another direction, nevertheless, by his almighty power, he causes that man should freely will the change which he experiences ;<sup>3</sup> and thus all constraint is removed. For to suppose otherwise, that the man willed not the change which is a change in his will, would involve a contradiction.<sup>4</sup>

We recognize the profound and acute discernment of Raymund Lull, in his mode of treating these subjects ; but in his case also it is plainly apparent that, in seeking to vindicate freedom, he is driven, in spite of himself, by the monistic tendency of his speculation, into the denial of it. He too, like Thomas Aquinas, distinguishes two different points of view in which things may be contemplated ; *first*, as they subsist after an eternal mode in God, or in the idea which is one with God ; *second*, as they manifest themselves in temporal evolution. "The world and its parts existed from eternity in the divine reason, by the idea or the ideas ; for the divine reason suffers nothing of its essence, and of the essence of its attributes, to pass without itself,"<sup>5</sup> so the seal, which is impressed on wax, or the image reflected in a mirror, remains in itself the same. When God created the world, nothing that

<sup>1</sup> Ut virtutem agendi sibi ministret et ipso operante liberum arbitrium agat.

<sup>2</sup> Sentent. lib. i., Distinct. 25, Quæst. i., Artic. i.

<sup>3</sup> Etiam si voluntatem hominis in aliud mutet, nihilominus tamen hoc sua omnipotentia facit, ut illud, in quod mutatur, voluntarie velit.

<sup>4</sup> Sentent. lib. i., Distinct. 25, Quæst. i., Artic. iii.

<sup>5</sup> Nihil extra mittente.

belongs to the being of the idea was transferred, in this act of creating, without himself; else this idea would be subject to change, would not remain the eternal one, which is impossible, since this idea is God himself.<sup>1</sup> But God willed that, from nothing, should be created that which he had with himself, from eternity, by the idea;<sup>2</sup> and what he willed, his almighty power could perform. That which exists, after an eternal manner, in him, could not pass into the forms of quantity, time, motion.<sup>3</sup> We must, accordingly, distinguish between created being, as such, as it unfolds itself and appears in time, and as it exists, simply in and for itself, comprehended by the divine wisdom from eternity.<sup>4</sup> And that which divine wisdom conceives, after an immediate manner, is the idea.<sup>5</sup> God's creative and his preserving agency are to be distinguished from each other only as immediate and mediated agencies. As all things must, alike, be referred back to God's creative power, whether that power be exerted directly, as in the creation from nothing, or through creatures as its instruments; so, creation and preservation are the same.<sup>6</sup> The intermediate instrument of God's preserving agency is the implanted *vis conservativa* residing in things, to which all other agencies coming from without are only subservient." This distinction, between the immediate and the mediate agency of God, he employs for the purpose of explaining the doctrine of predestination.<sup>7</sup> "The predestinated is, in idea, God himself; since the idea and God are the same: this predestination is, therefore, infallible and immutable. But predestination, so far as it concerns a created man, is something else. And

<sup>1</sup> Idea esset alterata, et non aeterna, quod est impossibile, quum idea sit Deus.

<sup>2</sup> Sed divina voluntas voluit, quod de nihilo esset creatum hoc, quod ab aeterno habuit per ideam.

Respecting time and space, he explains himself in the *liber contemplationis in Deum* vol. iii., lib. iv., *Distinct.* 88, o. cclxvii. t. x., f. 141. As the union of matter and form constitutes body, so potency and act constitute time. Time is the intermediate between potential and actual being. Because in God all is actus, therefore in him there is no time.

<sup>4</sup> Ens creatum secundum hoc, quod est simpliciter per se simpliciter comprehensum ab aeterno per divinam sapientiam.

<sup>5</sup> See *Quaest. super lib. Sentent. i., Qu. xxvii., Opp. t. iv., f. 27.*

<sup>6</sup> Et quia creatio ita est per creare creaturam, quae conservat aliam creaturam, sicut est per creare illam creaturam conservatam, ergo sequitur quod creatio et conservatio sint idem. *Qu. xxxviii.*

<sup>7</sup> Vide *Quaest. super lib. Sentent. i., Qu. xxxiii.*

although the new-created man is not, in essence, different from the man of the idea, yet he differs from the same, in so far as a created man exists under the forms of quantity, space, and time ; and, in this regard, his salvation is not a necessary thing, for God works here by the way of means. He predestinated Peter through the merit of his good works, as he gives warmth by means of the sun and fire. So was it, also, with the perdition of Judas ; all depends, here, upon our having regard to middle causes, so as not to impinge on the divine order and rectitude.<sup>1</sup> The human mind may present a thing as questionable, conceive of it as possible, which cannot be so contemplated in the divine mind, where the question falls null of itself, since it belongs to a case that cannot once be supposed, in relation to thought in God. What man conceives as possible, viewed from the position of bare abstract thought, is a thing that can find no place in the chain of actual existence."<sup>2</sup> In his work, entitled *Contemplatio in Deum*,<sup>3</sup> he endeavours to show that neither predestination nor foreknowledge (*praescire*), on the part of God, carries with it any force of constraint, since this would stand in contradiction with the divine attributes of wisdom, justice, &c. "The palm-tree, by the course of nature, yields dates ; the apple-tree, apples ; so one man, Peter, by freewill, by his own unconstrained faculty and merit, brings forth good works ; and another, William, by a nature equally unconstrained, evil works. As the cause in one case is the course of nature, in the difference of the two trees, so the cause in the other is a course of nature of another sort, in the difference of the two men."<sup>4</sup> But while nature, in the case of the two trees, necessitates (*constringit*) them to yield different fruits, each after its kind, there is, in the case of man, no such natural

1 Thus we must distinguish una praedestinatio, quae est Deus, et alia praedestinatio, quae est effectus, et in novo subjecto sustentata et creata, et hoc sine mutatione divini intellectus, qui non mutatur per suum effectum, cum suus effectus non sit novus in quantum idea, sed est novus quoad seipsum, cum ex nihil de novo sit productus.

2 Quod Deus non possit damnare Petrum, nec salvare Judam, et tale non posse non est ens reale, sed intentionale in humano intellectu, cum Deus sicut non diligit salvare Judam et damnare Petrum, sic non intelligit damnare Petrum et salvare Judam. Quæst. xxxvi.

3 Vol. iii. lib. iv. Distinct. 38. c. cclxv. t. x. f. 135.

4 In anima rationali formantur diversa opera secundum formam, qua recipiuntur qualitates predictae, quae formantur accidentaliter ad bona opera vel ad mala ratione accidentium separabilium, quae eveniunt iis.



necessity constraining him to bring forth good or evil works, because here nature takes up freewill. He continually comes back upon the point, that predestination does not exclude second causes,—that it is a mistaken respect for divine wisdom, which leads men to ascribe too much force to predestination.<sup>1</sup> If the misunderstood-doctrine of predestination makes a man negligent in the practice of virtue and avoiding of sin, it were better that he had not meddled with it.<sup>2</sup> As one who, unknowingly, sows seeds which have lost their vitality, considers the seed productive, when it is not so, and supposes that possible, therefore, which in fact is not so;<sup>3</sup> so two individuals, of whom one is predestined to salvation, the other to perdition, not knowing to what they are predestined, both believe they have everlasting happiness and perdition within their control; and, because they consider this to be possible, there is in them an unconstrained freewill. As the sower supposes that wheat will grow from the spoiled seed, while however only that becomes actual which is determined beforehand in the seed; so Peter and William arrive at the end to which they are predestined by means of what they actually do, notwithstanding they suppose that to be possible to them, *potentialiter*, which is impossible to them both *potentialiter* and *actualiter*.” He is aware of the mischievous practical consequences which might be drawn from this comparison, but justifies himself by saying that interest for the truth compelled him to write thus.<sup>4</sup> “All the works done by Peter and William, and the ways in which they do the same, are predestined to them, and yet they are done by them with freewill, apart from all constraint whatsoever. In respect to men as well as nature, everything takes place according to the divine predetermination; but, in the case of a natural being, as there is no freewill, so neither can there be merit or demerit. If the predestined Peter does a bad action,

1 Ratio, quare homo dat praedestinationi majorem vim et potestatem, quam ipsa habeat, est, quia facit honorem et reverentiam tuae perfectae sapientiae imaginando, omnia, quae fuerunt et sunt et erunt, oportere esse, sicut ab ipsa sciuntur.

2 Quo plus cognitio praedestinationis intrat in memoriam et intellectum hominis, eo plus debilitatur voluntas, eo quod praedestinatio sit nimis grave onus memoriae et intellectui et per debilitatem voluntatis fit homo piger in faciendo bonum et evitando malum.

3 Fol. 142.

4 Quia istud exemplum dat periculosam significationem, id hoc, quod possit plus nocere, quam prodesse, propterea non libenter ponitur et scribitur a nobis.

and the foreknown (*praescitus*) William a good one; the good is, to the human mind, a mark of predestination to everlasting happiness; the evil, a mark of predestination to perdition: while yet no change can, on this account, be supposed to have taken place in the divine councils.<sup>1</sup> Hence then the mistake, when the human mind undertakes to judge by these fallacious symptoms in temporal manifestation concerning predestination,<sup>2</sup> without having regard to the nature of the evolution in time, to the antithesis between potency and act, to the confinement of human reason, which cannot comprehend predestination after the perfect manner in which it is settled in the divine wisdom.<sup>3</sup> Such an absolute knowledge of predestination would, however, destroy what essentially constitutes the great principle of human ethics; and there would be nothing more to be said about freedom of choice in the will, or about guilt and desert.<sup>4</sup> But purely human action can only be found under the condition of this uncertainty in reference to predestination, whether one is predestined to everlasting happiness or misery. Now as the husbandman, who knows that the shocks of corn are potentially in the seed-kernal, must scatter the seed according to the measure of his knowledge, notwithstanding his ignorance about the result, just so must we act, in bringing forth good actions as a means of attaining to everlasting happiness; nor can uncertainty with regard to the divine decrees serve as an excuse for any man.<sup>5</sup> Suppose Peter predestined to represent to himself and will something that is good, and William something that is evil; we must say that, before they represented to themselves or willed this, both had freewill to represent to themselves and to will good and evil. Their determination hav-

<sup>1</sup> Quia in te, Domine, non est defectus, ideo salvatio et damnatio non est alterabilis in eis, sed solum in operibus ipsorum.

<sup>2</sup> Quando figura actualis repraesentat falsitatem, sicut speculum falso repraesentat falsam figuram.

<sup>3</sup> Unde haec falsa figura praedestinationis formatur ratione temporis, quod est inter actum et potentiam et ratione defectus humani intellectus, qui non potest ita perfecte percipere praedestinationem, sicut tua sapientia eam scit. f. 143.

<sup>4</sup> Si noster intellectus ita bene id, quod homini est praedestinatum, sciret sicut tua sapientia, non fieret homini falsa figura in praedestinatione, neque haberet homo liberam voluntatem, nec obligationem nec meritum in suis operibus.

<sup>5</sup> Et non excusat eum ignorantia, quam habet de salvatione vel damnatione, quam scit tua gloriosa essentia divina; c. cclxviii. f. 145.

ing been freely made, goes as freely into execution.<sup>1</sup> They act freely, because each of them is conscious that he can do the opposite if he chooses. Although it is decreed that this individual shall kill that other, yet he acts with entire freedom. So if he cannot accomplish his purpose, if the arrow misses the mark, this also is predetermined. Yet with such an intention, the guilt also is present, although the sensible instrument may fail of executing that intention." But it is easy to see with how little propriety the example could be employed for the purpose which Lull had in view, of proving that predestination generally had not the force of constraint, and did not destroy freedom of the will; for predestination certainly refers not barely to the outward action, but also to the inward determination of the will.<sup>2</sup> For the rest, he expresses the conviction that, in this doctrine, the discursive development falls very far short of the intuition.<sup>3</sup> And so he concludes this whole exposition, with the apology, *quod noster intellectus ipsam melius intelligat, quam nostra sensualitas potuerit scribere.*

From theology we now pass to anthropology, and shall consider the farther prosecution of the doctrine concerning man's primeval state, concerning the fall, and its consequences.

In anthropology, we must trace forward the threads of development from the earlier periods into the present age, in order to have a right understanding of its history. Important in their consequences, in this regard, were the opposite views that arose during the Pelagian controversies, which related, not barely to the present condition of human nature, to the acknowledgment or denial of its need of redemption, but also to the relation of human nature and of the created spirit, in itself considered, to God; the acknowledgment or denial of a moral autonomy of human nature. Augustin had applied the distinction of natural

<sup>1</sup> Voluntas venit libere ad potentiam motivam, quin sit constricta per prædestinationem.

<sup>2</sup> Quia motiva intellectualis est prior sensuali, est meritum in intellectuali, et licet sensualis non occidat Joannem, intellectualis jam est in peccato et culpa, eo quod, quia prædestinatio eam constringat, se obligat ad peccatum per liberam voluntatem, quia, si prædestinatio eam obligaret et constringeret, tunc eam obligaret ad nolendum occidere Joannem eo quod sit prædestinatum Gulielmo, non occidere eum, f. 147.

<sup>3</sup> Quia lata res in verbo et in scriptura non potest ita bene manifestari, sicut est in intellectu. f. 136.

and supernatural, not merely to the condition of fallen man, but also to man in his primeval state; he had proceeded on the supposition that man, from the beginning, needed communion with God, in order to attain to the realization of that likeness to God for which his nature was destined, and hence he made use of the term *gratia*, in this sense, even in relation to the primeval state of man. Accordingly, this view passed over into the theology of the present period.

Anselm controverts<sup>1</sup> the Pelagian definition of freewill, as being the faculty of choice between good and evil. "The capability of choosing the last could not possibly, as he thought, be one of the necessary characters of this conception; for such a definition must, though differences might occur in its application, admit of being applied, in a certain degree, to all objects to which the thing denoted by this conception is to be attributed. But this character would not apply to those, to whom we must ascribe freedom in the highest sense, namely, God, and the spirits of the blessed. And the further a being is advanced in his moral development, the farther removed must he be from the possibility of choosing evil. A character which diminishes freedom when added, and increases it when absent, cannot then possibly form a necessary character or mark of this conception."<sup>2</sup> Accordingly, Anselm reduces the *formal* conception of freedom to a *material*, the *negative* to a positive *element*. Sin, in his opinion, supposes an original freedom, as the faculty of self-determination in a being who is good. But here enters in still another peculiar character connected with the point mentioned above, the application of the conception *gratia* to the primeval state of man. In order to repel, from the beginning, an autonomy of human nature, he defines freewill as a faculty to preserve the bent of the will, *once received*, to that which is good *for its own sake*, laying an emphasis on the phrase, *once received*.<sup>3</sup> The phrase, "for its own sake," is also an important clause considered from this point of view, that the love of goodness on its own account, gives to morality its true significance. The same definition may, accord-

<sup>1</sup> In his dialogue, *De libero arbitrio*.

<sup>2</sup> *Potestas peccandi, quae addita voluntati, minuit ejus libertatem, et si dematur, auget, nec libertas est nec pars libertatis.* In his dialogue, *De libero arbitrio*, c. i.

<sup>3</sup> *Ad servandam acceptam rectitudinem voluntatis propter seipsam.*

ing to this doctrine, be applied also to the angels. These too were created in a state of grace, and it depended solely on their freewill to persevere in communion with God and preserve what had been bestowed on them by grace. But the sin of Satan consisted in an arrogated autonomy, in the fact that he did not acquiesce in God's appointed order, but was for obtaining likeness to God *by his own will*.<sup>1</sup> By withstanding this temptation, the good angels attained to that state which Satan aspired to reach in a disorderly manner, and perseverance in the goodness originally communicated to them was their reward. This perseverance was made conditional on their "merit."<sup>2</sup> Robert Pullein acknowledges also the necessity of a *gratia coöperans* in the first man, without which he had no power to do anything good.<sup>3</sup> We find more exactly determined in his writings, what Anselm had left still vague and indefinite. "The angels," he teaches, "stood originally on the foundation of faith; it was made to depend upon the fact of their perseverance in good, whether they should attain to the intuition of God, and thereby to immutability in goodness."<sup>4</sup> We shall not fail to see, when we come to look more closely into the systematic connection of the doctrines of these theologians, that a twofold application of the term *gratia* lay at the bottom, in the case of them all. The rational creature is equally dependent on God with all the other creatures; his universal coöperation is indispensable, without which even the powers originally implanted in the creatures could not continue to exist and operate. But from this is to be distinguished a new communication of God to his rational creatures, supervening to the original powers, and made conditional on the employment of them,—a communication which they need in order to reach their ultimate destination. This distinction, already lying at bottom in the

<sup>1</sup> Plus aliquid, quam acceperat, inordinate volendo voluit inordinate similis esse Deo. See the tract. De casu Diaboli.

<sup>2</sup> Anselm himself avows his ignorance with regard to this higher stage that Satan would have attained to by his *selfwill*; and which *they* obtain by *humble submission* to the divine will. The words of the master: Quid illud fuerit non video, sed quicquid fuerit, sufficit scire, quia fuit aliquid, ad quod crescere potuerunt, quod non acceperunt, quando creati sunt, ut ad illud suo merito proficerent, c. vi.

<sup>3</sup> Primus homo hac vi floruit, pronus velle bona et quae voluerit nullo obnimente relinquens infecta, talis ex creationis natura, ita tamen, ut nihil queat absque coöperante gratia, p. ii. c. iv.

<sup>4</sup> Lib. ii. c. v.

previous dogmatic systems, would therefore, when once clearly brought out, be generally recognized. It was so brought out by Hugo a St Victore. He distinguishes grace, for instance, in the wider sense, as denoting the universal divine influence (*concur-sus*) on which all creaturely action constantly depends,—without which the powers originally bestowed on rational creatures cannot operate,—and grace, in the more restricted sense, as something supervening to those original powers of nature through a new divine communication, whereby they are exalted. This distinction having been once clearly expressed, the question next arose, For what, in man's primitive state, did grace, in the wider sense, suffice; and for what did he need grace, in the more restricted sense? Hugo answered:<sup>1</sup> “The former sufficed to keep man from falling, with his freewill, from the position where he was placed by the original constitution of his nature. But to actual righteousness, the actual accomplishment of good works and progress therein, he could not attain without some new supervening grace.<sup>2</sup> Before sin, man was able by his freewill, with the assistance of that common grace, to avoid evil; but he needed *gratia coöperans*, in order to perform anything positively good. But after the fall, he needed not only *gratia coöperans*, but also *gratia operans*.” Peter Lombard attributes to the first man a freewill wholly uncorrupt, and all the natural powers of the soul in their full purity and vigour.<sup>3</sup> This freewill wills that which is good, but after a feeble manner, until the help of divine grace supervenes, by which first the *efficaciter velle* is imparted to it. Peter of Poitiers<sup>4</sup> makes the image of God refer to those spiritual powers bestowed on man at creation, by the right use of which he might have attained to the realization of likeness to God. But in order to this it was necessary, in his opinion, that the *bona gratuita* should supervene to the *bonis naturalibus*.<sup>5</sup> Man was created for likeness to God, inasmuch as his

<sup>1</sup> Summa Sentent. tract. iii., c. vii.

<sup>2</sup> Sine apposita gratia.

<sup>3</sup> Lib. ii., Distinct. xxiv.: Libertas arbitrii ab omni labe et corruptela immunis atque voluntatis reititudo et omnium naturalium potentiarum animæ sinceritas atque vivacitas.

<sup>4</sup> P. ii. c. ix., Sentent.

<sup>5</sup> Also, the mystical theologian, abbot Rupert of Deutz (Tuitiensis), bears testimony to this distinction, which was still further prosecuted by the speculative theologians, as

spiritual nature was so constituted as to render him capable of receiving those higher goods, and of forming himself to the virtues proceeding therefrom.<sup>1</sup> He distinguishes in the primeval state two conditions, one before and the other after the bestowment of grace.

This distinction of natural and supernatural, applied to man's original state, was attended, indeed, with the advantage that the supernaturalistic element in the system of faith, and opposition to Pelagianism, were thus made to rest on deeper grounds; but it might also be attended with a disadvantage in furnishing encouragement and the occasion for a separation of the divine and human, altogether at variance with the essence of Christianity; as if the truly human could subsist wholly separate from all union with God, and the divine, the supernatural first supervened from without, as something that did not belong to the actualization of the essence of human nature; under which supposition, redemption could not be apprehended in its right relation to human nature, as the restoration of that nature. This mistake had an important influence also on the systems of morals; for it led men to apprehend the divine, not as the ennobling of the human, and the actualization of all that which was originally implanted in man's nature, but as the superhuman. A false direction in ethics, which, as we have already been led to remark, had been transmitted from earlier centuries, was thereby kept up, and this false tendency might in turn contribute to promote the view in question. If we consider the mighty influence of Aristotle, in whose ethics this separating of the purely human and the divine—which is characteristic of the ancient morals generally—strongly predominates, it will be quite apparent to us that this influence, also, would operate powerfully in the same way. We have preferred to notice this connection beforehand, and in this place, that we may be able to refer back to it in the particular expositions which are to follow.

one grounded in the universal consciousness of the church, since he remarks: *Cum creasset Deus ad imaginem suam hominem, coepit illum informare ad similitudinem suam. Non enim creando, sed informando perducit Deus hominem ad similitudinem suam. De victoria verbi Dei lib. ii c. vii.*

<sup>1</sup> *Ad habilitatem suscipiendi bona gratuita, quia factus est aptus suscipere virtutes, non tamen statim habuit.*

<sup>2</sup> *Duo status, unus, in quo non habuit gratiam, qua posset proficere, et alius, qui habuit gratiam, qua potuit proficere.*

The abbot Peter de la Celle, afterwards bishop of Chartres, felt it to be his duty, already, to enter a firm and decided protest against the view of which we have been speaking.<sup>1</sup> He expressed his surprise that he must be compelled to hear, what he never could have dreamed of himself, that likeness to God was an accidental gift, when it must assuredly be known to be a quality truly essential. It appears to him that the true essence of human nature cannot be conceived, at all, separate from the divine life.<sup>2</sup> Should it be said, this likeness is something contingent because it may be lost, it would follow for the same reason, that life itself is something contingent to us.<sup>3</sup>

This separating of the purely human and the divine lies at bottom of the view of man's primeval state, in Alexander of Hales.<sup>4</sup> In man's original state, he looks upon the purely human (the *pura naturalia*), as the first; the divine, he considers as something superinduced at a later period, for the ennobling of the purely human. In other words, that man was created at first in a pure state of nature left to itself (*in puris naturalibus*), he declares to be the view most conformable to reason. He distinguishes two stages of development: "It served to glorify the divine majesty, that nature should appear first, in its development out of itself; and that the higher formation (*informatio*) by grace, should then be communicated to it, in order that man might be led to the sense of what grace is, as a gift of God; might be taught to distinguish such effects as proceed from this, the supernatural, from the barely natural. There is a manifestation of divine wisdom in the way in which man is conducted along, through various stages of development towards perfection. The goodness of God shines forth in this, that in communicating himself to man he imparts to him not only single operations of grace, but also the capacity, in a certain sense, of independent co-operation;—the divine life considered as something independent, and animating the individuality of character. The theologians of the thirteenth century, in their conception of

<sup>1</sup> Lib. iii., ep. iv.

<sup>2</sup> Quid igitur? Itane summa illa beatitudo et gloria saeculorum accidentaliter erit, ut possit adesse et abesse praeter subjecti corruptionem?

<sup>3</sup> Vera quoque virtus, vera bonitas, vera iustitia, imo ipsa veritas est Deus. Sine his igitur si fuerit anima, moritur, et dici esse accidentalia dona?

<sup>4</sup> P. i., Quaest. xvi.



grace, make the important distinction between isolated effects of the divine, the supernatural, isolated notions of the higher life, particular higher gifts, and the divine life as a principle ennobling the whole individuality of character; that from which a new character proceeds,—the individual wholly interpenetrated with a divine life,—the distinction between a *gratia gratis data*, and a *gratum faciens*,—such grace as first renders the man well-pleasing to God. This perfect communication of God was to be made conditional on the right use of nature. It is a universal law that, in nature, a certain preparation and receptivity for the communication of grace is required.<sup>1</sup> Hence, grace was not created in man, but kept in store until, by the use of reason, he had become in a certain sense fitted for the reception of the same. Merit in the strict sense of the word, as that on the ground of which something may be claimed as a due, a *meritum de condigno*, could certainly find no place here; as must be evident, indeed, from the incommensurate relation between things divine and natural; but doubtless, there might be a *meritum de congruo* (*congruit, id quod congruit*), a *θεῖον πρέπον*, in perfect accordance with the laws of the moral order of the world, a merit constituting the condition under which God has found it befitting to bestow his grace. So here the principle already appears, that the bestowment of grace is always conditioned on the use made of it by freewill. Pure nature stood as yet in no opposition to the divine; the latter was simply *wanting* to the perfection of nature; nature was *informis negative* not *privative*. The divine found still a clear place for its action; it had as yet no opposition to overcome. Nothing was needed as yet but a *gratia informans*; no *gratia reformans*. Now as it respects the exact relation subsisting between the state of *pura naturalia* and that of *gratia*, Alexander of Hales by no means limits this first state of man to his ethical position. The purely human is to him by no means the merely moral part of man's nature: for he assumes the relation to God as one implanted originally in human nature. This relation, grounded in the very essence of the creature, as such, must reveal itself in man as simply conscious of himself. Accord-

<sup>1</sup> Deus secundum legem communem requirit aliquam præparationem et dispositionem ex parte naturæ ad hoc, ut infundat alicui gratiam.

<sup>2</sup> Deus liberalis salvo ordine sapientiæ et justitiæ.

ingly, love to God, as the creature's highest good was necessarily present in the state of pure nature. But he distinguishes from this purely *human* virtue a *superhuman* one. In the purely human, according to him, something selfish still seems to inhere, which could only be removed by a higher principle. From the above-mentioned love to God as the creature's highest good, belonging to the pure state of nature, Alexander distinguishes a still higher position of love, standing in contradiction with the natural inclinations, which impels a man to do, for God's sake, that to which the natural inclinations are adverse; or to shun that which is the object of natural love; as that love to God which leads men to love their enemies and to despise all earthly goods. This is the supernatural disposition of "charity." Here again that *ethical* direction is the principle lying at bottom, which proposes not the appropriation of the earthly in subservience to the divine, but the utter renunciation of the earthly, as the highest problem; a view which stands closely connected with the above-mentioned false separation of the divine and human.

According to the teachings of this theology, all communication of God to man is conditioned on a certain preparation on man's part, a certain "merit." But now it is inseparably connected with the above view of the relation of the human to the divine, that eternal happiness must be regarded as something far transcending the *pura naturalia*, as well as everything barely creaturely, so that no proportionality can exist between them. In the condition of *pura naturalia*, therefore, "no merit," by which man could have made himself worthy of that happiness, was possible. It required a supernatural mediation, in order that man might be fitted for that supernatural eternal life.<sup>1</sup> To the supernatural divine, nothing corresponds but the supernatural divine. A proportionality can exist only between a supernatural divine life bestowed on man already in the present life, and eternal blessedness.<sup>2</sup>

Bonaventura defines the place assigned to man as the image of God in the creation in accordance with his doctrine already ex-

<sup>1</sup> *Ipsius gratuita bonitatis influentia, per quam creatori ipsi creatura grata existat, gratia gratum faciens.*

<sup>2</sup> *Impossibile, quod homo merendo ad illud summum bonum ascendat, nisi per aliquod adiutorium, quod sit ultra naturam.*

plained concerning the end of creation.<sup>1</sup> God created all things for his own glory;—as the greatest light, for his own self-manifestation; as supreme goodness, for his own self-communication. But there can be no perfect revelation without some one to understand it,—no perfect communication of goodness, without some one capable of enjoying it. Since this capacity of understanding and enjoyment belongs only to the rational creatures, the irrational creation stands in no immediate, but only in an indirect relation to God; and that, through the medium of the rational creature.<sup>2</sup> But rational creatures, being created to praise and to know God, and to appropriate other things for the use of a will in submission to God, are therefore created to stand in an immediate relation to God (*nata est ordinari in Deum immediate*). By virtue of this immediate relation to God, they are capable of communion with God, and God can hold communion with them (*ideo capax ejus est vel e converso*). Therefore they are destined to become like him; and they carry within them, from the beginning, the light of God's countenance.<sup>3</sup> Because the rational creature is in a certain sense all things, and is so created as to embrace within himself the images of all things, as to receive all things into himself intellectually, therefore may it be said, that as the universe represents God in a sensuous, so the rational creature represents him in an intellectual totality.<sup>4</sup> Bonaventura also adopts the above-mentioned distinction between the image of God, and likeness to God. The former, he refers more particularly to intellectual qualities;<sup>5</sup> the latter, to the heart or feelings, the bent of the will, from which proceeds love to God, the means above all others whereby man becomes like him.<sup>6</sup> The "intellect" should therefore be governed by the "affections." He recognizes, it is true, in the original pure nature, an aptitude

<sup>1</sup> Lib. ii. Distinct. xvi. Quæst. i.

<sup>2</sup> Non habent ipsæ creaturæ irrationales immediate ad Deum ordinari, sed mediante creatura rationali.

<sup>3</sup> Propter hoc fert in se a sua origine lumen vultus divini.

<sup>4</sup> Quia rationalis creatura et intellectus quodam modo est omnia, et omnia nata sunt ibi scribi et imprimi omniumque similitudines depingi, ideo, sicut totum universum representat Deum in quadam totalitate sensibili, sic creatura rationalis eum representat in quadam totalitate spiritali, nata alia in se spiritaliter continere.

<sup>5</sup> Virtus cognitiva, potentia cognoscendi.

<sup>6</sup> Virtus affectiva, potentia diligendi, qualitas in qua principaliter assimilatur anima Deo, est in voluntate sive affectione.

for blessedness;<sup>1</sup> but he supposes, that in order to an *actual* receptivity for it, a supernatural medium is required, a supernatural faculty must be bestowed on man.<sup>2</sup> The distinction here explained of a twofold meaning of grace (*gratia*), the inworking of God by means of the natural chain of causes and effects, and the supernatural operation by which nature is provided with new and higher powers,<sup>3</sup> of a twofold love to God, that grounded in the natural relation of the creature to God as the highest good and end of the creation, and a supernatural love required as the means to the supernatural end,<sup>4</sup>—this distinction also passed over to the great teachers of the following age.

But what constitutes the peculiar feature of the doctrine of Thomas as compared with that of Alexander of Hales, and forms an important moment, on account of its bearing on the gradually-developed difference in the theology of the two monkish orders, is, that the former did not suppose in man's original state two conditions, or positions, separated from each other in the order of time, the first, that of the *pura naturalia*, left to itself, the second, that where "grace" was bestowed on man, in consideration of his faithful employment of the *pura naturalia*; but taught that both the pure moral nature and the supernatural state of grace, were, from the first, harmoniously united, and must co-operate together, in order to produce original righteousness (*originalis justitia*); so that no other distinction could be applied here than a distinction in thought.<sup>5</sup> This difference immediately brought along with it other differences in the doctrine concerning the relation of freewill to grace. In his *Summa*,<sup>6</sup>

<sup>1</sup> The aptitudo.

<sup>2</sup> The dispositio sufficiens et propinqua, sufficiens ordo ad actum, Distinct. 19, Artic. iii., Quæst. i.

<sup>3</sup> As Thomas Aquinas expresses himself, the divinum adjutorium, sine quo nec lapis in esse conservaretur nec deorsum tenderet, similiter etiam nec humana natura sine eo vel consistere potest vel rectum motum voluntatis habere, and the donum naturalibus superadditum.

<sup>4</sup> In the words of Thomas, the principle: Nulla creatura rationalis potest habere motum voluntatis ordinatum ad illam beatitudinem, nisi mota a supernaturali agente, i.e., auxilium gratiæ. The distinction between the naturaliter diligere Deum, in quantum est principium naturalis esse and the conversio ad Deum, in quantum est beatificans per suæ essentiae visionem.

<sup>5</sup> As he himself describes it in lib. ii. Sententiar. Distinct. 29, Quæst. i., Artic. ii. Secundum ordinem naturæ status in naturalibus puris ad statum ejus in gratia comparatur et non secundum ordinem temporis.

<sup>6</sup> P. i., Qu. xcv., Art. i.

Thomas thinks he can thus prove the doctrine of a concreated state of grace. Belonging to the state of original purity or uprightness, in which man was created,<sup>1</sup> was the harmony subsisting in man's entire nature; the body obeyed the soul; the lower powers of the soul, reason; and the latter was obedient to God. Now this harmonious relation between reason and God, is the ground of all other harmony in human nature. But this harmony between the higher and lower powers was disturbed by sin; it was not a condition, therefore, grounded in the essence of human nature as such. Arguing from the effect to the cause, then, we may conclude that this harmonious relation between reason and God proceeded from grace bestowed on man. In his commentary on the Sentences,<sup>2</sup> he also explains himself, it is true, after precisely the same manner, on the conflict between the two views above mentioned; but in such way as to avoid all decisive expression of an opinion; remarking that here, as in all matters depending on the will of God, nothing could be decided with perfect assurance.<sup>3</sup> He lays it down as the most probable opinion (*probabilius*), that man was created in the state of pure nature, and as his powers could not remain inactive, he, from the first moment of his creation, turned to God, and attained to grace.<sup>4</sup> Among the objections to this supposition, Thomas cites the passage, which also, in later times, has been cited to prove that a foundation or aptitude (*Anlage*) for sin existed in the first man, 1 Corinth. xv. 46;<sup>5</sup> in reply to which he remarks, that this passage refers to the constitution of the body, not to that of the soul.<sup>6</sup>

Augustin, having already explained to himself the influence and effects of the first sin according to his philosophical system of Realism, was followed in this by the representatives of the same philosophical sect, in the twelfth century. It is the doc-

The *rectitudo primi status*, according to the preacher, Eccles. vii.; 29.

<sup>2</sup> In lib. ii., Dist. 29, Qu. 1, Art. ii.

<sup>3</sup> Quae harum opinionum verior sit, multum efficaci ratione probari non potest, sicut nec aliquid eorum, quae ex voluntate Dei sola pendent.

<sup>4</sup> Cum homo creatus fuerit in naturalibus integris, quae otiosa esse non poterant, in primo instanti creationis ad Deum conversus, gratiam consecutus.

<sup>5</sup> Sed vivificatio spiritus est per gratiam, ergo hoc est proprium Christi, quod fuerit factus in gratia.

<sup>6</sup> Non ergo in verbis Apostoli habetur, quod Adam non fuit spiritualis secundum animam, sed quod non fuit spiritualis secundum corpus.

trine of Anselm of Canterbury, that as entire human nature was only expressed and contained, as yet, in this first exemplar, entire humanity, therefore, became corrupt in him, and the corruption passed from him to his posterity, just as his moral character, if he had remained obedient to the divine will, would have been transmitted to all.<sup>1</sup> He therefore distinguishes *peccatum naturale* from *peccatum personale*,—the former being so called,—not as though it were grounded in the essence of the nature, but because it goes with it on account of the corruption of that nature.<sup>2</sup> This connection of ideas is exhibited with remarkable distinctness in the work which Odo of Tournay, the person whose change from a philosopher to a theologian we have described on a former page, has written on this doctrine.<sup>3</sup>

In the Anthropology of Abelard, we find the same unsettled conflict between contending elements, which is so apparent everywhere in his theology, the conflict between the subjective bent of his mind, as it had developed itself out of the man, and the force of the church doctrine pressing upon him from without. What he has thrown out here and there on this doctrine in his works on theology,<sup>4</sup> in his *Scito te ipsum*, and in his commentary on the Epistle to the Romans, certainly cannot be joined together in a logically coherent system ; and he himself was compelled to resort to far-fetched expedients, which could not possibly satisfy any thinking mind, in order to avoid contradictions, which he could not conceal from himself. In his literal understanding of the facts related in Genesis, he agreed with Augustin and Pelagius, in the isolated, empirical, and abstract views of the understanding which he followed, we see the spirit of Pelagius, rather than that of Augustin. Considered from this point of view, it could not appear so very grave a fault to him, that the first man, inexperienced in moral conflicts, by giving way to the enticements of sensual appetite, which in itself considered was an innocent thing, should be betrayed into transgression of the divine law, on the first trial to which he was

<sup>1</sup> Humana natura, quae sic erat in Adam tota, ut nihil de illa extra illum esset.

<sup>2</sup> Quoniam propter ejus corruptionem cum illa assumitur.

<sup>3</sup> De peccato originali libri tres.

<sup>4</sup> In a copy of the lectures published by Prof. Rheinwald, this doctrine is not touched at all.

exposed. And the more inclined he was to think lightly of the intrinsic importance of this act, the more abhorrent was it to his reason to derive from it so great and general a consequence as that all men must thereby be liable to condemnation.<sup>1</sup> When he went on the principle, that a violation of the divine law, such at least as had been owing to an inculpable ignorance, could not be imputed as sin, when he considered the opposition between reason and sense as belonging necessarily to the organism of human nature, and conflict as something required, in order to the realization of virtue, it is easy to see, that from these premises followed conclusions which must lead to an entirely different view of man's original state, and of the first sin, from that held by Augustin and the church. Hence, too, he was inclined to interpret the passage in Romans, v. 12 (the *in quo*, which, following the authority of Augustin, theologians were accustomed to explain as relating to a transfer of Adam's guilt to all his posterity), as meaning simply, that the punishment of Adam's sin had passed upon all;<sup>2</sup> in defending which interpretation, he maintained that the term sin was used metonymically, the punishment of sin only being intended by it.<sup>3</sup> But on the other hand, he remained bound under the fetters of the church system. He could not cast off the theory, that all continued subject to those punishments that had passed upon them from Adam; and, indeed, in order to free himself from it, it would have been necessary for him to assume an entirely different position towards the church doctrine of his time, and to make a far more thorough and resolute application of the thoughts which he had expressed. But resolved as he was to hold fast on the above determinations of the church doctrine, while at the same time he refused to acknowledge the common doctrine concerning original guilt and original sin,<sup>4</sup> it could not be otherwise than that, from his own point of view (which would not allow him to acknowledge the

<sup>1</sup> *Unum delictum nec magnum aliorum comparatione in ep. ad Roman.* lib. ii., p. 588. Quantum sit crudele et summae bonitati Dei incongruum, qui salvare magis quam perdere animas desiderat, ut pro peccato parentis filium damnet, quem pro ejus minime justitia salvaret.

<sup>2</sup> *Poenam peccati incurrerunt in ep. ad Roman.* lib. ii., p. 586.

<sup>3</sup> *L. c.* p. 591.

<sup>4</sup> Accordingly he says, that the assertion, the children sinned in Adam, is to be understood in an improper sense; as when we say in the improper sense, that a tyrant still lives in his children. *L. c.* p. 597.

mysterious connection between the development of the entire race and original sin), God must appear only so much the more as a being who acted arbitrarily and unjustly. Thus he was driven from rationalism to the most abrupt supernaturalism, falling back as the last resort upon the unlimited will of the Creator, who may dispose of his creatures according to his own pleasure. He thinks that those who are punished without any guilt of their own, can no more complain, than the brutes, which God has appointed for the service of man, can enter into judgment with him. He goes to the extreme of making the distinction of right and wrong to depend on the divine will;<sup>1</sup> a representation which, it is evident, directly contradicts his doctrine of God's omnipotence, explained on a former page. But he turns about again, and attempts to justify, though in a very unsatisfactory manner, the goodness of God in proceeding after this manner. Children which suffer solely on account of the first sin, which remain excluded from baptism, would only be punished in the mildest way, in a degree suited to their condition, in not being suffered ever to attain to the intuition of God. And God would so order events, that those children only would be subjected to this lot, and die unbaptized, which, had they lived longer, would, by their offences and crimes, have brought upon themselves a severer punishment; so that, in comparison with this latter, the lot which they actually meet with is rather a mitigation of their doom. Abelard says that, by suspending so severe a punishment on account of so trifling a sin, over a posterity not guilty on their own account, God designed to express his abhorrence of all sin.<sup>2</sup> Thus could he unite a way of thinking which was in many respects altogether rationalistic, with a subjugation of reason under the yoke of a blind and implicit faith. For the rest, those peculiar opinions of his on the

1 *Hac ratione profiteor, quoquomodo Deus creaturam suam tractare velit, nullius injuriæ potest argui. Nec malum aliquomodo potest dici, quod juxta ejus voluntatem fiat. Non enim aliter bonum a malo discernere possumus, nisi quod ejus est consentaneum voluntati et in placito ejus consistit. Lib. ii., p. 595.*

2 *Voluit etiam ostendere in prima et fortasse modica primorum parentum transgressionem, quam ita in posteris, nihil adhuc merentibus, vindicat, quantum omnem abhorret iniquitatem et quantum poenam majoribus culpis et frequentioribus reservet, si hoc semel commissum in unius pomi reparabilis esu ita in posteris punire non differat. Lib. ii., p. 596.*



subject of original sin belonged, as we see from Bernard's tract against him, with the other censurable things which his adversaries found in his writings. He was obliged, therefore, to take notice of them in his Apology; but his explanations on these points are extremely indefinite, and by no means contain an unreserved confirmation of the church doctrine, since he gives no further account of the propagation of sin and punishment from Adam, than by saying that his sin was the origin and cause of all the other sins that followed;<sup>1</sup> and it is very apparent from the manner in which he expresses himself concerning sins of ignorance that he was extremely reluctant to allow that the divine imputation would be extended to any other sins of ignorance than those of culpable ignorance; for what other reason had he for adding the qualifying word "especially."<sup>2</sup>

After the separation of goodness of nature and of grace, *bona naturalia* and *gratuita*, in man's original state, had become more clearly expressed, the explication of the doctrine of original sin would be determined accordingly. Thus, Peter Lombard teaches, that man was not deprived of natural goodness, but this goodness was corrupted; for, had the former been the case, no possibility of reformation would have been left. But supernatural goodness was wholly removed from him.<sup>3</sup>

Thomas Aquinas declares, it is true, against Traducianism; at the same time, however, he says, all the descendants of Adam are to be considered as one man, by reason of the community of nature received from the father of the race. Original sin, he calls a disorderly condition (*inordinata dispositio*), which originated in the dissolution of that harmony, in which consisted the essence of original righteousness, the disorder of nature (*langor naturae*). Negatively, it is the deprivation of original righteousness; positively, the disorderly relation of the parts of the soul to each other (*inordinata dispositio partium animae*).

In the doctrine concerning Christ, the question was first started in the twelfth century, whether we should conceive of his sinlessness as a *posse non peccare*, or a *non posse peccare*, the former

<sup>1</sup> Ex Adam, in quo omnes peccaverunt, tam culpam quam poenam nos contraxisse auctore.

<sup>2</sup> See above, p. 273.

<sup>3</sup> Naturalia bona non detracta, sed corrupta, gratuita detracta.

having been the opinion of Theodore of Mopsuestia ; the latter, that of Augustin. Anselm<sup>1</sup> says, " Christ could have sinned, had he willed to ; but he could not will to sin. Such a will would have stood in contradiction with his holiness. There was a moral necessity in the nature of the God-man, which does not exclude freedom." In Abelard, we may observe also on this point the same twofold bent which has just before been alluded to. The rational element made him inclined to illustrate the union of God with humanity in Christ by an analogy long before used, *that* union with God which was vouchsafed to holy enlightened men and prophets. What was a transient and fragmentary thing in their case, they being sometimes filled, at others forsaken, by the Spirit of God,<sup>2</sup> this was an entire and constant union in the case of Christ alone, like the union betwixt soul and body. As all motions of the body proceed from the soul, so the soul of Christ could impart no other motions to his body than those inspired in it by the word."<sup>3</sup> Accordingly, it was an important point with him to give prominence to the purely human element in Christ, so as to keep clear of all Docetic illusions. He supposes that as freewill, and therefore the capability of sinning or not sinning, belong to the essence of human nature, so we may venture to ascribe to the man in Christ also, abstractly considered (*in abstracto*), only the *posse non peccare*. By a *non posse peccare* we should destroy the essence of virtue, which is grounded in freewill.<sup>4</sup> In so far, then, as we contemplate this man as subsisting, independently for himself, we must also suppose in him the possibility of sinning. But it is quite another thing, when we conceive of the man as one united with God ; and when we speak of Christ as of one in whom deity and humanity

<sup>1</sup> *Cur Deus homo*, lib. ii., c. x.

<sup>2</sup> Which perfectly accords with his doctrine of inspiration, as explained on a former page.

<sup>3</sup> *Sententie*, c. xxiv.

<sup>4</sup> Si simpliciter dicitur, hominem illum, qui unitus est, nullo modo peccare posse, potest quilibet ambigere. Si enim peccare non potest, quod meritum habet, cavendo peccatum, quod nullatenus incurrrere potest ? Christus libero videtur privatus arbitrio et necessitate potius quam voluntate peccatum cavere.—Quis etiam neget hominem illum, qui Deo unitus est, etiam sine illa unione, sicut ceteros homines in sua natura consistere posse ? Alioquin minoris valetudinis esse videretur, si per se ipse subsistere non posset, non [here, beyond doubt, there is some mistake in the reading, it should read nam] et magis accidentis, quam substantiæ naturam habere. Ep. ad Roman. lib. i., p. 538 et 539.

are united, we can but predicate of him absolutely the impossibility of sinning. In opposition to some exaggerated statements of eminent ancient fathers, he affirms that what is related concerning the conflicts of Christ in view of death, the feeling of sadness, his human weakness, is to be understood in the proper sense. Even the authority of Augustin could not shake his conviction on this point. "Let Augustin say what he will," he remarks, "we affirm that as Christ took on him true humanity, so too he had the real defects of human weakness."<sup>1</sup> Hugo a St Victore and Peter Lombard, on the other hand, seek to reconcile the opposite declarations of the church fathers by distinguishing from one another the different kinds of weakness, the purely human, the natural, and those connected with sin. Hugo a St Victore says: "There is a moderated fear, which dwells in every man and is without sin, like hunger and thirst;" he means that connected with the natural instinct of self-preservation, the shrinking of the natural feelings from death. "This we may suppose to have been in Christ." Peter Lombard distinguishes from a passion, by which the mind may be affected in an extraordinary manner and drawn away from the right course, another which cannot draw it away from the contemplation of God, and from that which is right. The former he calls *propassio*; the latter *passio*,—a distinction which might have proved of some importance in morals.

The arriving at a distinct conception of the way in which the salvation of mankind was wrought out by Christ, was a matter on which little attention had thus far been bestowed, in comparison with the investigations on other subjects belonging to the system of faith. Though the whole of that which from this period onward was, for the first time, more sharply defined in the explication of conceptions, admits of being already pointed out, in its germ and principle, in the foundation of Christian consciousness, as it is presented to us in the declarations of the earlier church-teachers, yet everything was as yet quite indistinct and fluxive, as it is wont to be where the language of feeling predominates. Things connected in the feelings were not as yet separated and held apart in conceptions. And as the second period

<sup>1</sup> Dicat Augustinus voluntatem suam, nos vero decimus, quia, sicut veram humanitatem assumsit, ita humane infirmitatis veros defectus habuerit. Sentent. c. xxv.

furnished in this respect nothing that was peculiarly new, we have scarcely touched upon this subject in tracing the development of doctrines in it. The twelfth century constitutes an epoch in the history of this doctrine ; and on this account we shall state in connection with what is here to be mentioned some things that belong to an earlier century. As the scholastic theology attached itself, generally, to Augustin, and we find in him the germinal ideas out of which it proceeded, so it may be shown that this holds good also with respect to the doctrine in question. On the subject of reconciliation, Augustin is on his guard against an anthropopathical misconception that might easily arise, if one were not careful to separate the idea lying at bottom, the objective reality from the symbolical form of expression. " We must not so conceive," says he,<sup>1</sup> " the reconciliation of man, as if God required blood in order to forgive men ; but we should understand it in the sense that God loved men before the creation of the world, and his love was the very cause of his sending his Son into the world : " Not as though God now first began to love those whom he before hated, as an enemy becomes reconciled with his enemy, but we are reconciled with him who already loved us, with him whose enemies *we* were by transgression."<sup>2</sup> Thus, Augustin perceives in this idea of reconciliation a subjective element, and yet at the same time its foundation in something possessing objective reality. He was also the first to consider the question respecting the necessity of a redemption in precisely this form. He started the query, whether any other way would have been possible ; and, considered from the point of view of the divine omnipotence, he believed the answer must be in the affirmative. But no other way, he supposed, would have been so well adapted for man's recovery from his wretched condition ; and this conclusion he derived, not from the intrinsic nature of the case, not from the laws of the moral government of the world, but from the subjective influences thereby to be produced, from the relation of this method to the affections, to the

<sup>1</sup> De trinitate, lib. xiii. c. xi. § 15.

<sup>2</sup> Quod ergo reconciliati sumus Deo per mortem filii ejus non sic audiatur, ut jam inciperet amare quos oderat, sicut reconciliatur inimicus inimico, ut deinde sint amici, sed jam nos diligenti reconciliati sumus, cum quo propter peccata inimicitiam habebamus. In Joann. Tract. cx. § 6.

religious need implanted in man's heart ; for nothing was so directly calculated to awaken its hopes, as the way in which God here manifested his love, which could be done by no act so effectually, as by his entering into union with human nature."<sup>1</sup>

Anselm of Canterbury was the first who sought to demonstrate the necessity of the work of redemption wrought precisely in this way by the incarnation of God and the sufferings of the God-man, on rational grounds.<sup>2</sup> It is evident from his remarks, that at that period not only theologians, but also simple laymen (a proof of the more general habit of reflection on religious subjects) employed their thoughts a good deal on the question, why God might not have forgiven men by a simple act of his will, why he might not have wrought out the redemption of mankind by some angel or man.<sup>3</sup> With the more profound apprehension of the nature of sin, is connected in Anselm's mind a more profound apprehension of the idea of punishment and of the divine justice ; a fact which becomes particularly manifest when we compare him with those who, as the older Alexandrians, resolve the idea of punitive justice into that of disciplinary love, and apprehend punishment simply as a means, and not according to its true conception and essence. "The honour due to God"—from this point he starts—"consists in this, that the creaturely will should submit itself to the divine will. Only *such* a creaturely will performs works acceptable to God, if it can act ; and if it cannot do so, it is acceptable to God in itself." Now, since in every sin, God is deprived of this honour, which is his due,<sup>4</sup> all sin is therefore sin against God ; it is impossible that the matter of it should here make any difference. Now punishment and sin appear to him to be necessarily correlative ideas. Punishment is required in order to exhibit sin in the moral government of the world in its objective significance, to mark a standing distinction in the sight of God between that which is sin and not sin.<sup>5</sup> The punishment of sin is necessary in

<sup>1</sup> De trinitate, lib. xiii. c. x. § 13.

<sup>2</sup> See the two books composed in the form of dialogues : *Cur Deus homo* and *De conceptu virginali et originali peccato*.

<sup>3</sup> In the book, *Cur Deus homo*, lib. i. c. i. : *De quaestione non solum literati, sed etiam illiterati multi quaerunt ac rationem ejus desiderant*.

<sup>4</sup> In every sin *Deo non reddere debitum*.

<sup>5</sup> *Si peccatum dimittitur impunitum, similiter erit apud Deum peccanti et non peccanti*.

order that its due place may be assigned to it in the moral government of God.<sup>1</sup> He endeavours to show that all conception of punishment, even in civil relations, goes back to the conception of punishment grounded in the essence of divine justice.<sup>2</sup> "Rather should the universe fall in ruins, than that the least thing should be done against the will of God. A substitute for the punishment required by the law can only be a satisfaction furnished therefor, when something is afforded for indemnification which outweighs the offence ;<sup>3</sup> as, for example, when one man has wounded another, it is not a sufficient reparation to see that the wound is healed, but there must also be added a satisfaction for the pain endured. Man being impure, was unfit to enter into the community of the holy and blessed. As blessedness is that full satisfaction which excludes every want, so it is due to none but him who possesses pure righteousness."<sup>4</sup> Anselm now seeks to show, that no man was in a condition to afford that satisfaction for sin, required by the moral government of the world. The way in which he does this, evidences the purity and severity of his standard of morals, and proves how far he was from holding to an ascetical work-holiness. For the purpose of laying open the insufficiency of all good works, he represents the other party as saying, "Do I not honour God, when in the fear and love of God, and contrition of heart, I renounce all earthly enjoyments, in abstinence and labour deny myself the comforts of this life, and am ready to communicate to all men, to forgive, to obey God in all things?" And he answers : "Even if a man refrained wholly from sin, he would in all this be only doing his duty. But at present he is not capable even of that; and his inability is still no excuse, since this very inability is his fault. Now, as sin proceeded from one man, so must satisfaction for all proceed also from one. Such a being must have something exalted above the whole creation which he can freely offer to God, if the satisfaction is to be complete. He must have been God, therefore; but the satisfaction should be furnished by a man, because otherwise it could not be given for

<sup>1</sup> Nihil aliud, quam recte ordinare peccatum.

<sup>2</sup> Deum vero non deest aliquid inordinatum in suo regno dimittere.

<sup>3</sup> Pro contumelia illata plus reddere, quam abstulit.

<sup>4</sup> Quemadmodum beatitudo sufficientia est, in qua est nulla indigentia, ita nulli convenit, nisi in quo pura est justitia.

men; he must therefore have been a God-man, whose life as such, as infinitely exalted above the whole creation, possessed an infinite value. He voluntarily surrendered himself to a death to which he was not subject on account of sin."

Noticeable, withal, is the way in which Anselm distinguishes and separates the ethical significance of the death of Christ from the doctrinal, and contemplates the death of Christ, in the first-mentioned point of view, as a result brought about by his whole activity in his vocation. "We should be careful to distinguish," says he, "what Christ did because obedience to God required it, and what he endured as a lot brought upon him by the obedience which he showed, while at the same time it was not necessary in order to the showing of that obedience. His perfect obedience to God he manifested in continuing steadfastly true to righteousness; and the natural consequence was that the Jews plotted against him the death to which he freely offered himself.<sup>1</sup> Thus it clearly appears how the satisfying power of Christ's death by no means involves in it that he sought death, or that God required the death of an innocent person." Christ's victory over Satan in the severest temptations, Anselm contrasts with the sin of our first parents, who so easily gave way to the impulses of appetite. God owed him a recompense for this; but being all-sufficient in himself, no such recompense could be given him, Christ could only transfer it to others. His life and his death contain infinitely more than is requisite to give satisfaction for all the sins in the world. It is clear from this exposition, that Anselm's doctrine of satisfaction certainly included in it the idea of a *satisfactio activa*, the idea of perfect obedience which was required in order to satisfaction for sin, and which Christ alone was able to afford. To the significance of Christ's offering in the sight of God, necessarily belonged also the moral worth of the same.<sup>2</sup> Far from Anselm, however, was the idea of a passive obedience, the idea of a satisfaction by suffering, of an expiation by assuming the punishment for mankind; for the satisfaction which Christ afforded by what he did was certainly, according to Anselm's doctrine, to be the restoration of God's honour, violated by sin, and

<sup>1</sup> Ipse sponte sustinuit mortem, non per obedientiam deserendi vitam, sed propter obedientiam servandi justitiam, in qua tam fortiter perseveravit, ut inde mortem incurreret.

<sup>2</sup> Vita ista tantum amabilis, quantum est bona.

by just this satisfaction afforded to God for mankind was the remission of punishment to be made possible. How far from him was that idea of a *satisfactio passiva*, appears evident also from the circumstance, that he does not seek at all to give prominence to the unhappiness of Christ in his passion, but rather to show that, amidst all his sufferings, he still was not unhappy. "In like manner," says he, "as happiness is not promoted by any agreeable thing which happens to one contrary to his wishes, so it is not to be called unhappiness when one, after wise deliberation, not forced by any necessity, but with freewill, undertakes something disagreeable." Another reason which he considers a valid one, why the God-man alone should be the redeemer of mankind, is, that man could not otherwise have attained to the possession of his dignity, but would have been made dependent on a creature.

Another characteristic in Anselm is, that he seems fully aware how the fact will not pass into any conception. "Many other considerations," says he, "conspire to show that this was very befitting, which may be more easily and clearly seen in the life of Christ and his works, than by mere arguments of reason."<sup>1</sup> "Who can fully explain how necessary and conformable to divine wisdom it was, that our Saviour should live as a teacher among men, at the same time proving his doctrines by his conduct and presenting himself as an example to mankind? But how could he have exhibited himself as a pattern to weak mortals, that under suffering and death they should not swerve from righteousness, if he had not endured all this himself?"

It may be gathered from Anselm's representations, that this particular doctrine occupied in a special manner the thoughts of theologians and laymen in this age; and that the older view, containing truth in a mythical form, as, for example, that, in purchasing the redemption of man, Satan should have his due, could not be satisfactory to the acute dialectics of these theologians; and it served to call forth the scepticism which was now aimed against the whole doctrine of satisfaction. We here come to see the difference between Anselm, whose investigations proceeded from a childlike faith, and a profound sense of Christian truth;

<sup>1</sup> *Sunt et alia multa, cur valde convenit, quae facilius et clarius in ejus vita et operibus, quam sola ratione monstrari possunt.*



and Abelard, who began with doubt, but was restrained by the power of the religious faith of his times ; while Anselm, deeply sensible to the power of the work of redemption, and doubting the solidity of the foundation on which it was placed by the older writers, sought to place it on a deeper one, corresponding to his own sense of Christian truth, Abelard carried his scepticism still farther. Together with the older theory, that a redemption so wrought out was necessary in itself, he rejected every other way of accounting for it, although he recognized, in the mission of Christ and his passion, a manifestation of the love of God with which no other could be compared. Of Anselm's deduction he seems to have known nothing. But had it been known to him, it is hardly to be supposed that a man so pre-eminently bent on trying everything by the standard of the abstract understanding, would have been pleased with it.

In his commentary on the Epistle to the Romans,<sup>1</sup> Abelard commences, in the first place, with refuting the above-mentioned older view of the necessity of such a redemption from the power of Satan. "Why might not God," says he, "by an act of his will alone, forgive men their sins, and deliver them from the power of Satan? What need was there, in order to this, of the sufferings of Christ? Christ had in fact already, before his passion, forgiven many their sins. It is not to be ascribed to any human merits, but only to the divine grace, that the Son of God assumed a human nature in union with himself, and exalted this to a perfectly sinless life ; and why might not God, by virtue of the same grace, forgive the rest of mankind their sins? Why should not he, who showed so great favour to man, as to take him into this union with himself, have shown him the inferior favour of granting him the forgiveness of sins?" We see that while to Anselm, sin, in its relation to the moral government of the world, appeared something so monstrous as absolutely to require a satisfaction, Abelard was not deeply impressed with any such feelings. In particular, he was inclined, as we have already observed, to think lightly of the first sin. "How could God," he says, "become reconciled with man through the death of his Son, when this death could not happen without involving the sin of so many who crucified him, which sin was certainly far greater

than the first sin, which consisted in the partaking of a forbidden apple? If God was so angry on account of that first sin, how could he be appeased in the case of so many far greater sins?<sup>1</sup> How unjust and cruel were it, that God should have required the blood of an innocent person as the price of pardoning so many guilty ones."<sup>2</sup> Abelard, in thus utterly denying the necessity of a satisfaction to be furnished by Christ, looked, on the other hand, upon the incarnation and passion of the Son of God, as simply a manifestation of divine love, and referred everything to the subjective impression wrought upon the minds of men by this love; for which he may have found a warrant in the notion of justification according to the common, subjective mode of apprehending it; and this theory accords, moreover, with the significance which the conception love has in Abelard's system of morality. The justification and reconciliation with God, brought about through Christ's blood, he explains, in the passage alluded to, as follows:—"The amazing grace shown us by God, who gave his own Son to become man and suffer for us, must enkindle in us such love in return, as to make us ready to endure all suffering for his sake." Justification consists, then, in his view, in the true righteousness begotten by this love becoming an active principle in the human soul. "Every person becomes more just, that is, more full of love to God, after the sufferings of Christ than before them, because every one is more inflamed with love by benefits bestowed than by those hoped for."<sup>3</sup> After the same subjective manner he apprehends also the idea of redemption. "Redemption is that greatest love enkindled in us by Christ's passion,—a love which not only delivers us from the bondage of sin, but also acquires for us the true

1 Quomodo nos reconciliari Deo per mortem filii sui dicit Apostolus, qui tanto amplius adversus hominem irasci debuit, quanto amplius homines in crucifigendo filium suum deliquerunt, quam in transgrediendo primum ejus in paradiso praeceptum, unius pomi gustu? Quo enim amplius multiplicata sunt per homines peccata, irasci Deum hominibus amplius justum fuerat. Quodsi tantum fuerat illud Adae peccatum, ut expiari non posset, nisi per mortem Christi, quam expiationem habebit ipsum homicidium, quod in Christum commissum est, tot et tanta scelera, in ipsum vel in suos commissa?

2 Quam crudele et iniquum videtur, ut sanguinem innocentis in pretium aliquod quis requisierit, aut alio modo ei placuerit, innocentem interfici, nedum Deus tam acceptam filii sui mortem habuerit, ut per ipsam universo reconciliatus sit mundo?

3 Justior, i.e., amplius Deum diligens quisque sit post passionem Christi quam ante, quia amplius in amorem accenditur completis beneficiis quam speratis.

freedom of God's children, where love instead of fear becomes the ruling affection."<sup>1</sup> To enkindle the flame of a love prepared to make any sacrifice, Abelard often declares to be the highest purpose of the work of Christ. It is a favourite thought of his, that the fire which Christ came to enkindle on earth, was the love shed abroad by the Holy Ghost.<sup>2</sup> Because the entire life of Christ, with his miracles, was directed, till his glorification, to the great end of enlightening and instructing, and of exciting to love by instruction and manifestation of the love of God, for this reason it was particularly the Wisdom of God that must assume human nature."<sup>3</sup> Accordingly, it ever continued to be the firm persuasion of Abelard, that the incarnation and passion of the Son of God, was to serve the purpose of enkindling love in the human heart by the display of the greatest love of God. On this point he expressed himself in the most emphatic terms, in his lectures.<sup>4</sup> He here explains the term "ransom," as one used in the way of comparison.<sup>5</sup> "God," said he, "might have done it in many other ways, but in no way so befitting." Conformably to his doctrine of omnipotence, this was the best way; hence, too, the one which must actually be chosen.<sup>6</sup> Afterwards, when objections were brought against this view, he conformed himself, in his Apology, to the expressions of the church and of the Bible, without more exactly defining in what way he understood them. He designated, as the end of the incarnation, that Christ delivered us from the bondage of sin and from the yoke of Satan, and by his death, opened for us the way to the eternal, heavenly life.

Now it was *these* peculiar doctrines of Abelard, thus unfolded, which Bernard particularly attacked, in his letter of complaint addressed to pope Innocent the Second. He charged against him

<sup>1</sup> So he explains Rom. iii. 25, propter remissionem (ἀρῆσιν) ut per hanc justitiam, i.e. caritatem remissionem peccatorum assequamur, p. 549.

<sup>2</sup> Cum ignis ipse amor dicatur, de quo veritas: ignem veni, inquit, mittere in terram id est caritatem prædicare atque plantare, potius quam timorem, qui frigori comparatur. Theol. christian. lib. i., f. 1160, and in the Introductio, lib. ii., p. 1084, he explains the above words of Christ, by saying: amore potius quam timore corda terrena implere.

<sup>3</sup> Theol. christian. lib. iv., f. 1308.

<sup>4</sup> In the Sentences, c. xxiii.

<sup>5</sup> Translativè pretium nuncupatur.

<sup>6</sup> What he says, in the passage of the Sentences marked in the preceding note, doubtless has reference to this: Possibilitas tamen ista ad quid referatur, satis superque determinatum esse arbitror.

that, in taking ground against that older representation of the victory of Christ over Satan, he had, with presumptuous arrogance, set his own opinion above the judgment of all the ancient church teachers; and yet a church teacher of no less consideration than Anselm, had already as strenuously contended against that old representation. He accused Abelard of not acknowledging Christ as Redeemer, of saying nothing more of him than that he instructs men, by his words and example, and that he had, by his sufferings and death, exhibited before them the most perfect example of love; and the great matter of offence to his own Christian feelings was, that Christ should be considered merely as a teacher and pattern of living. "Then," exclaims he,<sup>2</sup> "Christ taught righteousness, but did not bestow it; he exhibited love, but did not infuse it. But the truth is, Abelard did not deny the communication of divine life by Christ. "According to Abelard's doctrine," says Bernard, "Christ would have benefitted those only who could copy his life, and be inflamed with love in return for his own. But how is it with children, in whom nothing of this sort can take place?" And we must allow that here Abelard would have been unable, from his own point of view, to give any satisfactory reply. But yet, independently of this, he had asserted, although it is difficult to see how he came to ascribe this significance to the sufferings of Christ, that it was only by the sacrifice of Christ the way to the kingdom of heaven had been opened for all.<sup>3</sup> In relation to the question thrown out by Abelard, whether God could not have redeemed men by his simple will, Bernard replies:<sup>4</sup> "Who denies that other ways of redeeming, justifying, and delivering us, were possible to the Almighty;

<sup>1</sup> In his letter, *De erroribus Abaelardi*, c. v., he cites such language as this from Abelard: *sciendum est quod omnes doctores nostri post Apostolos in hoc conveniunt*, and then: *sed ut nobis videtur*; and he remarks, beforehand, that he cites it as he had read it in Abelard's Exposition of the Epistle to the Romans, and in his book of the Sentences. But neither in that book, nor in the lectures published by Prof. Rheinwald, is any such passage to be found. In the Sentences, c. xxiii. Abelard, in mentioning the above noticed opinion, simply says: *quidam dicunt*; and afterwards: *ego vero e contra dico et ratione irrefragabili probō*. As appears evident, this language is milder and at the same time more decided and abrupt than that quoted by Bernard. Perhaps Bernard's quotation is taken from some other lecture. For the rest, the language quoted coincides, in other respects, very nearly with what we find in the Exposition of the Epistle to the Romans.

<sup>2</sup> Cap. vii. <sup>3</sup> See ep. ad Rom. lib. ii. p. 563.

<sup>4</sup> Cap. viii.

but this can make out nothing against the efficacy of the way and method which, among many, he has actually chosen." He then adduces a reason for the choice of *this* method, which Abelard, too, might have allowed from his own point of view. "Perhaps that way and method is the best, by means of which we, in this land of forgetfulness, have most strongly and vividly brought to our remembrance our own fall, through the many and great sufferings of our Saviour." But then he adds, that the inexhaustible depth of this mystery, how it answers to the divine wisdom, what it effects for the glorifying of God and the salvation of man, it is beyond any man's power to explore. And instead of indulging in nice speculations, he chose to appeal to inward experience. "Although we cannot fathom the holy will of God, yet we can feel the effect of the work, we can be sensible of its benefit.<sup>1</sup> Why did he accomplish that by his blood, which he might have accomplished by a word? Ask himself. It is vouchsafed me to know that the *fact is so*, but not the *wherefore*. Shall the creature say to the Creator, Why hast thou formed me thus?" In allusion to the scruple which Abelard expressed about admitting that God required the blood of an innocent person, etc., Bernard answers: "It was not the *death* of Christ, *in itself*, but the will of him who freely offered himself, that was acceptable to God. And because this precious death, procuring the downfall of sin, could only be brought about by sin, so God had no pleasure in the sin, but used it for good. God did not require the death of his Son, but accepted it when offered; he did not thirst for blood, but for man's salvation." Bernard concludes with this remark: "Three things here meet together, the humility of self-renunciation, the manifestation of love even to the death of the cross, the mystery of redemption whereby he overcame death. The two former parts are nothing without the third. The examples of humility and love are something great, but have no firm foundation without the redemption." The copying of the humility of Christ, love to him, is nothing in his view without union with him, which first confers the power for all, and which gives eternal life. Bernard, too, gives prominence to *that end* of Christ's passion, which Abelard represents as the sole end, and expresses

<sup>1</sup> Si non licet perscrutari divinæ sacramentum voluntatis, licet tamen sentire effectum operis, fructum utilitatis percipere.

himself in an altogether similar manner with the latter. He brings up the question, "Could not the Creator have redeemed his creature without those conflicts of trial?" And he answers, "No doubt he could have done so, but he chose to accomplish man's redemption in this way, in order to excite him to greater love and gratitude by the sacrifice he made for him."<sup>1</sup> The divine and typical, in the life of Christ, is also made a matter of prominent importance by Bernard. "How fair thou appearest to me," says he, "even in my own form, Lord Jesus! not solely on account of the divine miracle, but also on account of the truth, meekness, and righteousness. Blessed is he who narrowly observeth thee, so as thou walkedst as a man among men, and, according to his ability, striveth thus to be thine imitator."<sup>2</sup> We have already seen, on a former page, how he made the chief end of the appearance of the Word in the flesh to consist in this, that the love of man might gradually emancipate itself from the things of sense to those which are purely spiritual, might elevate itself from the appearance of the divine, which lowered itself down to man in the form of the sensible life, to the divine as it is in itself.

Robert of Pullein, also, approaches nearer to Abelard than to Anselm, when he says that God might, indeed, have redeemed men in some other way, but that he chose this particular way in order to exhibit to us, in the greatness of the ransom, the greatness of his love and of our sin.<sup>3</sup>

As it respects Peter Lombard, it is to be noticed that, adopting as his own the words of Augustin, cited a few pages back, he is on his guard against the same anthropopathic misconception of the idea of reconciliation which Augustin thought it so important to avoid. "We must not so conceive," says he, "of the reconciliation of man with God, brought about by Christ, as if God then, for the first time, began to love those who were before objects of his hatred, as an enemy is reconciled to his enemy. God did not first begin to love us, when he became reconciled with us

<sup>1</sup> In Cantica Cantecorum, Sermo xi. § 7.

<sup>2</sup> Quam formosum et in mea forma te agnosco, Domine Jesu! non ob divina tantum, quibus effulges miracula, sed et propter veritatem, et mansuetudinem et justitiam. Beatus, qui te in his hominem inter homines conversantem diligenter observans, seipsum præbet pro viribus imitatorum tui. In Cantica C. S. xxv. § 9.

<sup>3</sup> Ut quantitate pretii quantitatem nobis sui innotesceret amoris et nostri peccati.

through the blood of his Son ; but he loved us before the world was, and before we were. We were, only on account of sin, at enmity with him, who ceased not to love us, even when we were his enemies. We were at enmity with him, as sin and righteousness are at enmity." From Anselm's explication he has adopted nothing. He allows himself to be determined only by the declarations of the old church teachers, collated together, and follows, here, the evidence of authorities, rather than dialectical explication. He denominates Christ the only perfect and entirely valid sacrifice for mankind. He contrasts his self-renunciation and humility with the pride by which the first man fell. In respect of the passion, he supposes a *satisfactio vicaria*, which we do not find in Anselm. That ancient doctrine of the justice due to Satan, once more emerges in him. Yet, on the other hand, he explains the *justificatio per Christi sanguinem* to mean that men are justified, that is, made just, by the return of love which the revelation of God's love enkindles in their hearts. And to the question, Whether God could have brought about man's redemption in any other way, he answers, that some other way was, indeed, possible to God ; but no other was so well fitted to raise up the souls of men and deliver them from despondency, as that God should show them such love, and consider them worthy of such amazing condescension. Neither do we meet with any trace of Anselm's explication in pope Innocent the Third. Like Peter Lombard he gives peculiar prominence to the impression which the manifestation of God's love, in the redemptive sufferings of Christ, must make, and the example of humility which he gave, as contrasted with the pride of man.<sup>1</sup> He is probably the first who represented the work of redemption expressly as a reconciliation between the divine mercy and justice. "God's justice," says he, "required an adequate punishment for all ; his mercy could not permit this ; hence the adjustment that God took upon himself the punishment for all, and bestowed the gift of salvation upon all through himself."<sup>2</sup> But the doctrine above men-

<sup>1</sup> Ut per mortem suam genus humanum redimeret, quatenus inimicos ad caritatem accenderet, superbos ad humilitatem reduceret.

<sup>2</sup> Modum invenit, per quem utrique satisfecerit tam misericordiae quam justitiae, judicavit igitur, ut assumeret in se poenam pro omnibus et donaret per se gloriam universis. Sermo. i. fol. vi. ed. Colon. 1576.

tioned, of the justice experienced by Satan, is to be met with also in him.

Thomas Aquinas adopts Anselm's doctrine of satisfaction, together with all the other points thus far developed in his representation of it. Like Anselm, he places the satisfaction furnished by Christ over against the punishments which mankind must have suffered for sin. The satisfaction consisted in this, that Christ offered something of infinite worth, something exalted above the whole creation, to God. In suffering from love and obedience, Christ offered to God something greater than was required as a satisfaction for the entire sins of mankind; first, by reason of the greatness of the love with which he suffered; then by virtue of the dignity of his life, which as the life of the God-man possessed an infinite worth; and thirdly, on account of the greatness of his sufferings. Hence, the "passion of Christ" is not only "sufficient," but also "superabundant" for the sins of all mankind. In connection with this satisfaction, Thomas now mentions also the punishment borne by Christ for mankind: "Christ must take upon himself, as he says, that punishment which is the termination of all other, which virtually contains all other in itself, that is, death.<sup>1</sup> But besides the deliverance of man from sin by the satisfaction furnished for him, many other things come in in addition, which make this way in which the redemption of man was accomplished especially suited to bring man to perceive how much God loves him, and thus to call forth the love in which salvation is grounded; and next, to operate as an example of humility and of every virtue." In his apologetical work, he lays special stress on the consideration that the union of God with human nature was to serve the purpose of imparting to men the firmest assurance, that they could attain to supreme blessedness, to immediate fellowship with God, when the wide distance between God and man must have otherwise been to them a cause of despondency. Hence, from that time onward, the longing after blessedness had become vastly stronger among men, and all worship of the creature had been destroyed.

William of Paris, in following the explication of Anselm,<sup>2</sup> has

<sup>1</sup> Illam poenam, ad quam omnes ordinantur, et quae continet in se virtute omnes poenas, quamvis non actu. In lib. iii., Sent. Distinct. xx., Quaest. i. Artic. iiii.

<sup>2</sup> In his book *De causis, cur Deus homo*.



prosecuted it still farther, in a way peculiar to himself. He begins with the principle : " It is the case with spiritual and bodily distempers, that they can only be cured by their opposites,<sup>1</sup> and the satisfaction must also be the opposite of the transgression, and commensurate with it, or still beyond it. In the first sin, and every following one, three things go together,—pride, disobedience, and cupidity. Now as in the first sin of man, who was for making himself independent of God, and arrogating to himself equality with God, was exhibited the climax of all this, so the remedy and satisfaction for this could only be again the extreme contrary,—that God himself, the all-sufficient, the Lord of all, should humble himself, subject himself, to the obedience which man was bound to render, and assume his poverty. This alone could be an adequate remedy and an adequate satisfaction, which God as man only could furnish. When, through the love of God, this adequate satisfaction was given, the divine mercy might, without injury to justice, bestow on man the forgiveness of sin, and deliver him from his wretchedness ; and thus the antagonism between these two divine attributes was reconciled. Furthermore," he says, " by love, man must be led back to fellowship with God ; but nothing is so well suited to excite love as love, the manifestation of love, which enkindles love in return.<sup>2</sup> By nothing, however, could God so show his love as by entering himself into union with human nature, taking upon himself its sufferings by giving up his life for his enemies, which is ever the highest proof of love. The chief end of man, as all true philosophers must own, is divine life, the deification in which the glory of man consists. Accordingly, God must become man by participating in human nature, in order that man might become God by a corresponding participation in the divine nature."<sup>3</sup>

A peculiar mode of contemplating the import and aim of the

<sup>1</sup> L. c. c. v. : Quod contraria contrariis curantur tam in spiritualibus, quam in corporalibus.

<sup>2</sup> Misericordia et veritas obviaverunt sibi, justitia et pax osculatae sunt. Dum enim altera per viam exigentiae satisfactionis, altera autem per viam omnimodae remissionis incoederet, obviam altera alteri nunquam venisset, nisi altitudo divini consilii ambas in uno illo beneficio sociasset.

<sup>3</sup> Quia amor amore convenientius accenditur, sicut ignis igne, decuit Deum amorem nostrum amore suo accendere.

<sup>4</sup> Quid mirum est, Deum esse factum hominem, participatione humanae naturae, ut homo etiam fieret Deus, congruenti sibi participatione deitatis ?

work of redemption, and one which had not appeared since the time of the systems of the Gnostics and of the Antiochian school, was first brought up again by the schoolmen of the thirteenth century, namely: the view of it as a work necessary to the perfection of the whole universe. This view was connected, in their case, with the investigation of the question, whether the incarnation of God must have taken place even if man had not sinned. For inasmuch as by this union of God with the creature the universe is raised to that highest point of perfection to which it could not have otherwise attained, it seemed to them it might be said that this union must have taken place even if there had been no sin. In relation to this question, as to all the rest, the arguments were duly weighed on both sides; and Bonaventura, for instance, brings as a reason on the negative side that, as the incarnation of God was a fact which far surpassed in dignity the work of creation, so it cannot be considered as anything that had a place in the original plan of that work, but a deviation to the opposite of that which should have been, must necessarily precede, in order to furnish the occasion for an adjustment of so extraordinary a nature.<sup>1</sup> After having stated the arguments on both sides, he remarks: "Which side has the best, is known only to him who became incarnate for us. It is difficult to decide between two suppositions which may both pass as conformable to the Catholic faith." He distinguishes between the interest of reason and that of piety. That view appears to him most agreeable to the former, according to which the perfection of the universe, the completion of God's work, required his incarnation; and that view most agreeable to the latter, according to which God is not made dependent on the perfection of the universe; but this fact is contemplated as a work of God's free love for the extirpation of sin, while at the same time it most nearly accords with the sacred Scriptures." To this view likewise Thomas Aquinas most strongly inclines. As the sacred Scriptures uniformly consider the incarnation of God as a necessary remedy against sin, so it is safest to rest satisfied with this view. To the perfection of the universe the natural reference

<sup>1</sup> Quia Incarnatio Dei est superexcedentis dignitatis excessus oppositorum, per ipsum corrigendorum et restaurandorum.

and respect of the creation to God, as the end of all, is sufficient. That personal union of the creature with the Creator transcends the limits of nature, exceeds any perfection which lies within her capacity.<sup>1</sup> There is nothing to forbid the supposition that human nature after the introduction of sin might rise to a higher exaltation,—for God makes evil subservient to good. Thomas Aquinas was assuredly prevented by his moral feelings from becoming clearly conscious to himself that according to his own principles, as already set forth, he must have considered evil as something necessary, in the evolving process of the universe, though he carefully seeks to guard against every such theory by abundant precautions. The supposition, however, that this doctrine virtually lies at bottom in his mind, clearly harmonizes with the fact just stated, that he makes the elevation of the creature above the original capabilities of his nature to depend on the introduction of sin.

The scruples by which his predecessors were deterred from recognizing the necessity of the incarnation of the Son of God in order to the perfection of the universe, are taken notice of by Raymund Lull: "It is, in itself considered, true," he says, "that the incarnation of God can be attributed to no other cause than God's freewill. The creation is a work of God's free love. But this being once supposed, God's assumption of human nature is necessary; for otherwise God would not fulfil the obligations due to himself and his perfections."<sup>2</sup> Upon the introduction of sin, the same was necessary in order that the end for which the world was created might not be defeated, but be realized notwithstanding that disturbance."<sup>3</sup>

As it regards the subjective appropriation of the work of redemption, that view still continued to be the prevailing one in the Western church which Augustin had set forth in opposition to Pelagianism, that by *justification* must be understood the inward work of making just,—the sanctification grounded in the fellowship of divine life with Christ,—the subjective in con-

<sup>1</sup> Ad perfectionem universi sufficit, quod naturali modo creatura ordinetur in Deum, sicut in finem. Hoc autem excedit limites perfectionis naturae, ut creatura uniatur Deo in persona.

<sup>2</sup> V. Summae, p. iii., Quaest. i., Artic. iii.

<sup>3</sup> Alias Deus non solveret debitum sibi ipsi et suis dignitatibus.

<sup>4</sup> Ut satisfaceret illi fini, ad quem mundus fuit creatus.

tradistinction from the objective work. And we shall see how this subjective tendency in the mode of contemplating the order of salvation contributed, little as it might seem so at first glance, to keep the religious consciousness in a state of dependence on the tutelage and mediation of the church and the whole churchly theocratic system; as, indeed, the same tendency generally had the most important consequences on the whole process of the development of Christian life in the Middle Ages.

In exhibiting the order of salvation, Bernard distinguished himself in a remarkable manner from the other church-teachers of his time. The experience which he had gained in the history of his own mental conflicts, and in the spiritual guidance of others, led him doubtless to the conviction that, amid the changing moods of subjective feelings, nothing could afford certain repose but an objective ground of trust,—but confidence in Christ as Saviour, and in the grace of redemption. This direction we see him constantly following; though, in the use of the term *justification*, he seems sometimes to waver between the objective and subjective sides. The reference to the objective comes out plainly and distinctly in a passage of his sermons on the Song of Solomon,<sup>2</sup> where, after citing Psalm xxxi. 2, and Rom. iii. 23, he remarks: “No one is without sin. Sufficient for all justification to me, is the faith that he is gracious to me against whom I have sinned. All that he has decreed not to impute against me, is as if it had never been.<sup>3</sup> Not to sin is God’s righteousness;—God’s forgiveness, the righteousness of man.” Deserving of notice is also the way in which Bernard seeks to illustrate the doctrine of justification thus understood, by distinguishing between that which is gradual in the process of evolution in time, and that which is timeless in the divine intuition. “The heavenly birth,” says he, “is the eternal predestination, by virtue of which God loved his chosen and made them accepted in his beloved Son in that they appear to him, in the Holy One, as conformed to his own image. They stand before the presence of the Father as those who have not sinned; at least, the fact that they have, here vanishes before God’s eternal intuition, whose love covers the

<sup>1</sup> See above, page 16.

<sup>2</sup> Sermo xxiii. in Cantica Cantecorum, § 15.

<sup>3</sup> Omne, quod mihi ipse non imputare decreverit, sic est quasi non fureit.

multitude of sins."<sup>1</sup> And in another sermon he says : " Christ is not only called righteous, but righteousness itself, and justifying righteousness. Thou art as mighty in justifying as thou art rich in forgiving. Whosoever, therefore, is contrite for sin, hungers and thirsts after righteousness, let him believe on him who justifies the ungodly,—and justified by faith alone he shall have peace with God."<sup>2</sup> Manifestly, he distinguishes here *justification* from sanctification, and derives the latter from the former, as in fact is particularly evident from what follows, where he says : " Whosoever, then, justified from sin, longs and strives after the holiness without which no man can see God, let him hear him who says, ' Be ye holy, for I am holy. ' " <sup>3</sup> In another passage, however, the two modes of apprehending the notion of justification are confounded together by him, where he says : <sup>4</sup> " Fear goes before, that justification may follow after. Perhaps, then, we are called in fear, justified through love. The just man, finally, lives by faith ; but, without doubt, by that which works by love." He here derives salvation from the eternal counsels of predestination. He considers as the means for the actualization of that which is contained in them, at least in those of mature age, to be calling with justification. The man, being filled with love, becomes conscious of his justification.<sup>5</sup> The love that proceeds from faith is to him the source of justification.<sup>6</sup> By virtue of the inherent connection in which faith and love represent themselves to him, he embraces together in his notion of justification the objective and subjective parts of it, in thus expressing himself : " Beloved, we love ; loving, we deserve to be loved still more. The Holy Ghost is bestowed on those alone who believe on the Crucified ; and faith is powerless unless it works by love.

1 *Generatio coelestis aeterna prae destinatio est, qua electos suos Deus dilexit et gratificavit in dilecto filio suo ante mundi constitutionem, sic in sancto apparentes sibi, ut viderent veritatem suam et gloriam suam, quo ejus forent consortes haereditatis, cujus et apparent conformes imaginis. Hos ergo adventi quasi nunquam peccasse, quoniam et si qua deliquisse videntur in tempore, non apparent in aeternitate, quia caritas patris ipsorum coöperit multitudinem peccatorum.*

2 *Sermo xxii. § 8.*

3 *Quamobrem quisquis pro peccatis compunctus esurit et sitit justitiam, credat in te, qui justificas impium, et solum justificatus per fidem, pacem habebit ad Deum.*

4 *Qui ergo justificati a peccatis, sectari desiderant sanctimoniam.*

5 *Eph. cvii. § iv.*

6 *Sentit se justificari, cum amore perfunditur.*

7 *Amor Dei, is duntaxat, qui interim ex fide est, ex quo et nostra fit justificatio.*

But love is a gift of the Holy Ghost. Who is just, besides him who returns his own love to God, who first loved him?—which is never done but when the Spirit reveals to the man, through faith, the eternal counsel of God respecting his future salvation. Which revelation is certainly nothing else than the infusion of the grace of the Spirit. By this the man is fitted, in that the works of the flesh are mortified, for that kingdom which flesh and blood cannot inherit,—in that he receives at one and the same time, in one Spirit, the consciousness of being loved by God, and the power to love him in return, so that he may not be loved in vain.”<sup>1</sup>

The whole systematic theology of these centuries we see interpenetrated and quickened, however, by that which Augustin had represented as the principle of living Christianity as contradistinguished from Pelagianism. Very far were these theologians from substituting any form of legality, or work-holiness, in place of living Christianity. The *externalization* of Christianity which appeared to us in the misgrowths of the churchly life, found no point to fix upon in what they here represented as the principle; though it might do so in the supervening effects. All gave prominence to the idea of a true fellowship of life with Christ acquired by faith, as absolutely requisite to salvation. They considered it important to distinguish the dead faith, that knew no such fellowship, from the living faith that works by love. Thus Anselm of Canterbury, describes dead faith as one to which the object of faith is wholly outward,—living faith, as one to which the object is within,<sup>2</sup>—faith in God, as a faith whereby one enters into a participation of the divine nature.<sup>3</sup> He calls faith something dead when it does not work and live by love.<sup>4</sup> The faith which was accompanied by its corresponding love, could not be inactive when an opportunity presented itself for it to work. Faith is active by reason of the life that resides within it, without which it could effect nothing. Operative faith is called a

<sup>1</sup> Quæ sane revelatio non est aliud, quam infusio gratiæ spiritualis, per quam, dum facta carnis mortificantur, homo ad regnum præparatur, quod caro et sanguis non possident, simul accipiens in uno spiritu et unde se præsumat amatum et unde redamet, ne gratis amatus sit.

<sup>2</sup> Monolog, c. lxxv.

<sup>3</sup> Mortua fides credit tantum id, quod credi debet, viva fides credit in id.

<sup>4</sup> In Deum credendo tendere in suam essentiam.

<sup>5</sup> Nisi dilectione valeat et vivat.

living faith, because it has in it the life of love; inoperative faith a dead faith, because that life of love is wanting to it with which it could not have been inactive." So also Peter Lombard distinguishes the three acts, *credere in Deum* or *Christum*, *credere Deum*, and *credere Deo*. Faith, in the last two respects, is the bare considering a thing as true, without inward life; the first is that living faith, whereby man enters into fellowship with God, is incorporated into the community with him and his members.<sup>1</sup> With this faith is necessarily connected love. This alone is, according to him, justifying faith (*fides justificans*), that is, faith that makes just or holy. Love is the work of this faith, and the latter the ground of the entire Christian life. Following the Aristotelian distinctions, he denominates that dead faith the yet unorganized matter which must first be actuated by the sealing impress of the form. It is formless, *informis, qualitas mentis informis*. Love is this form, which must be impressed upon it. The faith animated by love, the *fides formata*, is a virtue, and the source of all other Christian virtues.

On this foundation proceeded also the schoolmen of the thirteenth century; and new, profound explications of the progressive development of Christian life were added by them.

Dead faith, like all gifts which are not connected with the all-inspiring temper of love,—all isolated gifts, as the gifts of miracles, prophecy, are distinguished by Thomas Aquinas, as *gratia gratis data*,<sup>2</sup> from that grace which alone fits man for attaining salvation, which transports him into a disposition of heart acceptable to God, begets in him faith that works by love, from that divine element as the animating principle of the whole life, the *gratia gratum faciens*. Thomas reckons it to the essence of faith, that the object should not be sufficiently known to the mind to produce conviction by the mind itself, so that the bent of the will must give the turn whereby it inclines to one side rather than to the other.<sup>3</sup> When this is accompanied with doubt and anxiety lest the opposite may be true, it is called

1 *Credendo in Deum ire, et adhaerere et ejus membris incorporari.*

2 Compare above, page 266.

3 *Intellectus assentit alicui, non quia sufficienter moveatur ab objecto proprio, sed per quandam electionem voluntarie declinans in unam partem magis quam in aliam.* Summa, lib. ii., p. ii., Quæst. i., Artic. iv.

opinion; but when the certainty is present without any such doubt, it is called faith.<sup>1</sup> Accordingly, he defines faith as an act of the mind assenting to divine truth according to the direction of the will moved by divine grace, or by virtue of the impulse given it by such a will.<sup>2</sup> Now inasmuch as the will gives the impulse, and this receives its determination, its particular character, from the end to which it is directed, so it is love by which the will is united with its end, the supreme good. Hence charity is here the animating principle, the *forma fidei*, whereby the mind enters into a true union with the object of its knowledge. It was now a contested point, *how* the transition was made from the *fides informis* to the *fides formata*; whether, when the latter entered the soul, the former retreated from it, or the groundwork of the latter remained and was only raised to a higher power. Thomas asserts the latter. The *habitus*, that is to say, remains the same, inasmuch as it is a capacity of the soul. But by love, is denoted the bent of the will, in which the essence of faith, as such, does not consist; for faith is indeed first an *act* of the intellect. Where imperfection belongs to the conception of the object described as imperfect, there the imperfect must make way for the perfect. But it is otherwise where the imperfect belongs only to the accidental, and therefore the object remains the same, though it loses an accidental predicate, while an imperfect thing grows into a more perfect one, as the boy ever continues to be the same person when he grows up to manhood. Raymund Lull says: "Faith is always something communicated to man by God, that by faith he may rise upward to divine truth, which he never yet could do by means of knowledge. Being a divine gift, this faith is *fides formata*.<sup>3</sup> Its defect is only subjective, arises accidentally in the Christian still beset with sin, in so far as he is estranged by sin from the end for which he was created.<sup>4</sup> Accordingly, the *informatas* is a

1 Si quidem hoc sit cum dubitatione et formidine alterius partis, erit opinio. Si autem sit cum certitudine absque tali formidine, erit fides.

2 Actus intellectus assentientis veritati divinæ ex imperio voluntatis a Deo motus per gratiam.

3 Tale esse datum dicitur ens positivum, et est esse formatum, cum Deus non det esse difformatum.

4 Sed Christianus existens in peccato difformat ipsum per accidens, in quantum se deviat a fine per peccatum, ad quem finem est creatus.



privation<sup>1</sup> accidentally cleaving to the divine reality, and therefore from the same fundamental essence of the *fides informis*, would arise a *fides formata*, from its being made free from the privation by supervening grace."<sup>2</sup>

Justification is made by Thomas to consist in the infusion of grace. In this, all is given at once; only in thought, different operations are to be considered separately from one another, and amongst these is to be found a certain relation, according to which they condition each other. Thus the first is the infusion of grace; the second, the movement of the freewill towards God; next, opposition to sin, then forgiveness of sin. With conversion to God, is given abhorrence of sin, as ungodly. The love of God to man is the cause of the peace with God imparted to the man. This love is something eternal and immutable; but the operation of it takes place in time. This operation taking place in the inner being of the man is grace, by which he who by sin is excluded from eternal life is made worthy of it. Therefore forgiveness of sin cannot be conceived without the infusion of grace. As the love of God consists not only in the inward act of the divine will, but also in a certain operation of grace which accompanies it, so too the fact that God does not impute to the man his sins, carries along with it a certain operation in him to whom God does not impute sin.

From this view of "justification," certain consequences affecting the peculiar order of salvation according to this scheme now resulted, important in their influence on Christian life and the guidance of souls. As the salvation of man was made to depend on this interior subjective working of divine grace, and on the presence of a divine life brought about thereby, as this alone was to constitute the sure mark of adoption into the number of the elect; so the question now arose, which could hardly be answered in a way calculated to promote tranquillity of soul, how is one to be certain of his salvation? No other course was left here but to appeal to inward experience, to the feelings, which in the various moods of mind, affected by so many different influences, and the conflicts continually springing up afresh in such as were

<sup>1</sup> *Fides informis* quoad hominem peccatorem, non tamen *informis* quoad se ipsam, cum habet formam sibi coessentialem datam a Deo.

<sup>2</sup> *Quaest. super libb. Sentent. l. iiii., Qu. cxiii., et cxiv., t. iv., f. 98, seqq.*

actually engaged in the progress of sanctification, could be but an uncertain and unsteady criterion, as all in fact acknowledged, and supposed that no infallible mark could be proposed.

Thus Alexander of Hales, proceeding on the assumption, that neither the cause nor the operation of grace fell within the province of human knowledge, concludes from this fact, that no other means remained to man of ascertaining whether or no he was in a state of grace, except the experience of his own feelings.<sup>1</sup> There is no infallible knowledge. It rests solely on three marks; light, peace, and joy in the inner man. And he supposes that this very uncertainty is a fact the most salutary in its influence on the progress of the Christian life, and one which has been so ordered by God on this very account. God has not thought proper to leave us in entire uncertainty on this point, nor yet to give us perfect knowledge. If man should have no experience of the blessed effects of communion with God, he would have nothing to stimulate him to the love of God. But if a perfect certainty of his being in a state of grace were bestowed on him, he would easily fall into pride. So also Thomas Aquinas reckons to the stage of faith the absence of any such certainty with regard to the state of grace,<sup>2</sup> for the same reasons that are assigned by Alexander of Hales; because the principle and the operative cause in grace, is God himself, who cannot be an object of immediate intuition in the present life, and hence there can be no certain knowledge of his presence or his non-presence in the human soul.<sup>3</sup> For this reason, one can only infer from certain marks, that he is in a state of grace;<sup>4</sup> he can infer this in so far as he is conscious of having his delight in God, of despising earthly things, and in so far as he knows himself to be guilty of no mortal sin.<sup>5</sup> The only exception relates to those cases where individuals have been favoured with the assurance of their being

1 *Scientia affectus, per experientiam rei in affectu.*

2 *Nullus certitudinaliter potest scire se habere caritatem, sed potest ex aliquibus signis probabilibus coniecere.* In lib. i., *Sentent. Distinct. 17, Quæst. i., Artic. iv.* Ed. Venet. t. ix., p. 223.

3 *Principium gratiæ et objectum ejus est ipse Deus, qui propter sui excellentiam est nobis ignotus et ideo ejus præsentia in nobis et absentia per certitudinem cognosci non potest.* *Summæ, p. ii., lib. i., Quæst. cxii., Art. v., t. xxi., p. 633.*

4 *Cognoscere conjecturaliter per aliqua signa.*

5 *In quantum percipit, se delectari in Deo et contemnere res mundanas et in quantum homo non est conscius sibi alicujus peccati mortalis.*



in a state of grace by an express and extraordinary revelation, that so the joy of assurance may already begin with them in the present life, and they themselves may accomplish noble works with the greater confidence and the greater power, and patiently endure the evils of the present life.<sup>1</sup>

What Thomas here says respecting the beneficial influence of the certainty obtained by means of such supernatural revelation in particular cases is, however, bottomed on the consciousness of the prejudicial influence of the want of such a certainty. The uncertainty must often act as a check on the true cheerfulness of the Christian life, and would impel men to take refuge from the conflicts of the world in the monastic life, and to seek by self-tortures or work-holiness to obtain assurance of the salvation for which they were anxious. This uncertainty led to tormenting reflections on the state of the heart in which anxious souls wasted themselves away. Men were filled with distress on account of the absence of certain *marks* of the state of grace, which they believed they did not possess, and so *laboured* with anxious self-tormenting pains to produce such feelings within them. The striving after certainty with regard to the salvation of their own souls, to be obtained by certain excitements of feeling, supernatural revelations, visions, and other evidences of this sort, gave birth to fanatical tendencies. And, on the other side, that uncertainty served to bring the Christian life more and more into a state of dependence on the tutelage of the priesthood and of the church, and all their necessary instrumentalities for attaining to the state of grace; as, in fact, the communication of justifying grace (*gratia justificans*) was made dependent on the sacraments, and it was an important determination for the church system of doctrine, that the sacraments should be considered in a certain sense a cause of this grace.<sup>2</sup> We see how important

<sup>1</sup> He refers to this the passage 2 Corinth. xii. 9, which is inapplicable.

<sup>2</sup> This very thing was said to be that which distinguished the sacraments of the New Testament from those of the Old. The latter merely significabant fidem per quam justificantur homines, the former actually confer such a *gratia justificans*. It was considered important to hold fast to the objective sanctifying power, which was transferred to the consecrated elements and objectively resided in them, to hold that they communicated *gratia justificans ex opere operato*, which to be sure was said to denote simply a purely objective operation, was by no means a mere mechanical thing, standing in no relation with the state of the heart. Though these theologians, in accordance with that externa-

this shaping of the order of salvation must prove for the whole form of Christian life in the Middle Ages, and the church theological system.

As it regards the power still remaining to freewill in a corrupt nature, and the relation of the freewill to the work of conversion or to justification in the sense described, we plainly discern, in the mode after which the theologians of the twelfth century from the beginning onwards explained themselves on this point, the mighty influence of the Augustinian system. But, although determined thereby in their main direction, they were yet led, by their moral interest and by the dialectical wariness which stood connected therewith, to be desirous of avoiding the appearance as if they actually denied freewill, and glorified grace and predestination at the expense of it. The logic of Augustin and the older moderate defenders of this system, had already set them the example in this respect. Here properly belongs Anselm's Dialogue on the freewill, and his treatise on the harmony between foreknowledge, predestination, grace, and freewill. His ideas are as follows: No capacity of a created being is, in and of itself considered, in a condition to pass by itself into action. There must first supervene, in order to this, many influences from without. Still, whether this takes place or not, the capacity as such remains the same. Thus, for example, though the eye requires the influence of the sunlight, in order to see, yet it may be said, that even in the dark it still retains the faculty of sight. So stands the case with regard to the relation of the capacity for goodness to the depraved will, although this capacity is never exerted ex-

lization of the conception of humility, sought an exercise of humility for men who had fallen by pride, in requiring them to humble themselves before these outward things, so as by their means to receive grace, yet they always took pains to define the sense in which the sacraments are the cause of grace with great exactness, and to guard by various distinctions against the error of ascribing too much to them. Thomas Aquinas says, the *causa principalis gratiae* is God; the sacraments are only the *causa instrumentalis*. But many were actually driven by the effort just alluded to, to ascribe to the sacraments less than the spirit of the church and its doctrine required. Thomas Aquinas cites the opinion of some, whom he controverts: *Quod sacramenta non sint causa gratiae aliquid operando, sed quia Deus sacramentis adumbrat in animo gratiam operantem, quod sacramenta non causant gratiam, nisi per quod concomitant virtutem divinam sacramentis assistantem*. The matter was illustrated by the case of a king, who had determined to make a distribution of money, and laid it down as one of the conditions, that none should receive any portion of the gift except such as brought with them a certain leaden token as a countersign.

cept by those whose depraved wills have been drawn by the irresistible power of grace. Robert Pulleyn expresses himself wholly as if he ascribed to man the free power of self-determination, by virtue of which he may surrender himself to grace, or unite himself with it. "As often as grace offers itself to any one," says he, "the individual either acts in coöperation with that grace, or, rejecting it, still goes on to sin. The first cause of all goodness is grace. But the freewill has also a part to perform, though a subordinate one (as *causa secundaria*). Freewill also has some merit; namely, this, that it ceases to resist the divine will." Afterwards, however, he explains himself in a way that perfectly accords with the Augustinian scheme. Thus: "If efficacious grace (*gratia efficax*) is but imparted to man, it draws, though without violence, the freewill with such force, that it follows without resistance, as if impelled by an inner necessity." "Although," says he, "grace reclaims the wandering, yet it draws them with their own freewill. It does not constrain them contrary to their will. It is so mighty that it transforms even the will of the most obdurate without any difficulty and any violence to each stage of conversion, whenever it pleases." The same held good also of the other systematic theologians of the twelfth century. But we must make special mention of the mystical writers of this century. Their mild practical bent led them to give special prominence to the doctrine of the freewill and to represent it as standing in harmony with grace. But yet it may be questioned if they really supposed a freewill conditioning grace. Here Bernard's tract, *De gratia et libero arbitrio*, takes an important place. The occasion of his writing it was furnished him by a promise he had given to draw up a confession of faith. He recognised, in all the good that was in him, the work of prevenient grace. He hoped by that to make still further progress in holiness and to be carried onward to perfection.<sup>1</sup> This appeared to one who heard it, an extravagant eulogium of grace at the expense of human merit and human activity. Bernard felt himself called upon, therefore, to give an account of the manner in which he conceived grace and freewill to be related to each other. He acknowledged that there is in man an inalien-

<sup>1</sup> Quod scilicet ab ipsa me in bono et praevenit agnoscerem et provahi sentirem et sperarem perficiendum.

able somewhat, a freedom subjected to no necessity and to no constraint, the faculty of self-determination, the freedom of nature as contradistinguished from the freedom of grace. Freedom, in this latter sense, is the freedom from sin as a state, *material* freedom; in the other sense, it is *formal* freedom. That formal freedom it is, whereby man is distinguished from natural beings. Unless this faculty of freedom always remained with him, there could be no place for moral imputation, no question about either merit or guilt. As the salvation of man proceeds from the operation of grace, so the latter can produce its operation only in the freewill.<sup>1</sup> No one obtains salvation against his will. The whole work of the freewill, its entire merit, rests upon this, that it consents to the grace that awakens it.<sup>2</sup> Which, however, is not to be so understood as if this consent originated in itself; since, according to the declaration of St Paul, we are not able of ourselves to think anything as we ought, which is still less than consent. Grace prevents us, by inspiring us with good thoughts, which it does without any aid from us. In transforming our perverse wills, it unites itself with them, so that they consent with it. From God comes the beginning of our salvation, neither through us nor with us.<sup>3</sup> However many our gracious Father, who wills that all men should be saved, seems to draw to his salvation, still, he will hold none worthy of salvation, save such as approve themselves to him as willing. The constraining influences of God on man<sup>4</sup> aim at this very thing, that he should be stimulated to voluntary consent, so that when God changes his will from evil to good, God does not deprive that will of freedom, but transforms it." Now, if we compare all this with what Bernard says concerning the relation of freewill to grace, we can make his determinations with respect to the former harmonize with his declarations concerning the latter, only by supposing that, like Augustin, he leaned upon the assertion that the freewill is subjected to no constraint, and no natural necessity; that the form of rational self-determination was ever present, but

<sup>1</sup> Tolle liberum arbitrium et non erit, quod salvetur, tolle gratiam, non erit unde salvetur.

<sup>2</sup> Quod consentit.

<sup>3</sup> A Deo sine dubio nostrae fit salutis exordium, nec per nos utique nec nobiscum.

<sup>4</sup> Hoc quippe intendit, cum terret aut percutit, ut faciat voluntarios, non salvet invitos.

as one always determined by the almighty influence of grace. On the ground of such a formal, abstract notion of freedom he might say, that this freedom continued to exist in connection with all moral un-freedom, is the same in evil actions and good. And, consequently, we must weigh moreover the fact, that he ever supposed the participation of all in original sin grounded in a hidden chain of evolution, so that therefore that supervening sinfulness from which man could be freed only by a grace bestowed on him without any help of his own, was still not able to prevent imputation, nor to remove the guilt of the freewill. In like manner, Richard a S. Victore could unite Augustin's doctrine of prevenient grace, drawing the will, with the strongest expressions with regard to freewill.<sup>2</sup> "How," says he, "is the will of man not truly free, who can be deprived of his freedom by no constraint; for no creature has power to do it, and it does not become the Creator to do it. But how should the Creator himself be able to do this; he who can do nothing except that which is worthy of him?"<sup>3</sup> He in fact will not admit that this will can be denominated a captive will; because it involves a contradiction to call him free, and at the same time a captive; unless by that term is meant simply his weakness, the being deprived of the original capability.<sup>4</sup> But concerning grace he says also, that it often presented itself to the negligent and careless of its own accord, and was often suddenly and unexpectedly snatched away from our many and earnest efforts. Yet he ascribes to the freewill an ability to consent to the evil or the good, to consent to divine grace or not.<sup>5</sup> It can win grace again, but only through grace.<sup>6</sup> As it cannot regain by itself those who are once lost, so it cannot without other help secure those who have been gratui-

1 Where he is discoursing of the freedom that is the condition of imputation, he adds, c. ii. § 5: *Excepto sane per omnia originali peccato, quod aliam constat habere rationem.*—c. xii. § 38: *Quo non solum non consentiens, verum plerumque et nesciens alia ratione constringitur, necdum renatus baptizmate.*

2 *De statu interioris hominis, p. i. tract. i. c. xxiii.*

3 *Quomodo arbitrium hominis vere liberum non est, quod sua libertate nulla vi, nulla potestate privari potest, nam hoc nec creatura valet, nec creatorem decet. Sed quomodo vel creator hoc potest, qui nihil quod non decet facere potest?*

4 *Nihil aliud quam infirmum et nativæ possibilitatis virtute privatum.*

5 *Potest consentire vel non consentire aspirationi divinæ. De statu interioris hominis, p. i. tract. i. c. xiii.*

6 *Gratiam, sed gratis, recuperare potest.*

tously (therefore by the operation of grace) regained. Grace may with justice be at any time withdrawn from it, because it is never to be found without fault.<sup>1</sup>

But, in the thirteenth century, we mark two tendencies in the mode of apprehending this doctrine divaricating from each other. One in the order of Franciscan monks, of which Alexander of Hales appears first as the representative, really departs so far from the rigid Augustinian system, as to suppose a grace conditioned in its operations on the free reciprocity of the man ; the other, led by the logical consistency of its principles even beyond Augustin himself, as we have seen in the principles already lying at bottom in Albert the Great, and still further developed and more clearly expressed by Thomas Aquinas. Alexander of Hales says : " All men are found to be alike corrupt. No one can make himself fit for heaven. God wills according to his highest love to save men, to communicate to them himself ; but it is presupposed that there is a reciprocity, so far as this is grounded in the moral powers still remaining to man. The light shines everywhere ; but its rays do not find everywhere a material susceptible of illumination. No one can render himself sufficiently susceptible for the reception of grace, unless God himself makes him fit for it by his own inward operation. But if he only does what it depends on himself to do, the divine grace ensues by which he is prepared for the reception of grace."<sup>2</sup> He makes use of the following comparison : As when a rich man distributes alms, and two persons are present equally poor ; but one stretches out his arm to receive the alms and afterwards receives it, but the other neglects to do so and receives nothing. Thomas Aquinas also starts from the maxim of the Aristotelian philosophy which prevailed in all the schools, that every action, in order to its being accomplished, presupposed a susceptible material prepared for it beforehand.<sup>3</sup> According to his doctrine, therefore, a certain susceptibility was required on the part of man in order to the operation of grace. But it appears evident,

1 Sicut non potest per se semel amissam recuperare, sic quidem gratis recuperatam non potest nisi ex aliena tutela custodire. L. c. c. xxii.

2 Quod nullus potest sufficienter se disponere ad salutem, sed si faciat, quod in se est, consequitur dispositio divini adjutorii.

3 Nulla forma nisi in materia sic disposita.



from the chain of the doctrine of Thomas Aquinas already unfolded, that he could not allow so very much to depend on creaturely self-determination. Although he presupposes such a necessary susceptibility for the operations of grace, yet he traces even this preparation again to God, to the assistance of God moving the mind to goodness.<sup>1</sup> Whatsoever in man renders him a fit subject for salvation, is all comprehended under the effect of predestination;<sup>2</sup>—every necessary instrumentality for carrying out the decree of predestination.

The above-mentioned preparation for a divine communication to the rational creature by means of a recipiency on his part, by means of that which he might be able to do at his own position with the moral power still left to him, was called a *meritum de congruo*.<sup>3</sup> It was the condition ordained of God under which he had decreed to bestow his gifts, in distinction from a merit in the proper sense; concerning which distinction, in its reference to man's original state, we have already spoken.<sup>4</sup> Yet it is easy to gather from what has been said, the difference that prevailed in the mode of applying this idea, when Alexander of Hales actually placed such a condition in the freewill. Thomas Aquinas referred all to the divine causality operating in a certain order of sequence by virtue of the form of development in time.

When the distinguished theologians of this period embraced together under the name of theology doctrines of faith and morals, in their works treating of the whole province of theology united both these objects together, this was not a mere outward combination, but really an inward one, founded in the intrinsic connec-

1 Ex auxilio moventis animum ad bonum.

2 Quicquid est in homine, ordinans ipsum in salutem, comprehenditur totum sub effectu predestinationis.

3 According to Thomas Aquinas, videtur congruum, ut homini operanti secundum suam virtutem Deus recompenset secundum excellentiam suae virtutis. This is so arranged in the divine economy, just as in nature each thing, working after its own peculiar manner, attains to the end for which God has designed it. In the case of the rational creature, however, this takes place by means of self-determination by the free will, and hence is called a *merit*. Here there is always congruitas propter quandam aequalitatem proportionis. The *adequate relation*, meritum condignum, quod aequatur mercedi, is quite another thing. Such a relation can never exist between creaturely acts and supernatural communication, but only between the supernatural itself, that which proceeds from the grace of the Holy Spirit, in so far as the latter is the principle, and the communication of eternal life.

<sup>4</sup> Page 226.

tion in their own minds of the doctrinal with the ethical element, as we may gather, in fact, from their anthropology as it has already been explained by us, namely, their doctrine concerning *grace* and *justification* and *faith* in its complete form (*fides formata*), the actuating principle of the Christian life. As the principal work here, we must consider the *Summa* of Thomas Aquinas, which in this theological discipline, furnished vastly greater stores than were furnished either by those who preceded or came after him. A particular *Summa* on morals,<sup>1</sup> composed by Nicholas Peraldus (Pérault), archbishop of Lyons, in the thirteenth century, is not to be compared with this in respect of originality and profoundness. The ethical writings of William of Paris, whom we have had occasion to mention so often, e.g. his book *De virtutibus*, is of more importance; and the works of Raymund Lull are rich in ethical matter, particularly his work on the Contemplation of God.

But also in the ethical parts of these systems, two elements occur together; that which proceeded from their unbiased Christian consciousness and their free thoughts as actuated by that consciousness, and that which they must adopt from the church tradition in which they themselves with their intellects were involved. From this circumstance contradictions might arise, of which they themselves were not conscious. Again, the influence of Aristotle, esteemed by them the philosopher *par excellence*, would necessarily show itself, on this particular side, as of the highest importance with them, as his masterly ability in evolving conceptions and in sound observation shines pre-eminently forth in him as a moralist; and so many things were to be met with in his ethical works, which might be appropriated even by such as stood on Christian grounds, at least with certain modifications demanded by the Christian principle; for every sound position of an earlier development, ought certainly to be adopted, and first brought to its full import and significance by Christianity. But the Aristotelian system of morals had its root entirely, it must be owned, in the distinctive ground occupied by the antique world, though soaring in occasional flashes of thought above that inferior position, and containing vaticinations of a loftier one destined at some future time to be the inheritance of

<sup>1</sup> *Summa de virtutibus et vitiis.*

mankind. Many of his principal ethical ideas are necessarily connected throughout with that which in the mode of life and thought in antiquity constituted an antagonism to Christianity. In order, therefore, to a right application of Aristotle's ethical ideas in the Christian system of morals, an exact and sharply defined line of demarkation was required between the fundamental positions occupied by the ancient world and by pure Christianity, a sifting apart of that which was related and that which was opposed in the two different positions; of that which could only be adduced as antagonistic to the properly Christian view, for the purpose of rendering the latter more distinct and clear, and of that which after being modified by the Christian principle might be appropriated. But in order to this was required a species of criticism proceeding from the intelligent examination of the facts of history, which was by no means given to the profound and acute perceptions of these men. They were liable to be easily misled by their admiration and reverence of the great master, to allow undue importance to his conceptual distinctions, whether it was that they distorted these notions themselves by laying into them something more or other than they meant, or that, in applying them to the Christian province, they injured and troubled that province itself. The latter would be more likely to happen in those cases where an occasion for it was already furnished in a troubling of the Christian consciousness that had arisen at some earlier period, where already, in the church tradition, the antagonisms of the ancient world overcome by primitive Christianity had been again introduced by the false Catholic element. And what we have said with regard to the influence of the Aristotelian principles will have to be applied also to the influence of the Neo-platonic, inasmuch as the grand position of the antique world expresses itself in both in certain aspects.

Most assuredly we meet in these theologians with an important line of demarkation, which might seem to denote the same thing with a distinct separation of the different positions held by the ancient world and Christianity,—the distinction, namely, between the moral virtues recognised already in the ante-Christian period, that is, the cardinal virtues and the theological virtues. The former stand connected with the fitness of the moral nature in

itself, the purely human as such; the latter, with the higher fitness superinduced upon man's nature by a supernatural divine principle—the ennobling of the purely human by a divine life. By the general conception virtue, Thomas Aquinas understands the capacity or fitness required in a rational being as a means of answering the end for which he is destined. But here he distinguishes a twofold point of view, and a corresponding twofold end and twofold instrumentality required in order to reach it; the happiness answering to the nature of the creaturely reason, and implied in its essence, to which man may attain<sup>1</sup> by the powers implanted in his nature, the highest end of reason left to itself and not enlightened by revelation, and the end of a blessedness transcending the nature of the creaturely reason, consisting in the supernatural fellowship with God, which proceeds only from some new communication grounded in a free determination of the divine will. In order to the attaining to this there was required, therefore, a new instrumentality in accordance with it, in the new powers communicated to human nature by grace, a certain participation of the divine nature by the human.<sup>2</sup> Thomas, moreover, perceived, being in this respect a predecessor of Schleiermacher, that the precise number of the four cardinal virtues was not a mere accidental and arbitrary thing. He sought to point out the necessity of this numerical division as requisite in order to a perfect realisation of the dominion of reason in the life of humanity. As all virtue has respect to rational good (*bonum rationis*) this rational good, in order to hold out a light to action, must be given as an object of knowledge. Thus we are presented with that which went under the name of *prudence*. Next arises the requisition to manifest in the world, to exhibit in action, the *ordo rationis* received in the form of knowledge.<sup>3</sup> Inasmuch as this is done in our intercourse with others,<sup>4</sup> it is called *justice*. Then, in order to the actual realization of all this, it is necessary that the passions resisting the *ordo rationis* should be subjected to it, that this *ordo* should be preserved and defended against

1 *Beatitudo proportionata humane nature, ad quam homo pervenire potest per principia sue nature.*

2 *Beatitudo naturam humanam excedens, ad quam homo sola divina virtute pervenire potest secundum quandam divinitatis participationem.*

3 *Ordo rationis circa aliquid ponitur.*

4 *Ordo rationis circa operationem.*

their encroachments. And this must be done in a twofold manner, having respect to the twofold description of passions;<sup>1</sup> those that incite men to do that which is contrary to reason, those that hinder them from doing what reason requires. To counteract the first kind of passions, that power of reason is required whereby such passions are restrained, that is, *temperance*. In respect to the second, man must be firm in that which reason requires; this is the work of *fortitude*.

Now as Thomas endeavours to demonstrate the necessity of the cardinal virtues, as the means of actually realizing the appropriate end of reason, so he applies the same to the relation to that supernatural end, and the instrumentality of the theological virtues, necessary in order to attain it. Here, as also in the case of the virtues suited and assigned to the position of pure reason, the different powers of the mind, the intellectual and voluntary faculties, must be called into requisition. The intellect appropriates to itself the revealed truths which man must know in order to attain to that end, by *faith*. The will must direct itself towards that end, as an attainable one; this is done by *hope*.<sup>3</sup> And again, the will must, by a certain spiritual union, become assimilated with that towards which it directs itself as the end to be reached;<sup>4</sup> this is *love*.

But how much soever truth may lie at bottom of this distinction of the two points of view, and the capacities of mind having respect to them, still, we meet here with the same separation between the natural and the supernatural, the human and the divine, hindering the apprehension and application of the Christian principle, which lay at bottom of the severance of the *pura naturalia*, and the *dona supernaturalia*, *superaddita*, in man's primeval state. The whole would have assumed a quite different arrangement, in case it had been perceived that the destination grounded in pure nature as such, the original *ordo rationis*, is precisely that, the actual realization of which had been interrupted by sin, and should be brought about by the redemption and the divine principle of life founded thereon; that the

1 *Passiones impellentes ad aliquid rationi contrarium.*

2 *The passiones retrahentes ab eo, quod ratio dicat.*

3 *Voluntas, quae ordinatur in illum finem, sicut in id, quod possibile est consequi.*

4 *Quantum ad unionem spiritalem, per quam quodammodo transformatur in illum finem.*

very thing which lay in the essence of the cardinal virtues, could only attain, in connection with the supervening principle in the theological virtues, its true significance and application. Thus the view of Christianity as a restoration of the truly human, as an ennobling of the human by the divine, would have presented itself; as most assuredly expressions pointing to this same thing occur in these theologians, which were duly repressed, again, by other influences, and could not be carried through and applied in a consistent manner; expressions implying that by grace nature is not destroyed, but potentiated and ennobled.

The doctrine of the seven spiritual gifts, though the number seven and its designation was borrowed accidentally from the text, Isa. xi. 2, according to the Vulgate, might doubtless be employed for the purpose of passing over from the antique view of the cardinal virtues to the Christianly-modified view. Thomas considers these gifts as the medium, serving to the end that the work of the Holy Spirit may go on in the soul by means of the theological virtues, that the soul may be brought into entire harmony with the relation to God, with the dominion of the Holy Spirit. He compares the above-named spiritual gifts, in this respect, with the moral virtues, so called in the more limited sense, as the means to make everything that resists subject to the order of reason (*ordo rationis*). Accordingly, these gifts were to operate in such manner as to subject everything to that higher order of the Holy Spirit, and he considered them as the very means whereby the natural should be freed from the defects cleaving to it, and advanced in its evolution.<sup>1</sup>

The same point of view we find, likewise, in William of Paris, but carried out after a profound and original manner. He distinguishes, which is nothing peculiar to him, but, as an imitation of the Aristotelian method of division, common to him with others,—the natural virtues, those founded in natural capacity (virtues of temperament), those acquired by exercise (*virtutes consuetudinales, acquisitæ*), and those derived from the divine principle of life, from grace, ennobled virtues. The natural virtues he compares with the natural members of the body; the acquired, with the substitutes, helps, and supports framed by art for maimed or en-

<sup>1</sup> Per has virtutes, quæ dicuntur dona Spiritus Sancti, illa naturalia reformantur atque adjuvantur.

feebled limbs. These helps supplied by art cannot, however, answer the end of, or restore the powers of, nature. The same holds true of that which moral effort and practice can effect in relation to a nature depraved and enfeebled by sin. It is only by grace that true virtue is bestowed on man; it is only by this, that those wings are given to the mind, with which it soars upward to the divine. William of Paris vigorously attacks, as Pelagian, the assertion that, between that which is natural and that which is bestowed by grace, the difference is one of degree, and not of kind. But he also starts from that distinction between the *pura naturalia* and the *donis gratiae*. He also distinguishes the relation of uncorrupted nature to its commensurate world, and its exaltation above itself; the super-earthly direction communicated to it, the necessary intermediation in order to the supernatural blessedness by grace.<sup>1</sup>

From that view of the relation between the cardinal virtues and the theological virtues which we have described, the result is not that all the cardinal virtues must co-operate in order to shape the world by the principle of the theological virtues, to use and appropriate it for the kingdom of God: the divine principle attacking and appropriating to introduce both in connection with each other into the world, which it is destined to control; but something appears as the highest work and end of the theological virtues, which reaches beyond the province of those subordinate virtues, in relation to which they appear simply as preparatory and initiatory, viz. the desecularizing and dehumanizing of the individual that devotes himself wholly to God, by the contemplation of the spirit soaring upward to him as its sole object. Thus that Aristotelian view of the moral element as of the barely human, in opposition to the superhuman, the divine, taking occasion from many erroneous tendencies that had long prevailed in the church life, may have found entrance. Thus might that opposition between divine and human virtue, ἀρετὴ πολιτικὴ which had been overcome by the Christian principle, be once more adopted from Aristotle and the Neo-Platonists; and im-

<sup>1</sup> Sicut naturales, verae virtutes (not at present in the state of corruption) animam tenent, custodiunt et conservant in statu suo et rectitudine naturali, sic istae sublimes et nobiles virtutes eam rapiunt et elevant a se ipsa, hoc est, a naturalibus suis et, supra se velut suspensam, in spiritualibus et aeternis eam tenent. De virtutibus, f. 137, seqq.

portant were the consequences which resulted from that cause. Thus that division of the virtues was imitated from Plotinus,<sup>1</sup> which is so wholly incongruous with the Christian principle of the theocratical appropriation of the world, so favourable to the one-sided ascetic, and unfavourable to the appropriating tendency,—the division of them, namely,<sup>2</sup> into the exemplary (*exemplares*), the purifying (*purgatoriae*), and the political. These political virtues destined to shape the life, appear as the subordinate ones.<sup>3</sup> The middle place is given to the *virtutes purgatoriae*, since by purifying the soul they render it capable of rising from the human to the divine, and of surrendering itself wholly to the latter after the completion of the purifying process.

Starting from this distinction of a purifying virtue, Thomas places *prudence* in the contempt of all worldly things and a mind bent solely on God; *temperance*, in withdrawing as much as possible from the objects of sense; *fortitude*, in not allowing the soul to be terrified when it withdraws itself from all objects of sense, and turns to the contemplation of things heavenly alone; *justice*, in the surrendry of the soul to precisely this order. The highest stage, then, where this purification has arrived at its completion, must belong to the virtue of a soul wholly absorbed in contemplation, perfectly purified; which is the virtue of the blessed, or of the most perfect in this life.

In strict accordance, moreover, with these views, Thomas describes it as the work of temperance, considered in the light of the *ordo rationis*, that the body should be made suitable for becoming an organ of reason; while, however, he reckons to the essence of temperance, in the supernatural sense, as it is wrought in man by the operation of grace, the *temperantia infusa*, this additional element, that fastings and abstinence must be required.<sup>4</sup>

<sup>1</sup> See his Book of the Virtues. Ennead i., lib. ii.

<sup>2</sup> In the Dialogue, cited on a former page, inter philosophum, Judaeum et Christianum, published by Prof. Rheinwald, p. 67, where, too, Plotinus is expressly quoted.

<sup>3</sup> Secundum quas homo recte se habet in rebus humanis gerendis, according to Thomas Aquinas.

<sup>4</sup> In sumtione ciborum ratione humana modus statuitur, ut non noceat valetudini corporis nec impediatur rationis actus. Secundum autem regulam legis divinae requiritur, quod homo castiget corpus suum et in servitutem redigat per abstinenciam cibi et potus et aliorum hujusmodi.\*

\* Prima secundae. Quaest. lxxiii., Artic. iv., t. xxi., p. 311.



From the combination of these different elements in the ethical system of Thomas, many apparently gross contradictions may be explained. We might think that the answer to the question, whether there is any class of actions morally indifferent or permissible, not coming under the province of duty, must determine the decision of another, namely, whether there is a condition of moral perfection above law, or transcending the province of duty and obligation. We might suppose that, from the denial of a void space for actions indifferent or permitted, from the assertion that duty must embrace the whole of life, must also follow the denial of such a higher condition; but we find these modes of contemplation in Thomas placed in a different relation to one another.

He has investigated the question about indifferent actions (*adiaphora*) with great acuteness, in a distinct section; and maintains that if we contemplate actions in their true and real connection, we shall find that nothing is indifferent, because every action is either one corresponding or not corresponding to the order of reason (*ordo rationis*), and nothing can be conceived as holding a middle place. He at the same time explains whence it is that the appearance has arisen of a class of actions indifferent. It is because there are actions which, considered in general, without any more exact specification, appear as if indifferent; which same actions, if considered in a particular case, in a more exactly determined connection, must be declared to be bad or good.<sup>1</sup> Indifferent actions are, in his view, those which as yet want those marks by means of which a moral judgment of them would be possible, those which are not as yet sufficiently defined, so that they may be taken into the series of moral actions.<sup>2</sup> "Thus," he says, "eating and sleeping are things in themselves indifferent; yet both are subservient to virtue with those who use the body generally as an organ of reason." At the same time, Thomas had adopted into his system the doctrine, which had long obtained in the church tradition, of a higher perfection, consisting in the observance of the *consilia evangelica*. And this doctrine was, in his case, by no means at variance with

<sup>1</sup> Contingit quandoque, aliquem actum esse indifferentem secundum speciem, qui tamen est bonus vel malus in individuo consideratus.

<sup>2</sup> Indifferens quasi extra genus moralium actionum existens.

the principle just explained by us, since he supposed a mode of life transcending the province of purely human action, wholly renouncing the world, and devoted solely to the contemplation of God. And this agrees, perfectly, with that division of the virtues which we have already noticed.

The *praecepta* relate, according to his doctrine, to that which is *necessary* in order to arrive at eternal felicity. The *consilia*, to that whereby one may better and more easily attain to the same end. "Man," says he, "stands midway between the things of this world and spiritual good ; so that the more he devotes himself to the latter, the more he withdraws from the former. Whoever, then, places his supreme good in the things of this world, becomes wholly estranged from spiritual good ; and to such a bent of disposition, the precepts stand opposed. But in order to attain to the above-mentioned end, it is not required that one should wholly cast aside the things of this world ; as one who uses the things of this world may attain to everlasting life, provided only he does not make them his supreme end. Still, it will be easier for him, if he renounces the things of this world *entirely*." It is manifest how this whole distinction of a twofold renunciation of the world in the observance of the *praecepta* and of the *consilia*, rests precisely on the circumstance that the real connection between the negative and positive sides of the Christian principle, between virtue combating and virtue appropriating the world, between the Christian renunciation and the Christian appropriation of the world, is not recognized,—on the not perceiving that the requisition, rightly understood, of the precepts which relate to the total renunciation of the world with the total appropriation of it for the kingdom of God, excludes room for anything higher. And it may easily be shown, too, how the same fundamental mistake betrays itself in the separating the negative and positive elements in the more exact determination of the three *consilia evangelica*,<sup>1</sup>—the total renunciation of earthly goods separated from the appropriation of them ; the total suppression of the sexual instinct, instead of the control over it in the appropriation of a form of moral society necessary

1 As Thomas says, in the total renunciation of the three things wherein sin reveals itself,—the lust of the eyes, the lust of the flesh, and the pride of life, to which the three *consilia* relate.

for the manifestation of the kingdom of God; the total, barely negative denial of one's own will, whereby, in a contrariety to its native dignity, it is made the blind tool of another creaturely will, instead of the positive appropriation of it as an organ for the divine will of a reason that shows itself to be enlightened. Not recognizing, that the condition of Christian freedom stands only in the essence of that love which freely fulfils the precepts from an impulse within, Thomas places this condition in a self-will exalted above law. He accounts, among the marks distinguishing the Old and New Testament points of view, that in the latter, as the law of liberty, counsels are added to commands which require unconditional obedience,—counsels, the following of which is left entirely to free choice.<sup>1</sup>

And not barely in reference to the three *consilia* above described, but also in reference to other departments of action coming under the cognizance of the *praecepta*, Thomas distinguishes a perfection reaching beyond mere conformity to the law of duty. He distinguishes that which, in itself considered, is a *consilium*, from that which is such only under certain circumstances and in certain relations;<sup>2</sup> as, for example, when one gives alms, does good to his enemies where he is under no obligations to do so, forgives injuries which he might retaliate. But here he was met by the precept so clearly expressed in the sermon on the mount; still, he contrives to evade the difficulty, by erroneously applying here a rule correct enough in itself, that, in the sermon on the mount, we must distinguish the reference to the temper of the heart, and to the individual action. He says that the love to our enemies required in the sermon on the mount is, indeed, a *precept* in reference to the *praeparatio animi*, and something necessary to salvation; but that the action in particular cases, where no particular necessity existed, belonged to a *consilium particulare*.

How Thomas allowed himself to be misled, by the influence of the Aristotelian ethics, into the mistake of adopting ideas which belong altogether to the ancient world, and stand properly in con-

<sup>1</sup> Quod praeceptum importat necessitatem, consilium in optione ponitur ejus, cui datur. Et ideo convenienter in lege nova, quae est lex libertatis, supra praecepta addita consilia, non autem in veteri lege, quae erat lex servitutis.

<sup>2</sup> Consilium simpliciter and consilium secundum quid.

tradition with Christian morals, and how he laboured to get rid of this contradiction, is especially illustrated by one example. The antique notion of magnanimity (*μεγαλοψυχία*), finely explicated by Aristotle, belongs in truth wholly to the heathen morality, is necessarily connected with the ethical self-sufficiency, the self-feeling, of antiquity; and stands in contradiction with the essence of Christian humility. But Thomas, who appropriates this notion under the name of *magnanimitas* takes the greatest pains to reconcile this contrariety. Attaching himself to Aristotle, he describes this virtue as one which holds great honours within the bounds of reason;<sup>1</sup> and he then endeavours to show, that the self-feeling, the sense of one's own dignity, which belongs to the nature of magnanimity, is not incompatible with the essence of humility. He maintains that the contradiction between these two virtues was only in appearance.<sup>2</sup> It was only needful in the case of these two virtues to distinguish their different relations.<sup>3</sup> Magnanimity allows man to exalt himself in consideration of the gifts he has received from God.<sup>4</sup> Humility leads man to think lowly of himself in view of his own defects.<sup>5</sup> But humility does not in fact relate merely to the sense of one's own defects, but to the sense of the absolute dependence of all creaturely beings, the nothingness of everything, as referred simply to itself, and not contemplated as a gift received from God. Now this, undoubtedly, instead of excluding from, includes in itself, that feeling of elevation which is grounded in the consciousness of fellowship with God, denoted by the expression *ἐν κυρίῳ καυχᾶσθαι*; but still, this is quite another thing from the sense of one's own greatness and dignity implied in the *μεγαλοψυχία*. Then again, the contempt of others, springing from this state of mind, is said to refer to them only so far as they are destitute of God's gifts.<sup>6</sup> Humility, on the other hand, should honour and highly esteem others, so far as it perceives in them any of these gifts of God. But really, this recognition of each man in the condition where God

1 Quae modum rationis ponit circa magnos honores.

2 Quia in contraria tendere videntur.

3 Quia procedunt secundum diversas considerationes.

4 Facit, quod homo se magis digniscent secundum considerationem donorum, quae possidet e Deo.

5 Facit, quod homo seipsum vilipendat secundum considerationem proprii defectus.

6 Deficiunt a donis Dei.

has placed him, excludes the above-mentioned contempt. While Aristotle reckons it as belonging to the essence of *μεγαλοφυχία*, that it should not willingly receive benefits from others, because this would be at variance with that self-feeling, would be self-humiliating, Thomas endeavours even here to set aside that which is foreign from the Christian point of view, by explaining it in the sense that to this virtue it does not seem desirable to receive benefits without repaying them with others still greater, which, in fact, he says, belongs to the perfection of gratitude, in which, as in all other virtues, the magnanimous spirit will be pre-eminent.

We must acknowledge, then, it is true, that Thomas does not here distinguish with sufficient precision the antique and Christian points of view; that he knows not how to take the notion of Aristotle in connection with the former of these points of view, and according to its own proper essence; that he does violence to it, and endeavours to blend together conflicting elements. But we must also acknowledge the freedom of spirit with which, from his own ascetical point of view, he was able to discern some truth at bottom capable of being united with the essence of humility, in that notion of magnanimity, though he did not draw with sufficient clearness and precision the line of demarkation which separated it from the ante-Christian notion; from that which belonged exclusively to the antique point of view. If he had held fast simply to the truth at bottom, much that is so one-sided in his ascetical view of the matter would have been overcome.

We should mention, moreover, in reference to the controversies with Abelard, that the disputed question then brought up about the relation of the intention to actions, in judging of their moral character, was answered by this great teacher, Thomas Aquinas, with great clearness, and so as to avoid the opposite errors on both sides: "It is undoubtedly the case," says Thomas, "that the moral character of an action depends on the disposition, the end, which the will proposes. The action, by itself considered, can add nothing; in that, the will simply goes into effect. But the question arises, is the will strong enough to produce the act, to pass into fulfilment? When one will proposes to do something good or bad, but desists from its purpose on account of obstacles in the way; while another continues acting till it has accom-

plished the object proposed, the latter will is manifestly a persevering one, in the good or bad sense;<sup>1</sup> and by this is to be estimated the *degree* of goodness or badness, the *intensity* of the good or bad will. That only is a perfect will which acts when an opportunity is presented.<sup>2</sup> But then, if the failure of execution proceeds solely from the want of opportunity, if the execution depends on outward conditions which do not stand within the man's control, the failure, in such cases certainly is not to be attributed to the will."<sup>3</sup>

## II. THE GREEK CHURCH AND ITS RELATION TO THE LATIN.

In comparison with the fulness of life, manifesting itself under such a diversity of forms, and moving in such various directions, in the church of the West, the Greek church presents a melancholy spectacle of stiff and torpid uniformity. While the ecclesiastical monarchy of the West could lead onward the mental development of the nations to the age of majority, could permit and promote freedom and variety within certain limits,—the brute force of Byzantine despotism, on the other hand, stifled and checked every free movement. To all which the Greek church had in common with the Latin, the animating spirit was still wanting. Thus we have seen how the monasticism of the Western church carried within itself a principle of reaction against its own corruptions, and hence new forms of regeneration were continually springing out of it. In the Greek church the monastic life stood, it is true, in equally high estimation as in the Latin, and was enabled to exercise a great influence; but it was very far from being the case that this influence was so extensive and penetrating as in the Latin church; or that so much good, along with the evil, proceeded from it. Monasticism here remained motionless in the old petrified forms. It was far less practical than in the Western church; and yet, it was not less overpowered by worldliness,—but without reproducing again out of itself so powerful an opposition to the worldly spirit.

In the twelfth century appeared every form of self-castigation

<sup>1</sup> Manifestum, quod hujusmodi voluntas est diuturnior in bono vel malo.

<sup>2</sup> Non est perfecta voluntas, nisi talis, quæ opportunitate data operetur.

<sup>3</sup> Defectus perfectionis, quæ est ex actu exteriori, est simpliciter involuntarius.

among the Greek monks. Some passed their lives on high trees (*δενδρίται*); others on pillars, either in the open air or in close dwellings erected on lofty scaffoldings;<sup>1</sup> others, in subterranean caves or catacombs; others encased themselves in iron coats of mail.<sup>2</sup> But more frequent than the extravagant self-mortification proceeding from the earnestness of a mistaken piety and a misdirected striving after Christian perfection, was the mock-holiness which affected severity of living merely as a mask and outside show, for the purpose of winning high veneration and bountiful gifts from the multitude. Such were those monks whom Eustathius describes as all factitious from head to foot.<sup>3</sup> They contrived by various impostures to make their monasteries famous for miracles,—till the fraud was detected, when the wonders ceased;<sup>4</sup> or by pretended visions, to invest themselves with an air of sanctity,<sup>5</sup> so as to attract the multitude, and open a profitable source of gain. But what especially contributed to the corruption of the monastic life, and its mischievous influence, was the vast numbers from the lowest classes, workmen and beggars, who withdrew to the monasteries for the sole purpose of gaining a subsistence without toil,—or culprits, who fled to them to escape the punishment of their crimes.<sup>7</sup> Hence, among the monks were to be found the rudest and most ignorant people,—enemies to all science and culture; and the rich libraries of the monasteries went fast to destruction. It was in vain to inquire after ancient books; these had long since been among the missing.<sup>8</sup> If a man of literary attainments proposed to join the monks, he became for that very reason an unwelcome, suspected guest; and every pos-

<sup>1</sup> *στυλίται* and *κιονίται*.

<sup>2</sup> Vide Eustath. ed Tafel. p. 27, the different classes of monks: *τοὺς ἁγιασμένους τῷ θεῷ ἀσκητὰς, τοὺς τῆς ἱρήμους, τοὺς στυλίτας, τοὺς χάστους, τοὺς ἐγκλειστοὺς*. Eustathius of Thessalonica names (p. 189) the different classes of monks at that time: *οἱ γυμνῖται, οἱ χαμῖναι καὶ ἀνιπτόποδες, οἱ ῥυπῶντες, οἱ σιγῶντες, σπηλαριῶται, σιδηρούμενοι, δανδρίται, κιονίται, οἱ στυλίται*, who were distinguished from the *Κιονίταις*, by the fact that they were shut up out of sight, *ὥς ἐγκλειστοί*.

<sup>3</sup> *παραλασμένοι ὄλοντο ἐκ ποδῶν ἵνα κεφαλῆς*. His tract, *περὶ ὑποκρίσεως*, p. 94.

<sup>4</sup> See Eustath. p. 230.

<sup>5</sup> *Ap. eundem*, p. 243.

<sup>6</sup> See *e. g.* Eustathius on the improvement of the monastic life, p. 251: *γράμματα οὐκ οἶδασιν, ἐξ ἐργαστηρίων οἱ πλείους ἤκοντες καὶ ἄλλως δὲ χειρωνακτεῖς ὄντες*.

<sup>7</sup> *Ap. eund.* p. 223.

<sup>8</sup> *Ap. eund.* p. 249, ff.

sible obstacle was thrown in his way.<sup>1</sup> This sort of people, after having secluded themselves for a while, appeared publicly again in another shape. The air of sanctity which they affected enabled them to gain more than others by their bargains and sales, and to grow richer by agriculture and cattle-breeding.<sup>2</sup> With a view to counteract the worldly traffic and cupidity of the monks, the emperor Manuel Comnenus allowed the newly-founded monasteries to own no property, but directed that they should be furnished with all that was needful for their subsistence from the imperial treasury; and he renewed a decree of the emperor Phocas against multiplying the landed estates of the monasteries.<sup>3</sup> Eustathius extols also the prudence of this emperor, in appointing secular officers for the great monasteries, to superintend the management of their revenues, so as to relieve the monks from business foreign to their vocation.<sup>4</sup>

Under the Comnenes, a fresh zeal was awakened for literary studies in the Greek empire. The chief direction of them was intrusted to a college of twelve learned men under a president;<sup>5</sup> which college, moreover, was to have the first voice in the deciding of controversies of doctrine, an authority which, we must allow, would be likely to prove extremely cramping. But though many remains of ancient learning were preserved, and individual theologians appeared who distinguished themselves by their erudition, yet the fresh, living spirit was always wanting, which alone can give a spring to scientific development. They never went beyond the compiling together and handing down of traditional lore; and artificial ornaments deformed even the better productions of those times.

Among the learned theologians of the twelfth century, we may mention Nicetas, bishop of Chonae,<sup>6</sup> in Phrygia, eminent as a doctrinal and polemical writer, and belonging also among the Byzantine historians; the monk Euthymius Zigabenus, who, with

<sup>1</sup> Ap. eund. p. 244.

<sup>2</sup> Ap. eund. p. 229.

<sup>3</sup> See Nicetas Choniata, history of the emperor Manuel Comnenus (lib. vii., c. iii., p. 370, ed. Bekker), which historian also confesses that the worldliness of the monks called for these restrictions.

<sup>4</sup> On the improvement of the monastic life, § 124, p. 244.

<sup>5</sup> Duodecim electi didascoli, qui studiis Græcorum de more solent præesse. See the Dialogue of Anselm, of Havelberg, in D'Aohery Spioeleg, t. i. f. 171.

<sup>6</sup> The city anciently called Colosse.



Theophylact, mentioned in the preceding period, is to be reckoned among the most distinguished exegetical writers of this period; and Nicholas, bishop of Methone, in Messenia.<sup>1</sup> All, however, were eclipsed by an individual comparatively unknown until in these recent times,<sup>2</sup> but who was no less distinguished for his extensive learning, than for a noble spirit of reform flowing from truly Christian motives. This was Eustathius, archbishop of Thessalonica, author of the famous commentary on Homer, one of those pure characters, so rarely to be met with among the Greeks,—a man who well knew the failings of his nation and his times, while he was more exempt from them than any of his contemporaries. In his remarkable work on hypocrisy, he mentions falsehood and empty pretence, which he hated above all things, as being the sins by which public and private life among all ranks of society was then polluted. Great were the services he rendered to his fellow-citizens under the bad administration of the empire in the minority of Alexius the Second, subsequent to the year 1180. When Thessalonica was conquered by the army of king William the Second, of Sicily, and the city given up to the fury of soldiers excited, in addition to other bad passions, by fanaticism, Eustathius, who shrunk from no danger or toil, appeared as a protecting angel in the midst of his people. It was his courage and awe-commanding person alone which could procure for the unfortunate any alleviation of their sufferings. His powerful word protected his fellow-citizens, when threatened with heavy oppressions by the arbitrary power at Constantinople, against the extortions of the tax-gatherers.<sup>3</sup>

1 See respecting these men, and the doctrinal history of the Greek church in the twelfth century, the essay of Dr Ullmann in the *Studien und Kritiken*. Year 1833, 3tes Heft.

2 By the meritorious labours of Prof. Tafel in Tubingen, who we confidently hope will succeed in clearing up many of the obscure points in the life of this remarkable man. May his essay on the chronology of Eustathius's writings soon appear.

3 These meritorious acts of Eustathius in behalf of the city of Thessalonica, are extolled by Nicetas, bishop of Athens, in his *Monodia* on Eustathius, published with several other records abounding in important matter relating to the history of these times, by Prof. Tafel, in the Appendix to his *Dissertatio Geographica de Thessalonica ejusque agro*, Berolini, 1830, p. 382. He represents the widowed city Thessalonica complaining: πάντως φορολόγοις ἐκκλίσσεται· πάντως δασμολόγοις βρωθήσεται, ὥς ἐτοίμη καὶ ἀγαθὴ θήρα καὶ τοῖς ἀνθρωποφάγοις τούτοις θηρεῖν ἔκδοτος· οὐκ ἐτι γὰρ ἐπαγρυνήσει μοι ἐκείναι ὁ μέγας ἑμὲ ποιμὴν καὶ μυρίαις διεγρηγορῶς δμμασιν, p. 387. It is

Yet he had a great deal to suffer from the ingratitude of his community, who could not endure the freedom with which he rebuked iniquity. He was banished by partisans; and afterwards, when the people learned from experience how much they had lost in their bishop, recalled with greater affection than ever.<sup>3</sup>

He appears to us as the Chrysostom of his times, in contending against its superstition, mock-holiness, and indecorous frivolity. His fast-sermons especially bear witness of the zeal with which he waged this contest. In the lightness with which marriages were contracted, and matrimonial relations generally regarded, he found special cause of complaint. It seems that many affected a certain pretentious, shallow kind of free-thinking, to which they retreated as a cover from the pungent sermons or moral oversight of the more worthy ecclesiastics. They drew a line of distinction between the church, for which they professed the greatest zeal, and the clergy in their personal capacity. "God is all-sufficient in himself," said they; "he needs nothing which is upon earth."<sup>3</sup> The opposition to superstition may perhaps have called forth infidelity. So we might infer from a remark of Eustathius on the indulgence shown to atheists living amongst Christians.<sup>4</sup> While he adopted the dominant church mode of thinking, which indeed bore him along with it, Eustathius still sought to transform and renovate all, beginning back from the spirit and disposition.

to be lamented that this Greek eulogium is so full of rhetorical declamation as to leave but little room for facts.

<sup>1</sup> Ep. xix., ad Thessalonicenses.

<sup>2</sup> Michael Nicetas says, in a letter to Eustathius: *μᾶλλον μὲν οὖν νῦν οἱ ποθοῦντες πλείον τῇ πόθῳ κάμνουσι, παρόσον τῇ ἀποστάσει μαρθάνουσιν, ὅσον ἔχοντες ἀγαθὸν ἰδεδυθάνον ἑαυτούς.* See Tafel's Dissertation on Thessalonica, above referred to, p. 354.

<sup>3</sup> As he says, *φιλοσοφοῦντες, ὡς ἀπροειδείς μὲν πάντων τῶν ἐπὶ γῆς (τὸ θεῖον, without doubt omitted) ἐπὶ γῆς δὲ καὶ οἱ ἐκκλησιαστικοὶ καὶ τὰ κατ' αὐτούς.*

<sup>4</sup> He employs the climax: Jews, bad Christians, and *τὸ μᾶλλον τὰ τῶν ἀθίων φόλα.* Fast-sermon, xi., p. 66. The interpretation of this passage is, to be sure, a matter of dispute. Tafel, in the Prolegomena to the Dissertation above noticed, p. xvii., is disposed to understand by atheists, Mohammedans; in favour of which it might be said that atheists, if any such existed, would not have dared, however, so openly to avow themselves as such. Still, though Eustathius did not concede, that the Mohammedans worshipped the same God with Christians and Jews, the true God, when from his own point of view he could call them idolaters, yet it is difficult to conceive that he should have called them directly atheists, unless perhaps he considered himself entitled to do so, by a rhetorical exaggeration, on account of this antithesis to Christians and Jews who worshipped the true God.

Accordingly, he makes the *consilia evangelica* his point of departure, recognizing monachism as the summit of Christian perfection; and, misapprehending the words of Christ, contrasts the mild and easy yoke of the ordinary Christian life with the heavy yoke which the monks had to bear. Thus, in exhorting laymen to Christian virtue, by comparing their case with that of the monks, he says: "These latter voluntarily endure the oftentimes heavy yoke of the Lord which is laid on them. Take then upon yourselves, as he himself bids you, the light and easy yoke, and ye shall, even as they, be blessed, albeit in a way corresponding to your stage of perfection."<sup>1</sup> But he was profoundly sensible also of the corruption which beset the monachism of his times, as we have shown in the preceding remarks. Monachism was, in his opinion, designed as a means for the religious and moral education of the people; and the monasteries should be seats also of literary culture. He called upon the stylites to avail themselves of the general reverence in which they were held, at a time when men of all ranks and degrees of education, husbands and wives from all quarters, flocked to them, to take advantage of the opportunity thus afforded of imparting to them such knowledge and advice on the matters of salvation as each might require. "With these," says he, in an admonitory discourse addressed to a stylite in Thessalonica,, "the stylite will hold intercourse in the right, to say all in a word, in the apostolical way; for he becomes all things to all men, that he may win all for the glory of God. And," putting him on his guard against opposite errors, "he will neither improperly flatter, lest he falsify the truth, nor will he be violent against all, lest he be accused of unseasonable freedom. For all the gifts which may be presented to him, he will be only a channel by which they are communicated to others, to the poor." He complains of those monks, who boasted of knowing no other trinity than devotion in the church, in the cell, and at the table; and those who were not aware that this was not enough for the genuine monk in order to perfection of virtue,

<sup>1</sup> Orat. ii., in Ps. xlviii., § 14, p. 10: αἰρουσιν ἰθελούσῳσι ἐκαῖνοι τὸν τοῦ κυρίου ζυγόν, ἔστιν οὐ βαρὺν, αὐτοῖς ἐπικείμενον ἐπὶ ὁμοίᾳ φέρτερ ἄρατε ὑμῖν τὸν, ὡς αὐτοὶ ἐκαῖνος ἱφῇ, ἱλαφρόν καὶ χρηστὸν. καὶ οὕτω κατ' ἐκαῖνους, ἀναλόγῳ μίντοι, εὐλογηθήσεσθε καὶ αὐτοί.

<sup>2</sup> xxii. § 66, p. 193.

but that he also stood greatly in need of knowledge—"And that, not only of things divine," says he, "but also of history and various other kinds of culture, by means of which he may be useful to those who approach him."<sup>1</sup> At all times, however, he declared strongly against the over-valuation of externals; as elsewhere, so also in monachism. Thus, for instance, to a stylite, girt with iron, he says,<sup>2</sup> "I desire to see on thee also the armour and other panoply of the great Paul. The outward iron avails nothing towards making him who wears it invulnerable, if he throws aside that apostolical armour. Nay, without that, it serves only to draw down the man's spirit to the earth, and to impede its flight upward. Such iron is in itself neither salutary nor hurtful; but it may be either. It has sometimes become the one and sometimes the other, according to the bent of the will." Love he declares to be, for all Christians alike, the central point of the Christian life. "Only obtain this, and the whole troop of the other virtues will follow in its train. As it is the beginning of all good, it will call forth all good in you. Pronounce but the word love, and you have named at once all goodness. If love enters the soul, the whole band of the other virtues enters along with it. But if she be excluded, the soul is manifestly left naked of all good."<sup>3</sup> "Not so much depends on the frequent bowing of the knee," says he, in one of his sermons,<sup>4</sup> "but a great deal upon what is signified by that outward sign, prostration of the spirit, humility of heart before God. To stand erect was not less acceptable to God than to bow the knee; nay, it was more in harmony with nature, more consonant with activity."<sup>5</sup> To persons who complained that they wanted the gift of tears, he says, they should not feel pained about that. Charity shown to the poor would fully supply its place.<sup>6</sup>

The rage for dogmatizing among the Greek emperors had, from the earliest times, been the cause of many checks and disorders

<sup>1</sup> On the improvement of the monastic life, § 146, p. 250.

<sup>2</sup> xxii., p. 186.

<sup>3</sup> xi. § 7, p. 62: αὐτῇ, ὅσα καὶ ἀρχή, ἅπασαν ἀγαθοπραξίαν ἐν ὑμῖν ἐκφανεῖ. οὐκ ἔφθη τις ἀγάπην εἰπεῖν καὶ συνεξεφωνήθη αὐτῇ ἔμπαν καλόν. ἀγάπην παρειδουμένην εἰς ψυχὴν, συνειρέχεται καὶ λοιπὸς ἅπας ὁμιλος ἀρετῶν. εἰ δὲ αὐτὴ ἐκείθεν ἐκκίε-  
λίσσεται, δῆλον, ὅτι ἱρμηὸς ἡ ψυχὴ ἐκείνη παντὸς ἀγαθοῦ.

<sup>4</sup> II. on Ps. xlviii., p. 11.

<sup>5</sup> καὶ φυσικώτερον ἔμα καὶ ἐνεργίστερον καὶ πρακτικώτερον.

<sup>6</sup> § 14, p. 10.

in the Greek church; and the same thing proved true under Manuel Comnenus, who reigned from 1143 to 1180. The historian Nicetas Choniates was doubtless right in saying, the Roman emperors were not satisfied to rule, and to deal with freemen as with slaves; but they took it quite amiss, if they were not also recognized as wise and infallible dogmatists, as lawgivers, called to decide on matters human and divine.<sup>1</sup> The Byzantine spirit, which tolerated the emperors in this, characteristically expresses itself in these words of the historian Johannes Cinnamos: "To speculate on God's essence, is a thing allowable to none but teachers, the most considerable of the priests, *and perhaps also to the emperors on account of their dignity.*"<sup>2</sup> It is characteristic of the Byzantine emperors, that they took it amiss when the epithet "holy" was not applied to them as the anointed of God.<sup>3</sup>

That tendency, which had called forth the fanatical attachment to the word *θεοτόκος* in the Greek church, continued still to be active there; and it ever found a welcome admission among emperors, who, in proportion as they neglected to form and prove their lives by the teachings of Christ, seemed the more to imagine that they could honour him by zeal for such empty formularies. Thus, for example, the emperor Manuel Comnenus stirred up a violent controversy about the following formula: The incarnate God, in the sacrifice of Christ, was at once the offerer and the victim.<sup>4</sup> This formula,<sup>5</sup> to which the emperor had taken a fancy, must be adopted by all. A synod convened at Constantinople drove the matter through;<sup>6</sup> and many of the bishops, who resisted it, were deposed from their seats. At a subsequent period he was led back again to this favourite thought, by one who had acquired great authority as a man of learning and a dialectician, and had often been employed on embassies to the West. This

<sup>1</sup> The remark of this historian in speaking of Manuel Comnenus, lib. vii. c. v.

<sup>2</sup> Lib. vi., c. ii.

<sup>3</sup> τὸ ἅγιον, ὃ σὺνθετε ἔχειν ὡς χρισθίντας μὲν τοὺς βασιλεῖς. Pachymeres de Michaële Paleologo, lib. vi., c. xxxi., p. 507.

<sup>4</sup> τὸν εσσαρκωμένον θεὸν προσφέρειν τε ὁμῶς καὶ προσφέρεισθαι. Nicet. Choniates. Manuel Comnen. lib. vii., c. v.

<sup>5</sup> The opponent of it was the Diaconus Soterich. See his explication of the form published in a programme by Prof. Tafel, A. D. 1832, p. 10.

<sup>6</sup> The transactions of the same synod in the programme just mentioned of Prof. Tafel, p. 18.

was Demetrius. He had accused the Occidentals of error, because they taught that the Son of God was inferior to the Father, and yet equal to him. But Manuel took part with the Occidentals, maintaining that most assuredly this might be said of the God-man, in virtue of the twofold relation in which he must be considered.<sup>1</sup> And in evidence, he cited Christ's words, "My Father is greater than I!" which he said as God-man, as one in two natures. And thus the controversy turned upon the interpretation of these words. It is a melancholy sign of deadness in the Greek church, that the controversy on the question whether these words should be referred to Christ according to his divine or according to his human nature, or to both at the same time, was waged as long and as vehemently, as if the salvation of souls were depending on this point.<sup>2</sup> And not merely bishops, but statesmen and courtiers, and finally laymen of all ranks, took sides in the dispute; and the scenes were renewed which were witnessed in the fourth century.<sup>3</sup> The emperor required that his explanation of these words, according to which they referred to the entire God-man, in virtue of his human nature, should be adopted by all. Those who would not submit to this, drew upon themselves his displeasure, and at last he forced the matter through at an *endemic synod* (σύνεδρος ἐνδημούσα) held under his own presidency at Constantinople in 1166, before which he caused to be laid many extracts from the church fathers, and in the transactions of which he himself took an active part.<sup>4</sup> The bishops, who would not receive this doctrine, were threatened with deposition; persons of the higher ranks, with the loss of their dignities and the confiscation of their goods; the rest, with banishment from the residential city. The emperor is even said to have issued an edict in confirmation of these decrees, denouncing the punishment of death on those who dared oppose them;

1 The first beginning of the dispute is recorded by Johannes Cinnamos, lib. vi. c. ii.

2 See Nicet. Choniat. lib. vii., c. v., p. 276, seqq.

3 The general interest taken in this controversy is noticed in the introduction to the Acts of the council held on this subject at Constantinople, under Manuel Comnenus: ταῦτα εἶχον καὶ λαοφόροι καὶ σταυροὶ καὶ οἴκοι περιλαλούμενα. Maji Scriptorum veterum nova collectio, t. iv., p. 4, Romae, 1831.

4 See the above-mentioned Acts of the same.

5 According to the account of Nicetas.

and a stone tablet which contained these determinations was set up in the church of St Sophia.

Towards the end of the reign of Manuel, another controversy was stirred up by him in the Greek church; to which, also, an undue importance was ascribed. The church books at Constantinople contained the form of an oath, couched in very unsuitable language, we admit, for those who came over from Mohammedanism to the Christian faith. "Anathema to Mohammed's God, of whom he says that he neither begat nor was begotten."<sup>1</sup> But perhaps this formula had never as yet given that scandal to any one which the emperor thought proper to discover in it. He believed that it contained a blasphemy; for by it the anathema was pronounced on God himself; and in the breasts of Mohammedans who came over to Christianity, it would excite scruples against the Christian faith. He proposed, therefore, at an endemic synod, convened under the presidency of Theodosius, bishop of Constantinople, the abrogation of this formula. But he was unable, on this occasion, to carry his point. It was maintained against him, that the God of Mohammed was plainly not the true God. He was not to be balked, however, by failing of his object here. With the assistance of some of his court-clergy,<sup>2</sup> he drew up a wordy edict against the above-mentioned form of oath. But this met again with violent opposition from the patriarch and the bishops, which excited great indignation in the emperor. Determined to carry his point at any cost, he summoned the patriarch, with a synod, to his palace in Scutari, to which he had retired on account of his health. When they arrived, the emperor's secretary handed them an edict of the emperor against the formula, which he required them to sign, and an extremely violent document, in which he declared he should be ungrateful to the King of kings, to whom he was bound by so many obligations, if he

1 See Nicetas de Comneno, lib. vii., c. vi. The words added, *καὶ ὅτι ὁλόσφυρος ἐστὶ*, are attended with difficulty. It was even at that time confessed, as Nicetas shows, that it could not be exactly understood what was meant: *ἄλλως δὲ μὴ συνιέναι ἀκριβῶς ὅποιόν τι ἐστὶ τὸ ὁλόσφυρον*. The last word denotes that which is solid, firm, or wrought of such materials and made of one piece; thus Pliny, *Hist. Nat. lib. xxxiii.*, c. xxvi., employs the word *holosphyrtos* to signify a statue of this sort cast in metal. Perhaps the allusion is to the stone in the Kaaba at Mecca, which the Mohammedans were accused of worshipping. Vide Hottinger, *Hist. oriental.* p. 156.

2 As Nicetas says: *ὑπουργοὶς εἰς τοῦτο χρησάμενοι, οὗς ἤδει τῶν ἐκ τῆς βασιλείου ἐβόλῃς τὸν καίρον κολακεύοντα.*

suffered him to lie under the anathema ; and, following a common practice of the Byzantine emperors, he threatened that he would apply to the pope, expecting to frighten the bishops to compliance. He said he would assemble a larger synod and call in the pope's assistance. At this juncture, the venerable Eustathius stood forth, holding it to be his duty, as a shepherd, to declare firmly against the imperial edict. " He could not, he said, " look upon the God of that Mohammed, from whom so much mischief had come, as the true God." When this was reported to the emperor, he fell into a paroxysm of anger. He demanded that Eustathius should be impeached. Either he who had dared to injure the Lord's anointed must be punished, or it must be proved against himself that he had never worshipped the true God, and, in that case, he would willingly allow himself to be converted. It was with the greatest difficulty that the patriarch could appease the emperor ; and after much negotiation a middle course was finally agreed upon, and it was determined that, in place of the anathema against the God of Mohammed, should be substituted the certainly more judicious form : " against Mohammed, and his doctrine, and everything connected therewith."<sup>1</sup>

In respect to the relation of the Greek church to the Latin, the after-effects of those schisms which had made their appearance at an earlier period still continued to be experienced. The systematic evolution of the system of faith of the Roman church, by scholasticism, and the perfected form of Papal absolutism, could only serve to define more sharply the line of division between the two churches, and to make the difference still more radical. While they on the side of the Roman church, in their consciousness of possessing the only true tradition, and an authority founded on divine right, and destined to judge and decide over all, supposed they could look down on the Greek church with a feeling of superiority ; they of the Greek church, priding themselves on a traditional literary culture, which, to be sure, must fade to insignificance when compared with the new mental achievements of the West, were still inclined to despise the Latins as barbarians. The crusades brought Greeks and Latins into closer connection and more living contact with each other ; but these were fre-

<sup>1</sup> Ἀνάθημα τῷ Μωάμετ καὶ πᾶσι τῇ αὐτοῦ διδαχῇ καὶ διαδοχῇ.



quently but sources of controversy and distrust, and served rather to widen than to narrow the distance between the two parties. As we have already remarked on a former page,<sup>1</sup> the disputed question prevailing between the two churches, concerning the doctrine of the Holy Ghost, was brought up anew for discussion at the beginning of these undertakings, in 1098, before a council held by pope Urban the Second, at Bari. Anselm of Canterbury stood forth as advocate of the Latin church doctrine, and the anathema on that of the Greek church was here renewed.

Among the succeeding transactions between the two churches, one particularly deserving notice was a conference held under the Greek emperor, John Comnenus the Second, between Anselm of Havelberg,<sup>2</sup> a bishop eminently distinguished for weight of character, intellectual ability, and education, and the archbishop Nechites (doubtless Nicetas) of Nicomedia, who superintended the direction of studies already noticed, at Constantinople, in 1146, on the questions in dispute between the two churches, and the means of settling them. When Anselm, at a subsequent period, was residing at the court of pope Eugene the Third, he drew up, at the request of that pope, a full account of that conference.<sup>3</sup> We may take it for granted, indeed, that we are not presented here with a set of minutes drawn up with diplomatical accuracy; still, we have every reason to presume that the mode in which the Greek prelate managed his cause in this conference has, in all essential respects, been truly represented by Anselm. He represents him as saying many pointed and striking things against the Latin church, such as he, assuredly, could not have invented at his own point of view, and would not have put into the mouth of his opponent.

In respect to the contested point in the doctrine of the Holy Ghost, Nicetas appealed, as the Greeks were ever wont to do, to the passage in the gospel of St John, and to the inviolable authority of the Nicene creed. Anselm replied conformably with the doctrine of the church, as it had been settled since the time of

<sup>1</sup> Page 224.

<sup>2</sup> See respecting him, A. F. Riedel's Essay, in the *Allgemeinen Archiv, für die Geschichtskunde des preussischen Staates* von L. von Ledebur, vol. viii., f. 97; and by Dr Spieker, in *Illgen's Zeitschrift für historische Theologie*, vol. ii., f. 1840.

<sup>3</sup> In D'Achery *Spicileg.* t. i.

Vincentius of Lerins. He presented, on the other side, the progressive evolution of that doctrine, under the guidance of the Holy Spirit, actuating the church, by virtue of which the doctrine, contained as to its germ in the sacred Scriptures, had been more exactly defined and explicated, and what it contained in spirit, reduced to the form of more precise conceptions ; just as the work of one universal council is completed in the gradual development of Christian doctrine by another and later. All this is the work of the same Spirit, promised by Christ to his disciples and to his church ; of whom he says that he would teach many things which the apostles, at that time, could not understand. Even the doctrine of the Trinity, as explained by the council of Nice, the doctrine of the divinity of the Holy Ghost, cannot be pointed out as a doctrine expressed, in so many words, in the Bible.<sup>1</sup> Anselm alleged, in behalf of the well-grounded authority of the Roman church, that all heresies had found their birthplace in the Greek church ; while in the former, the pure doctrine had ever been preserved, free from alloy, amid all the disputes proceeding from that other quarter. To this Nicetas replied :<sup>2</sup> “ If the heresies had sprung up in the Greek church, still, they were subdued there ; and they could only contribute to the clearer evolution and stronger confirmation of the faith.” And he endeavours to point out, here, a substantial advantage of the Greek church over the Latin, tracing it to the predominating scientific culture which had distinguished the Greek church from the beginning. “ Perhaps the very reason why so many heresies had not sprung up among the Romans was, that there had not been among them so many learned and acute investigators of the sacred Scriptures. If that conceit of knowledge by which the Greek heretics had been misled, deserved censure, still, the ignorance of the Latins, who affirmed neither one thing nor another about the faith, but only followed the lead of others in unlearned simplicity, deserved not to be praised.<sup>3</sup> It must be ascribed either to blameable negli-

<sup>1</sup> Lib. ii., c. xxi., seqq.

<sup>2</sup> Lib. iii., c. xi.

<sup>3</sup> Lib. iii., c. xi. : *Sicut haereticorum, qui apud nos fuerunt, vana sapientia, qua seducti sunt, culpanda est, ita nimirum [which, without doubt, should read minime, as irony here would be out of place] laudanda est Romana imperitia, qua ipsi nec hoc nec illud de fide dixerunt, sed alios inde dicentes et docentes simplicitate quasi minus docta audierunt.*

gence in examining into the faith, or to singular inactivity of mind and dulness of apprehension, or to hindrances growing out of the heavy load of secular business."<sup>1</sup> He applies to the Latins, in this regard, the words in 1 Tim. i. 7, and to the Greeks what Aristotle says of the usefulness of doubt as a passage-way to truth. Earnestly does Nicetas protest against the intimation that the Greek church might be compelled to adopt what the pope, without a council held in concurrence with the Greeks, might, on his own self-assumed authority, prescribe. "If the pope, seated on the high throne of his glory, will fulminate against us, and hurl down his mandates upon us from his lofty station; if, not with our concurrence, but arbitrarily, and, according to his own good pleasure, he will judge us, nay, order us; what fraternal or what paternal relation can subsist long on such terms! Who would patiently endure this? If we could, we might justly be called, and should be in fact slaves and not sons of the church."<sup>2</sup> He then goes on to say that, if such authority belonged to the pope, then all study of the Scriptures, and of the sciences, all Greek intellect and Greek learning, were superfluous. The pope alone would be bishop, teacher, and pastor; he alone would have to be responsible to God for all, whom God had committed to his charge alone. The apostolic creed did not teach men to acknowledge a Roman church in especial, but one common, catholic, apostolic church.

Though Nicetas defended the use of ordinary bread in the celebration of the Lord's supper, a custom which had always been handed down in the Greek church, yet he estimates the importance of this disputed point with Christian moderation.<sup>4</sup> He says that he himself, in case no other bread was to be had, would have no hesitation in using unleavened bread in the mass. "Since,

1 Quod contigiase videtur vel ex nimia negligentia investigandae fidei vel ex grossa tarditate hebetis ingenii vel ex occupatione ac mole saecularis impediementi.

2 Si Romanus pontifex in excelsa throno gloriae suae residens nobis tonare et quasi projicere mandata sua de sublimi voluerit, et non nostro consilio, sed proprio arbitrio pro beneplacito suo de nobis et de ecclesiis nostris judicare, imo imperare voluerit, quae fraternitas seu etiam quae paternitas haec esse poterit? Quis hoc unquam aequo animo sustinere queat? Tunc nempe veri servi et non filii ecclesiae recte dici possumus et esse.

3 Lib. iii., c. viii.

4 Lib. c. c. xviii.

however," he adds, " the number of the narrow-minded far exceeds that of persons well-instructed in the faith, and the undistinguishing multitude easily take offence, it was worthy of all pains, that both Latins and Greeks should be induced to join, heart and hand, in bringing about, in some suitable place and at some suitable time, a general council, at which the use of leavened or unleavened bread, by all at the same time, should be adopted, or, if such an agreement could not be arrived at without giving scandal to one of the two parties, yet all should agree in this, that neither party should condemn the other, and this difference should no longer turn to the injury of holy charity. "Mutual condemnation," says he, " is a far greater sin than this diversity of custom, which was in itself a matter of indifference." Both finally agreed on this point, that a general council, consisting of Latins and Greeks, for the purpose of bringing about a reunion of the two churches, was a thing greatly to be desired.

But the irritable state of feeling between the two parties heightened by the crusades and the consequences following in their train, and the arrogant pretensions of the popes, who would not lower their tone, put the assembling of such a council out of the question; and even if it could have been held, it must, for the same reasons, have failed of coming to any beneficial results. When afterwards, in the twelfth century, several provinces of the East were conquered by the crusaders, when finally, in 1204, a Western empire was founded at Constantinople, the Latins conducted towards the Greeks in so unchristian, despotic, and cruel a manner that the hate of the latter was thereby roused to a higher intensity, and the impression endured for a long time afterwards. Every violent measure was resorted to for the purpose of subjecting all to the church of Rome, and of suppressing everything peculiar to the Greeks. The monks especially were treated with great harshness. Many Greeks died as martyrs at the stake, for the liberties of their church, and the honest convictions of their minds.<sup>1</sup>

<sup>1</sup> See the report of an unknown Greek particularly concerning the cruelties perpetrated on the island of Cyprus, in the work of Leo Allatius, a Greek who had gone over to the Roman church: *De ecclesiae occidentalis atque orientalis perpetua consensione*, lib. ii., c. xiii., p. 694. To this learned man such proceedings of the Romish church seem perfectly regular, and he very naïvely remarks: *Opus erat, effraenes pro-*

Though by these events the Greeks must have become still more alienated from the Roman church, and the transactions on the island of Cyprus and at Constantinople had left an indelible impression on the minds of the Greek clergy, yet a new political interest came into play, which made the Greek emperors, who had taken up their residence at Nice, more desirous than ever of the union of the two churches. The emperor John Ducas Vatazes hoped, by the mediation of the pope, that he should be able to recover what had been rent from the empire by the arms of the Latins; and for this reason invited and favoured negotiations for union. The patriarch Germanus of Constantinople, but who also resided at Nice, sent two letters to pope Gregory the Ninth, and to the cardinals, which certainly betray no evidence in him of a man who could have been induced by any political considerations to bow before the papacy.<sup>1</sup> The patriarch begins with saying that he regarded Christ as the only true corner-stone, on which the whole church was founded: "Whoever believes on thee, as this corner-stone," he exclaims,—addressing Christ, and probably alluding already to the exclusive pretensions of the church of Rome,—“shall in nowise come to shame, nor find himself torn from the foundation of his hope. This truth none can gainsay but a disciple of the father of lies.” As Christ proclaims peace to those who are nigh, and to those who are afar off, as by his death on the cross he had brought together all, from the utmost bounds of the earth, into a fellowship of piety, so it was his own cause to bring back those who had fallen apart to the unity of faith. He then urgently calls upon the pope to make every effort for the restoration of church-fellowship between Greeks and Latins. He defends the Greeks against the objections made to their orthodoxy; against the complaints that they were the authors of the schism:

*priaque fidei rebelles et veritatis oppugnatores non exilio, sed ferro et igne in sanio-  
rem mentem reducere. Haeretici proscribendi sunt, exterminandi sunt, puniendi sunt et  
pertinaces occidendi, cremandi. Ita leges sanciant, ita observavit antiquitas, nec alius  
mos est recentioris ecclesiae tum Graecae tum Latinae.*

<sup>1</sup> These two letters, published by Matthew of Paris, at the year 1237, f. 386. Nothing but the bias of party-interest could ever lead one to hold that these letters are a fabrication, on the ground of the violent passages in them directed against the popes; Gregory's answer shows that many passages of that sort must have been in the letter to which he is replying; besides, what took place subsequently, during the negotiations at Constantinople, testifies to the existence of such a tone of feeling as is expressed in these letters.

"Many persons of high dignity and power," says he, "would listen to you, were they not afraid of unjust oppressions, wanton extortions, or indecorous servitude." Only one thing was wanting to the Greeks, the blood and crown of martyrdom: "What I say, and why I say it," he then exclaims, "the famous island of Cyprus can tell, which has furnished new martyrs. Was that a pretty business, most holy pope, successor of the apostle Peter? Did Peter, the gentle and humble disciple of Christ, prescribe that?" And he held up to the pope the doctrine set forth in the first epistle of Peter; while to the Greeks he applies what the same apostle says of the faith that is tried by the fire of sufferings. He concludes with again entreating the pope that he would spare no pains in bringing about the great work of restoring unity to the church, as he himself would not be hindered by any bodily weakness, any infirmity of old age, from doing all that lay within his power. He said: "He was well aware that both parties maintained the error was not with them, which each would of course say of itself. But both parties should look into the mirror of the sacred Scriptures, and of the writings left behind them by the old church teachers, and thereby examine themselves." The same spirit also expressed itself in the letter written by the patriarch to the cardinals: "Let us all, said he to them, 'be of the same mind. Let not one of us say: I am of Paul; another, I am of Apollos; another, I am of Cephas; another, I am of Christ, but let us all call ourselves of Christ, as we are all called Christians.'" Here, too, the rending of the unity of the church was attributed to the extortions and oppressive measures of the church of Rome: "From being a mother, she had turned into a step-mother; unmindful of the words of our Lord, that he who humbleth himself shall be exalted, she trampled most under foot those who humbled themselves the most before her." The pope hereupon sent two Dominicans and two Franciscans to Constantinople, as delegates to treat concerning peace,—with two letters to the patriarch, in which he took notice of the reproaches thrown out in the above-cited letters, but also passed by many things, perhaps purposely, in silence. He allowed that the patriarch was right, in saying that Christ is the chief corner-stone and first foundation of the church; but reminded him that the apostles were the secondary foundations

(*secundaria fundamenta*), among whom the first and most important was the apostle Peter, of whose primacy he was careful to remind him. The envoys, on their arrival at Constantinople, in 1233, were received with great marks of honour; but the negotiations, in which the Greeks betrayed the irritated state of their feelings at the wrongs they had suffered, led to no favourable results. The legates declared that the Roman church would not depart an *iota* from their faith and symbol; the Greeks must confess to the faith that the Holy Ghost proceeds from the Son as well as from the Father; and they must set forth this in their sermons before the people, and condemn and burn their books written against this doctrine. On the other hand, however, the pope would not force them to recite the creed with that addition. Neither should the use of unleavened bread, in the Lord's supper, be pressed on the Greeks; only they should firmly believe and preach to others that the body of Christ could be made of unleavened as well as leavened bread, and all the books composed against that usage of the Roman church they should condemn and burn. These last declarations were received by the emperor, and by the bishops, with great indignation; and so the negotiations were broken up.<sup>1</sup>

If the restoration of fraternal communion between the two great portions of the church, which together were designed to form one whole, might itself be an object of longing desire to all who were not blinded by national hate, or narrow-minded fanaticism, much more must the great evils which sprang out of the schism, and continued to be propagated and to spring up afresh from age to age, call forth in the unprejudiced the wish for a reunion, and impel them to cast about for the means of securing so great an object. And when such persons inquired into the points of dispute which had come into discussion between the two parties, these, most assuredly, would appear to them as of little or no importance in their relation to the interests of the Christian faith; for the far graver doctrinal opposition betwixt the two churches had in fact remained an unconscious one, never expressed in any public confession. In the controverted point which was considered of the most weight,—the doctrine concerning the Holy

<sup>1</sup> See the account of the papal legates in Rainaldi, A.D. 1233, § 5, et seq.

Ghost,—an easy method of accommodation readily presented itself, that of resorting to a comparison of the older church teachers. Accordingly, a pious and learned man of these times, standing in high veneration among the Greeks, the abbot and priest Nicephorus Blemmydes, devoted himself to the business of writing for the peace of the church,<sup>1</sup> which he was induced to do by a purely Christian interest, separate from all those other considerations which under these circumstances are so apt to mingle in.

He was one of the few who did not cringe before the Byzantine despotism, as we may see from the following example: The emperor John Ducas kept up an illicit intercourse with Marcesina, a lady of the court, with whose beauty he had become enamoured. He treated her as a second wife, and required nearly the same honours to be paid to her as to an empress. The pious monk whom we have mentioned, was the only one who fearlessly expressed himself, both in writing and conversation, against this scandal offered to a Christian people; and once, when she proposed visiting the church connected with the monastery of Blemmydes, and to partake of the communion there, he caused the church doors to be shut in her face. Accustomed to receive homage from all, she was the more exasperated at receiving this treatment from a monk, and urged the emperor, over whom in other matters her influence was unbounded, to revenge her insulted pride. The worthy monk, foreseeing the vengeance that must overtake him, issued a circular letter,<sup>2</sup> giving an account of what he had done, explaining the reasons which had led him to do so, and expressing the noble temper which governed him.<sup>3</sup> “Though by this sudden and unexpected appearance,” says he, “we were taken by surprise, yet we did not for a moment hesitate to drive away from the common prayer and song of the faithful, the adulteress, who, in an unheard-of manner, insults the laws of Christ and makes the insult a public one, and to banish with all our power the unholy from holy places; not without fear, indeed, owing to the weakness of the flesh, but overcoming the

<sup>1</sup> See two treatises relating to this subject, in Leo Allatius *Graecia orthodoxa*, t. i.

<sup>2</sup> *ἐπιστολή καθολικωτέρα.*

<sup>3</sup> Of Marcesina he says: ὅτι ἡ ἀρχοντίσσα ἡ Μαρκεσίνα, ἡ ἐξοχῶς ἐρωμένη τῷ βασιλεῖ καὶ διὰ τοῦτο πάντων ὑπερταροῦσα καὶ αὐτῇ τῇ ἀβγούστῃ πρωτεύουσα τυραννικῶς εἰσέφρησεν, &c.



fear of man by the fear of the Lord, so that we would rather die than act contrary to his laws. Though many," he wrote, "might think differently from himself, yet he could not follow them in that which is wrong. He should stand ready even to renounce the fathers, that he might be only a disciple of Christ, and to keep himself wholly in his footsteps and laws. Whoever was not so minded could not be Christ's disciple." And he concluded with these words: "Thus thinking, we dared not present the holy bread to the impure and shameless, and to cast the pearls of the liturgy before one who wallows in the mire of adultery. Therefore will we suffer in the Lord, whatever may betide us."<sup>1</sup>

But the emperor, restrained by the voice of his conscience, did not venture to attempt anything against the pious man who was in earnest for the honour of the divine law.<sup>2</sup> Under the emperor Theodore Lascaris the Second, the dignity of patriarch of Constantinople was offered to this Blemmydes, but he preferred the quiet of his monastery.<sup>3</sup>

The above-mentioned reason, which led the emperors residing in Nice to wish for the union of the churches, was removed, it is true, when in 1261 Michael Paleologus, by his crimes, had risen to the imperial dignity,—and by crimes sought to maintain himself in it,—reconquered Constantinople, and restored the ancient empire. But on the other hand, the political motives inducing him to seek the restoration of a good understanding with the pope, became the stronger. He stood in fear of the armies of the West, which were again threatening the Greek empire, and hoped, through means of the pope, to be able to avert this danger. He was ready himself to make any sacrifice for this object, and felt assured, not without reason, that the papacy, even though submitted to, must always remain a powerless thing to the Greek church, and the subjection be merely one of form and appearance. But he could not so easily succeed in making the heads of the clergy and of the monks feel the force of these considerations, and share these convictions with himself. Great as

<sup>1</sup> Vide Leo Allat. de ecclesiae occidentalis atque orientalis perpetua consens., lib. ii., c. xiv., p. 718.

<sup>2</sup> See the historical work of Nicephorus Gregoras, lib. ii., c. vii.

<sup>3</sup> L. c. lib. iii., c. i.

was the power of the rude Byzantine despotism over the minds of its subjects, still, it was opposed on this side by a formidable check, which brute force could not so easily remove ; and there subsisted already in the Greek church a schism, for which this emperor was accountable, and which might easily be followed up by another still more radical, to increase the confusion.

When, under the reign of Theodore Lascaris the Second, Nicephorus Blemmydes declined the patriarchal dignity offered to him, another pious monk, Arsenius, was induced to accept it, though he was afterwards constrained to lament that he had not followed the example of the first-named individual. That emperor left behind him, at his death, a son six years old, over whom he appointed the patriarch guardian ; and the latter felt himself sacredly bound to watch over the young heir of the empire, till he could enter upon the government. It being out of his power to prevent Michael Paleologus from usurping the supreme authority, he crowned him ; yet only on the express condition that he bound himself, by a solemn oath, to hold the government no longer than to the majority of John Lascaris, and then to resign in his favour. But that usurper refused to be bound by his oath ; and the more effectually to exclude from the throne the regular successor of the late emperor, and to secure himself against all danger from his plots, he caused John Lascaris, who was now a child about ten years old, to be deprived of his eyesight. The patriarch Arsenius immediately excommunicated him ; and the emperor, though he might silence the upbraidings of his own conscience at the commission of so great a crime, and forget the judgment of a holy God, yet dreaded the tribunal of the church. The absolution of the church was, to him, the same as the forgiveness of sin. A stranger to all true fear of God, the despot humbled himself before the tribunal of the church. Submitting to the penance imposed on him, he expected thus to gain over the patriarch so as to induce him to remove the ban and grant him absolution. Thus would he make the matter up with his own conscience and the judgment of God. But he could not bend the mind of the pious patriarch. The only course that remained, therefore, was to get rid of him. A synod called together at Constantinople was the instrument employed to subvert him, and he cheerfully retired once more to the seclusion and

quiet of the cloister. A bishop of Adrianople, Germanus, who was friendly to the emperor, was appointed his successor. Still, a large party remained devoted to Arsenius, and refused to recognize any other as patriarch. Germanus found himself assailed by reproaches on all sides, and resigned his office. Joseph, an aged and unlettered monk, wholly ignorant of the world, finally assumed the patriarchal dignity. In the midst of a large convocation of bishops, the emperor, after the celebration of the mass, prostrated himself at the foot of the altar, and declared himself guilty of two sins, perjury, and depriving the son of his predecessor of his eyesight. Then the patriarch first stood up and gave the emperor, while prostrate on the ground, a written certificate of the forgiveness of his sins, and the bishops, one after the other, in the order of their rank, read to him this form of absolution. The emperor, after partaking of the communion, departed, joyful, as if the burden had been removed from his conscience, and he were now made sure of the grace of God himself.<sup>1</sup> Nor did he forget how much he was indebted for the peace of his soul to the patriarch Joseph. The new patriarch, however, was but the more detested by the party of Arsenius; and the schism betwixt the Arsenians and the followers of Joseph penetrated into the midst of families.<sup>2</sup>

Although the attempt to effect a union between the two churches, would unavoidably create new divisions in the Greek church already rent by these parties, still, the dread of the storm which threatened him from the West caused the emperor to overlook all other difficulties. The motives which influenced Michael Paleologus were sustained and reinforced by the fact that in 1271,<sup>3</sup> an individual who on his return from the East had taken pains accurately to inform himself of the emperor's situation, who took a lively interest in the renewal of the crusades, and considered the reconciliation of the Greeks and Latins a very important means to that end, Gregory the Tenth, was elected pope. It was the determination of this pope to make it his special busi-

The words of the historian Nicephorus Gregoras, lib. iv., c. viii.: *καὶ οὕτως ἀπῆλθε χαίρων ὁ βασιλεὺς, ὁμοῦ τῇ τοιαύτῃ συγχωρήσει καὶ θεὸν αὐτὸν εὐμενῇ καὶ ἡλεων αὐτῷ καταστήναι οἰόμενος.* George Pachymeres's history of this emperor's reign, lib. iv., c. xxv.

<sup>2</sup> Pachymeres's History, lib. iv., c. xxviii.

<sup>3</sup> See vol. vii., p. 252.

ness at the general council, which was to assemble in 1274, to set on foot a new crusade, and consequently to bring up the subject of the union. When the Roman embassy for peace, in which John Parastron, a man of Greek descent, especially distinguished himself by his zeal for the cause, arrived at Constantinople, the emperor exerted himself to the utmost to hasten the business to a conclusion. He described to the clergy the threatening danger which might thus be averted. He appealed to the negotiations already mentioned, under the emperor Johannes Ducas, when the Latins were by no means accused of impiety on account of their doctrine of the Holy Ghost, and it was by no means required that their addition to this doctrine should be expunged from all other writings, but only from the creed. He represented to them, that the Latins and Greeks agreed as nearly together on the most important matters of faith, as if the difference between them was only a difference of language. There needed to be no scruples about admitting the name of the pope into the ecclesiastical books (*διδυχα*), and of mentioning him in the public prayers of the church, since the same thing was done in the case of bishops of far inferior dignity, as a mark of church-fellowship. Why should there be any hesitation about calling the pope brother and first brother, when even the rich man in torments did not hesitate to call Abraham father, from whom he was separated by that great gulf which indicated an opposition of temper. Even though the right of appeals to the pope were sanctioned, still, owing to the wide separation by sea, the thing could not easily be carried out in practice.<sup>1</sup> The patriarch Joseph, who was otherwise inclined to compliance, and whom the emperor was disposed to indulge out of gratitude for the absolution he had obtained from him, offered here the most determined resistance, being fully under the influence of the common sentiment which prevailed in the Greek church. Not having sufficient confidence in his own learning, he requested his archivarius (*χαρτοφύλαξ*) Johannes Beccus,<sup>2</sup> a man of high authority on ac-

<sup>1</sup> See the report of George Pachymeres, who himself took a part in these proceedings, in his history of this emperor, lib. v., c. xii.

<sup>2</sup> The two historians, Nicephorus Gregoras and Pachymeres, do not entirely agree with each other in their judgment about the learning of Beccus. The former says (lib. v., c. ii., p. 129, in the latest collection): in the knowledge of Hellenic literature, others had gone before him; but in the *ἀσκήσεις δογμάτων ἐκκλησιαστικῶν*, all appeared as

count of his knowledge in church literature, and his rhetorical gifts, after the Byzantine standard, that he would give a public expression of his judgment on these matters. Fear held him back. But when the patriarch bade him speak on penalty of the ban, he at length surmounted his fears, and in direct terms declared the Latins to be heretics. This was of great weight on the side of the party whom he led. The concentrated fury of the emperor now fell upon him; he was thrown with his whole family into prison, and the emperor, who considered it a matter of the greatest consequence to gain his voice, employed this treatment as a means also of bending his will and inducing him to alter his tone. For the purpose of gaining him over, extracts from the older church teachers were laid before him in his dungeon. He desired to read the excerpted passages in their connection, and the emperor readily consented. He was permitted to leave his prison, so as to be able to consult himself all the books he thought necessary. One might be disposed to think, from the way in which the change in Beccus's opinions was brought about, that it was merely a hypocritical pretence. Yet his later behaviour, the fidelity with which he adhered, under every change of circumstances, to the principles once expressed by him, evidence that he was not one of those whose views are determined by extraneous considerations. And the writings subsequently composed by him in defence of the union, speak the language of conviction, and lead us to infer how the change must have been brought about in him, though we might be inclined to suppose that the outward circumstances also exercised an unconscious influence. His first violent declaration might have proceeded from the passion which he shared in common with the other zealots of the Greek church, before he had made any exact inquiry into the contested points. Now he had leisure and quiet to think over the great evils which had been wrought by the schism and the violent opposition of the two parties, to

children in comparison with him. The other remarks, that he busied himself so much with Hellenic literature that he could not make himself so well acquainted with ecclesiastical. Vide lib. v., p. 381. Perhaps he excelled in the so-called gifts of discourse and dialectics, but had little knowledge of Greek literature or ecclesiastical either. If he was no great proficient in ecclesiastical learning, the change of his views on matters of ecclesiastical controversy may be more easily explained without disadvantage to his character.

weigh more exactly the points of dispute, and to compare them with the far more important articles in which both the churches were agreed. The compromise already proposed by many, in the most important point of dispute, the doctrine concerning the Holy Spirit, appeared to him a plain and obvious one. In particular, the writings of the venerable Nicephorus Blemmydes, writings prompted by a sincere regard for the peace of the church, but which he had never before read, seem to have produced a great effect on his mind. Thus, from being the most zealous opponent, he became by degrees the warmest supporter of the union; and in him the emperor found the most important instrument for promoting his designs, an instrument which he needed so much the more, as it was now vain to expect that he should be able to gain over the patriarch Joseph, who had bound himself by an oath. Without listening to the contradiction of the zealots for the ancient doctrine and freedom of the Greek church, Michael Paleologus was determined to push the matter through. A respectable embassy, charged with valuable presents, was sent to Rome, and so the work of union was consummated, at the council of Lyons, in 1274, after the manner prescribed by the pope. A confession answering to the faith of the church of Rome, which had respect also to the doctrine concerning the Holy Ghost, was accepted and read in the name of the Greek church; but to the latter was conceded the right of retaining their symbol without alteration, as well as other peculiar usages, which obtained before the schism. The primacy of the church of Rome was admitted by the Greeks. The emperor had entered into an agreement with the peace-loving patriarch Joseph, that the latter should quietly resign his patriarchate, if the work of union should be consummated at Rome. This was now done; and he hailed it as a welcome event which enabled him once more to retire to the cloister. Beccus was appointed patriarch; and Joseph, being forced against his will to stand at the head of the opponents of the union, though he himself and his former archivarius cherished the same feelings towards each other as ever, Beccus was made by that party the brunt of the most violent attacks. And the measures to which the emperor resorted in order to force a recognition of the union, and punish its opponents, who might easily be represented to him as guilty

of high treason, would only serve to exasperate that party and stir up their hatred against Beccus, who was certainly a great sufferer in consequence of these proceedings. Banishment from the country, imprisonment, confiscation of goods, the scourge, the cutting off of ears and noses, and putting out of eyes, these were the means which the emperor employed against the enemies of the seeming peace which he had brought about. The fanatical opponents of the union detested its advocates still more if possible than they did the Latins themselves. Their fanaticism manifested itself by their sedulously avoiding all intercourse with the other party, by which they imagined they should be polluted. Beccus had resolved, at first, to take no notice of the calumnious attacks made against himself, for he feared that the public excitement would only be increased. But he found it impossible to resist the impulse to defend a cause which he considered just against accusations which appeared to him sophistical and calumnious. He felt constrained to defend the Latins against that fanatical hate, which would load them with every heresy, and allow the agreement in the essentials of faith to be utterly forgotten. He showed how the schism had been originally brought about by outward occasions and personal animosities. He endeavoured to expose the groundlessness of the accusations of Photius and other old polemics.<sup>1</sup> He exerted himself withal to produce a spirit of greater moderation; but in the present excited state of feelings his controversial writings could only serve to pour fresh oil on the flames and to furnish new occasions for branding him as a heretic. The mania of these disputes once more penetrated into families. Laymen became zealous for differences about which they understood nothing at all, as if the very being of the Christian faith depended thereon. Those melancholy spectacles of the fourth century were repeated, when disputes on such matters were carried on in bake-shops and public baths,—a comparison made by Beccus himself, who tells us that children, women, day-labourers, peasants, people understanding nothing about the matter, raised a great clamour and outcry against every man who dared say a word in favour of the peace

<sup>1</sup> See the controversial writings of Beccus in the above-mentioned collection of Leo Allatius.

of the church.<sup>1</sup> He then cites a statement of Gregory, of Nyssa, about the Arian controversies.<sup>2</sup> "The same thing," he says, "I see happening nowadays almost everywhere. Boys going to school, women at the spinning-wheel, peasants, and day-labourers of all sorts, are more intent and interested, than they are upon any business under their hands, in passing judgment on those who say that the Holy Ghost proceeds from the Son." And at the same time that he was thus attacked by the opponents of the emperor, he must run the risk of incurring that despot's displeasure by the greater nobleness of his own character. He availed himself both of the relation in which he stood to him as patriarch, and of the favour which he had won as promoter of the union, to intercede in behalf of many of the wretched victims of power. Violent altercations not seldom arose between him and the emperor, but he was often able to carry his point, and many owed to him their deliverance. Yet occasionally he failed; and the boldness with which he then spoke brought down upon him, for the moment, the monarch's displeasure. Thus it happened, that the emperor on a certain occasion refused to grant the patriarch, in spite of his repeated remonstrances, the pardon of an unfortunate individual. When Michael afterwards came to a great festival of saints, Beccus renewed his remonstrances, but with no better success than before. Then he held back the hand from which the emperor was about to receive the holy supper, declaring that he would not offer it to him in that unforgiving mood to his own condemnation. All the entreaties of the emperor were in vain. Ashamed and angry he left the church. Beccus withdrew from the patriarchal palace to a monastery, and the emperor was forced to recall him again from his retirement. Such scenes were ever and anon repeated. In the fourth year of his patriarchal dignity, it so happened that Beccus failed once more in his intercessions in behalf of an unfortunate person. Afterwards, on meeting the latter, he called God to witness that he had done all that lay in his power to save him. This was so interpreted by Beccus's enemies as if he had pronounced a curse on the emperor. It is

1 γυναικες και παῖδες και ἄνδρες τῶν ὅλων οὐδὲν γεωργικοῦ ἢ ἄλλου τινοῦ βαναύσου βίου πλέον εἰδότες μεγάλου ἐγκλήματος κρίνουσι, τοῦτε μικρὸν γοῦν τι τολμῶντας ὑπογράφει πρὸς τὴν τῆς ἐκκλησιαστικῆς εἰρήνης συναίνεσιν.

<sup>2</sup> See the second discourse of Beccus, respecting his unjust deposition, in Leo Allat. Græcia orthodoxa, t. ii., p. 52, seqq.



said that he was impeached for high treason. He gladly resigned the patriarchal office and retired to the monastery. But as envoys from Rome arrived just at that time, to look after the state of the union in the Greek church, the emperor was obliged once more to invoke the assistance of Beccus, in order to make the embassy believe in a peace which was only a seeming one.<sup>1</sup> As by this union only new divisions were excited in the Greek church, the thing fell more and more into neglect on both sides. The emperor saw that he had not obtained his object, which was to keep the war away from Sicily through the mediation of Rome, and became himself more lukewarm. In Rome, too, it was understood, that nothing had been gained by the seeming union; and the papal court was no longer influenced in its conduct towards the Greeks by this idle play.—In 1281, pope Martin the Fourth actually went so far as to pronounce the ban on the emperor, and Michael, who was governed entirely by political motives, on seeing that all his plans were frustrated, would gladly have retraced all his steps, if he could have done so under any plausible pretext.

But when, in the year 1282, Andronicus succeeded his father Michael in the government, the hatred conceived by the Greek people towards that union which had been forced upon them, a hatred hitherto suppressed, broke out for that very reason with the greater violence. The new emperor, who had never been a friend to the union, followed with good will the reigning tendency of spirit; and far from being disposed, like his father, to domineer over the conscience, he desired above all things to put an end to the divisions. The fanaticism of the excited multitude prevented him from observing the funeral obsequies of his father according to the usual ecclesiastical forms. Joseph was now regarded as the regular patriarch, and he was favoured also by the emperor. Beccus, who had to be protected from the popular fury, voluntarily retired to a monastery. A dignity which had caused so many painful hours, and involved him in so many uncomfortable disputes,<sup>2</sup> he probably laid down without regret, though he afterwards felt himself compelled to complain of the party which had put him down by arbitrary will, and to defend

<sup>1</sup> The full account of the particulars is in Pachymeres, lib. vi., c. xiv.

<sup>2</sup> Pachymeres says of him: τῆς τοῦ πατριάρχου τιμῆς ἐπικόρως ἔχων, ὡς πολλοῖς καὶ λίγων καὶ πράττων ἰδιόξειν.

his good cause against the fanatics who accused him of heresy. The patriarch Joseph, now reduced by severe illness and old age to the borders of the grave, and who could not therefore be inclined either to resume such an office, or to place himself at the head of a party, was obliged, by those who pretended to act in his name and under his authority, to consent to be borne on his sick-bed into the patriarch's palace.<sup>1</sup> Under the patriarch's name, whose gentle temper was altogether averse to the odious practice of branding men as heretics, as well as to all other extravagant proceedings, such acts were perpetrated by the fanatical monks and clergy as he would have utterly disapproved of, but which the feeble state of his body prevented him from publicly disclaiming. All who had in any way had anything to do with the union were regarded as cut off from the fellowship of the church; and according to the part which they had taken in that measure, ecclesiastical penalties, more or less grave, in the shape of pecuniary mulcts, were imposed on them, as a condition of their readmission to church-fellowship. The walls of the churches, the sacred utensils, were looked upon as polluted, and subjected to various ceremonies of purification. But Beccus especially, though he had voluntarily withdrawn himself from the public stage of action, was made the object of hatred and persecution. It was laid to his charge that he had forcibly obtruded himself into the place of the still living, regular patriarch. He was held up to scorn as the enemy of the Greek nation and church. From his conciliatory essays men pretended to deduce a large list of heresies; and in this church, to which a theology like the scholastic theology of the Latins was foreign even to the more moderate class, such attempts to reconcile the contrary views in the mode of apprehending the doctrine of the Holy Ghost, as Beccus had made by means of the dialectical formula respecting the procession of the Holy Ghost from the Father through the Son, seemed offensive. It appeared to them a profane and im-

<sup>1</sup> Beccus, agreeing with the historian Pachymeres, says, in the first discourse relating to his unjust deposition, c. iii., of this change: *ἵχε μὲν ἡμᾶς ἡ κοινὴ, ἣ φέροντες δεδώκαμεν ἑαυτοῦς, ἐκείνων δὲ ἡ κλήση, οὐ γὰρ ὁ θρόνος, ὅτι μὴδ' ἐκαθέσθη, ἀλλ' ἐτίθη ἐπὶ τὸν θρόνον.* And he adds, that he did not say this in the way of reproaching the man, but only to expose the wickedness of his enemies, who were determined, at all hazards, to depose him. Against the man, in himself considered, not a word of reproach could be cast, *τίς γὰρ ὁ μῶμος, ἀνθρώπων ἰγγύς ὄντα θανάτου ἀναισθητεῖν.*

pertinent speculation on matters which must only be adored in silence.<sup>1</sup> He proceeded by writings and by discourses to defend his orthodoxy, and the course of conduct he had pursued. He ever sought to show that he had given up nothing appertaining to orthodoxy, but had only allowed himself, for the sake of the peace of the church, after the example of the older church teachers, to adopt an *οικονομία*, a conception, to be sure, which theologians in the Greek church were in the habit of using in a very indefinite sense, even at the expense of strict veracity. The party of the zealots required that he should acknowledge his guilt, confess the legality of his deposition, furnish a written recantation, and beg forgiveness of the patriarch. When he had been forced against his will to appear before a synod at Constantinople, and had there boldly defended himself, he at length consented to give way for the moment, to resign the patriarchal and priestly offices, to subscribe a confession of faith which had been laid before him, and to beg forgiveness of the patriarch Joseph, who was entirely ignorant of all these proceedings.<sup>2</sup> By this, the clamours of his enemies were for the present appeased; but only a short time elapsed before he was banished to Brussa. While here also, he took an active and zealous part in the disputes which were ever springing up afresh. Before a synod assembled in the presence of the emperor, he disputed with his opponents on the doctrine of the Holy Ghost; the boldness and violence with which he spoke in public drew down upon him the displeasure of the emperor, who had but one wish, which was to reconcile all the parties with each other. He was banished to a castle on the bay of Astacene in Bythynia, and here narrowly watched; he at first suffered from want, till the emperor became again more mildly disposed towards him. In this confinement, in which also he did not cease writing in defence of his cause, he spent fourteen years, and died there in 1298.

After the death of the emperor Michael, and the reinstatement of the old patriarch Joseph, the party of the Arsenians, which had ever continued to propagate itself in secret, once more emerged from obscurity. They were as zealous against Joseph

<sup>1</sup> The moderate Pachymeres, who defends Beccus on many points, concurs with this way of thinking: τὰ περὶ θεοῦ σωπῆ μάλλον ἔχειν τε καὶ τιμᾶν ἢ λόγοις συνιστᾶν καὶ δεικνύειν πίφυκεν. The History of Andronicus, lib. i., c. viii., t. ii., p. 27.

<sup>2</sup> Pachymeres, lib. i., p. 34.

as the other party were against Beccus ; and the same fanaticism as the followers of the patriarch Joseph had shown in avoiding all intercourse with the unionists, the Arsenians manifested in refusing fellowship with the so-called Josephites. They wanted to have a church by themselves at Constantinople. No one was pure enough for them, because they looked upon all as polluted by the worship performed by the Josephites. At length a magnificent church, that of All-saints, occurred to them, which for a long time had been shut up and not used, and which therefore they might suppose themselves entitled to regard as perfectly pure,—and from the peace-loving emperor, who hoped to win this important party by mildness, they managed to obtain this church for their assemblies. The greater the concessions made to them, the higher rose their demands and their wishes. Toleration did not satisfy them ; they wanted to be masters. They were convinced that the justice of their cause would be made manifest by a judgment of God, a miracle. They even succeeded in prevailing on the emperor to enter into their foolish proposals. He was concerned for nothing but the peace of the church, which was also a matter of political importance. This, deceiving himself, he hoped he should be able to secure, at all events, whether God by a miracle decided in favour of the Arsenians,—in which case the party of the Josephites would be compelled to acknowledge their rights,—or the miracle did not take place, when the Arsenians, undeceived, would be obliged to yield. He ordered, therefore, that the bones of John of Damascus should be given them for this purpose ; that a writing in attestation of their cause should be laid on these bones, and that by the mediation of the saint a miracle might be wrought for their party. Already the Arsenians proceeded to prepare themselves by fasting, prayer, and vigils for this judgment of God ; when the emperor, whether of his own impulse, or by the influence of others, was induced to alter his determination. Perhaps he feared the political consequences ; for easily might political movements attach themselves to the tendency of the Arsenian faction ; as the victory of the cause of Arsenius might be regarded as a decision against the legality of the reign of Michael Paleologus, and consequently of his successor. He directed that the trial should be forbidden, and that the Arsenians should be told that men ought not to

wish to have things decided according to their own notions, but should follow the ways of divine wisdom, as they were made known in the government of the world. Now it was obvious that no miracle had been wrought for a long period of time. They had ceased, ever since Christianity began to be more widely spread. The writings of the fathers were sufficient to furnish the knowledge of God's will,—even as Christ himself assured the rich man, who required the resurrection of one from the dead, that Moses and the prophets were sufficient.

In vain did the emperor hope that after the death of the patriarch Joseph, in 1283, to whom the Arsenians were so hostile, both parties might be reconciled by means of the new patriarch Georgias: the Arsenians would only follow the decision by a judgment of God. As God is the same now as in ancient times, said they, so will he also ever manifest himself by miracles, provided only we doubt not.<sup>1</sup> And the emperor finally yielded to them in order to secure the wished-for peace. A great fire was to be kindled, and a writing composed according to their principles, by each of the parties, was to be cast into it. The party whose writing remained uninjured should be held to be right; and even should both writings be consumed, this should be regarded as a token whereby God signified his will that they should conclude a peace with each other. The emperor directed that a large vase of silver should be manufactured for the purpose. The great Sabbath before Easter, a day held especially sacred, was chosen for the holding of this judgment of God. Before a numerous and gorgeous assembly, at the head of which stood the emperor himself, the fire was lighted, the two documents were thrown into it, and, as was to be expected, both were soon burnt to ashes.<sup>2</sup> Now, even the Arsenians declared themselves ready to acknowledge the patriarch, and to unite again with the rest of the church. The emperor, who thought he had accomplished a great thing, led them full of joy, late in the evening, in rough weather, amid ice and snow, to the patriarch, who gave them his blessing. Yet the joy soon proved to be idle. This was only an effect of the first transient impression of events; on the next morning all had become cool again. Thus every

<sup>1</sup> Pachymeres, lib. i., p. 60.

<sup>2</sup> Pachymeres says: τὸ πῦρ οὐκ ἠγνόει τὴν ἑαυτοῦ δύναμιν.

attempt at union proved abortive, and the more so in proportion to the pains taken to bring the thing about by outward measures.

### III. SECTS WHICH STOOD FORTH IN OPPOSITION TO THE HIERARCHY.

We have seen, in the preceding periods, how the reactions of the sects which had sprung up from the intermingling of oriental theosophy with Christianity, still continued to propagate themselves amid all the persecutions in the Greek church, and to emerge again from obscurity under continually new forms. The inward corruption of the Greek church, and the unsatisfied religious need of the laity, furnished a good occasion for these reactions. The political and ecclesiastical despotism which sought to suppress, served rather to promote them. If mysticism sprung up here and there, within the retreats of the monastic life, it might, by its very opposition to this prevailing worldliness, be the more easily led into an anti-churchlike direction, or to blend itself with other mystical directions, already possessed of an heretical colouring. The Paulicians had now established themselves in fixed settlements, beyond the limits of the Greek empire, and might spread back again to the spots whence they came; as we know they had a great zeal for making proselytes. Their bravery procured them admittance among the hiring troops of the hard-pressed Greek empire, and here they enjoyed a new opportunity for diffusing abroad their doctrines. In the preceding periods, we saw the sect of the Euchites, who were essentially distinguished by a peculiar modification of Dualism from the Paulicians, making their appearance under a monk-like shape, and we observed their efforts to get introduced among the Slavic population. From this centre, they now spread back again into the Greek empire; for the sect of the Bogomiles, concerning whom we are now to speak, betray, beyond the possibility of a doubt, by an affinity of doctrines, their origin from that quarter; and the express testimonies of contemporary writers with regard to their Bulgarian extraction, as well as their manifestly Slavic name, confirms the same thing; whether that name was, according to the interpretation of the Greeks, derived from the circumstance that, in their prayers, they were heard fre-

quently calling on God for mercy,<sup>1</sup> or whether the Slavic signification of the word Bogumil, one beloved of God,<sup>2</sup> is the fundamental one, so that this name, denoting a pious community, may be considered analogous to the "friends of God," in Germany. What is said by themselves goes to show that they sprung up out of the midst of ecclesiastics or monks of the Greek church.

The Bogomiles, like the Euchites of the eleventh century, have nothing in common with the older Gnostics. We hear not a word from them concerning a doctrine of Aeons, or concerning an original evil principle. But they busied themselves with a higher doctrine of spirits. The name Satanael,<sup>3</sup> and the figure of God as the ancient of days,<sup>4</sup> might seem to point to Jewish elements, which had exercised an influence on the authors of the sect. Perhaps on this point, also, the language of the Bogomiles themselves should be taken into consideration, who, in allegorically expounding the account of the star of the wise men, called Jerusalem the Catholic church, the star the Mosaic law, which had first guided them to the Catholic church, where they learned from the priests and lawyers that Christ was born in Bethlehem, that is, that the true Christ was to be found in that community which, by a reaction of reform, had itself gone forth from the Catholic church.<sup>5</sup> Satanael, they regarded as the first-born son of the supreme God,—in which they agreed with the Euchites, and with one particular view of the Parsic dualism,<sup>6</sup>—who sat at

<sup>1</sup> "Bog milui," Lord have mercy. See the 23d chapter of the *Panoplia* of Euthymius Zigabenus, published by Dr Gieseler, 1842, in the Greek original: Βὸγ ἡ τῶν Βουλγάρων γλῶσσα καλεῖ τὸν θεόν, μίλουι δὲ τὸ ἐλίσσον. εἰη δ' ἂν Βογόμιλος κατ' αὐτοῦ τοῦ τοῦ θεοῦ τὸν ἔλιον ἐπισπώμενος. Thus this name would be analogous to that of the Euchites, Messalians.

<sup>2</sup> See the remarks of Gieseler on the above cited words of Euthymius. Euthymius cites, from the Bogomiles: παρὰ τῶν ἀρχιερίων καὶ τῶν ἄλλων γραμματίων καὶ διδασκάλων μαθεῖν αὐτοῦς, ὅτι ὁ Χριστὸς ἐν Βηθλεὲμ γινώσκειται (their communities), ἀφ' ἡμῶν γὰρ γινώσκειται τοὺς πρῶτους διδασκάλους αὐτῶν. Comp. what is said by the Euchites, vol. iii., p. 591. Yet in the passages there cited, from the dialogue of Michael Psellus, περὶ ἐνεργείας δαιμόνων, p. 2, ed. Boissonade, 1838, by the ἱερὸν κόμμα is to be understood, not the Catholic clerus, but the Catholic church generally, as opposed to the πονηρὸν κόμμα of the heretics.

<sup>3</sup> Like Samael, among the Jews.

<sup>4</sup> The words of Euthymius: Δίγουνσιν, οὐκ ὄντα μόνον πολλάκις ἀλλὰ καὶ ὑπαρβλίσκειν τὸν πατέρα ὡς γέροντα βαθυγένηιον, ed. Gieseler, p. 33. How they represented God, also, under a human shape: ἀνθρωποκρόσωπον ὑπολαμβάνουσι, p. 7.

<sup>5</sup> See the excerpt, from Euthymius, published by Gieseler, p. 35.

<sup>6</sup> See my Church History, vol. i., sect. 2, p. 489.

the right hand of God, armed with divine power, and holding the second place after him. To each of the higher spirits, God had committed a particular department of administration, while Satanael was placed over all, as his universal vicegerent. Thus he was tempted to become proud ; and, intoxicated with the sense of his power and dignity, was for making himself independent of the supreme God, and founding an empire of his own. He endeavoured, also, to lead away from their allegiance the angels to whom God had entrusted the management of the different portions of the world ; and he succeeded with a part of them. The Bogomiles believed they found Satanael described in the unjust steward of the parable, and they expended much labour in expounding the several points in the parable in accordance with this notion.<sup>1</sup> Satanael now called together the angels who had apostatized with him,<sup>2</sup> and invited them to join him in laying the groundwork of a new creation, independent of the supreme God, a new heaven and a new earth ; for the Father had not yet deprived him of his divine form, he had not as yet lost the El, but still possessed creative power. He let himself down, therefore, with his apostate companions, into chaos, and here laid the foundations of this new empire ; with his angels he created man, and gave him a body formed out of the earth.<sup>3</sup> To animate this being, he meant to give him a portion of his own spirit ; but he was unable to carry the work to its completion. Therefore he had recourse to the supreme God, beseeching him to have pity on his own image, and binding himself to share with him in the

<sup>1</sup> These doctrines are all found again in the conversation betwixt Christ and the apostle John, published under the name of this apostle, which apocryphal writing was published from the Archives of the Inquisitorial tribunal at Carcassone, by the Dominican Jean Benoist, in his *Histoire des Albigeois*, t. i., and last by Thilo, in the first volume of his *Cod. apocryph. Novi Testamenti*, p. 885. The same doctrine concerning the apostasy of Satanael occasioned by pride, concerning the arts which he employed to seduce the angels, placed as vicegerents over the different parts of the world, as well as the comparison between Satanael and the unjust steward, is there carried out in all its particulars,—a certain proof that the above document is to be traced, directly or indirectly, to the Bogomiles. In fact, this apocryphal writing is said to have been brought, by an heretical bishop, from Bulgaria to France.

<sup>2</sup> According to the above-mentioned Pseudo-Johannean gospel, it was a third part of the angels.

<sup>3</sup> In the account of the creation of man (anthropogony), the above-mentioned apocryphal gospel differed entirely from the doctrine of the Bogomiles, as the latter is represented by Euthymius.



possession of man. He promised that, by the race proceeding from man, the places of those angels should be made good who had fallen from God in heaven.<sup>1</sup> So the supreme God took pity on this image, and communicated to it a portion of his own spirit, and so man became a living soul. But now, when Adam and Eve, who had been created with him, became radiant with splendour, in virtue of the divine life that had been communicated to them, Satanael, seized with envy, resolved to defeat the destination of mankind to enter into those vacant places of the higher spiritual world. For this purpose he seduced Eve, intending by intercourse with her to bring forth a posterity which should overpower and extinguish the posterity of Adam. Thus Cain was begotten, the representative of the evil principle in humanity; while Abel, the offspring of Adam and Eve, was the representative of the good principle. Satanael ruled in the world he had created. He had power to lead astray the majority of mankind, so that but few attained to their ultimate destination. It was he who represented himself to the Jews as the supreme God. He employed Moses as his instrument; giving him the law, which in fact the apostle Paul describes as begetting sin; he bestowed on Moses the power of working miracles. Many thousands were thus brought to ruin by the tyranny of Satanael. Then the good God had pity on the higher nature in humanity which had proceeded from himself and was akin to his own, in that humanity which had become so estranged from its destination by the crafty plots of Satanael. He determined to rescue men from the dominion of Satanael, and to deprive the latter of his power. For this purpose, in the 5500th year after the creation of the world, he caused to emanate from himself a spirit who was called the Son of God, Logos, the archangel Michael, exalted above all the angels, the angel of the great council, Isa. ix. 6, who was to overthrow the empire of Satanael and occupy his place. This being he sent down into the world in an ethereal body, which resembled an earthly body only in its outward appearance. He made use of Mary simply as a channel of introduction. She found the divine child already in its swaddling-clothes in the manger, without

<sup>1</sup> We recognize, here, something common to the Bogomiles with the church theology; for it was a very commonly-spread doctrine, that the elect among men were to take the place of the fallen angels.

knowing how it came there. Of course, all that was sensible here, was merely in appearance. Satanael, who held Jesus to be nothing more than a man, and saw his kingdom among the Jews drawn into apostacy and endangered by him, plotted his death. But Jesus baffled him; in reality, he could not be affected by any sensuous sufferings. He who, though supposed to be dead, was exalted above all suffering, appeared on the third day, in the full vigour of life; when, laying aside the veil of his seeming earthly body, he showed himself to Satanael in his true heavenly form. The latter was forced to acknowledge his supremacy, and being deprived by Christ of his divine power, was obliged to give up the name El, and remain nothing but Satan. Christ then ascended to the right hand of God, to be the second after him, and to occupy the place of the ruined Satanael.<sup>2</sup> When Christ was now removed from the earth, and taken up into heaven, God caused a second power, the Holy Ghost, to emanate from himself, who took the place of the now risen and exalted Christ, by his influences on individual souls and the community of the faithful.<sup>3</sup>

<sup>1</sup> It is manifest from a comparison of Euthymius with himself, that he has represented the matter erroneously, when he says, earlier (p. 13, l. c.), the good God deprived Satanael of the El, in punishment for his cohabiting with Eve. What he himself says (p. 17) contradicts this, and is, without doubt, the correct statement, namely, that this was first brought about by Christ. So the accounts given by Euthymius generally, may not always be quite accurate. So it may not be an altogether faithful representation of the Bogomilian doctrine, when Euthymius (p. 17) says that, according to the same, Satanael is not only deprived, by Christ, of his El, but also thrust down to hell; for this contradicts what Euthymius himself observes (p. 27), where he says the Bogomiles taught that, as Satanael once had the temple of Jerusalem for his seat, so, after its destruction, he chose for this same purpose the temple of St Sophia, in Constantinople. But if so, then though Satan was no longer Satanael, yet he still continued to exercise a certain power over the unredeemed. Euthymius perhaps failed here, as in other cases, to separate things which were altogether distinct in the doctrine of the Bogomiles.

<sup>2</sup> Euthymius doubtless falls into the mistake, again, of not sufficiently separating things which were distinct, when he attributes to the Bogomiles the doctrine that Christ, after his ascension to heaven, relinquished his independent existence, and again sunk back into the one essence of the Father. *Εἰτα ἐσσελθεῖν, ὅθεν ἐξῆλθε, καὶ ἀναλυσθῆναι πάλιν εἰς τὸν πατέρα*, p. 17. In fact, the two assertions contradict each other, that Christ, at his exaltation to the right hand of God, assumed a rank next to the Father, and at the same time sunk back into the essence of God, from which he had emanated. One of these statements evidently excludes the other. The only way to clear up the contradiction, is to suppose that what is here represented as taking place at the same moment, is really distributed into different moments, the sitting at the right hand of God taking place directly after Christ's resurrection and ascension to heaven, while his return into the essence of God was not to take place till after the completion of the whole work of redemption, and the total destruction of Satanael's kingdom.

Euthymius may possibly be under a mistake from the same cause, namely, from

It may be noticed as a characteristic peculiarity, that the Holy Spirit was represented by the Bogomiles under the form of a beardless youth, doubtless a symbol of his all-renovating power. They regarded it as the final end of all things, that when Christ and the Holy Ghost should have finished their whole work, all the consequences of the apostasy from God would be removed, and the redeemed souls would attain to their final destination. Then God would receive back into himself those powers which had emanated from him, and all things would return to their original unity.<sup>1</sup> Accordingly, the Bogomilian view of the Trinity is most nearly akin to the Sabellian; and from this point of view they might say, conforming to the faith of the church, that they believed in the Father, Son, and Holy Ghost.<sup>2</sup>

They rejected the church baptism, as a mere baptism with water, following here the anti-judaizing Gnostics; and as the apocryphal gospel of John faithfully represents on this point the doctrine of the Bogomiles, there can be no doubt that they looked upon John the Baptist as a servant of the Jewish God Satanael, and the water-baptism therefore which proceeded from him as opposed to Christian baptism. The only Christian baptism was a baptism of the Spirit, to be imparted simply by calling upon the Holy Ghost, with the laying on of hands. There were two modes of initiation into their sect; after the individual who wished to be received into their community had first prepared himself for it by the confession of sins, fasting, and prayer, he

failing to distinguish different moments, when he represents it as the doctrine of the Bogomiles, that the son of God and the Holy Spirit had both emanated from God at the same time. Vide § 8. That God *τριπρόσωπος ἀπὸ τοῦ πεντακιεχλιόστου πεντακοσιόστου ἔτους*, namely, since the birth of Christ; see § 28. *τὸν πατέρα μὲν ὡς γέροντα βαθυγύνιον, τὸν δὲ υἱὸν ὡς ὑπνῆτην ἄνδρα, τὸ δὲ πνεῦμα τὸ ἅγιον ὡς λειοπρόσωπον νεανίαν.*

1 *Τὸν υἱὸν καὶ τὸ πνεῦμα τὸ ἅγιον εἰς τὸν πατέρα πάλιν, ἀφ' οὗ προῆλθον, ἀναλῶθῃναι καὶ τριπρόσωπον αὐτὸν ἀπὸ τοῦ παντακιεχλιόστου ἔτους ἄχρι καὶ τριδικοῦτα καὶ τριῶν ἑτῶν χρηματίσαντα πάλιν γενέσθαι μονοπρόσωπον.* Here, again, it is easy to see that Euthymius has confounded things different in kind; for it cannot be a correct representation of the Bogomilian doctrine with regard to Christ to say that, after finishing his work on earth, he sunk back into the divine essence; still less can it be so with regard to the Holy Spirit, whose agency was to begin at the very point of time when Christ ascended to heaven. We are perfectly warranted, therefore, to represent the theory otherwise, so as to make it consistent with itself.

2 Euthym. § 2: *Τὰς τρεῖς ταύτας κλήσαι τῷ πατρὶ προσεπτουσι καὶ ἀνθρωποπρόσωπον τοῦτων ὑπολαμβάνουσι, παρ' ἑκατέραν μηνίγγα ἅκτινα ἐκλάμποντα, τὴν μὲν υἱοῦ, τὴν δὲ πνεύματος.*

was introduced into their assembly, when the presiding officer laid the gospel of John on his head, and they invoked upon him the Holy Ghost, and repeated the Lord's prayer. A season of probation was then assigned to him, during which he must lead a life of the strictest abstinence. If men and women bore testimony that he had faithfully observed this season of probation, he was once more introduced into their assembly, placed with his face towards the east, and the gospel of John again laid on his head. The men and women of the assembly again touched his head with their hands, and sung together a hymn of thanksgiving that he had proved himself worthy to become a member of their community.

As they rejected outward baptism, so they seem also to have rejected altogether the outward celebration of the Lord's supper;<sup>1</sup> probably understanding the Lord's supper spiritually and symbolically of the communion with Christ, as the bread of life that came down from heaven; to which also they applied the petition for our daily bread in the Lord's prayer, as signifying a participation in the new fellowship of life, founded by Christ; and by this petition the original unity of the spiritual world—in virtue of which all called upon God, as their common Father, but which had been broken up by Satanael—was restored. The Lord's prayer was the symbol of this unity restored.<sup>2</sup> We should notice

1 If we find among those Catharists, who in various respects were related to the Bogomiles in their doctrines, something like an outward celebration of the Lord's supper, yet we cannot with safety argue back from this circumstance to the tenets held by the latter, for there were still many points in which the two sects differed from each other.

2 We must endeavour, as far as the case admits of it, to make out the real opinion of the Bogomiles, from the obscure account by Euthymius, compared with a passage in the apocryphal gospel of John. Euthymius's words are: "Ἄρτον τῆς κοινωνίας ὁμομάζουσι τὴν προσηύχην τοῦ πατρὸς ἡμῶν, τὸν ἄρτον γὰρ φησὶ τὸν ἐπιούσιον, ποτήριον δὲ κοινωνίας ὁμοῖαι τὴν λεγομένην ἐν τῷ εὐαγγελίῳ διαθήκην, τοῦτο γὰρ φησὶ τὸ ποτήριον ἡ καὶ τὴ διαθήκη μυστικὸν δὲ δεικνύον τὴν ἀμφοτέρων τούτων μετὰληψιν. He says himself, that Bogomiles, when asked in what sense they understood these words, replied that they did not know themselves; whether it was that the individuals of whom he inquired belonged to the more ignorant class, or that they did not wish to disclose the esoteric sense of the doctrine. From the apocryphal gospel, the words of Christ belong here: Quia ego sum panis vitae descendens de septimo coelo et qui manducant carnem meam et bibunt sanguinem meum, isti filii Dei vocabuntur. And to the question, what it meant to eat his flesh and drink his blood, Christ answers: Ante ruinam diaboli cum omni militia sua a gloria patris in oratione orando sic glorificabant patrem in orationibus dicendo: pater noster, qui es in coelis, et ita omnia cantica eorum

in this connection, that the Bogomiles, consistently with their Docetism, could recognize no other than a spiritual communion with Christ. The sacrifice of the mass according to the dominant church, they interpreted as an offering to evil spirits residing within the church.

From what has been said, it is manifest into what opposition with the dominant church the Bogomiles would be driven by their mystical element. They contended against the worship of the Virgin Mary, of the saints, and of images. The true *θεοτακός*, said they, is the soul of the real believer, of the Bogomile, which carries the Logos in itself; and while it leads others to the divine life, produces that life out of itself. In the Iconoclasts, they recognized kindred spirits. It was only the patriarchs and emperors of this party whom they regarded as Christians. The image worshippers, on the other hand, they called idolaters. They honoured especially Constantine Copronymus, a fact easily explained from popular rumours concerning him. But this circumstance affords grounds for important conclusions with regard to the origin of this sect. We find evidence here, that this sect had sprung up neither in a foreign country, nor at this particular point of time; else, how could they have known so much about this emperor, or how should they concern themselves about him one way or the other?

When, however, the representatives of the Catholic church appealed to miracles wrought by the relics of saints, it never occurred to the uncritical minds of the Bogomiles to call these miracles in question. They resorted to another mode of confutation. As it was their doctrine that every man is attended by a good or evil spirit; they said, the evil spirits connected with those advocates of error in their lifetime, wrought these miracles after their death, with a view to seduce the simple and lead them to worship the unholy as holy. Nor could they tolerate that reverence for the cross which was permitted even by Iconoclasts. This we might infer, indeed, from their view of Christ's passion. And when men told them of the power of the cross over the demoniacal world, they either replied that evil spirits hailed the

*ascendebant ante sedem patris. Et cum cecidissent, postea non possunt glorificare Deum in oratione ista.*

symbol with joy, as typifying the instrument which they would have employed for the death of the Redeemer, or that they only practised dissimulation in order to lead men into error. The churches they scorned, as seats of evil spirits; for the Most High, who has heaven for his habitation, dwells not in temples made with hands. According to their own principles, they might, for the purpose of escaping persecution, pretend to join in the church worship. They looked upon it all as the work of evil spirits; and then they supposed a certain dominion over the world was allowed by the Father to Satanael, until the termination of the seventh aeon (the seven thousandth year). The Bogomiles, like one class of the Euchites, noticed by us in the preceding periods, believed they ought occasionally to enter into some agreement with Satanael and his powers so long as his empire still subsisted. They appealed, in proof of this, to the words ascribed to Christ in one of their apocryphal gospels: "Reverence not the evil spirits for the purpose of obtaining anything from them, but that they may not injure you."<sup>1</sup> "Therefore," said they, "we are bound to reverence the evil spirits dwelling in the temples, lest they be wroth against those who omit to do so, and involve them in ruin (namely, by stirring up persecutions against them)."<sup>2</sup> They cited also another apocryphal saying of Christ: "Save yourselves with craft,"<sup>3</sup> the maxim by which they sought to justify the various arts of dissimulation resorted to by them for the salvation of their lives. The words of Christ, in Matt. xxiii. 3, they explained as follows: "We should affect to do everything which the hierarchy prescribes; but not really follow their works." The fact also that Christ spoke to the multitude in parables, was one to which they gave their own peculiar interpretation.

Since the Bogomiles regarded the body as a prison-house, wherein the soul, which is related to God, has been confined, death appeared to them the means of release for such faithful ones as had become partakers of the divine life here below.

<sup>1</sup> Τιμᾶτε τὰ δαιμόνια οὐχ' ἵνα ὠφελήθητε παρ' αὐτῶν, ἀλλ' ἵνα μὴ βλάψωσιν ὑμᾶς.

<sup>2</sup> The relationship of the Euchites and Bogomiles with the so-called Syrian devil-worshippers, Jezidaners, can hardly be mistaken; whether it was that the latter sprung from the former, or that both had a common origin.

<sup>3</sup> Τρόπος σωθῆναι.

"These," said they, "do not die, but they are transported over, as it were, in a sleep, putting off this earthly coil of the flesh without pain, and putting on the imperishable and divine clothing of Christ."<sup>1</sup>

As it regards the canon of the Bogomiles, Euthymius reports that they rejected the historical books of the Old Testament, and received the Psalms and prophets, and all the writings of the New Testament. But whether he has correctly represented their opinion on this point may well be doubted. Certainly they did not attribute to the other books the same authority as to the gospel of John, which in fact always appears as the principal book with them. Very probably they might, in conversation with the friends of the church, to whose views they wished to accommodate themselves, have appealed to these Scriptures, where they thought they could interpret them in favour of their own doctrines, without allowing them on that account the authority of a rule of faith. It may be too that, like the Manichaeans, they distinguished in these Scriptures parts that were true, from others which they considered false. It is plain, that they could not, according to their doctrine, receive the whole, unless they allowed themselves in the most forced interpretations. It would be even so with the gospel of John, which so directly contradicts their representation of John the Baptist; and it may justly be questioned, whether their gospel was really the genuine gospel of John. The history of Christ's infancy they explained as a symbolical clothing of higher facts, or as a myth. They asserted also, that the gospels had been falsified by the church teaching; and they named Chrysostom<sup>2</sup> in particular, as one of these falsifiers. Owing to their theosophic bent, they were set against all scientific culture. The grammarians, with whom they would have nothing to do, were to them the same as the scribes of the New Testament, whom they put in one class with the Pharisees.

While the Bogomiles looked upon the dominant church as a church apostate from Christ, and ruled by Satanael, they represented themselves as the true Christians, citizens of Christ.<sup>3</sup>

<sup>1</sup> Τοὺς τοιοῦτους μὴ ἀποθνῆσκειν ἀλλὰ μεθίστασθαι, καθάπερ ἐν ὕπνῳ, τὸ πηλὸν τοῦτ' καὶ σαρκινὸν περιβόλαιον ἀπόνης ἐκδυομένους καὶ τὴν ἄφθαρτον καὶ θείαν τοῦ Χριστοῦ στολὴν ἐνδυομένους.

<sup>2</sup> Vide § 21.

<sup>3</sup> Χριστιανοί, χριστοπολίται. See the little tract of Euthymius against the Bogo-

As they supposed they might resort to every species of accommodation and dissimulation, as they generally succeeded by their rigid and monk-like life in commanding a certain degree of respect, and before they began to divulge their peculiar doctrine cited from the Bible a great deal that was applicable to Christian life and opposed to the doctrines of the church, they found no difficulty in getting hearers among the laity and clergy in Constantinople, and in the towns and villages of the country.<sup>1</sup> Adherents of this sect were to be found in the greatest families connected with the court.<sup>2</sup> The emperor, Alexius Comnenus, on hearing of this, resolved to spare no pains in ferreting out the doctrines which were held so secretly, and in bringing their heads and teachers to punishment. Information having been obtained, by torture, from certain members of the sect who had been arrested, that an old man, known as a monk, and named Basilus, stood at their head, the emperor caused him to be brought, in a covert manner—as it was pretended—to the palace, where he treated him with great honour, invited him to sit at his own table, and professed a wish to be instructed in their doctrines, with a view of joining the sect. Basilus, though at first mistrustful, at length fell into the trap, and set forth all the doctrines of the sect to the emperor, his imagined disciple. But behind a curtain sat one charged with the business of taking down minutes of the whole conversation. When the thing had been carried far enough, the curtain was raised, and, to his consternation, Basilus saw the notables of the spiritual and secular orders, the former, under the presidency of the patriarch Nicholas, assembled before him. The copy of what he had said to the emperor was shown him, and he confessed that these were his doctrines, and declared himself ready to suffer the loss of all things for them. Upon this, he was led away to prison, and many of all ranks were arrested as Bogomiles. Of these, some confessed that they had joined the sect;

miles, published in J. Tollii Itinerar. Italic. p. 112: *χριστιανούς ἑαυτοὺς ὀνομάζοντες οἱ μισοχριστοὶ καὶ χριστοπολίται*, p. 122.

<sup>1</sup> In Anathem, xii., (J. Tollii insignia Itenerar. Ital.), it is said, that those who joined the Bogomiles from the lay order, did not hesitate to partake of the church communion, and that the priests, who had secretly joined this sect, continued to celebrate mass as before, p. 122. Euthymius says, in the tract on the sect of the Bogomiles, published by J. Tolle, p. 112: *Ἐν πάσῃ πόλει καὶ χώρα καὶ ἑπαρχίᾳ ἐπιπολεῖ τὰ νῦν.*

<sup>2</sup> *Ἐνεβόθονε τὸ κακὸν καὶ εἰς οἰκίας μεγίστας καὶ πολλοῦ πλῆθους ἤψατο τὸ δεινόν.* Anna Comnena Alexias, lib. xv., f. 387, Ed. Venet.



others denied it. To separate the innocent from the guilty the emperor resorted to a trick, in which very probably he may have been outwitted by many of his victims. He directed that all who had been arrested should appear on a public place, before a grand and numerous assembly, in the centre of which sat the emperor himself, elevated on a throne. Two great fires were kindled; by one of these was erected a cross, by the other none. The emperor now declared that, as he was unable to distinguish the innocent from the guilty, he would cause them all to be put to death. Those who wished to die as believers should pass to the fire with the cross, and pay their homage to the latter. A division having thus been made among the condemned, the emperor directed both parties to be conducted back to their places. Those, whom by this test he supposed he had ascertained to be orthodox, he dismissed with a few words of admonition. The others he sent back to their prison. The emperor and the patriarch expended a great deal of labour in gradually instructing these latter, which, however, did not succeed except with a few, who were therefore pardoned. The rest were condemned to perpetual imprisonment. Basilus alone, who would listen to no persuasions, being the leader of the sect, was condemned to die at the stake (A.D. 1119). It is said that he proceeded to the place of his execution at first in a triumphant confidence of faith, singing the thirtieth Psalm.<sup>1</sup> But when he came nearer, and beheld the curling volume of flames, he could no longer suppress the feelings of nature. Claspings together his hands, he held them before his face; but in the end he held fast to his confession.

The Bogomiles were already too widely spread in the Greek empire, to be rooted out by such measures as these. Among laymen, ecclesiastics, and monks, many might continue to go on and propagate themselves in secret. The writings of a venerated monk, Constantinos Chrysomalos, are said to have contributed greatly to the diffusion of these doctrines. But it was not till after his death, that attention was directed to the threatening danger from this quarter; and a synod assembled under the emperor Emanuel Comnenus, in 1140, at Constantinople, pronounced

<sup>1</sup> It may be doubted whether his words, and the lively hope therein expressed, have not been understood too grossly, when he is represented as expecting that the flames would not hurt him, but angels would snatch him from the midst of them.

sentence of condemnation on him and his followers. Yet it may be questioned whether the name Bogomiles was not here employed for the purpose of stigmatizing as heretics those who had no connection with them, but attacked from some other point of view the prevailing worldliness of the dominant church; persons who had nothing in common with the Bogomiles, except a certain fervent mystical tendency, which was not to be satisfied by the common church theology. Perhaps a certain connection may have subsisted between this mystical tendency and the Bogomiles; yet we have no good reason for supposing that this tendency itself had sprung out of Bogomilian principles.

It is manifest from what has been communicated to us from the writings of this monk, that there existed a secret society, which was supposed to have the power of imparting a higher spiritual life than could be attained by the sacraments of the church, and in connection with which there were many rites and ceremonies of initiation. The transformation of man by a new divine life, making him capable of the intuition of divine things, was set over against a dead Scripture learning, and the mechanical forms of the church; an antagonism constantly occurring under various forms, in the mystical theology of all ages. We find great use made here of the ideas of St Paul, a circumstance not wont to distinguish the mysticism of the Greek church, which possessed less affinity with the Pauline spirit; neither do any indications of it appear among the Bogomiles. Since the subjective element, the progressive development of a divine life beginning with a change of nature (*ἀναστροφὴ*), was considered the main thing, without which no man could be in the true sense a Christian, this led to the rejection of infant baptism. "Those who had been baptised in childhood, without previous instruction, were not Christians, it was said, though they were called so. Though they might live in the practice of many virtues, yet these were nothing better than single good actions among the heathen." It was understood by this party that the characteristic thing in the condition of a Christian, did not consist in insulated virtues, but in the main direction and bent of the whole life. "All singing and praying, all participation in the outward rites of the church, all study of the Scriptures, is dead and nugatory, separate from this inward change, whereby man is delivered from the power of

the evil principle. Though one should know every word of Scripture by heart, and in the pride of that knowledge which puffeth up, pretend to teach others, still, it profits nothing, unless accompanied with this higher instruction in spiritual things; this transformation, this new shaping of the condition of the soul.<sup>1</sup>

In his polemical attacks on holiness by works, Chrysomalos follows the apostle Paul. "To the obtaining of that grace of inward transformation," says he, "man's own doings can contribute nothing: it is obtained by faith alone. It is by this alone that a man becomes capable of any real virtue. Though such as have not attained to that higher position may insist upon it, that they bring forth good actions for God's sake, still, they really act from a sort of instinct rather than from rational consciousness."<sup>2</sup> We here meet with the doctrine which often occurs among the mystics, that all purely human agency must sink to nothing, and God alone produce the entire work in the soul which he fills. Hence, all which the man does himself appears tainted with sin. "It profits Christians nothing to live in the practice of all the virtues, and to shun all the vices, though they do it for God's sake, if they have not obtained a spiritual feeling of the indwelling of the Divine Spirit, producing within them by nature and without constraint that which is good, and making them quite invincible to the temptations of evil."<sup>3</sup> He who is not conscious that God himself accomplishes his own will in him through Christ, labours in vain.<sup>4</sup> Those true Christians who have arrived at the maturity of Christian manhood stand no longer under the law. By virtue of God's agency within them, they fulfil the law to the utmost."

Contempt for all civil authority was one charge brought against the followers of this doctrine. But a seditious turn could hardly be united with a mysticism of this sort. The charge probably grew out of the spiritual self-conceit with which they affected to look down upon all the high dignities in the secular and eccle-

1 *Εἰ μὴ κατηχηθῆντες αὐτὴ ἀναστοιχειώσῃτε (οἱ μεταστοιχειώσῃτε) τύχῃσι καὶ μαρφήσῃτε τῶν ψυχικῶν αὐτῶν ἕξιν.*

2 *Δαίμοσι γὰρ ἰοικίμει τοὺς ταῦτα κατορθοῦντας καὶ ὁμολογοῦντας μὲν διὰ τὸν θεὸν κατορθοῦν, ἀλόγως δὲ ταῦτα ποιοῦντας.*

3 *εἰ μὴ νοερὰν αἰσθησιν τοῦ θεοῦ πνεύματος διέξωται, φυσικῶς τε καὶ ἡνωθύνῃ ἐν αὐτοῖς ἐνεργοῦντος τὸ ἀγαθὸν καὶ ἀκινήτους πάντῃ ποιοῦντος πρὸς τὸ κακόν.*

4 *ὅστις οὐ νοερᾷ αἰσθησῇ νοερῶς αἰσθάνεται ποιοῦντος ἐν αὐτῇ τοῦ θεοῦ τὸ θέλημα αὐτοῦ διὰ Ἰησοῦ Χριστοῦ, εἰς κενὴν κοπιᾷ.*

siastical orders as belonging to a much lower sphere of spiritual understanding than their own. Perhaps they only inveighed against those extravagant titles which, after the oriental fashion, were in those times bestowed on the great, and declared them to be idolatrous and unworthy of Christians. So at least we might gather from many of their expressions.<sup>1</sup>

They are said to have maintained, that no man is a Christian who is not conscious of having within him two souls, one subject to sin, and one superior to all evil, sinless.<sup>2</sup> If this is a correct representation of their doctrine, it must be understood in the sense that, first, by the new birth, man has a soul without sin; and, by means of it, is in a condition to resist the soul burdened with sin. We can hardly suppose, however, that on the basis of this mysticism, such an antagonism between the godlike and ungodlike principles would be considered as having been first called forth by Christianity. More probably, the doctrine, in this particular aspect of it, has not been correctly represented; and perhaps the opinion was this, that, from the very first, there are in every man two souls: a higher nature, which St Paul designates as the inner man,—a nature superior to all contact with sin, but which through the predominance of the ungodly principle is prevented from passing into action: this is first made active by becoming united with its original source through the redemption, is thus freed from the yoke of the foreign nature; and so the man attains to freedom from sin. With the laying on of hands, unction, and various mystic rites, the consecration was consummated by the spiritual superiors of the society on those who longed after this *ἀναστοιχείωσις*.<sup>3</sup>

That reaction against the corrupt church proceeding from a spirit of reform, which it was ever found impossible to suppress, was doubtless propagated in a secret manner; and in the be-

<sup>1</sup> ὅσα πρὸς ἀτιμίαν ἀρχῆς ἀπάσης καὶ περὶ φρόνησιν (ἐγγραφῆσαν) τῷ Σατανᾷ προκυ. εἰς ἀποφλυαρήσαντι τοὺς ὅποιον δὴ ποτε ἀρχοντι τιμὴν ἢ προκύουσιν ἀπονέμοντας.

<sup>2</sup> ὅτι πᾶς χριστιανὸς δύο ἔχει ψυχάς, τὴν μὲν αὐτῶν ἀναμάρτητον, τὴν δὲ ἀμαρτητικήν.

<sup>3</sup> As it is called, διὰ τῆς τελεσιουργήσεως, καὶ τῆς τῶν χειρῶν ἐπιθέσεως τῶν ἐπιστημόνων οἰκονόμων τῇ μυστικῇ ταύτης χάριτος—διὰ τῆς εἰσαγομένης κατηχήσεώς τε καὶ μνήσεως μύρων τε χρίσεως ἀναστοιχειωθέντες. The presidents ἐπισκευάσται. See the excerpts from the acts of that Synod, in Leonis Allatii de ecclesiae occidentalis aique orientalis perpetua consensione. Colon. 1648. Lib. ii. c. xi., p. 646.

ginning of the reign of the emperor Emmanuel Comnenus, a certain monk appears at Constantinople, by the name of Niphon, who stood at the head of this more widely spread movement. By his pious and strict life he had won universal reverence. He is described as being a man unversed in the ancient literature, but so much the more familiar with the Holy Scriptures.<sup>1</sup> That one who was governed by a predominant practical and biblical tendency, who from his childhood had occupied himself chiefly with the study of the Bible, should allow himself to be carried away by the doctrines of the Bogomiles, is in itself hardly probable, but it is more easy to conceive that such an one might be impelled by his opposition to a dead and formal orthodoxy, and the hierarchy connected therewith, to a mystical theology. We must also admit it to be possible, that a school for the propagation of Bogomilian ideas, had formed itself among the monks, and that Niphon may from the first have been educated in this school. This Niphon seems to have exercised an extensive influence. He maintained a close correspondence, particularly with the bishops of Cappadocia, and there was a peculiar spirit which seems to have animated these bishops. Some clue to the matter was got hold of, and, under the presidency of the patriarch Michael of Constantinople, several *endemic synods* were held there in opposition to these tendencies.<sup>2</sup> Men were disposed to trace in them the diffusion of Bogomilian principles; but the only thing that could point to such principles is what was said of this party, that they did not regard the God of the Old Testament as the true God.<sup>3</sup> But considering the slight respect which was paid to truth among the Greeks of this period, we may doubt whether such a declaration is altogether worthy of credit; and even if it were, such a doctrine may just as well be traced to other sources as to the sect of the Bogomiles. When those bishops were accused of rebaptizing such as had received infant baptism, on the ground that

1 The historian of this time, John Cinnamos, says of him: *παιδείας μὲν τῆς ἐγκυκλίου καὶ μαθημάτων οὐδὲ μίχρη πείρας ἔλθων, τοῖς ἱεροῖς δὲ λόγοις ἐκ παιδων ἑαυτὸν ἐπιδούε.* Lib. ii., p. 64, ed. Meineke.

2 See the excerpts from the acts in the above-cited work of Leo Allatius, lib. ii., c. xii., p. 671.

3 Thus in the copy of the transactions with Niphon, it is said of him that he pronounced the anathema on the God of the Hebrews. Leo. Allat. l. c., p. 682; and John Cinnamos says of him, l. c., p. 64: *τὸν Ἑβραίων ἀπορροποιεῖτο θεόν.*

they regarded this transaction as invalid, having been performed by vicious men; this certainly is inconsistent with the principles of the Bogomiles, who allowed no validity to water-baptism in any way. Various other circumstances indicate a tendency which was seeking to restore primitive Christianity, striving to oppose superstition. Without needing to resort to the hypothesis of any Bogomilian element, we may on *this ground* alone satisfactorily account for it, that they would sanction no other adoration of the cross, except that which was paid to a cross bearing the inscription "Jesus Christ, the Son of God," consequently referring immediately to *Christ himself*; that they declared those miracles said to be wrought by the bare *sign of the cross* a work of the devil, and that they steadfastly opposed all images of saints. The monk Niphon was condemned to perpetual confinement in a monastery. But the patriarch Cosmas, Michael's successor, restored him to liberty;—and he stood high in the estimation of that prelate, insomuch that he made him his confidant and table-companion. The friendship of such a man would lead us to judge favourably of Niphon's character; for all the accounts agree in describing Cosmas as a person of great piety and worth; of a strict life, self-denying love, and a benevolence which gave away everything, to the very raiment which he wore. Similarity of disposition, and a like dissatisfaction with the corrupt state of the Greek church, may perhaps have made Cosmas the friend and protector of Niphon. The only fault that could be found with him was, that his excessive simplicity made him the dupe of that monk.<sup>1</sup> But men could easily avail themselves of the orthodox zeal of the emperor Manuel Comnenus to ruin the monk Niphon; and perhaps the whole was a mere plot contrived for the downfall of Cosmas, who, as patriarch of Constantinople, would be to many an object of envy.<sup>2</sup> As Cosmas would not abandon Niphon, after the latter had been condemned by an *endemic synod*, but persisted in declaring that he was a holy man, the sentence of de-

<sup>1</sup> As John Cinnamos says of him: ἀνθρώποι, πλὴν τοῦ ἀφελοῦς εἰς οἷμαι τέλλα πάντα πηλουτηκότες ἀγαθά.

<sup>2</sup> According to the account of the historian Nicetas Choniates, lib. ii., p. 106, ed. Bekker, the connection with Niphon was only a pretext; and what had prejudiced the emperor against him was, a suspicion of political intrigue, which the enemies of Cosmas had contrived to excite against him,—a suspicion of intrigue with his brother Isaacios.

position was passed upon himself. He signified to the synod his abhorrence of the corrupt church, saying that he was like Lot in the midst of Sodom.<sup>1</sup>

We have already mentioned that the Greek emperor John Zimisceus had assigned Philoppolis, a city of Thrace, as a seat for the Paulicians. This city was in the twelfth century a place of rendezvous for sects hostile to the church, till the emperor Alexius Comnenus was led by his wars into these districts. He disputed for several days in succession, from morning to evening, with the leaders of these sects, and they brought against him many passages from the Bible. A large number declared themselves convinced, and submitted to baptism; they might calculate on receiving marks of distinction from the emperor. Such as would not be converted he summoned to Constantinople, and gave them a dwelling-place in the neighbourhood of the imperial palace. He there continued to labour with them. As a rival to the heretical colony at Philoppolis, he founded a city called after himself, Alexiopolis, in which converted Paulicians and other converted heretics were to settle.<sup>2</sup> But it certainly admits of a doubt whether many of these conversions were sincere, and whether the emperor did not, in spite of himself, contribute by the founding of such a pretended orthodox colony, to the spread of the heresies in those very regions, whereby the way was prepared for the transportation of these tendencies into the Western church.

We saw in fact already during the preceding period, how the sects that originated in the East had, amidst the confusions of these centuries, diffused themselves into almost every part of Europe, before they were discovered. By the manifestations just described as occurring in the oriental church itself, and by the lively intercourse between the East and the West, this diffusion of heretical opinions would be still more promoted. There were a set of men who, in the periods of which we speak, went under the name of *Catharists*. The sects which may be traced up to them appear scattered in different countries, under different names, which may serve, partly to indicate their original extraction, partly to mark the ways of their later dispersion, and partly to hint the causes which procured them an introduction. The most current name is

<sup>1</sup> Leo-Allat. l. c., p. 686.

<sup>2</sup> See book xvi. of Alexias, near the close.

that of Catharists, which indicates their Greek origin, and which they applied to themselves because, as they pretended, they were the only true church. This name should not be confounded with the *Gazzari*, which indicates an origin from Gazzarei, the peninsula of Crimea ; as the name *Bulgari*, *Bugri*, indicates an origin from Bulgaria ; *Slavoni*, an origin from the midst of the Slavic tribes ; *Publicani*, perhaps a mutilation of the name Paulicians, indicates their spread in South France and in Provence, which was called *Novempopulonia*, with allusion to the nickname publicans, *paterenes*, indicating their connection with that insurrection against the clergy which was provoked by the Hildebrandian principle of reformation itself.<sup>1</sup> The name *Tesserants*, weavers, marks the spread of these sects among the weavers in South France, a class of artisans which in all times seem peculiarly disposed to be carried away by mystical tendencies. Many things in the doctrines and institutions of these sects carry so fresh an oriental impress, akin to the Gnostic, on their very front, that the fact is to be explained only on the supposition of their fresh oriental origin. At the same time, it is evident from what we find reported concerning their doctrines, that they did not rest content with the bare mechanical tradition of what had come to them from the East ; but that the principles and doctrines received from abroad were elaborated and wrought over by them in an independent manner. Men who were capable of this must have been found among them, like Johannes de Lugio, for example, who in the thirteenth century is mentioned as an original teacher and author among them. The scientific spirit of the Western church exercised a power over this originally oriental tendency, by the influence of which many peculiar modifications were introduced. Notwithstanding the agreement in certain general principles, in Dualism, and the doctrine of emanation, we still discover oppositions and diversities in their doctrine ;—where the question arises, whether they are to be accounted for from an original difference in the oriental systems at bottom, from which these sects were derived, or from modifications of a peculiar kind, introduced by the later occidental schools.

As it regards the most important difference, the question

<sup>1</sup> See vol. vii., p. 126.



admits of a very easy decision. This main difference consists in the following particulars: That one party among the Catharists started from an absolute Dualism, assumed the existence of two ground-principles, one opposed to the other, and of two creations corresponding to these principles; while the other party admitted only a relative Dualism, and regarded the evil principle as a spirit fallen from God, who became the author of a revolution in the universe.<sup>1</sup> In the last party we cannot fail to perceive a relationship with the Bogomiles, and their derivation from this sect,—a derivation confirmed also by the apocryphal gospel under the name of the apostle John, which their bishop Nazarius brought along with him from Bulgaria. Now the matter admits, it is true, of being so represented as if the derivation from the Bogomiles was common to the entire sect of Catharists, and as if this view of Dualism was the original one amongst them, while absolute Dualism is to be considered as a later modification introduced in the West. But notwithstanding all the affinity between the systems of the Catharists which sprung out of these two tendencies, still, that fundamental difference is too essential a one, it appears in a form too clearly bearing the impress of its primitive oriental origin, to favour the supposition of such an origin. We might with greater propriety trace many of the affinities in the two classes of Catharists to a later commingling of the sects together, brought about by their common hostility to the dominant church system, and to the monistic principle of dogmatism, in which union their doctrines mutually exerted an influence upon, or passed over into, each other. We may feel ourselves warranted, therefore, to assume the existence of another sect from the East, different from the Euchites, or Bogomiles, as the source whence to derive the other principal party of Catharists. In this case we might first, with contemporary writers, consider Manichaeism as this source, from which the above-mentioned more abrupt Dualistic tendency is to be derived; but the marks of Manichaeism are by no means indisputable.<sup>2</sup>

<sup>1</sup> This is not only apparent from the work, which may be regarded as being the most important source of our knowledge of the doctrines of the Catharists,—the work of the dominican Moneta, *Adversus Catharos et Valdenses*, published by Ricchini,—but all the accounts agree in fixing upon it as the main distinction.

<sup>2</sup> The abbot Ecbert of Schönbau cites, indeed, in his first sermon against the Catharists

Their doctrine concerning creation, concerning the origin of man, concerning Christ, is by no means a Manichaean one, and we are led much more naturally to think of the Paulicians and other sects related to Gnosticism; though they distinguish themselves from the Paulicians, who, consistent to their original tendency, admitted no opposition of esoterics and exoterics within their body, by the fact that such a distinction actually existed among them.

To speak first of the party which started from an absolute Dualism; they supposed two principles, then, subsisting from all eternity, and two creations corresponding to these principles. The good God they regarded as the primal source of a world of imperishable existence related to himself; while they were of the opinion that all perishable existence, as being null, untrue, could only be traced and referred to the evil principle. With this they united, however, the doctrine of a correspondence of the lower and higher worlds. Everything existing here below, as visible and perishable, they taught, has its correspondent, though under a form adapted to that higher region of existence in the upper world; a view which reminds one of the Manichaean doctrine of the pure elements, but which not less finds its analogy in the Gnostic opposition between an original and a representative world. In defence of their Dualism, they appealed to many passages of the Old and New Testament; all that is said concerning the opposition between flesh and spirit, world and God, being interpreted by them in this sense. They insisted espe-

(Bibl. patr. Lugd. t. xxiii., f. 602), a fact which undoubtedly, if well established, would go far to indicate an origin from Manichaeism, namely, that this party celebrated the Manichaean festival *Bema* (see vol. ii., sect. ii., p. 231). But that the unknown festival of the Catharists was the Manichaean *Bema* is a mere conjecture, refuted by what the writer himself states; for his informers, who had once been members of the Catharist sect, told him that this festival, which they called *Mallosa*, took place in autumn. But Mani's festival of the martyrs happened in the month of March. Again, Ebert cites, it is true (l. c. f. 103), the declarations of Catharists themselves to prove their derivation from Manichaeism, to wit, that they accused Augustin of divulging their mysteries. But neither from this circumstance could so much be inferred. The Catharists, it is probable, had simply allowed themselves to fall into the mistake of their adversaries when they looked upon the Manichaeans, combated by Augustin, as their forerunners. Besides, in pointing out the age and originality of their doctrines, they might be very willing to adopt the view which assigned them such predecessors; and because the hypothesis pleased them, they might notice only the resembling points and overlook the rest; and as they rejected the church, and all her authorities, they would be likely to re-joice at any chance of criminating Augustin as a traitor to the truth.

cially on the passage in John viii. 44, where, as they would have it, the devil is described as one who had never, from the first, stood in truth and goodness.<sup>1</sup> Like their opponents, who regarded Aristotle as the irrefragable authority for all rational truth, they too appealed confidently to his authority as favouring their views.<sup>2</sup> In the processes of nature, these Dualists did not believe it was possible to recognize the self-revealing God. Its unconsciously working, destructive powers, making no difference between good and evil, seemed to them, and this was a point on which both classes of Catharists agreed, to bear testimony of an opposite principle. "How can the fire," said they, "or the water which destroys the dwellings of the poor, of the holy, proceed from the good creation?"<sup>3</sup> The evil principle, Satan, they taught, seized with envy of the good, had exalted himself to the heaven of the latter, and led a third part of the heavenly souls<sup>4</sup> into apostasy. Those heavenly souls they regarded as middle beings between a higher and a lower class. To each soul corresponds a related spirit, of which it is the organ, by which it suffers itself to be determined and guided; and each soul also had an organ subordinate to it, a heavenly body, wholly dependent on it, as itself was on that higher spirit.<sup>5</sup> Those spirits were the same as the angels. We may, perhaps, recognize here the *Syzygia* of the Gnostical doctrine. By their apostasy, these heavenly souls forsook the harmonious connection with that higher world. Hurlled with Satan from heaven, they were separated from the spirits belonging with them, and from those heavenly bodies which remained behind in heaven, and Satan succeeded to bind them fast in the corporeal world. So it is those fallen heavenly beings, which in their banishment are ever re-appearing under the veil of some human body, in which Satan has confined them. This probably has some connection with their doctrine of metempsychosis.<sup>6</sup> On this basis they combated

<sup>1</sup> In veritate non stetit, ergo non fuit in ea, ergo fuit semper spiritus mendax, ergo non fuit a bono creatore.

<sup>2</sup> They appealed to the Aristotelian maxim: Contrariorum contraria sunt principia. See Moneta, lib. i., c. iv., § i., f. 44.

<sup>3</sup> L. c. f., 124 et 126.

<sup>4</sup> To which they applied Rev. xii. 4.

<sup>5</sup> Moneta, f. 105.

<sup>6</sup> This doctrine of the fallen souls might already be found among them at the time of

creatianism. They referred to Sirach xviii. 1,<sup>1</sup> and particularly to the word "*simul*," to prove that no new creations took place, and to Deut. xviii. 1; for, so they argued, if the people to whom Moses spake was the same with those who should hear Christ, then they were not a new people who were born in the time of Christ, but the same that lived already in the time of Moses, which also serves to prove that they held to a metempsychosis.<sup>2</sup> But among these heavenly souls they distinguished different classes, according as they belonged to different princes of heaven. The highest class was composed of those who were described as the spiritual Israel, at whose head stood the highest spirit living in the intuition of God, the *ἀνὴρ ὁρῶν τὸν θεόν*, as they understood the name Israel, the *ὁρατικὸν, θεραπευτικὸν γένος*. In that name they believed they found a proof of their doctrine, for it certainly referred to such as had seen God. But when and where? Here below it cannot have been; therefore, in an earlier, heavenly existence. The Alexandrian, Gnostic ideas are too plain here to be mistaken.<sup>3</sup> Matt. xv. 24 might thus be reconciled, they supposed, with John x. 16. It was especially to save that highest race of souls, the lost sheep of the house of the heavenly prince Israel, that Christ came; but at the same time to redeem also the souls belonging to other princes of heaven, which are the heathen.<sup>4</sup> These Catharists are said to have denied the freedom of the will. They made it an argument against the doctrine of a freewill, determining itself by choice between good and evil, that no such will can be supposed in the case of God. They appealed to the texts in the ninth chapter of the epistle to the Romans, employed by others also, in proof of the doctrine of unconditional predestination.<sup>5</sup> It may be ques-

the abbot Bernard, when little was known about the secret doctrines of the sect; for this is reported by the abbot Ecbert of Schönaue: *Novam et hactenus inauditam insaniam de iis compertam habemus, quam manifeste confessi sunt quidam eorum, cum examinarentur a clero in civitate Colonia. Dicebant enim, animas humanas non aliud esse, nisi illos apostatas spiritus, qui in principio mundi de regno coelorum ejeoti sunt. L. c., f. 602.*

<sup>1</sup> According to the Vulgate: *Quod Deus creavit omnia simul.*

<sup>2</sup> Moneta, f. 72.

<sup>3</sup> See the passage of Philo, vol. i., p. 48, and the passage cited from the prayer of Joseph, p. 61.

<sup>4</sup> Moneta, lib. i., c. iv., § i., f. 44, seqq.

<sup>5</sup> L. c., lib. i., c. v. f., 64.

tioned, however, whether their opinion on this point has been correctly represented; for it does not exactly accord with their doctrine of the fall, of repentance, and of the purifying process of fallen souls. Perhaps they only objected to the doctrine which derived evil generally from the creaturely freewill, as they were obliged to do by their Dualism; or to a Theodicy, which referred everything in the progressive development of the earthly life to the freewill; while they, on the contrary, believed it must proceed from an original difference of nature, or from the conditions of an earlier existence.<sup>1</sup> They regarded Christ as the highest spirit after God, yet differing from him in essence, and subordinate to him; as they supposed, again, a like subordination between the Son of God and the Holy Ghost. They referred here to those passages of the Old and New Testament which had always been quoted in support of the doctrine of subordination; among others, to Proverbs viii. 22, where they had the reading *ἐκτίσται*, not *ἐκτίσται*,<sup>2</sup> which again indicates their connection with the older oriental sects. But if it were inferred from this use of the passages cited, that they considered Christ as merely a creature, this would certainly be wrong; since they were undoubtedly in favour of a doctrine of emanation. The Son of God, then, was sent down, so they taught, to overthrow the kingdom of Satan, to release the fallen souls from the bonds of the corporeal world and of Satan, and to bring them back to the community of heaven, to restore them to their original condition. The Son of God united himself to a spirit, soul, and body, in that heavenly world, and so descended, with the annunciation of the angel, into Mary, and again went forth from her.<sup>3</sup> Herself, however, they regarded as a higher spirit, who appeared on earth for the purpose of becoming the instrument or channel for the appearance of the Son of God in humanity. They taught, like the Valentinians, that the heavenly body of Christ was, by a special act of divine power, so modified that it seemed like an earthly one, and could be perceived by the senses. Yet they must explain all sensuous acts and affections, to which Christ subjected himself as unreal, mere appearances. They maintained, likewise,

1 As in the texts concerning Jacob and Esau, in the Epistle to the Romans, ch. ix.

2 Moneta, f. 235.

3 Moneta, f. 5 et 232: *per auram intravit and per auram exivit.*

that all the accounts of the miracles wrought by Christ, were to be understood only in a spiritual sense, as symbols of the spiritual miracles wrought by him.<sup>1</sup> In proof that these accounts should be so understood, they appealed to the words of St Paul : "The letter killeth, the spirit maketh alive." In a dialogue, written probably in the thirteenth century, between a member of this party and an orthodox man,<sup>2</sup> the Catharist, in reply to the question, Why do you work no such miracles as are adduced in the Catholic church, in testimony of its truth and divinity? says : "We perform a miracle when we convert a man to God ; then we drive out from him the evil spirits, his sins. We exorcise the poisonous serpents when we drive out these evil spirits ; we speak in other tongues, when we set before our hearers truths never before heard: A covering is still over your souls, who believe that Christ and the apostles wrought visible miracles. The letter killeth, the spirit maketh alive. Spiritually we must understand it, and not suppose that Christ called the soul of Lazarus back again to his body, but that he awakened the sinner, one spiritually dead, and passed already, through sin, to putrefaction, by converting him to the faith. So will it happen to you, also, if you will but understand, spiritually, all that is said of the miracles of Christ and of the apostles."<sup>3</sup> The denial of miracles did by no means proceed, in the case of this party of Catharists, from an original tendency of opposition to the supernatural principle ; but it grew out of their spiritual Dualism, which led them to regard the sensible world as a work of the evil principle ; to disparage, uniformly, the things of sense, and to set little value on deliverance from bodily evils. A kind of miracles quite different from corporeal ones, must be wrought by the representative of the good principle. It belonged to an organ of the evil principle, from which this sensible world proceeds, to perform visible miracles. We may rather look upon these Catharists as the representatives of an ultra supernaturalistic direction, when, instead of contemplating phenomena in the natural connection of cause and effect, we find them representing the powers of the

<sup>1</sup> L. c., lib. i., c. ix., f. 99 et 222.

<sup>2</sup> *Disputatio inter Catholicum et Paterinum*, published by Martene and Durand, in the *Thesaur. nov. anecdotor.*, t. v.

<sup>3</sup> L. c. f. 1750.

higher world of spirits as everywhere coming into play. While they made the Virgin Mary an angel, sent down to the world on a particular errand,<sup>1</sup> a party among them declared the apostle John, whom they especially revered, to be an angel who, as Christ said of him that he should remain till he came, was still upon earth.<sup>2</sup> Yet that spiritualizing Docetism might pass over to a rationalistic tendency, setting lightly by or wholly discarding the historical Christ. We find, accordingly, a party among the Albigenes in South France, who taught that the Christ who was born in the earthly and visible Bethlehem, and crucified in Jerusalem, belonged to the evil principle, and they did not hesitate to blaspheme him. The Christ of the good principle they would recognize only as an ideal one, a Christ that never ate nor drank, that never took a real body, that existed in this world only in a spiritual manner, in the person of the apostle Paul;<sup>3</sup> so that the apostle Paul was here exalted above the historical Christ, as his doctrine also was recognized as the genuine spiritual Christianity, the historical appearance of the ideal Christ having first taken place in him. We will not deny that, as this account proceeds from the fiercest enemies of the sect, we might be tempted to consider the whole report as a manufactured conclusion, or a pure invention of heresy-hating spite; but as a representation like this is entirely foreign from the spirit of these times, it is not very probable that a story of this sort would be invented. We find mentioned, again, a party of Catharists under the name *Ordibarii*, who taught that a Trinity first began to exist at the birth of Christ. The man Jesus became Son of God by his reception of the Word announced to him, and he was the son of Mary, not in the corporeal but in a spiritual sense, being born of her in a spiritual manner, by the annunciation of the Word;<sup>4</sup>

<sup>1</sup> According to Martene and Durand, t. v., f. 1722, Mary was an archangel.

<sup>2</sup> The opinion of the Slaves, according to Moneta, l. c., f. 233.

<sup>3</sup> See the Chronicle of Bal Cernay, belonging to the thirteenth century, in du Chesne Scriptores hist. Franc., t. v., c. ii.: Bonus enim Christus nunquam comedit vel bibit nec veram carnem assumpsit nec unquam fuit in hoc mundo nisi spiritualiter in corpore Pauli.

<sup>4</sup> Quod primo tunc Deus pater habuerit filium, quando Jesus suscepit verbum, et dicunt ipsum esse filium virginis, non carnaliter ex ea, sed spiritualiter per prædicationem ejus genitum.

and when, by the preaching of Jesus, others were attracted, the Holy Ghost began to exist.<sup>1</sup>

We shall say nothing, in this place, on the doctrine of baptism as held by this party, as it is our intention to omit, here, what both parties have in common with each other. We simply notice that, according to their doctrine, repentance must have respect not only to all single sins, but first of all to that common sin of the souls that fell from God, which preceded their existence in time. This is the consciousness of the apostasy from God, of the inward estrangement from him, and pain on account of this inner aversion to God, as constituting the only foundation of true penitence. As the Gnostics supposed that, by virtue of the new birth, every soul is reunited to its corresponding male half, the higher spirit of the *pleroma*, so the Catharist party of which we are speaking supposed, in this case, a restoration of the relation between the soul and its corresponding *spirit*, from which it had been separated by the apostasy. From this spirit they distinguished the Paraclete, promised by Christ, the *Consolator*, into fellowship with whom one should enter by the spiritual baptism, which they called, therefore, the *consolamentum*. They held that there were many such higher spirits, ministering to the vigour of the higher life. But from all these they distinguished the Holy Spirit, pre-eminently so to be called, as being exalted above all others, and whom they designated as the *Spiritus principalis*. They held to a threefold judgment; first, the expulsion of the apostate souls from heaven; second, that which began with the appearance of Christ; third and last, when Christ shall raise his redeemed to that higher condition which is designed for them.<sup>2</sup> This they regarded as the final consummation, when the souls shall be reunited with the spirits and with the higher organs they had left behind them in heaven.<sup>3</sup> This was their resurrection.

As we find among this party of Catharists many elements of Alexandrian Judaism, so it is possible that these Catharists were, from the first, disposed to admit the authority of the Old Testament, according to the distinction laid down by the Alexandrian

<sup>1</sup> Quando prædicavit Jesus et attraxit alios, tunc primo accessit tertia persona. Rainer contra Waldenses, c. vi. Bibl. patr. Lugd. t. xxv., f. 266.

<sup>2</sup> F. 381.

<sup>3</sup> F. 353.



Jews, of a literal and a spiritual sense. It is possible, also, that it was not until a later period they were led, in disputing with their adversaries, whom they wished to confute on their own grounds, to admit the authority of the prophets.<sup>1</sup> Another noticeable fact, which also intimates their connection with a Jewish theology, is, that they set great value upon the apocryphal book called the Ascension of Isaiah (*ἀνάβασις τοῦ Ἠσαΐα*), where, in fact, may be found the germs of many of their doctrines; as, for example, the doctrine concerning the heavenly garment of souls, the doctrine of Docetism.<sup>2</sup>

The second class of Catharists did not hold to an evil principle existing from eternity; but, on the contrary, derived all evil and imperfection from the apostasy of a higher spirit. He, they taught, had been made ruler, by the Almighty, over many other spirits, as the case is represented in the unjust steward of the parable, the symbol, in their opinion, of this higher fact. Seized with the desire of casting off the shackles of dependence in which he was held, and of setting up an independent kingdom of his own, he persuaded the stars of heaven, that is, many of the angels, a third part of them, to apostatize with him, promising them that they should be relieved from the heavy burdens and cares of their allotted employments.<sup>3</sup> Out of chaos, which God created as the first matter of all being, he proposed to construct a world of his own. Matter, as these Catharists taught,<sup>4</sup> proceeded from God; the form given to it, from Satan. They allowed, therefore, that God created all things visible potentially.<sup>5</sup> Adam was an angel, sent by the Almighty, to watch Satan, and

<sup>1</sup> As Moneta says (f. 218), they rejected, at first, all but Isaiah.

<sup>2</sup> L. c. f. 218: Cujus—of Isaiah—dicunt esse quendam libellum, in quo habetur, quod spiritus Esaias raptus a corpore usque ad septimum coelum ductus est, in quo vidit et audivit quaedam arcana, quibus vehementissime innituntur, with which we may compare the anathema attributed to the Bogomiles (in J. Tolle, Insigne, etc. p. 166): *Κατὰ τὴν βδελύραν ψευδοπύγραφον παρ' αὐτοῖς τοῦ Ἠσαΐα ὕρασι*. Dr Engelhardt has already noticed the fact that the Bogomiles made use of that book, and has referred to the above-quoted passage in J. Tolle. The old Latin version of the book, published by Engelhardt, proves also that it was known and circulated in the Middle Ages. See Engelhardt's *Kirchengeschichtliche Abhandlungen*, s. 27. Erlangen, 1832.

<sup>3</sup> Vide Moneta, f. 111. The hundred measures, in the parable of the unjust steward, they explained as referring to the obligation of repeating a hundred prayers, which the Catharists of those times may have understood literally, though it was originally meant otherwise,—works done to the glory of God being thereby understood.

<sup>4</sup> L. c. f. 118.

<sup>5</sup> L. c. f. 220.

observe how he proceeded in forming his world. Satan got possession of him, and bound him within the prison of an earthly body. Thus they interpreted the parable of the good Samaritan, Luke x., which also symbolically represented their whole theory. Adam, veiled in a shining robe of light, leaves the heavenly Jerusalem; he is attacked, while on his way, by the fallen spirits in league with Satan, who rob him of his light and throw him into the dark prison of the body. These spirits invested themselves with the robe of light which they took away from man. They are the sun, moon, and stars; for these Catharists, following an ancient notion, looked upon these bodies as intelligences, and intelligences which had fallen. The sidereal kingdom was, to them, a kingdom of evil. So too, following another ancient notion, they recognized in the sun the male, and in the moon the female principle.<sup>1</sup> Regarding all marriage as defiling, they attributed to sun and moon a monthly cohabitation, which they considered the cause of the dew that falls to the earth. Their method of explaining the parable in Matt. xviii., furnishes another illustration of their circle of ideas. The servant with whom God reckons is, according to their interpretation, Satan; his wife, wisdom; his sons, the angels subjected to and in league with him. God, moved with compassion towards him, did not deprive him of those higher powers of intelligence (wisdom) with which he had been furnished, his subjects and his goods; so also the Bogomiles taught, that God allowed Satanael to retain his creative power; for Satan had promised that if God would have patience with him, and let him alone, he would produce men enough to make good the whole number of apostate angels. God therefore gave him liberty, for six days, to make whatever he pleased of the corporeal world he had formed; which means, the six thousand years of the world, over which Satan presides. Eve was another angel, whom Satan succeeded to confine in an earthly body, to prepare the way for an intercourse of sexes, whereby the spirit might be brought into entire dependence on sense, and made subservient to his own purposes. From the intercourse of Satan with Eve, Cain was born.<sup>2</sup> The sin of Adam, the eating

<sup>1</sup> Moneta, f. 110.

<sup>2</sup> According to Moneta's account, these Catharists supposed that by Satan's succeeding to seduce Adam to cohabit with Eve, Cain was born; yet it would seem probable,

of the forbidden fruit, consisted in his allowing himself to be enticed into sexual intercourse with Eve; and thus Abel was born.

From the one heavenly soul of Adam, then, all other souls were supposed to be derived. *Traducianism*, at that time indeed generally rejected, was by them defended as the only correct theory; and *creatianism* combated. "If one soul," said they, "is not begotten of another, as the body of the body, the soul belongs not to the human kind, and so Christ is not a redeemer of souls.<sup>1</sup> When it is said of Christ, that he came to save the lost, it could not be understood of new-created souls, which were not yet lost. The doctrine of original sin could not be maintained; it could not be said, that all men sinned in Adam, if they sprang from him only by bodily descent."<sup>2</sup> In opposition to creatianism, they asserted "that, according to this view, a new divine creation must take place, in the case of every illegitimate offspring of adultery."<sup>3</sup> From the same it would follow that God, knowingly and purposely, creates more souls for destruction than for salvation. The great diversity of mental endowments, some being wise, others foolish, would, according to that doctrine, have to be ascribed immediately to God. Would God distribute his gifts so differently?<sup>4</sup> Why should finely-created souls be immersed in these impure vessels, by which they themselves become impure? for, to this contact it would be necessary, according to creatianism, to ascribe the communication of depravity."<sup>5</sup>

According to the doctrine of this party, Satan is the God of the Old Testament. It was he who revealed himself to Abraham, and caused the flood to destroy mankind. God interfered for the preservation of the race: from God proceeded the salvation of Noah. Moses and the prophets were, according to these Catharists, servants of Satan. Yet they supposed, like the earlier Gnostics,<sup>6</sup> that the prophets were transported by a higher spirit,

when we look at the doctrine of the Bogomiles, that this was a misconception. This is confirmed, moreover, by the language of the Catharists themselves, when Moneta says: "Ut dicunt volentes hoc habere per illud Joann. i. 30, quod Cain ex maligno erat."

<sup>1</sup> Moneta, f. 129.

<sup>2</sup> L. c. f. 132.

<sup>3</sup> L. c. f. 132.

<sup>4</sup> L. c. f. 135.

<sup>5</sup> L. c. f. 288.

<sup>6</sup> See what is said respecting their notion of inspiration, in my Church History, vol. ii., p. 42.

and sometimes consciously prophesied of Christ.<sup>1</sup> But they, unquestionably, spoke with consciousness and understood themselves, when, under the impulse of evil spirits, they predicted war, pestilence, the captivity of the people.<sup>2</sup> Like Marcion, they sought to point out the opposition between the Old and New Testaments; and appealed especially to the opposition between the sermon on the mount and the Mosaic law. The Mosaic law forbade only perjury; the law of Christ, oaths generally. The Mosaic law threatened death to the guilty; the law of Christ forbade the shedding even of innocent blood. They said of the members of the dominant church, that they had sunk back upon the foundation of the Mosaic law.<sup>3</sup> The Catharists, on the other hand, were for restoring the strict observance of the law of Christ. They condemned war, and punishment by death, and would allow no other testimony than a simple yea or nay.

With the prophets they rejected, also, John the Baptist, of whom they said that he was sent by Satan to prevent the baptism of Christ, to set up the baptism of water, in opposition to the spiritual baptism of Christ; but they owned, as in the case of the prophets, that he had sometimes, under the influence of the Holy Spirit, borne witness of Christ, without being conscious of what he said. They traced the contradictory language of the Baptist, therefore, to the circumstance that he spoke, sometimes, under the impulse of the Holy Spirit, and sometimes by his own.<sup>4</sup> In proof of the correctness of their views of John the Baptist, they deemed it sufficient to ask, How else came it about, that John did not personally attach himself to Christ, and become his disciple?<sup>5</sup> They appealed to Christ's own words, as bearing witness that John (Matt. xi. 6) took offence at his labours.<sup>6</sup>

In the system of subordination on the subject of the Trinity, they agreed with the other party; except with the difference that they had no scruples in calling Christ and the Holy Spirit God. Also, concerning the person of Christ they taught, like the Bogomiles, that he brought with him from the celestial regions a higher ethereal body. Mary contributed nothing to

<sup>1</sup> Si aliquando aliquid bone dixerunt de Christo, coacti a Spiritu Sancto dixerunt. L. c. f. 111.

<sup>2</sup> L. c. f. 218.

<sup>3</sup> Vos Romani idem dicitis. Moneta, f. 199.

<sup>4</sup> L. c. f. 228.

<sup>5</sup> L. c. f. 230.

<sup>6</sup> L. c. f. 229.

the production of his human body ; but only served as the channel through which he passed. As proof of that higher character of the body of Christ, they referred to his walking upon the water, to his passing through the multitude without any one being able to lay hold on him. In proof of the assertion that Mary was not really the mother of Jesus, they referred to the circumstance that Jesus called her woman, John ii. 3 ; and to the texts, Matt. xii. 17 ; Luke xi. 27. They maintained, that the communication of the Holy Spirit took place only after the resurrection of Christ ; but in this, the Catharists also of the other party agreed with them.<sup>1</sup>

The doctrine of the resurrection of the body they could not admit ; for the body having sprung from the evil principle, appeared to them the prison of the soul ; and they were obliged to give another interpretation to the passages of the New Testament referring to this point.<sup>2</sup> The text Phil. iii. 20 was referred to the church, as being the body of humility ; for they understood the word here as denoting this ethical conception.<sup>3</sup> They represented, as the final end of all things, the destruction of the creation produced by Satan, and the return of all things to the original chaos. To this chaos, wicked spirits and men should be banished.<sup>4</sup> This they regarded as hell.<sup>5</sup> Then the stars shall be deprived of that light which they had stolen, and the redeemed souls should resume it, since this was the original raiment of the heavenly man.

A point in which both parties of the Catharists agreed, was opposition to the traditional and externalizing element of the dominant church. They were for separating the primitive apostolical truth from later additions ; but deeply entangled as they were in their own singular notions, it was quite beyond their power to find any correct criterion by which to effect such a separation. Thus they contended not only against infant baptism, with arguments always readily presenting themselves against

<sup>1</sup> L. c. f. 271.

<sup>2</sup> A well-known individual of this party, in the thirteenth century, Desiderius, explained all such passages as relating to the spiritual animation of the body as the organ of the sanctified soul: *Quod spiritus sanctus vivificat corpus exterius, quod ab Apostolo dicitur mortale et mortuum ad serviendum rationi, non ad resurgendum.* L. c. f. 337.

<sup>3</sup> L. c. f. 362.

<sup>4</sup> L. c. f. 332.

<sup>5</sup> We see the analogy here with the Manichaean doctrine. See vol. ii., sect. 2, p. 223.

the institution as apostolical, but also against water-baptism generally, which Catharists of the second class looked upon as a rite introduced by Satan, through his organ John the Baptist, to the end that he might suppress the true baptism of the Spirit. When it was objected to them that Christ had suffered himself to be baptized by John, they replied : it had been done on the part of Christ by way of accommodation to a prevailing custom, and to avoid giving offence.<sup>1</sup> Others said, in order that, by occasion of it, the hitherto hidden Christ might be revealed. The church, moreover, had for a time used water-baptism, because men were accustomed to that rite,<sup>2</sup> or because it would invite them, by this symbol of water-baptism, to the baptism of the Spirit. They affirmed, that in the sacred Scriptures baptism was a term often employed to express repentance or the preaching of the divine word.<sup>3</sup> The baptism of the Spirit, true baptism, should be performed by the imposition of hands in connection with prayer, which they designated by the term *consolamentum*. In evidence of the power and significance of this act, they referred to the apostles Peter and John, who were sent to Samaria for the purpose of communicating, by the imposition of hands, the Holy Ghost to those who had received water-baptism. When it was objected to them that it was in contradiction with their own principles, according to which all sensible things proceeded from the evil principle, to attribute so much importance to a sensible act, and represent it as the instrument of an inward operation of divine grace, they replied : The Holy Spirit is communicated, not by the visible but by an invisible hand ; the invisible hand is contained under the visible. St Paul distinguishes an inner and an outer man ; and so likewise there must be an inner and an outer hand.<sup>4</sup> This *consolamentum* seems to have been twofold ; the rite of initiation, whereby one was received into the communion of the sect, adopted among the number of the believers (*credentes*) ; and that whereby he was received into the circle

<sup>1</sup> Moneta, f. 279.

<sup>2</sup> L. c. f. 291.

<sup>3</sup> Moneta, f. 288. And the Catharist in the above-cited dialogue in Martene and Durand (tom. v., f. 1726) says : Concedo, quod baptizabat Jesus et discipuli ejus in aqua, id est in prædicatione et spiritu sancto, sed non in aqua corporali. And he then appeals to the fact, that John himself had alluded to the baptism of the Holy Spirit (John vii.) : ex his collige, quod per aquam intelligitur prædicatio spiritus sancti.

<sup>4</sup> Moneta, f. 126.

of the fully initiated, into the number of the *perfects*. This latter act was doubtless so called by them in the stricter sense, since it was only by means of it that the new birth and the impartation of the Holy Spirit were effected; as we may gather from the fact that the perfects were distinguished by the epithet *Consolati*.<sup>1</sup> Answering to this consolamentum in the stricter sense, was the rite likewise so called, whereby he who had hitherto belonged only to the number of the *credentes* was, in the hour of death, received into the more limited circle of the sect, so as to be in a condition to enter, immediately after death, into the heavenly world.<sup>2</sup> The consolamentum of adoption into the number of believers was performed, according to a description of the rite drawn up in the twelfth century, after the following manner: "They assembled in a room dark and closed in on all sides, but illuminated by a large number of lights affixed to the walls. Then the new candidate was placed in the centre, where the presiding officer of the sect laid a book (probably the gospel of St John) on his head, and gave him the imposition of hands, at the same time reciting the Lord's prayer."<sup>3</sup> As it regards the Lord's supper, they were of the opinion that Christ, with the words "This is," pointed to his own body; or they explained the words of the institution in a symbolical sense. "This is," was equivalent to—this signifies. They referred, in proof, to those paragraphs of the New Testament, where the thing itself is mentioned in place of that which it may serve to represent; as, for example, in 1 Corinth. x. 4.<sup>4</sup> They referred to the fact, that Christ himself says: "My flesh profiteth nothing; my words are spirit and life," that is, are to be spiritually understood. His *words*, by which he communicates *himself*, are his true body. Moreover, they said, in partaking of the means of nourishment, in communion with Christ as his members, the bread and wine were converted into the body and blood of the Lord. This was to be represented in their love-feasts, at which the presiding officer of the sect imparted the blessing by reciting the

<sup>1</sup> Perfecti, qui consolati vocantur in Lombardia. Rainer contra Catharos, c. vi., Bibl. patr. Lugd. t. xxv. f. 266.

<sup>2</sup> Rainer, c. vi., f. 272.

<sup>3</sup> Eobert, sermon. contra Catharos, c. viii., f. 615. Here too it is impossible to mistake the affinity of the Catharists with the Bogomiles.

<sup>4</sup> Moneta, f. 296.

Lord's prayer.<sup>1</sup> They combated the doctrine of the sacrament of penance, of the necessity of a satisfaction for sins committed after baptism; according to their own doctrine, the consolamentum was a substitute for all other penance. When the members of the sect came to the bishop for the purpose of confessing their sins, they prostrated themselves before him, after the manner of the East. Each person said, "Have mercy upon us, O Lord. I never must die; but inherit thee on high, that I may have a good end." The bishop then bestowed on each, with the imposition of his hands, the consolamentum; thrice repeating, "And that thou mayest be a good man."<sup>2</sup> Many Catharists appealed to the fact that Christ, the great High Priest, enjoined no works of satisfaction on the woman caught in adultery.<sup>3</sup> Contending against the externalization of religion in the dominant church, they said: God dwells not in houses made with hands. It is not the house of stone, but the good man and the good woman, and the community of such, that constitutes the church.<sup>4</sup> Prayer in the church is no better than prayer in the closet. It is better to clothe the poor than to decorate the walls of a church. Yet we are not to suppose that this sect held on in the true direction to an interior vital Christianity. On the contrary, they united with their mystical element another species of externalization. To the consolamentum was ascribed a magical efficacy; the fellowship of heaven was made as dependent upon it as it was in the dominant church on the priestly acts. We recognize the same tendency of the times, in those cases where laymen of the Catholic church eagerly put on, at the very hour of death, the monkish cowl, in order to make sure of salvation, and in those cases where others were eager to obtain, in the very hour of death, the consolamentum by the Catharists, and to

<sup>1</sup> Eobert, l. c. f. 602: *Se solos in mensis suis corpus Domini facere dicunt, verba sancta dicunt esse panem, quia cibus animas sunt verba evangelica.* Ebrardus contra Catharos, c. viii. *Bibl. patr. Lugd., t. xxiv., f. 1547.* See the dialogue betwixt the Catholic and the Catharist in Martene and Durand, t. v., f. 1730.

<sup>2</sup> The German words, "Und werdest ein gut Mann," are so given by Rainer, c. vi., *Bibl. patr. Lugd., t. xxv., f. 272.*

<sup>3</sup> Moneta, f. 306: *Quidam garruli obijciunt dicentes, quod Christus summus sacerdos et pontifex secundum ordinem Melchisedek nulla satisfactionis opera injunxit mulieri in adulterio deprehensae.*

<sup>4</sup> Ebrard. *Bibl. patr. Lugd., t. xxiv., f. 1537.* Rainer, c. v., *Bibl. patr. Lugd. t. xxv., f. 266.*



be buried among them.<sup>1</sup> If men elsewhere sought to make themselves more certain of the forgiveness of their sins by bequests to the clergy and to the churches, bequests to the communities of the Catharists were made on precisely the same principle.<sup>2</sup> We may believe, therefore, that as the former suffered themselves to be misled, by trusting in the outward things of the church, into a false security; so the same effect was produced on the latter, by reliance on the consolamentum in the hour of death.<sup>3</sup> In fact, the externalization in the Catharistic doctrine of the consolamentum, which stood them in place of all the sacraments, may have been pushed farther than it was in the church doctrine of the sacraments. While the necessity of the consolamentum was unconditionally asserted, for instance, by the Catharists, the *votum* might serve on the contrary, according to the doctrine of the church, as a substitute for the sacraments, when they were unavoidably omitted.<sup>4</sup> In the case of such a sect, limited to itself, this principle of externalization, having once gained a foothold, would be the more likely to be pushed to an extreme, as those manifold tendencies of the religious spirit in different directions were here absent, which, acting as a check on each other, preserved the Catholic church from too stiff a uniformity and too downright one-sidedness. It is quite evident, also, how

<sup>1</sup> In the *Chronicle of Pay Lorent*, the following anecdote is related. Bishop William, of Alby, in South France, received a message in the night from Pierre de Beres, a knight notorious for robbery, and other crimes, who was a kinsman of his, requesting him to come to his castle, some hours distant, the knight being very sick and near to death, and wishing to speak with him on certain affairs, before he left the world. When the business was finished for which the bishop had been summoned, the latter asked the knight where he wished to be buried, naming several consecrated places. The knight replied, he heeded give himself no trouble about that matter, for he had already made up his mind on the subject. When the bishop pressed him further, he declared that it was his wish to be conveyed to a community of the Catharists. The bishop now assured him that this would not be allowed; but said the knight, "Better give yourself no trouble about it; for if I could not do otherwise, I would crawl to them on all fours." See the *Chronicon Magistri Guallemi de Podio Laurentii*, c. iiii., in *Du Chesne Scriptores hist. Franc.*, t. v., f. 668.

<sup>2</sup> See the words of Moneta, f. 393: *Nonne tua synagoga legata recipit mortuorum? Nonne aliquoties cum aliquis moritur, recepta manuum impositione a te, legat ecclesiae tuae tantum vel tantum et alii totidem aut plus vel minus.* Which is also confirmed by other evidence.

<sup>3</sup> As is shown in the above-stated example.

<sup>4</sup> Hence Moneta, from this starting point, combats, in connection with the church mode of thinking, the externalization which was carried to such extremes. See Moneta, f. 304, col. 2, where he cites against it the example of the thief on the cross.

little capable the Catharists were of understanding their own straightness and confinement, by comparing it with the manifold diversity which distinguished the Catholic church of this period, when we find them proceeding on the principle, that there is but one uniform way of salvation, which was to be found in their own sect alone, and hence regarding that manifoldness as a reproach to the church, as a proof that she did not know the one only way of salvation.<sup>1</sup>

Although the Catharists, in opposing the authority of church tradition,<sup>2</sup> the hierarchy, the worship of saints and images, the value of pilgrimages, are precursors of the Protestant principle, still it is evident from what has been said, that in other respects they are the farthest possible removed from it; and among these may be mentioned the great importance they gave to works as a condition of salvation. Their opponents combated them on this very point, and set up faith and grace in opposition to the merit of works. It is from this point of view that Eberhard of Schönau, in attacking them, gives the priority to faith; because, where there is faith, works will invariably follow of themselves, while with works faith is not necessarily given.<sup>3</sup>

<sup>1</sup> Quod unica est via ad salvationem secundum Christum, Joann. xiv. 6, cum ergo via ecclesiae Romanae multiplex sit, alia enim est via monachorum, alia canonicorum regularium, et alia clericorum aliorum, alia fratrum praedicatorum, alia minorum, ecclesia Romana non est de via salutis. Moneta, lib. v., c. i., f. 396. So likewise Ebrard. contra Catharos, c. xix.: Dicunt unam tantum salutis esse viam, ad quam ipsi prae caeteris deveniunt. Nesciunt enim, quod plures viae ad unam deveniunt viam. Bibl. patr. Lugd., t. xxiv., f. 1568.

<sup>2</sup> Rainer says, particularly, they did not receive the writings of the fathers; but the four evangelists having written, as they said, in a saving way, because they had written upon the heart, these they received—sed tantum moraliter exponunt; an expression too general, correctly applying only to those spiritualizing Catharists. The other four, say they, had written unprofitably, because they only wrote on the lifeless parchment, namely, Jerome, Augustin, Ambrose, and Bernard. The writings of these fathers they despised, and said of them that they were damned. It deserves to be noticed, however, that they are said to have made an exception here of St Bernard, eo quod ipse conversus ab errore suo sit et salvatus. What may have led them to make this exception? The kindred mystic element, or the way in which he protected the Catharists from the blood-thirsty rage of the populace? See Rainer, contra Catharos, c. vi.; Bibl. patr. Lugd., t. xxv., f. 267.

<sup>3</sup> In operibus solummodo confidentes, fidem praetermittunt, cum fides operibus potius sit praeposenda. He appeals to the fact that to the question (John vi.): Quid faciemus, ut operemur opera Dei? Christ answered, Hoc est opus Dei, ut credatis in eum, quem misit ille. Ecce, quod credere hic appellat operari, omnis enim, qui credit, operatur, sed non omnis, qui operatur, credit, fides enim praecellit operibus. Ebrard. contra Catharos, c. xvi. Bibl. patr. Lugd. t. xxiv., f. 1558.

From the principles of the Catharists proceeded a rigidly ascetic system of morality, to the observance of which, however, none but the perfects were obligated. Those principles required abstinence from meat, eggs, and cheese ; from everything that is the product of the sexual intercourse of animals. Perhaps only by a part it was held unlawful to kill animals, or certain species of animals.<sup>1</sup> This probably stood in some connection with their doctrine of metempsychosis. They condemned marriage, so far as connected with sexual intercourse ; for, according to the doctrine of one party of the Catharists, this is the very means whereby the heavenly souls are continually confined anew in the corporeal world, while, according to the other, this intercourse was the capital sin into which Adam suffered himself to be beguiled by the evil spirit. The words of Christ : " What God has joined together let no man put asunder," the more Dualistic Catharists explained of the spiritual marriage between Christ and the church ;<sup>2</sup> and accordingly they permitted only a spiritual marriage, without sexual intercourse.

To the Esoterics and Exoterics in this sect correspond the two classes of *perfecti*, or *boni homines*, who were called Catharists in the stricter sense, and the *credentes*. According to the testimony of Rainerio Sacchoni, who wrote against the Catharists, in the first half of the thirteenth century, there were countless numbers in all quarters of the world, who belonged to the second class ; but only four thousand of both sexes belonging to the class of the " perfect." A numerical statement of this sort, relating to a sect that propagated itself in secret, is of course a matter of uncertainty, still, the statement becomes more probable when we are informed that he himself had been for seventeen years a member of the sect.<sup>3</sup> He refers, moreover, to a census repeatedly taken among themselves ; and notwithstanding opposite parties existed among them, such a census might very well have been made ; for, in spite of these differences, they still mutually acknowledged one another as belonging to the same community.<sup>4</sup> The *perfects* stood in the same kind of relation to

<sup>1</sup> Rainer, c. vi., t. xxv., f. 268.

<sup>2</sup> Moneta, f. 341.

<sup>3</sup> Rainer, f. 267.

<sup>4</sup> Omnes ecclesie Catharorum recipiunt se invicem, licet diversas habeant opiniones et contrarias. L. c. f. 271.

the entire sect, as the *elect* in the sect of the Manichaeans. They represented themselves as being persons who in utter poverty, amidst constant persecutions, wandering about without a settled home, truly copied the life of Christ and of the apostles, while the walk of the worldly-minded clergy was in direct contradiction to that life.<sup>1</sup> From the number of these perfects, as in the case of the Manichaeans, were chosen the presiding officers of the sect; first, a bishop; then under him a *filius major* and a *filius minor*; finally, a deacon.<sup>2</sup> It deserves to be noticed, that several were destined from their childhood to the office of bishop, and educated for this purpose, who received for their food no other milk than the milk of almonds, and no flesh but fish, and who were obliged to observe the rigid diet of the perfects.<sup>3</sup> But an opposition of this sort, so entirely at variance with the essence of the Christian life, could only be injurious in its influence on that life, so that the higher the requisitions made on the strict living of the *perfects*, the greater would be the disposition to overlook the failings of the *credentes*. Yet how shall we reconcile it with the above statement that, according to the testimony of the first opponents themselves, it was their blameless and strict mode of life that distinguished the Catharists generally; that they abstained from cursing and swearing, and simple yea or nay was a substitute with them for the strongest attestations. It may be, that it was not till after the sect had become more widely spread, and acquired a proselyting spirit, that this opposition between the moral life of the perfects and of the believers became more prominent, and the standard of conduct required of the latter was lowered down. But it may be, too, that those *who*, were no better than the great mass of the dominant church, did not belong to the believers among the Catharists, but to the Catechumens, the *auditores*; that the opponents of the Catharists, who noticed only the distinction between the perfects and the believers, failed duly to distinguish the Catechumens from the

<sup>1</sup> See e. g. the letter of the provost Everwin of Steinfeld, giving a report to abbot Bernard of Clairvaux, of the Catharists, discovered in the region of Cologne, in the 3d vol. of Mabillon's *Analecta*, in the octavo ed.

<sup>2</sup> Rainer, f. 269.

<sup>3</sup> *Nutrientes cum lacte amygdalino et pecudis*, in Rainer, f. 272, should read, without doubt: *et non pecudis*.

latter, and many things which might be true of the Catechumens came to be transferred to the believers.<sup>1</sup> And so it may have been these auditors, who put off the consolamentum which they were bound to receive, till the hour of death, in the expectation that they might then pass over, purified from all their sins, into the higher world. It is plain, at least, from the report of the proceedings of the inquisition at Toulouse,<sup>2</sup> published by Philip of Limborch, which contains the trial of several men and women belonging to the sect of the Catharists, that such persons entered into an agreement<sup>3</sup> with the presiding officer of the same, in virtue of which they were to be received into the sect by the consolamentum, that so being delivered from all their sins they might pass at once into paradise.<sup>4</sup> This is explained to mean that they were then first received into the sect.<sup>5</sup> The presiding officers of the Catharists were called to visit the sick, for the purpose of performing some rite upon them, whereby they were to be incorporated into the sect and so made partakers of salvation;<sup>6</sup> that is, without doubt, to bestow on them the consolamentum. Cases occurred where persons who, in sickness, had been led by the fear of death to resolve on getting themselves received into the sect, and to whom the presiding officer had already been called for this purpose, fell back from their purpose on finding themselves getting better.<sup>7</sup> It is true, Rainer so represents the matter as if those who were already believers would, when near their end, in order to secure salvation, make over all their property and wholly devote themselves to the sect.<sup>8</sup> However this may be,

1 The provost Everwin of Steinfeld, in the above-mentioned letter, distinguishes the following three classes: Prius per manus impositionem de numero eorum, quos auditores vocant, recipiunt quemlibet inter credentes et sic licebit eum interesse orationibus eorum, usquedum satis probatum eum faciant electum.

2 In the Appendix to his *Historia Inquisitionis*. Amstelodami, 1692.

3 Called *La convenensa*.

4 In the above-mentioned protocol, f. 29: *Fecit pactum haereticis, quod ipsi vocant la convenensa, quod peteret haereticos, in infirmitate sua, ut reciperent eam et salvarent animam ipsius et si evaderet, quod servaret et teneret vitam et sectam ipsorum et observantias*. F. 111, the words of a leader of this sect: *Quod in ipso erat salvatio et si aliquis in fine suo reciperet ab ipso ordinationem, salvabatur, et ibat in paradisum*.

5 The occurring expression: *haereticari*, f. 22, the *convenensa pactum, quod recipere-tur in fine per eos ad sectam ipsorum*.

6 F. 20: *Ut facerent aliquid, per quod salvaretur in ordine ipsorum*.

7 F. 15 to one called, *ad haereticandum quemdam infirmum, sed non fuit haereticatus, quia invaluit, and other like cases*.

8 *Credentibus ipsorum nullam dant spem salutis, nisi ad ipsorum sectam relictis om-*

we must conceive the matter in the sense of the Cathariats, which was as follows: whether one belonged before his death to the class of Catechumens or of believers, it was only by resolving on and binding himself to that renunciation of the world which was required of the *perfects*, that he could hope to enter into the kingdom of heaven: for what the Manichaeans said of their *elect*, the same was said by the Catharists of their *perfects*, that to belong to their number was a necessary transition-point to reunion with heaven.<sup>1</sup> Such began, therefore, even in their sickness, a strictly ascetic life. They must bind themselves to drink nothing but water, especially to abstain from milk, and not to allow any woman to come too near them.<sup>2</sup> If one who had received the consolamentum, allowed himself afterwards to eat anything forbidden, he must be comforted over again, which was the *reconsolatio*.<sup>3</sup> We recognize the gloomy ascetic spirit of downright Dualism,<sup>4</sup> the genuinely oriental spirit, reminding us of the self-annihilation of the Hindoo, in the case of those who after having finally received the consolamentum, resigned themselves to death by starvation, which was called the *endura*, hoping thus to pass the more certainly to, or to secure a higher place in, the kingdom of light, or in other ways sought an imaginary martyrdom,<sup>5</sup> men and women taking their places together in a bath, and either opening each other's veins, or poisoning themselves with the juice of the wild cucumber.<sup>6</sup> It is true, the fury with which the Catha-

nibus convertantur et eadem in extremo vitae articulo manus impositionem ab ipsis accipiant. Dicunt enim, omnia peccata per manus impositionem ab ipsis factam relaxari et spiritum sanctum infundi. Bibl. patr. Lugd. t. xxv., f. 272.

<sup>1</sup> Thus in that protocol of the Inquisition at Toulouse (f. 152), it is said of a person, who was for going over to the Catharists, that he betook himself to such an one, ut addisceret vitam et sectam dieti haeretici et quod volebat et proponebat esse et fieri haereticus perfectus seu vestitus, sicut ille erat, qui vocant se bonos homines.

<sup>2</sup> Of such an one, f. 29: Quod non daret aliquem cibum cum pinguedine nisi aquam ad bibendum, and f. 104, of a little daughter, who, as being haereticata, had bound herself to drink no milk.

<sup>3</sup> L. c. f. 59: Iterum reconsolatus, quia peccaverat comedendo.

<sup>4</sup> Probably these things were done only by the Catharists who espoused the doctrine of absolute Dualism; the doctrines which occur in the protocol of the Inquisition at Toulouse, point throughout to *this* party.

<sup>5</sup> Ponere se in endura et facere bonum finem. In the above protocol, f. 138.

<sup>6</sup> Such cases occurred in various forms in the Toulouse protocol: Of a woman, it is said: In sua ultima aegritudine compos mentis existens in sectam recepta fuit consolamentum per impositionem manuum petens, et recipiens ab iisdem, et legatum ipsis fecit, et ipsamet persolvit iisdem, et sic recepta per haereticos in abstinentia, quam ipsi

rists were persecuted in the thirteenth century may have contributed to promote among them this fanatical seeking after death ; and we meet with examples which show that they inflicted death on themselves in these ways, to avoid falling victims to the inquisitions.<sup>1</sup> But still, there is not the least warrant for asserting that this sickly hatred of life, which has its ground in the whole Dualism and orientalism of this sect, was only and for the first time called forth by the persecutions.

The Catharists were zealous in disseminating their principles everywhere ; they were careful to improve every favourable circumstance for this purpose, and seized upon every occurrence which could serve as means to it. Among the favourable circumstances, belonged especially the contests between emperors and popes ; the schisms between state and church, whereby the introduction and spread of their tenets were particularly favoured. This was the case, for example, during the disputes between the Hohenstaufen emperors and the popes, in Italy, and the countries on the Rhine.<sup>2</sup> When a country was laid under the interdict, the dissatisfaction and the religious necessities of the laity gave them better opportunity than they usually enjoyed to enlarge their sect.<sup>3</sup> Humbert de Romanis, in exhorting the companions of his order to a more zealous discharge of their predicatorial duties, in a work already mentioned by us, could hold up for their imitation the example of the heretics, who at the peril of their lives

*vocant enduram, multis diebus perdurans sectam ipsorum servando, se fecit tanquam haereticam more ipsorum adorari, mortemque corporalem sibi accelerans, sanguinem minuendo, balneum frequentando potumque letiferum ex succo encumerum silvestrium, immisso in eo vitro fracto, quo frangerentur ejus viscera, in fine. L. c., f. 33.* A juice prepared from the seeds of the wild gourd (wild cucumber) called by the ancients *elatrium*, used in certain quantities as a medicine, a cathartic, was in larger doses fatal : "*Copiosius necat*," says Pliny, *Hist. natur.*, lib. xx., c. iii. The declaration so often occurring in the protocol of Toulouse serves to confirm what Rainer reports, though all he says is not to be regarded as literally true. He states that the Catharists left it at the option of the sick whether they would belong to the martyrs or to the confessors. He who chose the first was strangled ; he who chose the second, was left to die of hunger. *T. xxv., f. 72.*

1 *Instrumentum ferreum, quod dicta Guilelma fecerat emi, cum quo perforaretur in latere subito, si venirent nuncii inquisitorum.* In the above-mentioned protocol, f. 76.

2 Thus in the quarrel betwixt Alexander the Third and Frederic the First ; see Thomas Cantipraten. *Apes*, lib. i., c. v., p. 23, the contested imperial election between Philip and Otho under Innocent the Third ; see Caesar. Heisterbac. *Distinct.* v., c. xxi., f. 138.

3 See Thomas Cantipraten., l. c.

travelled about from village to village and from house to house.<sup>1</sup> As merchants, they frequented fairs and markets, and converted the intercourse of trade into a means of finding opportunities and occasions for introducing their doctrines among the multitudes who flocked together at these places.<sup>2</sup> They also sent young men of their community to the then metropolis of all scientific culture at Paris, for the purpose of learning there the dialectical arts, which they were to apply in refuting the doctrines of the church and in defending their own; and to seek occasions of exerting an influence on the academical youth.<sup>3</sup> Among their believers were many tradesmen, who had accumulated handsome fortunes.<sup>4</sup> These had it in their power to bestow largely on the members of their party, and to show hospitality to all the brethren coming from a distance. The feature that so much distinguished the first Christian communities, seemed to have revived again in this party, more closely bound together as they were by the persecu-

<sup>1</sup> *Haeretici cum periculo corporis non cessant per domos et villas discurrere, ut pervertant animas. De eruditione praedicatorum, lib. v., c. xxxi. Bibl. patr. Lugd. t. xxv. f. 447.*

<sup>2</sup> See a letter of pope Innocent the Third to French bishops, warning them against certain Catharists: *Qui tempore praedecessoris tui, cum essent haeretici, a villa fugere praedicta sub mercationis obtentu nunc adeunt loca suspecta et per tres aut quatuor menses commorantes ibidem, cum redeunt, secum adduunt sani dogmatis perversiores.*—An eye-witness says of the Catharists in Italy: *Multos mercatores hac intentione mittunt at nundinas, ut pervertant divites laicos commensales et hospites, cum quibus loquendi familiariter indulgeter facultas ut multipliciter negociantes, aliorum pecunias hinc sibi lucrentur, inde animas nihilominus thesaurizent Antichristo.* See the letter of Yves of Narbonne, in Matthew of Paris, f. 539. This report is an important source of information respecting the occupations followed by the Catharists. The above Yves was an ecclesiastic of Narbonne, who had been accused of heresy before the papal legate, and fear-induced him, though conscious as he says of no guilt, to abscond. As a man persecuted by the church on account of heresy, he everywhere met with a very hospitable reception in the communities of the Catharists in Italy, though as a man whose sole aim in living was gratifying his lusts, he availed himself of this hospitality only to enjoy himself at their expense, without sharing their convictions. He drew up a report of what came under his notice while living amongst the Catharists, for bishop Gerald of Bourdeaux, in the above-cited letter.

<sup>3</sup> Thus, in the above-cited letter, it is said: *Quod ex omnibus fere civitatibus Lombardiae et quibusdam Thusciae Parisios dociles transmisissent scholares, quosdam Logicis cavillationibus, alios etiam Theologicis dissertationibus insudantes, ad adstruendos ipso- rum errores et professionem apostolicae fidei confutandam.*

<sup>4</sup> When they boasted of following the apostles in evangelical poverty, which to be sure could hold good only of the "perfect," this was objected to them; as, for example, by Moneta: *Nusquam invenitur in novo testamento, quod apostoli essent negotiatores, et quod pergerent ad nundinas causa negotiationis terrenae (where, however, as we have seen, they had another object in view) et quod anbelarent pecuniam cumulandam, sicut vos facitis, quomodo ergo illorum viam tenetis?* Lib. v., c. i., f. 396.



tions. The above-mentioned Humbert, general of the Dominicans, holds them up likewise to the Catholics, as patterns for imitation in respect to the zeal with which they made collections for their indigent brethren in the faith.<sup>1</sup> Their adversaries expatiate on the ample support which every one that professed their peculiar principles found among them, as a means by which attachment to those principles was especially promoted.<sup>2</sup> As in the first ages of Christianity, every Christian who brought with him a letter of recommendation from his community was certain of meeting a hospitable reception from his brethren in the faith, so any one belonging to the sect of the Catharists, when recommended by one of their communities, might expect to meet with a kind reception everywhere among the Catharists. Let him travel in Italy, or in South France, he was sure of finding everywhere whatever he needed in abundance;<sup>3</sup> a custom, to be sure, liable to be abused by impostors.<sup>4</sup> In particular, the perfects, when on their travels, were received into the houses of all believers with great demonstrations of respect. The inmates thrice bowed the knee, to receive their blessing. The members of the sect in the whole place speedily assembled at the house where they were entertained; and perhaps others also, who were not liable to be suspected as informers, were invited in, to hear them preach and expound the Scriptures.<sup>5</sup> Commencing with the inculcation of practical truths, against which no one could have a word to object, with making known and explaining the New Tes-

<sup>1</sup> *Tanta est haereticis cura de auditoribus suis, quod non cessant discurrere et congregare elemosynas, ut de ipsis sustentent credentes suos pauperes et alliciant alios socios suos ad credendum.* Lib. I., c. xli., f. 462.

<sup>2</sup> *Si pauper fueris et mendicus, moram cum illis facias, statim exies opulentus, quippe a diluculo ad crepusculum in mundanis operosi mercaturis, manus non permittunt otari.* Ebrard. c. xxii., t. xxiv., f. 1566.

<sup>3</sup> It seems that the houses of the Catharists could be distinguished by certain marks known to individuals of the sect, and concealed from all others. It is reported of the Catharist Punzilovo, presently to be mentioned, that, in returning from Rimini, he remarked to some one, that the Catharists had many houses there; and, on being asked how he knew, he replied: *Ego bene cognosco eas, quia habent aliqua signa, per quae cognosco eas.* These marks, however, he would not discover to any one. See the acts relating to this Punzilovo in *Muratori antiquitates Italicae medii aevi*, t. v., ed. fol. 181.

<sup>4</sup> As in the case of the above-mentioned Yves, who says of his reception amongst the Catharists at Cremona: *Nobilissima Paterinorum bibi vina, radiolas et ceratia et alia illecebrosa comedens, deceptores decipiens.*

<sup>5</sup> As often occurs in the protocol of the Inquisition at Toulouse.

tament which was withheld from the laity, the Catharist preachers prepared the way for pointing out the contradictions between the doctrines of the New Testament and those of the church; and after having gradually shaken the confidence of their audience in the latter, they began to set forth their own opinions among hearers whose confidence they had gained for themselves. In South France, they took in the daughters of indigent noblemen and educated them for nothing. These were thus won over to their doctrines, and by their means these doctrines might be disseminated and spread in families.<sup>1</sup> When the defenders of the church doctrine spoke of the miracles of ancient and modern times as testimonies to the truth of these doctrines, the Catharists pronounced such miracles to be frauds or works of sorcery, performed by the evil principle for the advancement of his own kingdom.<sup>2</sup> To convince the people that it was all a trick, many of the Catharists feigned themselves sick or possessed of devils, and pretended to seek relief at the hand of some famous and venerated worker of miracles; and if the latter happened to be taken in by them, they afterwards discovered to the astounded multitude the true course of the thing, exclaiming, "Here you have a living example! As it was all a trick in this case, so will it be in every other in which you may allow yourselves to be duped."<sup>3</sup> They spread abroad reports of miraculous cures which had been wrought in filthy spots, or where the bones of some culprit or heretic had been buried. They contrived—which was no difficult thing in those times—to bring it about that vast crowds of people would flock to these spots. Then they discovered the trick, thus seeking to stagger the people in their faith, or to involve them in controversy with their clergy, when these sought to abate the evil.<sup>4</sup>

<sup>1</sup> Humbert, lib. ii., c. xlvi. f. 480: *In partibus Albigensium nobiles pauperes tradebant filias suas haereticis ad sustentandas eas et erudiendas et sic fiebant haereticas.* To counteract this influence, the Dominicans determined to erect a convent on the spot, particularly for the education of the daughters of the nobility.

<sup>2</sup> See the work of Lucas Tudensis (bishop Lucas of Tuy) *adversus Albigenses*, lib. i. Bibl. patr. Lugd. t. xxv., f. 196.

<sup>3</sup> Thus they endeavoured to counteract the influence of the Dominican Peter of Verona, a zealous persecutor of heretics, who had great power with the people, and who fell in this contest, A.D. 1252. See his life, *Mens April*, t. iii., c. ii., § 18, f. 691.

<sup>4</sup> An example of this sort is related by Lucas Tudensis, lib. iii., c. viii: *Quod callide fecerant, quibusdam detegentes haeretici deridebant fidem Catholicam et simili artificio fieri miracula in ecclesia coram sanctorum corporibus affirmabant.* Then, how the eccle-

Catharists who appeared in mean apparel, with pallid countenances, who wore the marks of self-mortification on their persons might, before they were recognized as heretics, become highly venerated among the people, and artfully avail themselves of this circumstance to gain the credit also of being miracle-workers ; so that it must have been very difficult for the clergy to counteract their influence.<sup>1</sup>

Near the close of the thirteenth century, a man who had contributed much to the spread of this sect in Italy, came very near being canonized. Armano Punzilovo was a rich and respectable citizen of Ferrara, descended from a family of Catharists, and had himself been received among the *consolati*, or *perfects*. He stood in close connection with their communities in the different cities of Italy ; frequently entertained them, and held meetings with them in his house. He had been suspected by the Inquisition ; but he contrived to deceive them ; for he hypocritically bore his part in the Catholic worship, and regularly confessed, with all apparent devoutness, to his Catholic guides. Through a long life he had won universal respect for his piety, his strict morality, and benevolence, when in 1269 he died, and multitudes soon flocked to his tomb, since he was regarded as a saint. Many reports were spread abroad of the wonderful cures performed there ; which are to be explained in the same way as other like appearances of this period ; perhaps, too, the sly hand of the artful Catharists may have occasionally intermeddled here. For a series of years minutes of the miracles were made out and received, falling in no respect behind the protocols of the miracles wrought by other saints, which had secured their canonization ; and the proposition was made even at Rome to canonize Punzilovo. But in the course of the proceedings for this purpose, remarks of his, on careful inquiry, gradually came to light, which increased the

siastics and monks, who at first encouraged the devotion of the people, and built a house there for the devout, afterwards stood forth in opposition to it, instabant fratres minores et clerici, ne populi vota sacrilega in loco sordido immundis ossibus exhiberent, et magis accendebantur animi laicorum ad cultum diabolicum peragendum et fratres praedicatores et minores ac clericos universos, quia erant contrarii suis operibus, haereticos conclamabant.

<sup>1</sup> Examples in Caesarius of Heisterbach, *Distinct.* v., c. xix., f. 138, and ix., c. xii., f. 270.

suspicious against him to certainty, and the result of the whole finally was that, in 1301, instead of being declared a saint, he was condemned as an heresiarch, and his body disinterred and removed.<sup>1</sup>

The most absurd reports of unnatural excesses, and other abominations, said to be committed in the secret assemblies of the sect, were spread among the multitude; accusations similar to those brought against the primitive Christians, afterwards against the Jews, and such as are ever wont to be repeated against all opponents of a dominant religion. The fanatical multitude exercised a speedy justice, hurrying away such people at once to the stake. So it happened at the beginning of this period, in the countries on the Rhine and in France. The people, in such cases, sought to anticipate the orderly investigations of the clergy, fearing they would be too gentle.<sup>2</sup> The abbot Bernard of Clairvaux protested against these tumultuary proceedings of the multitude: "We praise the zeal," says he, "but we do not advise to such hasty action; for faith must come from conviction, must not be forced;<sup>3</sup> although we admit it were better that false teachers should be restrained by the power of the sword than that they should be allowed to mislead multitudes into their error, yet only by the sword of the magistrate, which God has ordained for this purpose."<sup>4</sup> And in another sermon he says: "They should be captured, not with arms, but with arguments, by which their errors would be exposed and refuted; and they themselves reconciled, if possible, with the Catholic church, would be led back to the true faith; for such is the will of him who wills that all men should be saved and come to the knowledge of the truth. It should be the great aim of one skilled in church doctrine, whenever he is called to conduct disputes with a heretic, so to convince the errorist that he may be converted, never forgetting the words of the apostle James (v. 20). "But if such an one will not be convinced," says he, "it were better to drive him away, or even

<sup>1</sup> See the remarkable transactions in Muratori antiquitates Italicae medii aevi, t. v., folio edition.

<sup>2</sup> An example of this sort is given by the abbot Guilbert Novigent, in the third book of his life, c. xiv: *Fidelis interim populus clericalem verens mollietiem*, etc.

<sup>3</sup> *Fides suadenda est, non imponenda.*

<sup>4</sup> In Cantica Canticoorum, Sermo. lxvi., § 12, t. i., f. 1499.

to place him in custody, than to leave the whole vineyard to be laid waste by his means."<sup>1</sup>

Hildegard,<sup>2</sup> who was zealous in her opposition to these people, as a race by whom the whole country was polluted, who looked upon them as instruments for the punishment of a corrupt clergy, declared that they ought to be deprived of their goods, and driven far away from the church, but that they ought not to be killed, —for even in them the image of God must be respected.<sup>4</sup> The last person who declared against punishing the Catharists with death was the pious Peter Cantor. He cites the example of pope Eugene the Third and of archbishop Samson at the council of Rheims, in 1148. A Manichaean, who was brought to confess his errors, had, by the decision of the council, not been killed nor corporeally punished; but that others might not be misled by him, and that he himself might, if possible, be brought to repentance, he was confined in a cell, and there maintained on a meagre diet till he died.<sup>5</sup>

When the Catharists were asked by the bishops concerning their doctrines, they were fond of giving indefinite and evasive answers, and begged not to be too closely pressed.<sup>6</sup> They could get along by tacitly understanding the articles of faith in another sense,<sup>7</sup> as was actually done in the case of the articles relating to the Trinity, to Mary as the mother of God, to the miracles of Christ, to the future resurrection, and to baptism.<sup>8</sup> It is worthy

<sup>1</sup> Ex hoc jam melius, ut quidem ego arbitror, effugatur aut etiam religatur, quam sinitur vineas demoliri. In *Cantica Cantioorum*, Sermo. lxiv. § 8, f. 1486.

<sup>2</sup> See vol. vii. p. 291.

<sup>3</sup> Without doubt, the picture of these people, as they then appeared, hovered before her imagination, when she writes: *Populus iste a diabolo seductus et missus pallida facie veniet et velut in omni sanctitate se componet et majoribus secularibus principibus se conjunget.* Letter to the clergy in Cologne, p. 166. *Epistolae Hildegardis*, Colon. 1566.

<sup>4</sup> Quoniam forma Dei sunt. In the *epistola ad Moguntinenses*, p. 138.

<sup>5</sup> *Verbum Abbreviatum*, p. 200.

<sup>6</sup> As in that trial referred to by Guibert, when, after they had explained themselves generally on the subject of baptism, and they were urged to speak out more distinctly, they answered: *Propter Deum ne nos adeo profunde scrutari velitis.*

<sup>7</sup> Rainer says: *Index cautus sit circa tales, quia sicut anguilla, quanto fortius stringitur, tanto facilius elabitur, sic in omni responsione haereticorum invenies dupliciter.* L. c. t. xxv., f. 274.

<sup>8</sup> When the Catharists were examined before the council at Lombez (*Lumbariense*), in South France, A. D. 1165, they stuck to the principle in their first answers to the bishops, of acknowledging no doctrine save what could be proved from the New Testa-

of notice that the same people who did not hesitate to deceive their judges by ambiguous explanations, or some sort of mental reserve, yet understanding, as they did, the prohibitions of the sermon on the mount literally, felt the most anxious scruples against taking an oath. The perfects might be known by the fact that they either utterly refused to confirm any statement by an oath, or else endeavoured to appease their consciences by pretending that they did not swear from their souls, but only mechanically repeated a form of words after the dictation of another person.<sup>1</sup> When, at the council of Lombex, the Catharists had laid down a confession for the multitude altogether consonant with orthodoxy, and they were required to confirm it by oath, they declared they would not swear in any case, because it was contrary to the gospels and to the writings of the apostles. We have already observed how easily any man who, from conscientious regard to the words of Christ, declined taking an oath, might fall under the suspicion of being a Catharist. As it was now thought that no confidence could be placed in their asser-

ment; and in relation to particular doctrines gave indefinite and evasive answers. When, *e. g.* they were asked about infant baptism, they declared they would say nothing further, but only answer from the gospels and the epistles. When asked about the body and blood of our Lord in the Eucharist, they answered at first, as they might properly do, from their own point of view, that whosoever partook of it worthily was blessed, and whosoever did so unworthily rendered himself liable to damnation. And then they added that it could be consecrated by any good man, whether clergyman or layman, which doubtless referred to their doctrine of the daily love-feast, before explained by us. They would answer no further questions, on the ground that they would not be forced to give an account of their faith. Concerning marriage, which they certainly condemned, they gave an ambiguous explanation. When asked what they thought of penance and confession, they answered: "For the sick, it was enough if they confessed their sins when they pleased to do so. As to the duty of those in health they had nothing further to say, since James spoke only of the sick." To the question whether in addition to contrition of heart, and oral confession, a church satisfaction was also required, they answered, James speaks only of confession; nor did they wish to be better than the apostles and add something of their own, as the bishops did. When upon this, the condemning sentence was passed upon them, and their doctrines, by the bishops, they turned to the assembled multitude and said: "Listen, ye good people, to our faith which we confess. But we confess *propter dilectionem et gratiam vestri*." Which to be sure was ambiguous, as if they expressed themselves as they did, only to avoid giving offence to the multitude, who were incapable of understanding the pure truth. Which ambiguity was perhaps remarked by a bishop, who therefore objected to them: "*Vos non dicitis, quod propter gratiam Domini dicitis atque dicitis propter gratiam populi*," and they then recited a confession in perfect accordance with the orthodox faith, and which contained many things, therefore, which they could not honourably say.

<sup>1</sup> As Rainer says, t. xxv., c. ix., f. 274: *Ut formet sibi conscientiam, quod non sit jurans, sed tantum recitator juramenti judicia.*



tions, and as judgments of God, notwithstanding that influential voices had pronounced against them,<sup>1</sup> had not, down to the thirteenth century, been forbidden by any general law of the church,—resort was had, in such doubtful cases, to judgments of God, as a means of arriving at certainty respecting the guilt or innocence of suspected persons.<sup>2</sup> Thus individuals who, on no sufficient grounds, had incurred the suspicion of heresy, might, by the uncertain decision of such a judgment of God, be made to suffer, although innocent. The excellent Peter Cantor, that warm opponent of judgments of God, as an institution directly at variance with the spirit of Christianity and of the church, vigorously attacks the arbitrary will and tyranny over conscience which characterized the proceedings against the Catharists: “The pagans,” says he, “used to grant a Christian who would not give in, or who had not himself confessed, a respite of thirty days to decide whether he would or would not offer to the idols. But from him who was convinced, or who confessed, and then denied the name of Christ, it was only required that he should offer to the gods. Whether he did so from the heart was not made a matter of examination. Why does the church now presume to search men’s hearts, by a judgment out of her province? Or why should not the legal respite be granted to the Catharists? Why are they burnt at once?” He states that honourable matrons, who would not abandon themselves to the pleasures of their priests, had been accused by them as Catharists, and condemned by a powerful lord, whom he describes as a weak zealot for the faith; while from rich Catharists they were satisfied with extorting money.<sup>3</sup>

1 Yves of Chartres opposed them, because he looked upon them as a mode of tempting God, and as forbidden by the church laws. Ep. 74 and 205.

2 First, the Lateran council of the year 1215 forbade the clergy at least from taking any part in judgments of God, and severed them from all connection with the church: *Nec quisquam purgationi aque ferventis vel frigidae seu ferri candentis ritum cuiuslibet benedictionis aut consecrationis impendat.*

3 The *judicium aque frigidae* in the above-mentioned case in Guibert Novigentens. *De vita sua*, lib. iii., c. xvi.

4 See *Verbum Abbreviatum*, p. 200.

5 *Loculis divitum Catharorum emuncti et abire permissorum.* The same person cites the example of a female recluse who had fallen into bad repute with the people by familiar intercourse with the Catharists, so that none were willing to bring her food. By the advice of her confessor, to whom she protested her innocence, she resolved to subject herself to the ordeal of the hot iron; but it turned out twice to her disadvantage. *Verbum Abbreviatum*, p. 200.

Yet sometimes human sympathy would triumph over fanaticism, and the Catharists found comfort from many who accused the church of cruelty.<sup>1</sup>

The Catharists could show conclusively that persecuting false teachers was directly contrary to the essence of Christianity. They referred, for example, to the parable of the wheat and the tares, to show that man should not forestall the divine judgment, and anticipate the divine process of separation, by a violent interference of human will.<sup>2</sup> William of Paris, who speaks of this as a doctrine sprung up in his own times from the pit of hell, and contrary to divine law and divine justice,<sup>3</sup> says against it, "Certainly it was not Christ's intention that the tares should be spared, but only the wheat. He could not mean, that the tares should be spared at the expense of the wheat, or that they should be spared, when they could not be without injury to the wheat. Wherever, then, the ungodly increase to the injury of God's people, they must be extirpated; and that by death, if it cannot be effected otherwise. Now it is true that they who, at present, belong to the tares, may be converted into wheat; but this is a matter of uncertainty. But that by their means the wheat is turned into tares, is a matter of perfect certainty; for the simple and ignorant are led astray with incredible facility by the sly craft of the heretics. A few tares may easily choke a large field of wheat. It is a very rare and a very difficult thing to convert a heretic; but it is a very easy and common thing to subvert the faithful."<sup>4</sup>

The intrepidity and calmness with which Catharists faced an excruciating death, might well create an impression in their favour, on those who were not altogether hardened by fanaticism. Their enemies had no other way of accounting for it, but by ascribing it to the power of Satan. A bishop of the Catharists, named Arnold, marched firmly, with several of his believers, to

<sup>1</sup> Thus Humbert de Romanis, in his Rules for the preachers of his order, thinks some regard should be had to such impressions and objections (ii. 62, f. 555, l. c.): *Sunt multi, qui quadam falsa pietate moventur circa illos et judicant ecclesiam de nimia credulitate.*

<sup>2</sup> See Moneta, lib. vi., c. xiii., f. 519.

<sup>3</sup> De legibus, c. i., f. 26.

<sup>4</sup> *Difficilem admodum et raram videmus hæreticorum conversionem, facillimam autem et crebram fidelium subversionem.*



the stake, simply asking that he might first have a morsel of bread and a basin of water, doubtless for the purpose of distributing the holy supper according to their own mode. When the fire seized them, he laid his hands on them, in the midst of the flames, and said, "Be of good comfort, my brethren; to-day we shall be with St Lawrence." A comely maiden, who had been condemned to die with them, exciting compassion, was pulled from the flames. She was promised that if she would renounce the sect, she should either be sent to a monastery or provided with a husband. She seemed at first to consent; but when Arnold was now dead, she asked, "Where lies the seducer?" and, pressing her hands to her face, she threw herself upon the body, and died in the flames.<sup>1</sup>

The persecutions furthered the spread of the Catharists, who often held their meetings in obscure retreats, catacombs, and subterranean caves.<sup>2</sup> During the quarrel of pope Gregory the Ninth with the emperor Frederic the Second, and the absence of the former from Rome, the Catharists were enabled to spread their opinions, not only among laymen, but also the clergy; so that, as was ascertained by inquiries set on foot in 1231, many priests even were infected with the heresy, and the sharpest measures had to be employed in order to stay it. Whoever had any knowledge of the existence of heretics, in any place, or of their secret meetings, and did not give notice of it, should be excommunicated. Every layman was strictly forbidden, on penalty of the ban, to dispute publicly or privately on the faith.<sup>3</sup> Such was their boldness that, in open defiance of the church, they proceeded to elect a pope for themselves, to act as supreme head over their scattered communities. Such a pope appears in South France, Nequinta. He held, in 1167, a church assembly at Toulouse, to which crowds of men and women flocked, to receive from their pope the consolamentum. Many bishops of the party came there also with their clergy.<sup>4</sup> Nine bishops were installed, and received ordination from the pope by the consolamentum.<sup>5</sup>

<sup>1</sup> See Caesar, Heisterbac. Dist. v., c. xix., f. 138.

<sup>2</sup> L. c., Dist. v., c. xxii., f. 142.

<sup>3</sup> Raynaldi Annales, f. 1231. N. 13, etc.

<sup>4</sup> Episcopi cum consilio suo, as is said.

<sup>5</sup> Accordingly, it is said of such an one: *Accepit consolamentum et ordinem episcopi, ut esset episcopus ecclesiae Tholosanae.*

As disputes existed among the bishops respecting the boundaries of their dioceses, a committee was appointed for the purpose of determining these boundaries.<sup>1</sup> Still later, about A.D. 1223, the sect chose themselves a pope in their original seat, in Bulgaria. His name was Bartholomew; and he imitated, in all respects, the pope of Rome. Delegates of the sect visited him from all quarters, for the purpose of consulting him on disputed matters. He began his epistles as follows: *Bartholomaeus, servus servorum, sanctae fidei N.N. salutem*. By invitation from a bishop of the sect, whom he had appointed his vicar, in Carcasone, he made a villa in that district his residence.<sup>2</sup>

Among the sects of oriental origin belongs, perhaps, besides those already mentioned, the Pasagii, or Pasagini. It is manifest, from the agreement of the two accounts respecting this sect, which appeared in Italy towards and after the close of the twelfth century,<sup>3</sup> that it sprung out of a mixture of Judaism and Christianity. To the confession of Christ they united the literal observance of the Mosaic law, except sacrifices, which ceased of course after the destruction of the temple. They revived, also, subordinationism in the doctrine of the Trinity. Christ they regarded only as first among the creatures of God, probably the one by whose instrumentality he formed all other creatures. We may now ask, to what source shall we look for the origin of this mixture? As multitudes of Jews were scattered in all directions, and these, though oppressed and persecuted in various ways, yet oftentimes arose by means of their wealth to great influence, creating friends by their money among the great and mighty by whom they were protected, and as we may elsewhere observe many indications of an influence exerted by Jews upon the con-

<sup>1</sup> *Divisores ecclesiarum*. The acts of this council, in the *Histoire des Ducs, Marquis et Comte de Narbonne*, par le Sieur Besse. Paris, 1660, p. 488.

<sup>2</sup> Mathew of Paris, at the year 1223, in the above-cited edition, f. 267, mentions, as a document in evidence of what is here said, a letter of the papal legate to the archbishop of Rouen.

<sup>3</sup> Of Bonacursus: *De vita haereticorum* in the *Spicileg. of D'Achery*, t. i., f. 212, and of a G. of Bergamo, in *Muratorii antiq. Ital. medii aevi*, t. v., f. 151.

<sup>4</sup> Over which Lucas Tudensis laments, lib. iii., c. iii: *Audiunt saeculi princeps et judices urbium doctrinam haeresium a Judaeis, quos familiares sibi annumerant et amicos. Si aliquis, ductus zelo legis Dei, aliquem horum exasperavit, punitur quasi qui tangit pupillam oculi judicis civitatis.*

victions of those Christians with whom they frequently associated,<sup>1</sup> it is not inconceivable, that some such influence of habitual intercourse with Jews, may have given rise to a sect blending Judaism with Christianity, and which may thus have had a purely domestic origin in the West itself. Lucas, bishop of Tuy, looked upon it as an adroit contrivance of the heretics, that they submitted to circumcision, pretended to be Jews, under this mask promulgated their opinions, and so easily found protection and a hearing from the patrons and friends of the Jews.<sup>2</sup> But what can be more improbable than that men who were not themselves Jews, especially that Catharists, the class of heretics evidently here meant, those enemies of Judaism, should subject themselves to that detested rite of circumcision, instituted, according to their opinion, by the evil principle; should pretend to be Jews, in order to secure such outward objects, for the securing of which this was by no means the best course; for if on the one hand they might, under this mask, more easily find protection and a hearing from some, yet on the other hand they would disgust still greater numbers, over whom, by other means, they might have succeeded in exerting an influence. The matter of fact, which must be separated from the subjective reflections of the reporter, we should be inclined to regard as simply this: that there was an heretical tendency, leaning to the side of Judaism; which leaning, however, was wrongly supposed to be hypocritically put on for the purpose of compassing certain ends. The name of this sect reminds one of the word *pasagium* (passage), which signifies a tour, and was very commonly employed to denote pilgrimages to the East, to the holy sepulchre,—crusades. May not this word, then, be regarded as an index, pointing to the origin of the sect as one that came from the East, intimating that it grew out of the intercourse with Palestine? May we not suppose that from

<sup>1</sup> See the above-cited examples, where we were speaking of the abbot Guibert and the fall of pope Nicholas the Third, of the year 1288, in which he alleges, which admits of being easily explained from the kind of conversions, that not only many Jews who had embraced Christianity had turned back again to Judaism, verum etiam quam plurimi Christiani, veritatem catholicæ fidei abnegantes, se damnabiliter ad Judæicum ritum transtulerunt.

<sup>2</sup> Hæretici quædam excogitata malitia plerumque circumciduntur et sub specie Judæorum quasi gratia disputandi ad Christianos veniunt et hæreticas quæstiones proponunt. Liberius tanquam Judæi hæreses seminant, qui primo verbum hæresis dicere non audebant. Lib. iii., c. iii.

very ancient times a party of Judaizing Christians had survived, of which this sect must be regarded as an offshoot? The way in which they expressed themselves concerning Christ as being the firstborn of creation, would point also, more directly, at the connection of their doctrine with some older Jewish theology, than at that later purely Western origin.

The impulse given by oriental Dualism had contributed, it is true, in a great measure, to call forth a reaction of the Christian consciousness, longing after liberty, against the churchly theocratic system; yet this was not the only cause by which such appearances were produced. That secularization of the church, that confusion of Jewish and Christian elements in its forms and doctrines, could not fail, of itself, to arouse the opposition of a Christian consciousness, repelling this foreign matter; an opposition which was not to be kept under by any force, but which must continually break forth with increasing strength, till, with the fulness of time, it reached its triumph in the Reformation. As the progressive development of the church, proceeding on the foundation of faith in Christ as the only Saviour, pressed onwards to the Reformation, many kindred appearances would precede it. Those sects of oriental origin were but transient appearances, leaving behind them no after-effects of their own particular form. What continued to operate longer than themselves, was the opposition they set at work; which, however, cast aside the oriental and Dualistic element, and started on other principles. Of the Catharists, we afterwards meet with no further traces; but that reaction of the Christian consciousness, of which we spoke, was continually exhibiting itself in other forms, till it obtained a more durable shape in the sect of the Waldenses. Various influences coöperated to produce such reactions. We saw how the reforming bent of the Hildebrandian epoch invited the laity to rise against a corrupt clergy. The pope himself took the lead in a movement of popular reform. And we saw how, after the first impulse had been given, it might lead farther than was intended. The name *Patarenes*, which, signifying in the first place a union of the people against the corrupt clergy, passed over into an appellation of the Catharists, may serve as an illustration. Thus arose separatist tendencies. The laity would have nothing to do with the corrupt clergy. Such people, they thought, were unfitted to per-

form any sacramental act. From these beginnings it was easy to proceed further, to declare the sacraments of the corrupt church, generally, null and void. In laymen, would be awakened the consciousness of the universal priesthood, and they would soon consider themselves capable of administering the sacraments to one another.<sup>1</sup> There needed but a man of some power over the minds of others, and of an enterprising spirit, to furnish a centre for the revolutionary movement, and, by the intermingling of savage passion and fanaticism, the most violent scenes might have been witnessed. Thus that wild demagogue Tanchelm, of whom to be sure we know nothing except from the reports of embittered opponents,<sup>2</sup> placed himself at the head of a separatistic popular movement of this kind in Flanders. As he undertook to visit Rome, we may certainly infer that he was not following out any wholly anti-churchly direction, but was hoping, in consideration of his zeal against the unchaste clergy, to find some support in the Hildebrandian system at Rome. In addition to all this, came the ideas put into circulation by the disputes about investiture, those ideas which, in opposition to the earthly glory of the church, favoured the copying after the apostolical life in evangelical poverty, which sometimes allied themselves with existing customs in various forms of the monastic life, sometimes rose in resistance to the church herself. Thus we find in many districts, indications of societies of the so-called apostolicals, who were for bringing back the apostolical simplicity of the church, and whom we must take care to distinguish from the Catharists, with which sect, owing to many points of resemblance, they might easily be confounded.

When the provost Everwin of Steinfeld drew up his report to abbot Bernard of Clairvaux, of the sects in the territory of Cologne, he expressly distinguished from the Catharists another

1 Thus bishop Yves of Chartres must maintain the necessary recognition of a special priesthood against such as supposed *quascunque personas, etiam sacrum ordinem non habentes, verba dominica proferentes, sacramenta altaris et caetera ecclesiastica sacramenta posse conficere et salubriter accipientibus ministrare*. Ep. 63. Ed. Paris, 1610.

2 See Norbert's life, c. xiii., Jun. t. i., f. 843, and the letter of the church of Utrecht to the bishop Frederic of Cologne, first published by Sebastian Tegnagel, Cologne, f. 845. What gave him acceptance in Antwerp was the bad management of the church; for it is stated, in the above life, that the whole large diocese was governed by a priest, who gave himself but little concern about the flock, and was scorned by the people on account of his unlawful intercourse with his niece.

party, which probably, although agreeing with them in opposing the Catholic church, yet differed from them by their more biblical tendency, by combating Dualism, Gnosticism, etc., and it was just the disputes between these two anti-church parties which had drawn upon them the attention of their common opponent.<sup>1</sup> The worldly and corrupt church, they taught, had lost the power of administering the sacraments; the successors of Peter had forfeited their title to the spiritual authority conferred upon them, because they had not followed him in a life consecrated to God. Baptism in the church was the only rite they would still acknowledge, and they acknowledged this because, whoever might administer the rite, it was still Christ that baptized. As then they did not substitute the consolamentum in the place of baptism, they were by this circumstance alone sufficiently distinguished from the Catharists. Yet infant baptism they opposed as a non-apostolic institution. So too they were very far from rejecting, with the Catharists, the institution of marriage, which they recognized as a holy estate instituted by God. But they reckoned it to the sacredness of marriage that it should only be contracted between parties who had never been married before, as being an indissoluble connection. What God had joined together, no man should put asunder. They rejected the intercession of saints, denied the necessity of fasting and of ecclesiastical satisfactions for sins. Neither the sinner nor the righteous man needed it; for if the sinner did but sigh after God, his sins would be forgiven him. They would recognize no ordinance but such as had proceeded from the institution of Christ and the apostles; all else they declared to be superstition. They combated the doctrine of purgatory, maintaining that when souls departed from this life, their everlasting destiny was already decided; hence they were opposed to all prayers and other works for the repose of departed souls.

Neither do we perceive in another sect which made its appearance about this time in the department of Perigueux,<sup>2</sup> in South France, the least signs of any peculiarity of the Catharists;

<sup>1</sup> Everwin, after having described the Catharists, says: *Sunt item alii haeretici quidam in terra nostra, omnino ab istis discordantes, per quorum mutuam discordiam et contentionem utrique nobis sunt detecti.* Mabillon, *Analecta*, t. iii., p. 456.

<sup>2</sup> Petragorium.

though we see other peculiarities still more fanatical. They were for following the apostles in a total renunciation of all earthly goods. They abstained from meat, and drank very little wine. Opposition to the mass, which was common to all the anti-churchly tendencies, seems to have been carried by them to the extreme of rejecting the Lord's supper altogether. They combated all veneration of the cross and of the images of Christ as idolatry. The frequent bowing of the knee, a custom which we find ascribed to them, would not warrant the inference that they were a branch of the Catharists, but should be regarded, probably, as simply a mark of the Pietistic element. One of their doxologies is cited, which shows that, contrary to the Dualism of the Catharists, they acknowledged God as the creator of all things. As they adopted that idea of evangelical poverty which was grounded in the religious spirit of the times, as much truth lay at the bottom of their attacks on the dominant church, and as they often appealed to Scripture, they might find acceptance with many; and it is reported that not only people of rank left their possessions and joined them, but also clergymen, priests, monks, and nuns, were among their adherents.<sup>1</sup> And it is mentioned as a characteristic fact, that the rudest and most unlettered peasant who joined their sect, would in less than eight days gain so much knowledge of the Scriptures, that he could not be foiled in argument by any man. They were accused of practising necromancy.

Sometimes such tendencies proceeded from the midst of the people, without being connected with any individual of note. Although some individual may have given the first impulse, yet afterwards he retired into the general mass. Sometimes it was individuals who constituted from the beginning the central point of such a reformatory movement. While some stood forth, who had been awakened within the body of the clergy, and, seized with indignation at the depraved members of their order, felt themselves impelled to travel about as preachers of repentance in the sense of the church, there were others, in whose case the awakening seems rather to have proceeded from the spirit which breathed on them from the Bible than from the general spirit of

<sup>1</sup> See the report of the monk Heribert, in Mabillon, l. c., p. 467.

the church, and whose labours as reformatory preachers of repentance were chiefly guided and determined by that circumstance. These latter were not only zealous against practical corruptions, but, as they had been led by their study of the Bible to perceive an element foreign to Bible Christianity in the church as it then was, many things false in its doctrines and its rites, felt themselves impelled to attack the corrupt church herself on this particular side, and to stand forth not barely as reformers of life, but also of doctrine. Frequently, however, the prudence of such men did not come up to the measure of their zeal. In combating one error, they often fell into the opposite extreme, and in what they attacked as false, they had no skill to discern the particle of truth at the bottom. They went too far on the side of negation ; and to their polemics against the unauthenticated mysteries of church doctrine, a one-sided negative and subjective tendency might easily attach itself.

One of the first among these reformers was the priest Peter of Bruis, who appeared, near the close of the twelfth or in the beginning of the thirteenth century, in South France.<sup>1</sup> It is certain that he rejected the authority of the church and of the great teachers, to whom it was customary to appeal, and would recognize nothing as obligatory on faith, but what could be proved from the Bible. But it may be questioned, whether he attributed this authority to the whole Bible ; whether he did not make a difference between the Old and New Testament ; whether he attributed equal authority even to the entire New Testament ; whether he did not make a difference in this respect between the gospels and the epistles ; whether he ascribed an altogether decisive force to anything except that which Christ had taught with his own words. The last is repeatedly laid to his charge ; and if he refused to acknowledge the celebration of the Holy supper as valid for all times of the church, and denied the significance of the redemptive sufferings of Christ, the charge might seem to be well grounded. The biblical Protestant element would in this case have passed over into a rationalistic, critical one.

<sup>1</sup> We can very nearly calculate the time, if we put together the two facts, that he laboured during a period of twenty years, and that Abelard, in his *Introduction to Theology*, written before the year 1121, speaks of him as a person deceased. See Opp., p. 1066.



Still, what is said on this point is too uncertain and fluctuating to afford any ground for a safe conclusion ; and so the venerable abbot Peter of Cluny, with a reservation of judgment which does him honour, declines expressing any opinion here, lest he might bring a false charge upon the man after his death.<sup>1</sup> He was an opponent of infant baptism, since he regarded personal faith as a necessary condition for true baptism, and denied the benefit in this case of another's faith. As he could not allow, according to this, any validity whatever to infant baptism, he must consequently rebaptize, or bestow true baptism for the first time on those who joined his party. The followers of Peter of Bruis refused to be called Anabaptists, a name given to them for the reason just mentioned : because the only baptism, they said, which they could regard as the true one, was a baptism united with knowledge and faith, by which man is cleansed from his sins.<sup>2</sup> The mass, the pretension of the priests that they could produce Christ's body and repeat his sacrifice, Peter of Bruis looked upon as the grand means for upholding and promoting the dominion of the priesthood ; this doctrine, therefore, he vehemently attacked. But this vehemence carried him so far that he was willing to dispense with the celebration of the eucharist altogether. Language like this, was spoken, if not by himself, at least by one of his adherents : " O ye people, do not believe those false guides, the bishops and priests ; for they deceive you : as in so many other things, so also in the service of the altar, when they falsely pretend that they make the body of Christ, and present it to you for the salvation of your souls. They pronounce an absolute falsehood ; for the body of Christ was made but once by Christ himself before his passion at the last supper, and was given but once, at that time, to his disciples." It is difficult to understand

1 The words are in his letter in refutation of the Petrobrusians : *Videndum est, utrum hi, qui tantis orbis terrarum magistris non credunt, saltem Christo, prophetis vel apostolis adqueascent. Hoc ideo dico, quoniam nec ipsi Christo vel prophetis aut apostolis ipsique majestati veteris ac novi testamenti vos ex toto credere fama vulgavit. Sed quia fallaci rumororum monstro non facile assensum præbere debeo, maxime cum quidam vos totum divinum canonem abjecisse affirmant, alii quaedam ex ipso vos suscepisse contendunt, culpæ vos de incertis nolo.*

2 *Nos vero, said they, tempus congruum fidei expectamus, et hominem, postquam Deum suum agnoscere et in eum credere paratus est, non, ut nobis imponitis, rebaptizamus, sed baptizamus, quia nunquam baptizatus dicendus est, qui baptismo, quo peccata lavantur, lotus non est.*

exactly what is meant by this language. The simplest view would be to suppose that he meant to say, Christ had observed this supper but once, as a parting meal, and it was not to be repeated at all. But if we hold closely to the words, they actually express that Christ did then distribute his body to his disciples in the proper sense. We must in this case suppose that Peter of Bruis believed it necessary to follow here the literal meaning of the words, in which this fact seemed to him to be expressed, and was satisfied, if he only needed not concede to the church, that she still continued to exercise this power of producing the body of Christ; yet it may be questioned, whether these words really present the exact opinion of the man. His zeal against the veneration paid to the cross, led him to say, that the instrument with which Christ was so cruelly put to death, was so far from deserving reverence that it should rather be abused and destroyed in every way to avenge his sufferings and death. To what outbreak of rude passion, doing outrage to the religious feelings of others, a negative fanaticism of this sort was capable of leading men, is illustrated by a remarkable example. On one Good-Friday, the Petrobrusians got together a great multitude of people, collected all the crosses which they could lay hold of, and made a large bonfire of them, at which, in contempt of the church laws, they cooked meat, which was distributed to all present. It may be doubted, accordingly, whether Peter of Bruis recognized the significance which Christ's redemptive sufferings possess for the Christian consciousness; whether the very fact that this was a thing so foreign to his mind sufficiently accounts for the violence of his language, or whether the heat of polemical opposition may not have led him to say what he would not have said in a calmer mood of mind. His zeal against the externalizing spirit of the dominant church prevented him from allowing that respect which is due to the necessary connection between the internal and the external in man's religious nature. He required the destruction of churches especially consecrated to the worship of God. "God may be worshipped just as well in the shop and on the market-place, as in the church. God hears wherever he is called upon, and listens to the worthy suppliant, whether he prays before an altar or in a stall." On the same principle, church psalmody was rejected. "God is mocked by

such service; he to whom pious feeling is alone acceptable, is neither brought near by loud vociferation nor soothed by musical melodies." He rejected prayer, offerings, alms for the departed, maintaining "that all depends on a man's conduct during his life on earth; this decides his destiny. Nothing that is done for him after he is dead can be of any use to him." For twenty years, Peter of Bruis had laboured as a preacher in South France, when, seized by an infuriated mob at St Gilles, in Languedoc, he was hurried away to the stake. But as his doctrines still continued after his death to have an influence in many districts, particularly around Gascoigne,—a fact which the venerable abbot Peter was forced to learn while on a tour in those parts,—the latter composed a book in refutation of them, which he sent to the bishops of the region, inviting them at the same time to use their personal influence in suppressing the heresy. "It was their business," he wrote them, "by preaching, to drive the sect from those spots where they flattered themselves they had found a hiding-place, and, if necessary, to call in to their aid the weapons of the laity. But as it became Christian charity to labour more for their conversion than for their extirpation, authorities should be brought before them, and arguments of reason employed, so as to force these people, if they avowed themselves Christians, to bow to authority, and, if they wished to be considered men, to bow to reason."<sup>1</sup>

When Peter the Venerable deemed it necessary to call upon the bishops of South France to suppress the Petrobrusians, another man had already started up, as Peter himself testifies, who agreed, if not in every particular doctrine, yet in his reformatory bent, with Peter of Bruis; an individual by whose means the anti-church tendency which had proceeded from the latter was revived after his death, and received a new impulse. Henry, a monk of Cluny, and a deacon, came from Switzerland. Whether it was by an impulse of his own, that, disgusted with the common pursuits of the world, and touched with higher aspirations, he retired to the monastery, or whether he was presented to it by his parents in his infancy, is not known. But certain it is that the quiet of the contemplative life did not satisfy this

<sup>1</sup> Ut, si Christiani permanere volunt, auctoritati, si homines, rationi cedere compellantur.

ardent young man. He felt himself impelled to seek a life of practical activity. He had derived his knowledge of the truths of faith from the New Testament more than from the writings of the fathers and of the theologians of his time. The ideal of the apostolic labours stimulated him to imitation. His heart was inflamed with a glowing zeal of charity to look after the religious needs of the people, either totally neglected or else led astray by a worthless clergy. As a preacher of repentance he sallied forth, which at that time was no unusual thing, in the dress of a monk, and barefoot. According to the custom of such itinerant preachers of repentance, he took up his residence in the houses of the citizens or countrymen to whom he preached, and was contented with any fare that was set before him.<sup>1</sup> So far as we know, he first appeared as a preacher of repentance in the city of Lausanne.<sup>2</sup> From thence he betook himself to France. Persons like-minded joined him; and an apostolical society was formed under his direction. His companions went before him, bearing, as a symbol of the preacher of repentance, the banner of the cross, inviting men to follow the cross of Christ,—a fact which plainly shows, that, in his estimation of this sacred emblem, he was far from agreeing with Peter of Bruis. At first, he only preached repentance, denouncing that sham Christianity which did not prove its genuineness by the fruits of good living, and warning against the prevalent vices. This led him next to warn men against their false guides, the worthless clergy, whose example and teaching did more to promote wickedness than to put a stop to it. He contrasted the clergy as they actually were with what they ought to be; he attacked their vices, particularly their unchastity. He was a zealot for the observance of the laws of celibacy, and appeared in this respect, like other monks, a promoter of the Hildebrandian reformation. It was probably his

<sup>1</sup> What Bernard (ep. 241) says to his disadvantage, bears no impress whatever of a report founded on facts, but seems much rather like the false conclusions of a polemical sophistry set forth as facts, which might be sustained perhaps by false rumours easily set afloat against one stigmatized as a heretic. Owing to the disgrace in which he had involved himself by his wicked life, being forced to leave his native country, he wandered about without a home. To obtain a livelihood, being a *litteratus*, he resorted to preaching, and made a trade of it. What he could obtain more than was necessary for his own support from the simple-minded, he squandered away in gambling, or things still worse. The only reliable fact out of all this is what has been stated in the text.

<sup>2</sup> See the above-cited report of Bernard.

practical, restless activity, and the opposition which he met with on the part of the higher clergy, which led him to proceed further, and, as he traced the cause of the corruption to a deviation from the primitive apostolical teaching, to attack errors in doctrine. He must have possessed extraordinary power as a speaker, and this power was backed up by his strict mode of living. Many men and women were awakened by him to repentance, brought to confess their sins, and to renounce them. It was said, a heart of stone must have melted under his preaching. The people were struck under such conviction by his sermons, which seemed to lay open to them their inmost hearts, that they attributed to him a sort of prophetic gift, by virtue of which he could look into the very souls of men.

On Ash-Wednesday of the year 1116, two of Henry's spiritual society arrived with the banner of the cross at the city of Mans; they came to inquire whether their master might visit the city as a preacher of repentance during the season of Lent. The people who had already heard so much of him, were now anxiously expecting the time when he would make his personal appearance. The bishop of the city at that time, Hildebert, a pupil of Berengar of Tours, one of the more discreet and pious bishops, received the two messengers in a very friendly manner, and as Henry was not known as yet to be guilty of any heresy, as only his mighty influence on the people was everywhere extolled, the bishop rejoiced at the opportunity of securing a preacher like him for his people during the Lent. And being then about to start on a journey to Rome, he gave directions to his archdeacon that he should allow Henry to preach without molestation. The latter soon won the same great influence here as he had done everywhere else. Among the clergy themselves there was a division. The higher clergy were prejudiced against him on account of his method of proceeding; the younger clergy of the lower class, who were less tied to the church system, and had nothing to fear from Henry's invectives, could not resist the impression of his discourses, and the seed of the doctrines which he scattered among them, continued to spring up for a long time after him. They became his adherents, and prepared a stage for him, on which he could be heard by the entire people. One effect of his preaching soon began to manifest itself. He chained the people to himself,

and filled them with contempt and hatred towards the higher clergy. They would have nothing to do with them. The divine service celebrated by them was no longer attended. They found themselves exposed to the insults and gibes of the populace, and had to apply for protection to the civil arm. Though it scarcely admits of a doubt that if Henry, had he known better how to curb his passions, might with a little foresight and wisdom have easily prevented these effects; yet we must own that, as we have only a report of the facts on one side, from an individual belonging to the clerical party, and a passionate opponent of Henry,<sup>1</sup> it is impossible to decide how much the preacher was to blame, and how far the fault lay also on the side of his opponents. Suffice it to say, that the clerus of the city, by virtue of the full powers residing in them, issued a letter to Henry, upbraiding him for his abuse of the confidence reposed in him, and for his ingratitude, and accusing him as the author of the division between the clergy and the community, an instigator of sedition and propagator of heresies. On penalty of the ban on himself and all his adherents, he was forbidden to preach in any part of the diocese. Henry refused to receive the letter when offered to him, not recognizing the tribunal which had passed the judgment. A clergyman read the letter publicly before all, and at each several sentence, Henry shook his head and exclaimed, "Thou liest." Probably he did not find the reasons sufficient to sustain the several charges brought against him. The definitive sentence issued against him by the clerus, served, however, to promote rather than to diminish his influence with the multitude; the clergy had far more cause to be afraid of him, than he to be afraid of them. With the people he was everything; they were ready to be directed and determined in all their movements by him; and among those who followed him as their spiritual guide in all things, seem to have belonged not only the people of the lower class, but also substantial citizens; for any amount of gold and silver was at his command; and had he been governed by impure motives he might easily have made himself rich. But the only use he made of the money which was at his disposal, was to realize his ideas of a

<sup>1</sup> The *Gesta Hildeberti* in the *Actis episcoporum Cenomanensium*, published in Mabillon, *Analecra*, vol. t. iii, p. 312, octavo edition.

Christian commonwealth.<sup>1</sup> If we are surprised to see Henry ruling over the whole life of the people, and shaping their domestic and civil relations according to his own ideas, we must consider the immense influence of the theocratic principle in those times, and remember that what the popes were on the large scale, such were those who in still smaller circles appeared as the oracles of God, namely, powerful preachers of repentance, and curers of souls. Now, in this light, it was quite possible for such also to be regarded, as stood forth as opponents of the churchly theocratical system. We see Henry deporting himself like other men who have already been mentioned,—Robert of Arbrissel, Fulco, Berthold; save that his principles are peculiar to himself. In common with them, too, he laboured particularly against the sin of unchastity, and sought to improve the marriage relation. Women who led an unchaste life should, as a penance for themselves and a terror to others, be exposed to the disgrace of having their clothes and their hair publicly burnt before the eyes of all. They must bind themselves under oath to renounce unchastity and extravagance in dress. The life of celibacy, he regarded as a custom which promoted immorality among the laity; he took pains, on the contrary, to encourage marriages between young men and maidens. Marriage was to be an indissoluble connection formed by God, through the inner fellowship of dispositions; selfishness should have no hand in forming such unions for a whole life. There should be no bargaining in marriage. The fact that a man chose his wife for the sake of some outward advantages, he regarded as the cause of nearly all unhappy marriages. This practice he wished utterly to abolish; and proposed that no money or goods should be obtained by marriage.<sup>2</sup> Wherever he supposed God had drawn souls together, he did not allow himself to be deterred by any of the hindrances defined by the laws of the church from sanctioning their union, which was

<sup>1</sup> The words of a party-report can establish nothing against the purity of Henry's course of proceeding; for one cannot but feel that its author was reluctant to say anything good of him, and could not forbear suspecting his good qualities and charging him with bad ones, though they were rather taken for granted than proved. *Tanta auri, tanta argenti affluentia, si vellet, redundaret, ut opes omnium solus videretur possidere. Licet plane multa reciperet, tamen parcebat cupiditati, ne nimis ambitiosus videretur.*

<sup>2</sup> The words of that report are: *Nec quilibet amplius auram, argentum, possessiones, sponsalia cum uxore sumeret, nec illi dotem conferret.*

so construed by his enemies as if he was ready to approve of any sort of incest.<sup>1</sup> It seems that, on the principle of removing every cause of arbitrary distinctions among men, he got free-born young men to take wives from the class of bond-women, and then used the money placed at his command to provide the latter with decent raiment.<sup>2</sup> Henry's virulent antagonist, from whom we have the account of his labours in Mans, brings up against him the unhappy issue of the marriages which were formed by his arrangement. This certainly would be an argument to show his want of a knowledge of mankind, or his want of wisdom and prudence, but no argument against the purity of his motives. As with a view to promote practical Christianity, Henry attacked every opinion which might serve to nourish a false confidence, so he seems to have been led by this interest to attack various customs, which could not be directly proved from the Sacred Scriptures as corruptions of primitive Christianity; such, for example, as the worship of saints and infant baptism.<sup>3</sup> But it may be doubted whether at this particular time he had as yet so distinctly evolved the points of his opposition to the doctrines of the church. Though even then he was accused of error in doctrine, yet heresies of so striking a character were not expressly alleged against him. But we must allow that the tendency which would inevitably lead him to such results may be clearly discerned in what his opponents say of him; for they charge that he held only to the historical sense and letter of the prophets, and therefore set up a perverse doctrine.<sup>4</sup> From which language it may be inferred, that he acknowledged no doctrine which could not be expressly pointed out, as contained in so many words in the Bible; that he was an opponent of all allegorizing interpretation.

When Hildebert returned from his journey to Rome, he found the tone of feeling in his community strangely altered. He was no longer received with the usual demonstrations of joy, and the usual veneration. His episcopal blessing was treated with con-

<sup>1</sup> Thus in the report, the doctrine is attributed to him: *Nec curarent, sive caste seu inceste connubium sortirentur.*

<sup>2</sup> *Ejus admonitu multi juvenum ducebant venales mulieres, quibus ipse pannos pretio quatuor solidorum emebat, quo nuditatem suam tantummodo supertegerent.*

<sup>3</sup> Vide Bernhard, ep. 241, and Hildebert, ep. 23.

<sup>4</sup> *Aurem suam tantum historiae et literae prophetarum accommodans dogmatizabat perversum dogma. Acta Cenomanens. p. 341.*



tempt. Henry was everything to the people. "We have a father," exclaimed the people, "a priest, an intercessor, still more exalted in authority, more honourable in life, more eminent in knowledge. The clergy abhor him as a godless man, because they are afraid he will attack with the weapons of the Sacred Scriptures their vices, their incontinence, and their false doctrines."<sup>1</sup> By an imperious, violent mode of procedure, bishop Hildebert would only have increased Henry's influence, and alienated the popular feeling still more from himself. By wisdom and love, gentleness and forbearance, he could effect more. Henry himself he was determined not to put down by force. He had an interview with him, which, as we might presume, would not be a satisfactory one. In the theology and liturgy of the church, Henry could exhibit but little proficiency; in the knowledge of the New Testament he might perhaps have sustained a better examination.<sup>2</sup> Bishop Hildebert simply directed Henry to leave his diocese and betake himself to some other field. Would the bishop have pursued so gentle a course with him, if it could have been proved that he was really guilty of the clandestine vices which were whispered against him amongst his enemies? Would not the placing him on his trial for such offences, and suspending over him the punishment affixed to them by the church laws, have been the most direct and certain means of undeceiving the people who revered him as a saint? But the mild measures pursued by the bishop towards the clergy who had gone over to Henry, and whom he endeavoured to win back from him by degrees, and recover to a more churchlike mode of thinking, may justly claim our respect.<sup>3</sup> In the disputes against saint-worship, which Hildebert was under the necessity of defending, we certainly recognize also, though Henry's name is not mentioned in this connection, a reaction of the ideas which he had disseminated.

<sup>1</sup> Verentes, quod eorum scelera denudaret prophetico spiritu, et haecsim suam et corporis incontinentiam privilegio condemnaret literarum. These words are of some importance as indicating the character of Henry's labours in Mans. We see from them that he was zealous for strict celibacy in priests: attacked first their life, then their doctrine; held up against them the doctrines of the Bible.

<sup>2</sup> The writer of the report in the *Actis Cenomanensibus* represents him as an altogether ignorant man, thus contradicting himself. Hildebert says of him, ep. 24: *Huic et habitu religionem et verbis literaturam simulanti*. He may have been well versed in the New Testament and yet otherwise unlearned.

<sup>3</sup> See ep. 24.

The opponents of saint-worship appealed to concessions of bishop Hildebert himself. How they could do so may easily be explained, if we call to mind the prevailing bent of the man ; for we have already spoken of him as the representative of a more spiritual Christianity, the opponent of a worship of mere ceremonies.<sup>1</sup> We may conjecture that they had in view those declarations of Hildebert in which he protested against certain excrescences of superstition, and exhorted men to copy the living walk of the saints. The genuinely Christian element lying at bottom of the church doctrine and practice in this respect, he knew very well how to insist upon and use against those who denied that the saints had any concern with that which is done on earth."<sup>2</sup> "Without controversy," says he, "love stands pre-eminent above all the other virtues. On love, hang the law and the prophets: all else must pass away, but charity never ceaseth. Charity is not confined to the measure with which God and our neighbour are loved in this present life; but it becomes more perfect in the life to come, the more perfectly both our neighbour is known in God, and God is known in himself." He refers to this more perfect love existing among the saints, for the purpose of intimating their sympathy in the concerns of their contending brethren on earth.

Henry now turned his face to the South, and made his appearance in Provence. He came into those districts where Peter of Bruis had laboured before him. There he put himself at the head of the anti-churchly tendency, which he seems to have shaped into a more systematic doctrinal form.<sup>3</sup> Here he joined himself to a number of like-minded individuals. When Peter of Cluny's letter, mentioned on a former page, had stirred up the zeal of the bishops of that district to contend against the encroaching anti-churchly tendency, the archbishop of Arles succeeded in securing the person of Henry, and took him along with

<sup>1</sup> See above, p. 19.

<sup>2</sup> See ep. 23.

<sup>3</sup> He himself, as Peter of Cluny states, was the author of a tract directed against the church doctrine, in which still more of an heretical character occurred, than in the above-cited propositions of the Petrobrusians. Peter the Venerable says, in the above-cited letter (opp. f. 1119), concerning the relation of Henry to Peter of Bruis: *Haeres nequitiae ejus Henricus cum nescio quibus* (it seems, then, there were several), *doctrinam diabolicam non quidem emendavit, sed immutavit et sicut nuper in tomo, qui ab ore ejus exceptus dicebatur, scriptum vidi, non quinque tantum, sed plura capitula edidit.*

him, in 1134, to the council of Pisa, held under the presidency of pope Innocent the Second. This council declared him a heretic, and condemned him to confinement in a cell.<sup>1</sup> Subsequently, however, he was set at liberty, when he betook himself again to South France, to the districts of Toulouse and Alby, a principal seat of anti-churchly tendencies, where also the great lords who were striving to make themselves independent, favoured these tendencies, from hatred to the dominion of the clergy. Among the lower class and the nobles, Henry found great acceptance; and after he had laboured for ten years in those regions, Bernard of Clairvaux, in writing to a nobleman, and inviting him to put down the heretics, could say: "The churches are without flocks, the flocks without priests, the priests are nowhere treated with due reverence, the churches are levelled down to synagogues, the sacraments are not esteemed holy, the festivals are no longer celebrated."<sup>2</sup> When Bernard says, in the words just quoted, that the communities are without priests, he means the priests had gone over to the Henricians; for so he complains in a sermon,<sup>3</sup> where he speaks of the rapid spread of this sect:<sup>4</sup> "Women forsake their husbands, and husbands their wives, and run over to this sect. Clergymen and priests desert their communities and churches; and they have been found sitting with long beards (to mark the *habitus apostolicus*), among weavers."<sup>5</sup> As this party made such rapid advances, pope Eugene the Third, who was then residing in France, deemed it necessary to resort to other still more energetic measures for its suppression. With this in view, he sent to those districts the cardinal bishop Alberic of Ostia, who took with him the abbot Bernard. If the legate, in all the pomp of his office, was scoffed at, Bernard, on the other hand, whose very appearance refuted the charge that the whole church had become secular, and the clergy and monks sunk in luxury, made quite a different impression, and his great power

<sup>1</sup> Acta Cenomanensia, p. 342.

<sup>2</sup> Ep. 241.

<sup>3</sup> In Cantica Canticorum, Sermo. lxxv. § 5.

<sup>4</sup> In these *Sermones*, he does not to be sure treat merely or particularly of the Henricians, but also and especially of the Catharists. The allusion is doubtless to the Henricians, when from those who wholly rejected marriage, he distinguishes those who required marriage between young men and maidens, as a connection which was only once to be formed for the whole life. Sermo. lxxvi., § 4.

<sup>5</sup> Clerici et sacerdotes populis ecclesiisque relictis intonsi et barbati quod eos inter textores et textrinas plerumque inventi sunt. Sermo. lxxv., § 5.

over the minds of men was manifested also in the present case. Some said he even wrought miracles ; and it may be that he appealed to them himself.<sup>1</sup> Probably, however, he did not find it quite so easy to manage these sectaries, as his enthusiastic admirers who have given us the account of his life would represent. A writer belonging to these very districts relates that Bernard once came to a strong-hold, constituting one of the principal seats of the sect, and commenced preaching against it, when the leaders of the sect left the church, and were followed by the whole congregation. Bernard hurried after them into the street, and continued his sermon in the open air ; but the sectaries were so noisy, citing against him passages from the Sacred Scriptures, that he was obliged to stop.<sup>2</sup> The bishops afterwards succeeded in once more apprehending Henry, and the archbishop Samson, of Rheims, brought him before the council held in that city, in 1148. On the information of the archbishop, who disapproved of capital and corporeal punishments against heretics, he was simply condemned to imprisonment during life, with a meagre diet, that he might be brought to repentance.<sup>3</sup>

On observing the remarkable affinity of spirit and of principles between the Apostolicals in Cologne and Perigueux, the Petrobrusians and the Henricians, we might be led to suppose that this agreement must have been owing to a common external descent. But the question immediately occurs whether we should be justified in so doing ; for when certain ideas and tendencies have once become incorporated in the process in which the spirit of a determinate period is developing itself, and prevail therein, they are wont to diffuse themselves abroad without any external cause, as through an atmosphere ; and we see them breaking to view in

<sup>1</sup> See vol. vii., p. 346.

<sup>2</sup> When he left this castle without having accomplished his object, he is said to have exclaimed with his characteristic assurance, which sometimes gave him the appearance of a prophet, alluding to the name of this castle, *Viride folium* : " *Viride folium, desiccet te Deus.*" Which curse people believed was fulfilled. See the *Chronica Guil. Pod. Laurent.* in *Du Chesne.* t. v., f. 667.

<sup>3</sup> If this story were found only in the chronicle of Alberio (pp. 315, 317), we might regard it as not sufficiently well vouched ; for this chronicler classes Henry with the crazy enthusiast Eudo, and other opponents of the dominant church. But he names his authority, which is perfectly trustworthy, the *Verbum Abbreviatum* of Peter Cantor, where we actually find the passage cited above (p. 398), where this Henry is undoubtedly meant.

one place and another without being able to trace the whole to any single point. It is manifest, at any rate, that Peter of Bruis and Henry made their appearance quite independently of each other; and so it may have happened also with other individuals and entire communities. Nothing therefore would be gained, even if the prelates succeeded in silencing the individual representatives and organs of such general tendencies to reform. These tendencies, especially in South France, had acquired too much strength to be suppressed by the destruction of the individual organs. The corruption of the clergy had, even in places where the church system of doctrine was still held fast, excited great dissatisfaction and violent complaints, as appears evident from the songs of the Troubadours, who came from these districts, where this tone of feeling is not to be mistaken.<sup>1</sup> In such a tone of feeling a thorough and radical spirit of reformation, going back from the corruption of the church in life, to the corruption in doctrine, and aiming at the renovation of everything, as well in doctrine as in practice, after the pattern of the apostolic church, must have found its true element. The sect of the *Waldenses*, presently to be mentioned, which, free from the disturbing and fanatical elements hitherto seen intermingling with reformatory antagonisms, survived as the purest offspring of the reaction of a purified Christian consciousness all the earlier appearances of its kind, and propagated itself in spite of every form of persecution through the succeeding centuries, presents itself accordingly; not merely as the work of an individual man, excited to it by external occasions, but as a single link in the chain of reactions, running through this whole period of reactions of the Christian consciousness, against the churchly theocratic system of the Middle Ages; one form of the manifestation of that

1 See the examples of vehemence and boldness with which the Troubadours attacked the ambition and cupidity of the Roman court and of the clergy, and pointed their satire against the whole subject of indulgences, in Raynouard *Choix des poésies originales des Troubadours*, t. ii., Paris, 1817, in the Introductory Essay, p. 61. It is said of the church, that, yielding to the cupidity by which she suffered herself to be governed, she sold pardons for all kinds of iniquity at a paltry price; of the priests, that they were eager to grasp wealth with both hands, whatever wretchedness it might occasion; that they sometimes used prayer, and sometimes the sharp edge of the sword, as a means of persecution,—deluding some with God, others with the devil; of Rome, that she despised God and the saints; that craft and treachery of all kinds leagued together and lurked there.

idea of following the apostles in evangelical poverty, which had its ground in the religious consciousness of the period, a product from the laboratory of the Christian mind in these districts. It was quite a mistake to think of deriving this sect from an outward connection with manifestations of some such reaction of the reforming spirit subsequent to the time of Claudius of Turin, and that too in districts whither this sect, which arose in another quarter, was certainly first transplanted at a later period. But it was not without some foundation of truth that the Waldenses of this period asserted the high antiquity of their sect, and maintained that from the time of the secularization of the church—that is, as they believed, from the time of Constantine's gift to the Roman bishop Silvester—such an opposition as finally broke forth in them, had been existing all along.<sup>1</sup> We recognize this spirit, which gave birth to the Waldensian sect, in a writing on the antichrist in the Romance language, which certainly belongs to the twelfth century,<sup>2</sup> though the date assigned in the manuscript (1120) is of uncertain authority, and the question whether this document proceeded from the Waldenses, or is of an older origin, cannot now be decided. The idea set forth in this production bears witness of the circumstances of the times in which it was produced. • By the antichrist, is here understood the whole antichristlike principle, concealing itself under the guise of Christianity, which principle had from the time of the apostles been continually unfolding itself, till finally in this period, as was shown in the particular manifestations of churchly corruption, it had reached its climax. “Although antichrist,” it is here said, “was already born in the times of the apostles, yet because he was only in the stage of infancy, he was still without his interior and exterior members.”<sup>3</sup> It was more easy, therefore, to recognize and destroy him, since he was rustic and gross, and had

<sup>1</sup> See Pillichdorf contra Waldenses, c. i., Bibl. patr. Lugd., t. xxv., f. 278: *Coram simplicibus mentiantur, sectam eorum durasse a temporibus Silvestri papae, quando videlicet ecclesia coepit habere proprias possessiones.* It is remarkable that Rainer, who points to the true historical origin of the sect, still reckons among the reasons why this sect was more mischievous than any other, its longer duration: *Aliqui enim dicunt, quod duraverit a tempore Silvestri, aliqui a tempore apostolorum.*

<sup>2</sup> Published in Paul Perrin's *Histoire des Vaudois*, lib. iii.

<sup>3</sup> *Al temp de li apostol ia sia zo que l'Antechrist era ia concepu, ma car essent enfant, mancava de li debis membre interiors et exteriors.*

been formed a mute.<sup>1</sup> But since that time he has grown up to his members, and attained to the complete age of manhood. We are not, therefore, to expect antichrist as one that is yet to come ; so far from that, he is already old ; his power and authority have begun already to diminish, for already the Lord slays this godless beast by the spirit of his mouth, by many men of good disposition,<sup>2</sup> sending forth a power which is opposed to his, and to that of those who are fond of him." We see, then, that this book was composed at a time when several antagonists of the church system had already made their appearance in these districts, when their doctrines had met with acceptance from the people, and it already seemed that the hierarchy must give way to a purer and freer progress of evangelical truth. This is precisely the time of which we speak.

All the accounts which go back to the origin of the sect agree in this, that it started with a rich citizen of Lyons, by the name of Peter Waldus (Pierre de Vaux).<sup>3</sup> At a certain time, when he happened to be attending an assembly of respectable citizens in Lyons, one of the number suddenly expired. This incident, reminding him of the lot which might at any time be his own, left on him so powerful an impression that he resolved to abandon all other concerns, and to occupy himself solely with the concerns of religion. He felt an earnest desire to obtain, from the original fountain itself, a more exact knowledge of the doctrines of salvation, than what he could derive from the passages of Holy Scripture cited by the preachers. For this reason, he gave to two ecclesiastics, one Stephen de Ansa, a man of some learning, the other

<sup>1</sup> Enaima rotic et grossier, el era fait mut.

<sup>2</sup> Car el es fait de Dio ja veil et que el descreis ia : car la soa potesta et autorita es amerma et que lo Seignor Jesus occi aquest felon per lo Sperit de la soa bocca en molti home de bona voluntà.

<sup>3</sup> This, Rainer, with other contemporaries says (c. v.), Particularly weighty is the testimony of the Dominican Stephen de Borbone, or de Bella Villa, in his book *De septem donis Spiritus sancti*; from which book, hidden among the manuscripts of the library of the Sorbonne, D'Argentre has communicated a passage which belongs here, in the *Collectio judiciorum de novis erroribus*, t. i., f. 85. This person was himself a resident at Lyons in the year 1223, and two years later composed this work. He had his accounts from several persons who had associated with the founders of the Waldensian sect, and particularly with that ecclesiastic Ydros whom Peter Waldus employed as a writer. If Pilchdorf (c. i.) derives the surname of Peter Waldus or Waldenses from his native place, and says that another man from Lyons, by the name of John, was associated with him, this does not essentially disagree with the other accounts.

Bernard Ydros, who was a practised writer, a certain sum of money, on condition they would prepare for him a translation of the gospels and other portions of the Bible into the Romance language, which one was to dictate, the other write down.<sup>1</sup> He procured to be drawn up, also, by the same persons, a collection of sayings of the church fathers, on matters of faith and practice,—so-called *Sententiae*. These writings he read with great diligence, and so the religious direction he had received from the incident above mentioned was more and more confirmed, and he was now seized with an earnest desire to follow the apostles in evangelical poverty. He distributed all his property amongst the poor, and proposed to found a spiritual society of Apostolicals, a society for the spread of evangelical truth, in knowledge and life, among the neglected people, in city and country. He employed, for this purpose, multiplied copies of his Romance version of the Scriptures, which, by degrees, was extended to the whole Bible. He and his companions laboured with great zeal, and certainly without any thought, at first, of separating themselves from the church, but simply aiming at a spiritual society, like many others in the service of the church; with this difference, that while other founders of such societies were animated with a zeal for the church, and its laws possessed for them all the force of truth drawn directly from the Word of God, Peter Waldus, on the other hand, was influenced more by the truth derived immediately from the Scriptures; though this was still mixed up, in his case, with the church-doctrines of those times, and heterogeneous elements were, at first, blended together. Practical religion was the great thing with him. He entered into no conscious opposition with the doctrines of the church, and it was impossible to descry anything heretical in this society. The ecclesiastical authorities might have adopted such a society, and taken the direction of it into their own hands.<sup>2</sup> But an influential union of laymen, associated for the purpose of preaching to the people; a union which had sprung up, independently of the clerus, from among the laity, and made the Sacred Scriptures themselves the source of religious doctrine, might, however, appear to be some-

<sup>1</sup> The above-named Stephen de Bordoue was personally acquainted with both these ecclesiastics.

<sup>2</sup> As was exemplified in that society of Raymond Palmaris. See p. 6



thing contrary to ecclesiastical order, and excite the jealousy and the suspicion of the clerus. This society, though not conscious as yet of any opposition with the Catholic element, was, from the first, distinguished from other such societies by the fact that this element exercised no particular power over the feelings and imagination, but retired out of sight before a sober, practical, biblical element of the religion of the heart. Those who were governed by the church spirit, certainly felt some such difference. The archbishop of Lyons was for suppressing the whole by an authoritative decision. He forbade Peter Waldus and his companions to expound the Scriptures and to preach. But they did not think they ought, in obedience to this magisterial decree, to desist from a calling which, they were conscious, was from God. Declaring that they were bound to obey God rather than man, they persevered in the work which they had begun. Even yet, however, they entertained no thought of forming a sect separate from and standing forth hostile to the church. One other means remained, by which they might be enabled to unite the continuance of their spiritual activity with obedience to the church, namely, by applying to the pope himself. This they undertook to do. They sent delegates from their body to pope Alexander the Third, transmitting to him a copy of their Romance version of the Bible, and soliciting his approbation as well of that as of their spiritual society.<sup>1</sup> The matter was discussed before the Lateran council, then assembled, in the year 1170. Interesting is the account which the Franciscan monk, Walter Mapes of England, who was present at this council, has given of the Waldenses, from his personal observation. "They have no settled place of abode. They go about barefoot, two by two, in woollen garments, possessing nothing, but, like the apostles, having all things in common; following, naked, him who had not where to lay his head." A commission was appointed to institute an exact examination of the case. The above Franciscan was a member

<sup>1</sup> We owe these statements to an eye-witness, the English Franciscan Walter Mapes (Mapeus), who, in his work *De nugis curialium*, to be found among the manuscripts of the Bodleian library at Oxford, has given an account of this embassy of the Waldenses and of his conversation with two of the number. This part of the above-named work has been published by archbishop Usher (Usserius), in his work, *De christianarum ecclesiarum in occidentis praesertim partibus continua successione et statu*. Londini, 1687, f. 112.

of it. He says that he took pains to enter, with them, into an investigation of their religious knowledge and of their orthodoxy. They appeared to him an uneducated, ignorant people; and he was surprised that the council had thought it worth while to have anything to do with such people. He conversed with two, who seemed to be regarded as leaders; but the examination which he held with them did not relate to their knowledge of the Christian religion, but to their knowledge of the scholastic terminology of the church, in which, as we may well suppose, these pious, unlearned laymen were but poorly versed. He asked them, first, whether they believed on God the Father, the Son, and the Holy Ghost? to which they could, with perfect propriety, reply in the affirmative. He then asked them, if they also believed on the mother of Christ? The poor people, who knew nothing about the common distinction, in the doctrinal language of the schools, between *credere aliquid* and *in aliquid*, and supposed that they were simply called upon to explain whether they were infected or not with the heretical opinions concerning Mary, answered this question also in the affirmative, which was followed with a general shout of laughter. Yet this Walter Mapes, who thought himself entitled to regard the Waldenses with so much contempt, must have known how much good might have been effected by the enthusiastic zeal, which would have flowed from the reaction of such a principle as exhibited itself in the Waldenses; for he says of them: "They began at present in the humblest manner, because they had not as yet gained any firm footing; but had we suffered them to gain admittance, we should have been driven out ourselves."<sup>1</sup> The pope refused the Waldenses the wished-for permission, and forbade them to preach or expound the Scriptures. It now became necessary for them to decide whether they should obey, and desist from their work, or stand forth in open opposition to the church. Among the sects on whom, at this Lateran council, the sentence of condemnation was pronounced, the adherents of Peter Waldus do not occur. It was necessary, indeed, to wait and see what course they themselves would take after this papal prohibition. But being sure of their cause as being from God, no papal authority could induce

<sup>1</sup> Humillimo nunc incipiunt modo, quia pedem inferre nequeunt, quos si admiserimus, expellemur.

them to give it up; and they must necessarily appear, therefore, as declared enemies of the church, as in fact they were considered, under the above-named pope's successor, Lucius the Third. Without any doubt it was those Waldenses, who were condemned, in 1183, by the last-named pope, together with other heretics, under the name of persons *qui se humiliatos vel pauperes de Lugduno falso nomine mentiuntur*. Certainly this is a surname which the Waldenses applied to themselves, as followers of the apostolical poverty; as from their wooden shoes,<sup>1</sup> which they also considered to be a mark of the apostolical dress,<sup>2</sup> they were called *Sabôtiers, insabbatati*. But though they were, at first, for following the apostles in coarseness of dress, according to the common notions of their times, yet afterwards, by their continual study of the New Testament, they would be led to a purer knowledge and a freer direction in regard to all such matters; for one of their opponents says afterwards of them, that their dress was neither expensive nor yet altogether mean. They rapidly spread themselves from South France to Italy, where they appear under the name of the *Pauperes de Lombardia*; the Piedmontese mountains, those districts in which Claudius of Turin had formerly laboured, soon furnished them a permanent home, where they continued to propagate themselves in the midst of persecutions.<sup>3</sup> We have before<sup>4</sup> seen how already, under Innocent the Third, they found an entrance into the districts on the Rhine; how societies of laymen, in which men zealously studied and sought edification from the Bible, afford indications of the influence of the Waldenses. Though it was imagined that the sect had been totally exterminated in this quarter, yet a remnant of it may have been saved, which continued to propagate itself in secret. In the year 1231, a multitude of heretics suddenly appear in the districts on the Rhine and other countries of Germany; and the persecution against them continued raging for

<sup>1</sup> Such wooden shoes were called *sabôts*.

<sup>2</sup> Ebrard, c. xxv.: *Etiam sabatatenses a sabatata potius quam Christiani a Christo se volunt appellari.*

<sup>3</sup> The records of the archives of Turin are said to testify of this. See the tract, *Frà Dolcino*, and the *Patarenes* of Julius Krone, Leips. 1844, p. 22, note. There is cited here a command already issued, by the emperor Otho the Fourth, against the *haereticos Valdenses, qui in Taurinensi diocesi zizania seminant*.

<sup>4</sup> See above, p. 39.

three years. At Triers were to be found three schools of the heretics. There seem to have been various sects, it is true ; but the spread of German versions of the Bible, and the doctrine of the universal priesthood, are certainly marks which indicate the Waldenses.<sup>1</sup> As according to what we have already said,<sup>2</sup> the entrance which the Catharists found into these districts was facilitated by the contests between the popes and the Hohenstaufens, the same was undoubtedly the case also with the Waldenses.

When Innocent the Fourth was venting his fury against the Hohenstaufen family, and suspending ban and interdict over those who stood faithful to that house, heretics spread, as a contemporary writer reports, at Halle in Suabia. They rang the tocsin, and collected together the lords and nobles from the surrounding country, and preached, publicly, that the pope and all ecclesiastics of the higher and lower classes were heretics and traitors to the people. They had no power to bind and to loose, and could administer no sacraments, as they lived in every species of vice. Neither pope nor bishop could lay an interdict on a people. Men should not allow themselves to be deprived of the blessing of divine worship by their arbitrary will. They denounced the Franciscans and Dominicans as people who had brought the church to ruin by their false preaching, and who led vicious lives. As there was no one to speak the truth, and to give force to the right faith by a right course of living ; God, who, when others kept silent, was able to raise up preachers from the very stones, had called them, they said, to proclaim the truth. " We preach to you," they exclaimed, " no lying indulgence, such as the pope and the bishops have invented, but we preach that which God alone and our community are able to bestow." They called upon the people to

1 See the report of a contemporary, in the *Memorabilia* of the archbishops of Triers (*Gesta Trevirorum*, ed. Augustae Trevirorum, 1836, vol. i., c. civ., p. 319) : *Et plures erant sectae et multi earum instructi erant scripturis sanctis, quas habebant in theoticam translatis*; and among their doctrines: *indifferentes corpus Domini a viro et muliere, ordinato et non ordinato, in scutella et calice et ubique locorum posse confici dicebant*.

2 Page 392.

3 The abbot Albert of Stade in his *Chronicle*, at the year 1248, ed. Helmstad. 1587, p. 220.

4 *Indulgentiam, quam damus vobis, non damus fictam vel compositam ab apostolico vel episcopis, sed de solo Deo et ordine nostro*.

pray, not for the pope, whose life was so wicked that he deserved not to be mentioned ; but for the emperor Frederic, and his son Conrad the Fourth ; for these were honest men. Yet there is nothing in the facts here stated, which would lead us to think particularly of the Waldenses. The noisy demonstration seems more like the manner of other sects, than the Waldenses. Neither does what these people held concerning the forgiveness of sins, which one could receive by their "order" alone, in case their representations are correctly reported, answer to the principles of the Waldenses ; nor the fact that, for the time being, they allowed a value to be attached to masses for departed souls, for the purpose of stirring up the people against the interdict.<sup>1</sup> If we are not to suppose here some community or other of Apostolicals, called forth by opposition to the worldliness of the church, we might perhaps suppose Catharists, whose crafty management, which was not always in strict accordance with the principle of veracity, perhaps here betrays itself. It was, moreover, in conformity with their policy, to draw the people to them at first by opposition, and to let nothing be known, at the outset, concerning their doctrine.

As the origin of the Waldenses is to be traced to the reading of the Bible, they always remained true to this direction. A great knowledge of the Bible distinguished men and women among them ; and this circumstance, contrasted with the ignorance of the Scriptures among the clergy, contributed to their spread. Rainer reckons among the means which served to promote the sect, the translation of the Old and New Testaments into the spoken language of the country. The same writer mentions in this connection, that he had seen an illiterate peasant who had learned by heart the book of Job, and several others who had committed the entire New Testament.<sup>2</sup> He says : " Among all the sects that have hitherto existed, there has been none more pernicious to the church than the sect of the Leonists (Waldenses of Lyons) ; because it is the most universally spread ; for there is hardly a country where they are not to be found. Next, because while other sects repel their hearers by the blas-

<sup>1</sup> Thus they are reported to have said : *Ut missas audirent super animam ipsorum et sacramento ecclesie libere perciperent, quia ipsis perceptis mundificarentur.*

<sup>2</sup> Rainer, c. iii.

phemous character of their doctrines, the Leonists maintained a great show of piety; because they led a pious life before the eyes of men, were quite orthodox in their doctrine concerning God, and adopted all the articles of the apostolic creed. They only abused the church of Rome, and the clergy, in doing which they found ready hearers among the people."<sup>1</sup> The same writer represents the heretics, by whom doubtless he means more particularly the Waldenses, as saying: "With us, men and women teach, and he who is but a scholar of seven days already teaches others. Among the Catholics, a teacher is rarely to be met with who can repeat from memory, letter for letter, three chapters of the Bible. But with us, a man or woman is rarely to be found who cannot repeat the entire New Testament in the vernacular language."<sup>2</sup> Ignorant priests in South France would invite, therefore, the Waldenses to dispute with other sects, whom they found it difficult to manage themselves on account of their ignorance of the Scriptures.<sup>3</sup> And Rainer, where speaking of the sects generally he seems to have the Waldenses chiefly in his eye, thus describes their mode of living:<sup>4</sup> "They are orderly and modest in their manners; their dress is neither expensive nor mean; they eschew oaths, falsehood, and fraud; they engage in no sort of traffic.<sup>5</sup> They live on what they earn by the labour of their hands from day to day. Even shoemakers are teachers among them.<sup>6</sup> They amass no wealth,<sup>6</sup> but are contented with the bare necessities of life. They are also chaste," where he adds, "especially the Waldenses. They are never found hanging about wine-shops; they attend no balls nor other vanities. They govern their passions; they are always at work; and on this account learn, or teach and pray, but little."<sup>7</sup> After-

1 Cui multitudo laicorum facilis est ad credendum. L. c. c. iv.

2 L. c. c. viii.

3 So, says William of Puy Laurent, in the prologue to his work above referred to, in Du Chesne, t. v., f. 666: Illi Waldenses contra alios acutissime disputabant, unde et in eorum odium alii admittebantur a sacerdotibus idiotis. These words may indeed be understood to mean that the ignorant priests had called in the assistance of other sects to conduct the dispute with the Waldenses, whom they found it very difficult to refute.

4 c. vii.

5 Which could not be said of the Catharists, as is evident from what is cited above, p. 363.

6 Neither can this apply to the Catharists. See above, p. 363.

7 The last could not of course be a matter of outward observation for others.

wards, to be sure, this writer mentions also, as a characteristic of the sect, that they hypocritically confessed and took part in the mass. This, as is evident from what has been remarked above,<sup>1</sup> may apply perhaps to the Catharists, but hardly to the Waldenses. Though in general they supported themselves by manual labour rather than by trade, and scattered themselves more among the people than among the nobles, yet a number of them dealt in jewels and ornaments of dress as a means of obtaining access to the families of the great. When they had disposed of rings and trinkets, and were asked if they had nothing more to sell, they answered: "Yes, we have jewels still more precious than any you have seen; we would be glad to show you these also, if you would promise not to betray us to the clergy." On being assured that they should be safe, they said: "We have a precious stone, so brilliant, that by its light a man may see God; another, which radiates such a fire as to enkindle the love of God in the heart of its possessor,—and so they went on. The precious stones which they meant, were passages of the Holy Scriptures in their various application."

Pope Innocent the Third seems to have been aware of the mistake committed by his predecessor in compelling the Waldenses to break away, contrary to their own original intention, from the church; and he sought to correct it. He was for converting the Waldenses from an heretical society into a church society of *pauperes Catholici*. Some ecclesiastics of South France, who had belonged to the Waldenses, took the lead in an enterprise of this sort; particularly, a certain Durand de Osca. They first went to Rome, where they submitted to the pope a confession of faith containing everything belonging in general to orthodoxy, and opposed in particular to the antichurchly tendencies and opinions of the Waldenses. The pope confirmed the new society of *pauperes Catholici*, formed of Waldenses who had returned back to the church. The ecclesiastics and better educated were to busy themselves with preaching, exposition of the

<sup>1</sup> P. 431.

<sup>2</sup> See c. viii. That the particular passages here cited should be the angel's salutation to Mary with the annunciation of our Saviour's nativity, and the 13th chapter of John relating to the washing of the disciples' feet, points to the Waldenses rather than to the Catharists.

Bible, religious instruction, and combating the sects; but all the laity, who were not qualified to exhort the people and combat the sects, should occupy houses by themselves, where they were to live in a pious and orderly manner. This spiritual society, so remodelled, should endeavour to bring about a reunion of all the Waldenses with the church. As the Waldenses held it unchristian to shed blood and to swear, and the presiding officers of the new spiritual society begged the pope that those who were disposed to join them should be released from all obligation of complying with customs of this sort, the pope granted, at their request, that all such as joined them should not be liable to be called upon for military service against Christians, nor to take an oath in civil processes; adding, indeed, the important clause,—so far as this rule could be observed in a healthful manner without injury or offence to others; and, especially, with the permission of the secular lords.<sup>1</sup> In Italy and Spain, also, the zeal of these representatives of the church tendency among the Waldenses seemed to meet with acceptance. The pope gladly lent a hand in promoting its more general spread, and he was inclined to grant to those who came over to it, when they had once become reconciled with the church, various marks of favour. But he insisted on unconditional submission; and refused to enter into any conditional engagements. There were a hundred Waldenses in Milan who declared themselves ready to come back to the church on condition that a certain piece of property on which they had erected a house for their meetings, which had been demolished by the archbishop, should be restored to them for the purpose of rebuilding on it another edifice for similar purposes. But this the pope did not think proper to grant, because the fellowship of the church must not be sought after from motives of temporal interest, but solely to advance the interests of the soul. Yet, at the same time, Innocent issued a brief to the archbishop of Milan,<sup>2</sup> inviting him to receive those Waldenses—if they were disposed to be reconciled with God and the church for the sake of their own salvation—with due tenderness into the bosom of the church; and then if, according to the wisdom which God had given him, it appeared consistent as well with the honour as with the well-being of the

<sup>1</sup> See Innocent, *opp. lib. xi., ep. 198.*  
VOL. VIII.

<sup>2</sup> *L. c. lib. xii., ep. 17.*  
2 E



church so to do, he might grant them this or some other place where they might meet in the fear of God, for the purpose of exhorting each other and their friends, so far as this could be done without any grievous scandal to others.<sup>1</sup> But in the bishops generally, who perhaps might have cause for not placing full confidence in this conversion of the Waldenses, the pope found no inclination to second his own milder views; and he had to complain that the bishops of the diocese of Tarraco sought evasions, with a view to put off the readmission of them into the fellowship of the church; and in a letter to those bishops,<sup>2</sup> bidding them delay the thing no longer, he assured them it could not be his will that, by their *harshness*, any who seemed to be drawn by the divine grace should be repelled from the boundless mercy of God.<sup>3</sup> In Catalonia, this spiritual society of *pauperes Catholici* maintained itself for some time. At its head stood the above-named Durand of Osca, who had written some tracts against the Waldenses. But though at an earlier period, before the principle lying at bottom of the tendency of the Waldenses had been fully developed, such measures for their reunion with the dominant church might have been successful, it was now too late; and even that society is said to have gradually fallen to decay.<sup>4</sup> When a bishop of South France asked a highly respected knight of this district, why they did not expel the Waldenses from their province, he answered: "We cannot do it; for we have grown up with them, and have kinsmen among them; besides, we see them living in all honesty."<sup>5</sup>

The Waldenses went on the principle that the Sacred Scriptures, independent of every other authority, explained from themselves, are to be recognized as the only source of the knowledge of the Christian faith; and that whatever could not

<sup>1</sup> Et si demum secundum datam vobis a Deo prudentiam tam ecclesiasticæ honestati quam eorum saluti videritis expedire, pratum prædictum seu alium locum idoneum, in quo ad exhortandum se ipsos et amicos eorum cum timore Domini valeant convenire, concedatis eisdem sine gravi scandalo aliorum, quoniam aliter est cum conversis quam cum perversis agendum. Lib. xii., ep. 17.

<sup>2</sup> Lib. xiii., ep. 78.

<sup>3</sup> Nolentes, sicut etiam nec velle debemus, ut qui trahi gratia divina creduntur, per duritiam vestram ab infinita Dei misericordia repellantur.

<sup>4</sup> See the Chronicle of William Puy of Laurent, c. viii., where it is said of them: Hi in quadam parte Catalauniæ annis pluribus sic vixerunt, sed paulatim postea defeecerunt.

<sup>5</sup> L. c.

be derived from them ought to be rejected. They must of course then, when expelled from the church, since they were freed from the restraint of all other considerations, be led to a knowledge of Christian doctrine which would every day become purer, and to a rejection of the statutes at variance therewith, which would every day become more complete. Thus, for example, it is certain that they combated all those doctrines which had grown out of a confusion of the Old and New Testament points of view; as, for instance, that of a necessary special priesthood,—all that was connected with the church theocracy, the doctrine of the seven sacraments, of the sacrifice of the mass, of transubstantiation, of the worship of saints, of purgatory, and its associate dogma, that of indulgences. This is shown by the writings composed in these times, against the Waldenses, and by the minutes of trials published by Philip of Limborch. They revived the consciousness of the universal Christian priesthood; hence, laymen among them heard confessions, gave absolution, bestowed baptism, and the Lord's supper.<sup>3</sup> By this doctrine of the universal priesthood was not excluded, however, the idea of certain ecclesiastical offices which subsisted among them, and which had been arranged at a very early period, to say the least, in their body.<sup>4</sup> Starting from the literal understanding of the Bible, they condemned absolutely

<sup>1</sup> See *e. g.* the above-cited tract of Pillichdorf, from the twentieth chapter onward.

<sup>2</sup> See the above-cited work on the History of the Inquisition. Thus, *e. g.* f. 201: *Dicti Valdenses credunt, quod in praesenti vita solum sit poenitentia et sit purgatorium pro peccatis et quando anima recedit a corpore, vadit ad paradisum vel ad infernum et non faciunt orationes nec alia suffragia pro defunctis, quia dicunt, quod illi, qui sunt in paradiso, non indigent et illis, qui sunt in inferno, non prodessent.*

<sup>3</sup> In the above protocol of the Inquisition (f. 251), a married countryman is mentioned who used common bread in consecrating and distributing the Lord's supper. Many peculiar and dark things are said touching the wine which they used. The consecrated bread was preserved, and a portion of it eaten daily. It is said of one who died while a member of this sect: *Quod credebat et assererat, se habere potestatem a Domino, celebrandi missam et consecrandi verum corpus Christi de materia panis communis fermentati et verum sanguinem de vino cum oleo et sale commixtis in scipho ligueo cum pede, quem ad hoc loco calicis secum habebat, quamvis esset laicus uxoratus, laborator et agricola.* He celebrated the mass at home on Sundays and festivals, et de prodicto pane ac poculo communicabat singulis diebus cujuslibet hebdomadis, quando sibi vacabat, de peciis panis sic per eum consecratis, quas in pixide conservabat, sumendo de mane pro communione diebus singulis.

<sup>4</sup> F. 290. At the commencement of the fourteenth century occurs a Majoralis of the Waldensian sect.

the oath, all shedding of blood, military service, and the punishment of death.<sup>1</sup> As they found unconditional truth enjoined in the sermon on the mount, they are said to have considered every utterance of a falsehood a mortal sin.<sup>2</sup> The spirit of a truly evangelical bent expresses itself also in the confessions composed in the Romance language, which bear the very impress of those times when the Waldenses arose. Among these belongs the tract on antichrist, already noticed. Everything is, according to this document, a work of antichrist, by which men are led from relying on Christ alone, to place their trust in external things; which ascribes renewal by the Holy Ghost to a dead, outward faith, and to the baptism of infants on the ground of such faith.<sup>3</sup> This might lead us to infer, though not with absolute certainty, that the author of the tract was an opponent of infant baptism. It was also described as a work of antichrist, that he built the whole fabric of religion and holiness in the people upon his mass, and worked up in it a tissue of various Jewish, pagan, and Christian ceremonies.<sup>4</sup> It is said that antichrist covers up his wickedness under some few words of Christ, under the writings of the ancients and the councils, which the servants of antichrist observe, just so far as they may, without danger of any interference with their wicked lives and their sinful pleasures.<sup>5</sup> The author reckons among the things that serve to conceal antichrist, the partly hypocritical, partly truly pious life of many in the church; for the elect of God, who choose and practice goodness, being in the church of antichrist, were captives in Babylon, and serve as the gold with which antichrist covers his vanity. The people in whose name this tract was composed, deemed themselves bound to renounce antichrist inwardly and outwardly;<sup>6</sup> they had a fellowship and unity of good-will, and of a sincere disposition

<sup>1</sup> See f. 201 and 207, and other passages. If, as is here said, they appealed to the passage, "Judge not that ye be not judged," they must, of course, have condemned all civil trials.

<sup>2</sup> See Alan. c. Valdenses, lib. ii., p. 206.

<sup>3</sup> Que el attribuis la reformation del Sanct Sperit a la fe morta de fora et bapteia li enfant en aquella fe.

<sup>4</sup> La quarta obra de l'Antechrist es laqual ensemp bastio et edifique tota religion et sanctita del poble en la soa messa et ensemp ha teissut varias caeremonias en un Judaias et de li Gentil et de li Christian.

<sup>5</sup> Los quals illi garden, entant quant non destruoyn la mala vita et volupta de lor.

<sup>6</sup> Nos fazen departiment exterior et interior de luy.

among one another, since they proposed to themselves the pure and simple end of pleasing the Lord and attaining to salvation. They declared themselves to be resolved, with the Lord's help, to embrace, so far as their minds were capable of bearing it, the truth of Christ and of his bride, small as their knowledge of it might be. If to any man more knowledge of the truth was given, then, they more humbly desired to be taught by him, and to be corrected of their mistakes. Forgiveness of sins is bestowed by that fulness of authority which is in God, through the mediation of Christ, and men obtain it by faith, hope, penitence, love; by obedience to the Word.<sup>1</sup> Among the means employed by antichrist to cover his wickedness, they reckoned the miracles now and then performed,—noticing the fact that St Paul enumerates among the signs of antichrist, lying wonders.<sup>2</sup>

A second beautiful monument of this Christian spirit is the sketch of Christian doctrine intituled the Noble Lesson.<sup>3</sup> We have no just grounds for scepticism with regard to the date which this production attributes to itself, and this date places it in the early days of the Waldenses; for it is observed that but eleven centuries had elapsed since it was said, that we live in the last times;—whether the passages in the epistle of St Paul, of which mention is made in the immediate context, or in the Apocalypse are intended. The chronological determination agrees with the times, in either case, unless we suppose a calculation exact to the letter. In the Noble Lesson, the following contrast is drawn between the old law and the new. The old, curses the body that brings forth no fruit; the new, recommends the life of virginity.<sup>4</sup> The old, forbids perjury alone; the new, swearing in general;<sup>5</sup> it bids us say simply yea and nay. The prohibition of all shedding of blood is also cited. The apostles are represented as patterns

<sup>1</sup> Car illi es en Dio autoritativament et en Christ ministerialment, per se, per speranza, per penitencia, per carita, per obedientia de parola en l'home participativamente.

<sup>2</sup> See lib. iii., p. 271.

<sup>3</sup> La nobla Leyeson, noble leçon, first published by Léger, in his *Histoire des Vau-  
dois*;—a more complete reprint in the *Choix des poésies originales des Troubadours*,  
par Reynouard. T. ii., p. 76.

<sup>4</sup> La ley velha maudi lo ventre, que fruo non a porta,  
Ma la novella conselha, gardau vergeneta.

<sup>5</sup> La ley velha deffent solament perjurar,  
Ma la novella di al pos tot non jurar.

of spiritual, voluntary poverty;<sup>1</sup> they were contented with food and raiment. They find, however, but very few followers after them. After the times of the apostles, there were some teachers, it is said, who showed the way of Christ our Saviour. But at present, also, there are a few who earnestly desire to show the way of Christ; but they are so persecuted, that it is hardly in their power to do so. They were especially persecuted by the false shepherds. If an individual is still to be found who neither curses, swears, lies, commits adultery, murders, possesses himself of another's goods, nor revenges himself on his enemies, they say he is a Waldensian, and deserves to be punished.<sup>2</sup> Against the priestly power of the keys, it is said, the popes since the times of Silvester, the cardinals, bishops, and abbots, all put together, have not even power to forgive a single mortal sin. God alone can forgive sins. It belongs to the shepherds, simply, to preach to the people, to pray for them, to exhort the people to repentance and a sincere confession of their sins; to fast, give alms, and pray with fervent hearts; for by these means the souls of bad Christians who have sinned may attain to salvation.<sup>3</sup> The doctrines of the Waldenses thus expressed perfectly harmonize with what we have said concerning the origin of this sect, as one which is to be traced to the idea of the evangelical poverty; and we perceive how the evangelical spirit in it gradually attained to a freer development.

<sup>1</sup> *Poverta spiritual. Que volhan esser paure per propria volunta.*

<sup>2</sup> *Qu'es Vaudes e degne de punir.*

<sup>3</sup> *Car per aquestas cosas troba l'arma salvament,  
De nos caytio Crestians, lical haven pecca.*

<sup>4</sup> Maitland, in his work entitled *Facts and Documents illustrative of the history, doctrine, and rites of the ancient Albigenses and Waldenses*, London, 1832, p. 115, has very properly directed attention to the criticism necessary to be employed in the use of the ancient confessions of the Waldenses; but he has certainly carried his doubts too far. One mark of spuriousness cited by him, the divisions of the Bible into chapters, first introduced after the middle of the thirteenth century (yet it is already to be met with in William of Paris), may no doubt excite suspicions against the statement that the above-cited tract concerning antichrist originated in the 12th century, if this division was to be found in the original form of that document. But the whole character of the document, as well as of the last named Noble Leçon, harmonizes with this period of time. As it regards the style and language, respecting which I am not qualified to judge, I must rely here on the judgment of that competent critic, Raynond. Maitland supposes, it is true, the antique form of the language is no proof of its genuineness. Whoever was interested, he thinks, to forge such documents, might also take pains to imitate the language. But what interest could a later Waldensian be supposed to have, in forging

It was in the order of the Franciscans we saw the idea of evangelical poverty first introduced into the hierarchy; but we also saw<sup>1</sup> how the popes, by their participation in the disputes within this order, in which they sided with the milder party among the Franciscans, became involved in a contest with the *zelantes* and *spirituales*, and how it thus came about that the idea of evangelical poverty raised to importance by this party took another direction, was set up against the worldliness of a church corrupted by the superfluity of earthly goods, and by means of this antagonism many others might be called forth, which from the point of view occupied by this party could not fail to appear heretical. Added to this was the influence of those prophetic ideas, of which we spoke in the first section, and which, propagated ever since the middle of the twelfth century, had been continually shaping themselves out into greater distinctness; particularly those ideas in the peculiar form in which they are presented by the abbot Joachim, whose profound thoughts and intuitions operated in various ways to stimulate and fructify inquiry. The exposition of the Apocalypse opened a wide field of imaginative conjecture to minds deeply conscious of the corruption of the church in their times, and piercing with a spirit of divination into the future. As the signs of the times, which are presented in that production of Joachim as tokens of the last great conflict, were, in the important epochs of new evolutions of the kingdom of God, repeated in manifold<sup>2</sup> forms, and exalted to a still higher significance, so the opinion, which indeed contained something of truth, that this final judgment was hinted at by signs corresponding to the predictions of the Apocalypse, might the more easily obtain credence. The abbot Joachim had given the impulse to that kind of speculation by which men were led to trace in certain correspondences, in which one step prefigured that which was to follow, the progressive

two documents like these, in which there are still many things which do not agree with the doctrines of the Waldenses according to their later form.

<sup>1</sup> See vol. vii., p. 392.

<sup>2</sup> There is much truth in the remark which Hamann made in a letter to Herder, relative to the New Testament prophecies of the last times, where he says of the Apocalypse: "I accordingly did not consider the book as entirely fulfilled, but, like Judaism itself, as partly a standing, partly a progressive fulfilment. The actual fulfilment of the book is but a type of a higher fulfilment." See Hamann's writings, edited by F. Roth. Vol. vi., p. 111.

fulfilment of the prophetic element in the unfolding thread of historical facts. The ideas of the evangelical poverty and of the age of the Holy Spirit were in these intuitions combined together; there were, however, different spiritual tendencies, agreeing only in their opposition to the existing church form, which seized and appropriated these ideas after different ways; sometimes, as we saw in the sect of Almaric of Bena, a mystical pantheism, which would exchange Christian theism, and the dependence of the religious consciousness on a Saviour of the world for the self-deification of mind, representing Christianity as being only a subordinate form of religion which the mind, when arrived at the age of manhood, should slough off; sometimes a tendency, which, conscious that Christianity is itself the absolute religion, strove after a freer and more perfect development of the same, whereby it was to break through all human ordinances.

As the strict Franciscans entertained a special reverence for the abbot Joachim, who had foretold their order and the regeneration of the church, of which they were to be the instrument, and occupied themselves a good deal with the explanation of his writings, the interpretation and application of the current ideas in the same, so a great deal was said among them about a new everlasting gospel. The idea of such a gospel belonged really among the characteristic and peculiar notions of Joachim; and we have seen how by this expression, borrowed from the 14th chapter of the Apocalypse (v. 6), he had understood, following the view of Origen, a new spiritual apprehension of Christianity, as opposed to the sensuous Catholic point of view, and answering to the age of the Holy Spirit. A great sensation was now created by a commentary on the eternal gospel, which, after the middle of the thirteenth century, the Franciscan Gerhard,<sup>1</sup> who, by his zeal for Joachim's doctrines, involved himself in many

<sup>1</sup> Assuredly this person was not, as he was afterwards said to be (see the Directorium inquisitionis of the Dominican Nicholas Eymericus, f. 272), a friend and kindred spirit to that same John of Parma, who, on account of his severity as a reformer, and his zeal for the doctrines of Joachim, suffered much persecution, was deposed from his office as general of his order, had Bonaventura for his successor; the author of this book, as may be gathered from a statement of the acts of that process preserved in the library of the Sorbonne at Paris, by a member of the papal commission, composed of three cardinals appointed to examine that work, was Hugo of St Chers (see above, p. 180). See the work already cited relative to the writers of the Dominican order, by Quetif and Echard, t. i., f. 202: *Processus in librum evangelii æterni*.

persecutions and incurred an eighteen years' imprisonment,<sup>1</sup> published under the title of "*Introductorius in evangelium aeternum*." Many vague notions were entertained about the eternal gospel of the Franciscans, arising from superficial views, or a superficial understanding of Joachim's writings, and the offspring of mere rumour or the heresy-hunting spirit. Men spoke of the eternal gospel as of a book composed under this title and circulated among the Franciscans.<sup>2</sup> Occasionally, also, this eternal gospel was confounded perhaps with the above-mentioned *Introductorius*. In reality, there was no book existing under this title of the Eternal Gospel; but all that is said about it relates simply to the writings of Joachim.<sup>3</sup> The opponents of the Franciscan order objected to the preachers of the eternal gospel, that, according to their opinion, Christianity was but a transient thing, and a new, more perfect religion, the absolute form, destined to endure for ever, would succeed it. William of St Amour says: "For the past fifty-five years some have been striving to substitute in place of the gospel of Christ another gospel, which is said to be a more perfect one, which they called the gospel of the

<sup>1</sup> See, respecting him, Wadding. *Annals of the Franciscan order*, t. iv., at the year 1256.

<sup>2</sup> So said that violent enemy of the mendicant monks, of whom we have spoken in the second section, vol. vii., p. 381, William of St Amour. In his sermon, preached on St James and St Philip's days in the above-cited edition of his works, p. 600, where he is describing the dangers which belonged to the signs of the last times, and without doubt had the Franciscans in his mind, he says: *De istis periculis jam habemus quaedam Parisia, scilicet librum illum, qui vocatur evangelium aeternum. Et nos vidimus non modicam partem illius libri et audivi, quod ubicunque est, tantum vel plus contineat ille liber quam tota biblia, which might certainly be said with propriety of the compass and extent of Joachim's writings.*

<sup>3</sup> See the learned and profound essay on this subject by Dr Engelhardt, in his *Kirchengeschichtlichen Abhandlungen*, Erlangen, 1832, p. 4, et f. This may be very distinctly gathered from the statement in the above-cited acts of the process on the *Introductorius in evangelium aeternum*, l. c. Quetif et Echard, f. 202, for here it is expressly stated: *Quod liber concordiarum vel concordia veritatis appellaretur primus liber evangelii aeterni et quod liber iste, qui dicitur Apocalypsis nova, appellaretur secundus liber ejusdem evangelii, similiter, quod liber, qui dicitur Psalterium decem chordarum, sit tertius liber ejusdem evangelii.* Here we plainly recognise the titles of the three works of Joachim mentioned above, in a note on p. 221. With this agree also the following words of Thomas Aquinas: *Hoc autem evangelium, de quo loquuntur (William of St Amour and his party), est quoddam introductorium in libro [a] Joachim compositum, quod est ab ecclesia reprobatum, vel etiam ipsa doctrina Joachim, per quam, ut dicunt, evangelium Christi mutatur.* See opusculum xvi., contra impugnantes religionem (the opponents of the mendicant orders). Opp. ed. Venet. t. xix., p. 415.

<sup>4</sup> *De periculis novissimorum temporum*, p. 38.



Holy Spirit, or the eternal gospel.<sup>1</sup> These doctrines, concerning a new eternal gospel, which was to be preached in the times of the antichrist, had already, in the year 1254,—where perhaps he refers to the appearance of the above-mentioned *Introductorius*,—been set forth at the very seat of theological studies in Paris. Whence it is manifest, that the antichristian doctrine would even now be preached from the pulpits, if there were not still something that *withholdeth* (2 Thessal. ii. 6), namely, the power of the pope and of the bishops. It is said in that accursed book, which they called the eternal gospel, which had already been made known in the church, that the eternal gospel is as much superior to the gospel of Christ, as the sun is to the moon in brightness, the kernel to the shell in value. The kingdom of the church, or the gospel of Christ, was to last only till the year 1260." In a sermon which we have already noticed,<sup>2</sup> he points out the following as doctrines of the eternal gospel: that the sacrament of the church is nothing; that a new law of life was to be given, and a new constitution of the church introduced; and he labours to show that on the contrary the form of the hierarchy, under which the church then subsisted, was one resting on the divine order, and altogether necessary and immutable.

These charges from the mouth of a passionate opponent cannot certainly be regarded as evidence that a doctrine like that of Almaric, concerning a new religion of the perfect, close at hand, was even then taught among the strict Franciscans. It is easy to see, by referring back to the account given on a former page, of the doctrines of Joachim, how St Amour might be led to suppose that he found all this in Joachim's writings, which surely he had read but superficially, and for the very reason that they were so highly esteemed among the Franciscans, with hostile feelings, as well as an entirely opposite bent of mind. And since the ex-

<sup>1</sup> I cannot acquiesce in the conjecture of Dr Engelhardt, that William of St Amour here had in mind the doctrine of Almaric of Bena, but believe that he always had in view the doctrines of Joachim, which had spread in the Franciscan order, or doctrines associated with Joachim's ideas, as appears evident when, after the words above-cited, he adds: "*Quod (evangelio aeterno) adveniente evacuabitur, ut dicunt, evangelium Christi, ut parati sumus ostendere in illo evangelio maledicto.*" Here he assuredly means the same thing which in the place first cited from his sermons is called the gospel. And had he meant Almaric, who was condemned as a heretic, there was certainly no reason why he should omit to mention his name.

<sup>2</sup> L. c. p. 500.

isting form of the church constitution seemed to him in exact accordance with the essence of Christianity, he could not fail, indeed, where Joachim predicted some new form of the manifestation of Christianity, in which it was to cast aside its present confined envelope, to see therein announced some new antichristian gospel. Taking everything together which the opponents cite from the "Introductory to the eternal gospel," it may well be doubted whether, even in this book, any such doctrine, implying the destruction of Christianity, was set forth. The whole matter of this work also seems to have consisted in an explication of the fundamental ideas of the abbot Joachim, and in the application of them to the genuine Franciscan order. The condemnation of the "Introductory," by pope Alexander the Fourth, could not put a stop, however, to the circulation of these ideas. They still continued to be cherished among the party of the more rigid Franciscans, and a remarkable individual, who sprung up in the midst of that body, gave them a new impulse.

This was John Peter de Oliva of Provence, who from his twelfth year had been educated in the Franciscan order.<sup>1</sup> He was governed from the first by that eccentric tendency of religious feeling and imagination which had gone forth from Francis; as was seen, for example, in his extravagant eulogiums of the Virgin Mary, which, indeed, were found to be offensive even in his own order;<sup>2</sup> but with this, he united a profound, speculative intellect. A mixture of profound ideas and fantastic, whimsical assertions might naturally be expected, therefore, in his writings.<sup>3</sup> Zealous for the primitive severity of the Franciscan rule, he inveighed against all deviations from it; and the same spirit led him also to attack the worldly life, the luxury and pomp of the clergy. By so doing he created many enemies, who eagerly laid hold of every occasion presented by his many singular, bold remarks, to suggest suspicions with regard to his orthodoxy.<sup>4</sup> Besides his doctrine of evangelical poverty, various metaphysical, dogmatic

<sup>1</sup> See Wadding. *Annales*, 1289, N. 29.

<sup>2</sup> In Wadding. l. c. N. 28.

<sup>3</sup> We have to lament that nothing has as yet been published from the writings of this remarkable man. We know nothing of him except from the articles declared heretical, which had been extracted from his Commentary on the Apocalypse, by a papal commission under John the Twenty-Second. In Baluz. *Miscellan.* i. f. 213.

<sup>4</sup> Wadding. *Annales*, at the year 1282. N. 2.

statements were hazarded by him, which gave offence. Among these was the opinion that Christ when struck by the spear in his side was not yet dead.<sup>1</sup> After an assembly of the Franciscan order, convened in the year 1282, had ordered an investigation of his doctrines, and of their spread, he submitted, in the year following, to the recantation prescribed to him,<sup>2</sup> and at a convention of the order held at Paris, in 1292, he gave them entire satisfaction by the explanations which he laid before them. His opponents were no match for him in dialectics. He died at the age of fifty, in 1297. Before his death he laid down a confession, in which he unconditionally submitted to the decisions of the church of Rome. Yet he reserved to himself the liberty of refusing to follow any human determination claiming to decide that anything belonged to the essence of the faith, unless it were the decision of the pope, or of a general council; except in so far as he was enforced to adopt it by reason, or the authority of the Holy Scriptures, or the essence of the Catholic faith itself. He held it, moreover, to be a salutary thing that opposite opinions should be set forth and defended, provided it were done without obstinacy,—for so, the truth would be more accurately investigated, the minds of disputants more exercised, and men more certainly led to an understanding of the doctrines of faith.<sup>3</sup>

Oliva distinguished seven ages of the church: The first, its foundation by the apostles; the second, its preservation by the sufferings of the martyrs; the third, the evolution and defence of the faith in the contests with heretics; the fourth, the period of the anchorites living in strict self-mortification, who poured a bright light on the church by their example; the fifth, the period of the common life of monks and clerks, some of whom practised greater severity, others accommodated themselves to the ordinary mode of living; the sixth, the renewal of the evangelical and the extirpation of the antichristian life, with which is connected the final conversion of the Jews and pagans, or at once the reconstruction of the primitive church; the seventh age is, in its relation to this earthly life, a sort of sabbath; a peaceful and miraculous participation in future blessedness, as if

<sup>1</sup> L. c. at the year 1297. N. 37, etc.

<sup>2</sup> L. c. at the year 1283. N. 7.

<sup>3</sup> Wadding. *Annales*, at the year 1297. N. 34.

the heavenly Jerusalem had descended upon earth;—but in its relation to the future life, it is the general resurrection, the glorification of the saints, and the end of all things. This distinction of a twofold design of the great epochs in the evolution of the kingdom of God, according to their point of departure and their point of termination, belongs among the peculiar features in the intuitions of Oliva. Thus, he says of the first period, that in one sense it may be supposed to begin with the preaching of Christ; in another, with the outpouring of the Holy Spirit. The second age began, in the proper sense, with Nero's persecution; but in a certain sense with the stoning of Stephen, or the passion of Christ. The sixth age began, in one sense, with the time of St Francis, but more perfectly with the judgments executed on a corrupt church. He distinguishes, furthermore, a threefold manifestation of Christ in the history of the world: the first and last, visible; the middle one not sensible, but spiritual. The first, for the redemption of the world, and the founding of the church; the second, to renew the latter to the spirit of the evangelical life, and carry forward the church, already founded, to perfection; the third, for judgment, for the glorification of the elect, and for the general consummation. Although this spiritual advent of Christ must be referred to the *whole* process of development of the church, and also to the glorification of the saints, yet it may, in a certain sense, be pre-eminently attributed to the sixth period, whose characteristics are founded on this very interior activity of the spirit of Christ.<sup>1</sup> He supposes a progressive evolution of the antichristian and the Christian principles, both proceeding side by side, to the last decisive struggle; so that each successive period takes up into itself all the good and evil of the preceding one, and hence all the good and evil of all earlier periods must be concentrated in the last time of the spiritual revelation of Christ, and of the manifestation of antichrist. "Just as the virtue of the root and of the stalk," says he, "lives again in the branches and the fruit, so whatever disturbs the healthy development of life also transmits itself."<sup>2</sup> And as the whole virtue and

<sup>1</sup> Licet autem secundus adventus sit in toto decursu ecclesiae et etiam in glorificatione sanctorum, nihilominus recte et congrue per quandam antonomasiam appropriatur tempori sexto.

<sup>2</sup> Sicut virtus radice et stipite redivivit in ramo et fructu, sic et infectio utriusque.

force of the earlier times, therefore, strives towards the great end, of producing the sixth and the seventh period, so all the opposite evil of the earlier times will ally itself with the malice of antichrist, and of the others, by whom the elect of the sixth and seventh periods are to be tempted.<sup>1</sup> The sixth period will, therefore, be distinctly and prominently marked above all the preceding ones, as the goal to which everything presses,—the commencement of a new age of the world, whereby the old world will be done away, just as by the appearance of Christ the Old Testament, and the old life of mankind, were done away.<sup>2</sup> As by Christ's first appearance an end was put to the old synagogue and a new church was erected, so by his spiritual advent all old things will be taken out of the way, and the church recreated, as it were, into an entirely new one. As the spiritual revelation of Christ goes through all the ages of the church, but must be pre-eminently ascribed to that sixth age, the same is to be said also of the agency of the Holy Spirit; and precisely by this fact the third age of the world, beginning with the sixth period of the church, is distinguished as the age of the Holy Spirit from the two earlier, the time of the Old Testament and the Christian period which has thus far elapsed.<sup>3</sup>

It is manifest, from this collation of passages, how far Oliva was from favouring the theory which taught that Christianity itself was to be annulled by this new revelation of the Holy Ghost. He looks upon the whole as only a progressive, organic evolution of Christianity itself, through different *stadia*, starting from that which Christ has done once for all. The aim of the entire evolution is nothing other than the complete exhibition of the image of Christ, according to life and knowledge, in humanity; which coincides with the true realization of the image of God, and of man's destined dominion over the world. So too the sixth day, on which man was created in the image of God, corresponds to

<sup>1</sup> Sicut tota virtus priorum temporum intendit generationem sexti et septimi status, sic tota malitia iis opposita coöperabitur malitiæ antichristi et reliquorum exercentium electos sexti et septimi status.

<sup>2</sup> Initium novi seculi, evacuans quoddam vetus seculum, sicut status Christi evacuavit veter testamentum et vetustatem humani generis.

<sup>3</sup> Tertius status mundi sub sexto statu ecclesiæ inchoandus et spiritui sancto per quandam antonomasiam appropriandus.

the sixth period, in which the mass of the Jews and pagans will be restored to the image of God by Christianity.<sup>1</sup>

And here we should not fail to notice, that as Oliva did not possess a correct view of the apostolical church, nor a clear consciousness of the distinction between the Catholic point of view and primitive Christianity, so his view of the great end towards which the church in its progressive advancement is striving, must of course be affected thereby. Complete estrangement from the world, as contradistinguished from the hitherto prevailing absorption in the world; the religion of intuition and feeling, as opposed to the hitherto conceptual theology; pure passivity, in the surrendry of one's self to the godlike, as opposed to the hitherto prevailing self-activity of the intellect in the dialectical theology,—this, as it appeared to him, would form the distinguishing characteristic of that glorious period: “As it was the striving of the fathers in the first age of the world before Christ,” says he, “to proclaim the great works of the Lord from the creation of the world, and as the children of God, in the second age of the world, from Christ onwards, laboured to explore the hidden wisdom, so nothing else remains for the third age, but that we should sing God's praise,—while we magnify his great power and his manifold wisdom and goodness, which are clearly revealed in his works and in the word of the Sacred Scriptures; for while in the first age of the world, God the Father manifested himself as the terrible God, and a being to be feared; in the second age of the world, the Son manifested himself as a teacher and revealer, the Word of divine wisdom; he will reveal himself in the third age, of the Holy Ghost, as the flame of divine love and the fulness of all spiritual joy,—so that all the wisdom of the incarnate Word, and all the power of the Father, will not merely be known, but also felt and experienced.”<sup>2</sup> To this he applies the promise, given by Christ, of the Holy Spirit, which should lead to all truth, and glorify him;—which, therefore, he applies also, in a pre-eminent sense, to this sixth period; “As, in the first times,

<sup>1</sup> *Bestiæ sexto die formatae, post quas formatus est homo ad imaginem Dei, quia post has convertetur Israël cum reliquiis gentium et apparebit Christiformis vita et imago Christi.*

<sup>2</sup> *Non solum simpliciter intelligentia, sed etiam gustativa et palpativa experientia videtur omnis veritas sapientiae verbi Dei incarnati et potentia Dei patris.*

the world was converted to Christ by extraordinary and countless miracles; so it is behoving that it should, in the last times, again be converted by a peculiar light of divine wisdom, and of the understanding of the Scriptures; especially, since the condition of this period is to be of so elevated a character as to admit of the reception and contemplation of the divine light itself.<sup>1</sup> This sixth period, then, stands prominent, indeed, above all the other and earlier ones, by the plenitude of grace and familiar tokens of Christ's love; yet it has the more reason to humble itself, because, what distinguishes it consists much rather in passivity, or receiving, than in activity, or giving; much rather in that blessedness, which is a reward, than in that pains-taking service, which might pass for a desert. As the glory which was intended for the synagogue and its priests, had they believed in Christ, was transferred to the primitive church and its shepherds; so also the glory intended for the church of the fifth period will, on account of its apostasy, be transferred to the elect of the sixth period. The precursor of the new period of genuine life, which consists in following Christ in evangelical poverty, is St Francis; he who first exhibited, in this respect, the perfect image of Christ, who must resemble Christ therefore in all respects, and hence must bear also the prints of his wounds.<sup>2</sup> When David was anointed, and the Spirit of the Lord came upon him, Saul was left more than ever to himself, and the evil spirit took possession of him; so when the Spirit of God was evidently transferred to the evangelical paupers (the genuine, strict Franciscans), and they were called and consecrated by him to the office of preaching, many began to be stirred with a diabolical spirit against them, while they sunk deeper and deeper themselves into simony, cupidity, luxury, and worldly pomp. The *extensive* increase of the church should be conditioned on its *intensive* power,—from the interior glory of the church, in the period of the Holy Ghost, should proceed also its external enlargement. They who ex-

<sup>1</sup> Sicut primo tempore conversus est mundus ad Christum per stupendas, et innumerabiles virtutes miraculorum, sic decet, quod in finali tempore convertatur iterum orbis per praeclara et superadmiranda et superabundantia lumina sapientiae Dei et scripturarum suarum, et maxime quia oportet statum illius temporis elevari et intrare ad ipsa lumina suscipienda et contemplananda.

<sup>2</sup> See vol. vii., p. 371.

hibited the perfect image of Christ in evangelical poverty, should be employed as the instruments for the extension of God's kingdom through the whole world."

"But as, in the apostolic times, the preaching of the gospel found more acceptance among the heathen than among the Jews; so, too, the new evangelical missionaries would find greater success among the Greeks, Saracens, Tartars, and finally the Jews, than in the fleshly church of the Latins." The Babylon of Revelation is uniformly represented by Oliva as the corrupt church of Rome, hurrying to the judgment; and he describes her corruption in the plainest terms. "She is Babylon, the great whore, because wickedness thrives and spreads in her, not only intensively but extensively; so that the good in her are like a few grains of gold in a vast sand-heap; and as the Jews in Babylon were captives, and grievously oppressed, so will the spirit of the righteous, in this period, be oppressed and afflicted beyond endurance, by the countless host of a fleshly church, which they are enforced to serve against their will. The Babylon which stood in heathendom, made all men drunk with her idolatries; so that Babylon, which is the fleshly church, has made herself and all the people in subjection to her drunk, and led them astray by her shameful carnalities, simony, and worldly pomp. And as, previous to her fall, her malice and her power grievously oppressed the spirit of the elect, and hindered the conversion of the world, so will her overthrow be to the saints as a release from their captivity." "The seat of corruption," he says, "is more especially in the fleshly clergy, who hold the high places of Babylon; there it exists to a far greater extent than in the communities under them."<sup>1</sup>

Oliva agrees with the abbot Joachim, also, in that he describes the period of the Holy Ghost as being, at the same time, the Johannean period. To him, also, John stands as the representative of the contemplative bent, and of the new evangelical mode of life, the prototype of the *ordo evangelicus*. So he expounds Rev. x. 10 in the sense that, by the new evangelical order, the work first commenced by the apostles shall be completed, and the

<sup>1</sup> In quo bestialis vita singulariter regnat et sedet sicut in sua principali sede et longe plus quam in laicis et plebibus sibi subjectis.



mass of the pagans and Jews converted to Christianity.<sup>1</sup> The twelve gates of the kingdom of God, mentioned in Rev. xxi. 12, he applies more particularly to the great teachers of this last period, by whose means the kingdom of God was to be extended among the pagans and Jews;<sup>2</sup> for, as it belonged more properly to the apostles to build, under Christ, the foundation of the whole church and of the Christian faith, so it belongs more properly to these to stand as the open gates; as those by whom the Christian wisdom is opened and explained;<sup>3</sup> for as a tree, so long as it subsists only in its root, cannot as yet unfold its whole peculiar nature, and let every part of it be seen, which can only be done when, in its branches, leaves, blossoms, and fruit, it has reached its complete development; so the tree or building of the church and of the divine wisdom which shines forth in its different parts after manifold ways, neither could nor should unfold itself from the beginning, as it can and must do in its perfection. As the course of development marked by the Old, supposes a gradual progression, so does the process of the development of Christian wisdom, on the foundation of the New Testament."<sup>5</sup>

It is plain that, notwithstanding the wild and singular notions which are mixed in with his more profound ideas, we may reckon Oliva as belonging, with the abbot Joachim, among the prophetic men who bore within them the germs of great spiritual developments in the future, though intermingled with a chaotic mass of heterogeneous elements. His ideas relative to the process of the

<sup>1</sup> Ut per ipsum Joannem designatur in communi ordo evangelicus et contemplativus, scitur ex ipsa intelligentia libri, quod per istum ordinem debet hoc impleri.

<sup>2</sup> Licet per Apostolos et per alios Sanctos secundi generalis status intraverit multitudo populorum ad Christum tanquam per portas civitatis Dei, nihilominus magis appropriate competit hoc principalibus doctoribus tertii generalis status.

<sup>3</sup> Sicut enim apostolis magis competit esse cum Christo fundamenta totius ecclesiae et fidei Christianae, sic istis plus competit, esse portas apertas et apertiores seu explicatores sapientiae Christianae.

<sup>4</sup> Sicut arbor, dum est in sola radice, non potest sic tota omnibus explicari seu explicite monstrari, sicut quando est in ramis et foliis et fructibus consummata, sic arbor seu fabrica ecclesiae et divinae providentiae ac sapientiae in ejus partibus diversimode refulgentis et participatae non sic potuit nec debuit ab initio explicari sicut in sua consummatione poterit et debet.

<sup>5</sup> Sicut ab initio mundi usque ad Christum crevit successive illuminatio populi Dei et explicatio ordinis et processus totius veteris testamenti et providentiae Dei in fabricatione et gubernatione, sic est et de illuminationibus et explanationibus Christianae sapientiae in statu novi testamenti.

development of revelation and of the church, were incapable of being shaped out and applied, except by the calm, scientific insight of a distant futurity. In his own times, however, it was the imaginative element in the writings of Oliva, and that part of them which touched on the favourite ideas of the strict Franciscans and other zealous defendants of an evangelical poverty, such as were found among the people called Beghards,<sup>1</sup> which promoted their circulation. The magisterial decree of the superiors of his order, against Oliva's writings,<sup>2</sup> could not hinder their influence. We shall perceive the after-workings of them in the succeeding periods.

Among those in whom the power of those ideas expressed by the abbot Joachim, and which filled the spiritual atmosphere, is plainly seen, we should notice, in this connection, the Italian *Apostolicals*. Though the history of this party reaches into the following period, yet we think it proper to take up the whole matter in the present connection, because their commencement belongs in this period, and their history is very closely inwoven with those kindred manifestations, which we have been contemplating in this section. We shall first have to consider these Italian Apostolicals as one of the many forms of manifestation of that idea, which we saw springing up under so many different shapes, from Arnold of Brescia and onwards. Their first founder was Gerhard Segarelli of Parma.<sup>3</sup> Born in the village of Alzano, in the province of Parma,<sup>4</sup> he had settled down in that city, where he pursued some sort of a trade. Disgusted with the common pursuits of the world, and awakened to an earnest desire after a more serious and hearty Christian life, he felt impelled, like so many other pious men of his times, to follow the pattern of the apostles in a total renunciation of earthly interests. Hoping to

<sup>1</sup> See above, p. 15.

<sup>2</sup> See Wadding. *Annales*, at the year 1297. N. 35.

<sup>3</sup> The history of his life was more fully given in the Chronicle composed by the Franciscan Salimbenus de Adam, belonging to this time. This has not yet been published; but extracts from it, which relate to the history of Segarelli, are said to have been communicated by the Italian jurist Francesco Pegna, in his remarks on the *Directorium Inquisitionis* of Nicholas Eymericus, f. 271, ed. Venet. 1596. I follow, here, the quotations of Mosheim; for, in the Roman edition of 1585, lying before me, I do not find this piece.

<sup>4</sup> The Chronicle of Parma, published by Muratori, in the 9th vol. of the *Scriptores rerum Italicarum*, p. 826.

find such an apostolical community in the Franciscan order, he expressed a desire to enter this order. But his reception into it was for some cause or other delayed. While pursuing his daily practice of abandoning himself to devotional meditations before a picture in the Franciscan church, representing the apostles in the coarse garments and slippers usually assigned to them in this period,<sup>1</sup> he became more and more fixed in the resolution to found an apostolical community, which should labour for nothing else but the conversion of men. That form of the apostolical community which he found in the Franciscan order no longer satisfied him. It was a freer union, which his mind demanded; a union not held together by any vow, rule, or law, but a union of brethren actuated solely by the free spirit of love. So, in the year 1260, suiting his dress to the style in which the apostles were represented, he went forth as a preacher of repentance, and gradually a number of others joined him. As he and his companions were in the habit of commencing their sermons with the Ave Maria, the recitation of the Apostles' creed, and the Lord's prayer, and as the substance of their discourses was altogether practical, as they entered into no discussions of the church doctrines, perhaps were not conscious of any opposition to them, they went on for a long time unmolested; for the appearance of such itinerant preachers of repentance was nothing extraordinary; and, moreover, the political disturbances which then agitated Italy, diverted public attention from such singularities. Thus it was in the power of this society of apostolical brethren to propagate themselves for twenty years, and also to extend themselves beyond the limits of Italy. At length, however, the rapid increase of the sect excited the suspicion of the bishop of Parma, and he had Gerhard arrested and confined. Yet he could find nothing in him that was heretical; but looked upon him, as he might well do, from the many singularities in his conduct, as a crazy fanatic, not deserving of punishment, but needing only to be watched;<sup>2</sup> and he bestowed every attention upon him in his

<sup>1</sup> In the extracts from Salimben's *Chronicle*: *Super coöpertorium lampadis depicti erant apostoli circumcirca cum soleis in pedibus et cum mantellis circa scapulas involuti, sicut traditio pictorum ab antiquis accepit,—ubi iste contemplatur.*

<sup>2</sup> When, afterwards, the heretical tendency of the Apostolicals came to light, men would, of course, no longer be satisfied with this mild declaration. We must interpreta

palace, till, growing tired of him, he set him at liberty in 1286. He banished him, however, from the city of Parma and from the entire diocese. Yet pope Honorius the Fourth, in the same year, found it necessary to issue a bull, addressed to all bishops, and calling upon them to suppress all those spiritual societies existing without papal confirmation, whose members went about begging, to the great peril of their own souls, and the grievous scandal of many in different countries of the world. True, it must already have been perceived that such modes of life were employed by numbers for the dissemination of heretical doctrines;<sup>1</sup> yet no indication is to be found in the papal document that any such society had, on the whole, drawn upon itself the suspicion of an heretical tendency. On the contrary, it is presupposed that they were, on the whole, devoted to the Catholic church; it was simply required of them that, in order to preclude the dangers to which they exposed themselves and others, they must, if they wished to continue such a mode of life, attach themselves to some existing order of mendicant friars. Neither is it clear that the ordinance was directed against Segarelli's society in particular, which is not indicated in any way. There were, in fact, a number of such communities, which had arisen among the laity in different countries; and so the pope renewed the ordinance which Gregory the Tenth, in the twenty-third canon of the council of Lyons, in 1274, had issued against communities of "mendicants," not standing under papal confirmation. But then if the ordinance was not expressly directed against *this* spiritual society, it could not fail to have a very serious effect on its prosperity. The inquisitorial measures of the church authorities would, by virtue of it, be called forth against all such combinations.<sup>2</sup> This freer re-

in the sense that the heretic, who resorted to every species of falsehood and deceit to gain his end, feigned madness for the purpose of escaping deserved punishment, as Salimbene says: *Amentiam finxit ideoque carcere eductus*. But such cunning and dissimulation were certainly altogether inconsistent with the natural disposition of this man.

1 As it is said: *Cum nonnulli pravitatis haereticæ vitio laborantes sub hujusmodi habitu asserantur inventi*.

2 At the council of Würzburg, A. D. 1287, the 34th canon was enacted against it: *Leccatores sive reprobos apostolos in eorum reprobata regula remanere vetantes omnino volumus, quod nullus clericus, nulla saecularis persona intuitu religionis eorum ac insolito habitu eos de caetero recipiat aut eis alimenta ministret*. It cannot, however, as Mosheim supposes, be certainly proved from this ordinance that the Apostolicals, originating with Segarelli, had already spread as far as Germany; for as such communities

action of the Christian spirit, extending under so many various forms among the laity, could not thus be suppressed. Pope Nicholas the Fourth was obliged, four years later, in 1290, to issue another circular letter against the Apostolicals, couched in terms similar to the first;<sup>1</sup> which shows how little had been effected by the first.<sup>2</sup> The Italian Apostolicals, who refused to abandon their vocation, which they believed to be from God, were only driven thereby to a more violent opposition to the papacy and the dominant church. They stood forth against it as a worldly and corrupt church, and began to describe it as the Babylon of the Apocalypse. They were now persecuted as opponents of the church, and heretics. Many died at the stake: Segarelli himself, having ventured to show himself once more within the diocese of Parma, was, in 1294, thrown into prison.

everywhere abounded in the twelfth and thirteenth centuries, and particularly in Germany, and as it is simply the mark common to all such societies which is here mentioned: so there is nothing to warrant us to fix upon the Segarellian community rather than any other. At the council of Chichester, in 1289, the thirty-eighth canon was passed against such as, professing themselves members of some apostolical society, preached, heard confessions, and pretending that they were in want of books, of a sacramental chalice, or of some other church-utensil, collected money and deceived the people: *Quidam non veri fratres, nec veraciter quidem de ordine Apostolorum existentes Apostolorum habitum et tonsuram portantes, in plerisque ecclesiis et aliis locis nostrae dioecesis praedicationis et audiendi confessionem officium praesumptuose exercebant et aliquoties eorum praedicationem ad quaestum pecuniarium et aliud lucrum turpe florido colore subventionis ad calicem vel librum vel aliud ornamentum ecclesiasticum, quos eos egere asserunt, converterunt, etc.* See Wilkins, *Concil. Brit.* t. ii., f. 172. Mosheim acknowledges that marks here occur which cannot apply to the Segarellian apostolicals. Why ought we not, then, to refer this ordinance of the German, as well as that of the English council, to all such societies of Apostolicals, or Beghards, among whom, as among the proper monks, there were men of very different religious and moral characters, without any particular reference to the Italian Apostolicals? When these are described, in the first passage, as *leccatores* (voluptuaries), this designation may have been deserved by many who used the pretended apostolical mode of life only as a hypocritical mask, and wrongly applied to others by the heresy-hating spirit.

<sup>1</sup> As we may conclude from the report of Nicholas Eymericus, l. c. f. 288, ed. Rom. 1685.

<sup>2</sup> The author of the *Additamentum ad historiam Dolcini*, in Muratori's *Scriptores rerum Italicarum*, t. ix., f. 448, who wrote in the year 1316, says the contrary, it is true, of the effect of that first papal document: *Post praedictas literas apostolicas dicta secta perniciose coepit deici paulatim et a fidelibus evitari*; but what he himself reports, in the sequel, sufficiently proves that we are not to regard the effect as having been very great; and a limitation indeed is implied in the word *paulatim*. But when the author says that the sect could not be wholly suppressed, *quia longe lateque in diversis mundi partibus se diffuderat*, the question arises whether he was not under another mistake, in identifying with the sect of Segarelli all the different branches of the Apostolicals, which had started from the same idea with that sect, but outwardly had no sort of connection with it.

By consenting to make a recantation of the erroneous doctrines imputed to him, he escaped the stake, but was condemned to perpetual confinement.<sup>1</sup> The inquisitors, however, managed to find out that they had been deceived by him, and that he was still given to the same erroneous doctrines as before, and so he was condemned, as one who had relapsed into heresy, to the stake, and died in the year 1300.

With the death of their first founder this sect was by no means broken up. It was connected with a spiritual excitement growing out of the prevailing temper of those times, in which the individual Segarelli, a man of no great force of personal character, was of subordinate importance; and there stood already at the head of the Apostolical community, a man altogether superior to Segarelli, in mind, education, and practical efficiency, who had joined him at some earlier period. This was Dolcino,<sup>2</sup> the natural son of a priest, in a village belonging to the diocese of Novara;<sup>3</sup> he was destined for the spiritual order, and educated with a view to it. He obtained the requisite literary qualifications, and distinguished himself by the quickness of his parts and the rapid development of his intellectual powers, as well as by the winning kindliness of his natural disposition.<sup>4</sup> If we could trust a story from a good source, though not wholly free from all

<sup>1</sup> Addit. ad hist. Dolcini, l. c., f. 450, and Chronicon Parmense, l. c., f. 826.

<sup>2</sup> The principal sources are the *Historia Dolcini* and the *Additamenta ad historiam Dolcini* in Muratori's *Scriptores rerum Italicarum*, t. ix. I learn from the work of Julius Krone, published this year: "Fra Dolcino and the Patarennes," that Christofora Baggolini, professor at Vercelli, in a work entitled *Dolcino ei Patarenii notizie storiche*, Novara, 1838, has published from the archives of Vercelli, some new documents on Dolcino's history, which frequently contradict those published by Muratori. Respecting the value of these new documents as bearing on the right apprehension of Dolcino, I cannot decide, because I have never seen them. But, however disputable some things may be in the history of Dolcino, yet at any rate, the comparison of the appearance of this man with kindred appearances, in which connection we have endeavoured to seize it, presents, on the whole, a picture of decided and well-marked outlines.

<sup>3</sup> According to the sources early published, Trontano, in the upper Ossola-Thal: according to the documents in Baggolini, Prato in the diocese of Vercelli, between Grignasco and Romagnano, the work of Krone, p. 27.

<sup>4</sup> We are indebted for these statements to Benvenuto of Imola, who, in the fourteenth century, wrote a commentary on the *Divina Commedia* of Dante, from which Muratori has published extracts in his *Antiquitates Italicae medii aevi*, t. i., folio edition. This Benvenuto had his information from the mouth of the nephew of a physician, Raynald de Bergamo, who was Dolcino's physician. He says of him: *Erat acutissimi ingenii iste Dulcinus, ita quod in brevi factus est optimus scholaris; quum esset parvae stature, facie lactus, omnibus gratus.* L. c. f. 1122.

liability to suspicion,<sup>1</sup> Dolcino did not from his youth upward maintain a character quite pure from all stain. He is said to have purloined a sum of money from the ecclesiastic who managed his education, and who reposed the utmost confidence in him; and to escape the threatened punishment, when he was compelled to confess his guilt, he fled to the districts of Trent, in the Tyrol. If this account is strictly true; if Dolcino, on the contrary, full already of his reformatory ideas, suggested to him perhaps by the representation of the apostolical life in his Latin New Testament, as contrasted with the corruption of the clergy of his times, did not betake himself to the districts of the Tyrol for the sake of spreading these ideas more easily and safely, we are left without the means of reconciling the Dolcino who was capable of committing the crime above mentioned, with the Dolcino who appears in the character of a reformer and Apostolical. It remains in fact a psychological enigma, how there should have arisen in the mind of one who robbed his benefactor of money to gratify his lusts, an enthusiasm for the ideal of an apostolical community of goods; how such an one could have been carried away by zeal against the corruption of the worldly-minded clergy. This is a self-contradiction, which must render the whole story

<sup>1</sup> It is the source just cited. The particular circumstances in the story may have served to give it currency: *Surripuit furto sacerdoti præfato certam pecuniae summam, quia nimis fidebat ei. Ideo, ut saepe accidit, sacerdos imputabat hoc furtum cuidam familiari suo, cui nomen erat Patras. Qui moleste ferens injustam infamiam, clandestine Dulcinum captum compulit terrore privatae torturae ad confessionem furti et iratus juste volebat ducere Dulcinum ad publicum supplicium. Sed sacerdos prohibuit, ne fieret irregularis. Dulcinus autem territus recessit inscio sacerdote et contulit se ad ultra Italiae ad civitatem Tridenti.* But we know how easily rumours arise to the disadvantage of persons decried as heretics, and how especially inclined men ever are to trace the origin of their heretical tendencies to wicked motives. Now of Dolcino's early boyhood and youth, nothing had been heard but what was good. But on the presupposition that the heretic must have been a bad man from the beginning, all his good qualities could only be pretended; wickedness must have been concealed under the mask of virtue, and would some time or other make itself manifest. (Thus Benvenuto, reporting what was good of him, adds: *sed non diu occultavit pravitatem, quae latebat sub egregia indole.* If, perhaps, when a young man, animated with a zeal for reform, he betook himself to Tyrol, for the purpose of winning over to his views the simple mountaineers, then this first step of his heretical career must be directly traced to something bad. He wanted to escape deserved punishment, and as he afterwards introduced the apostolical community of goods, so it naturally occurred to represent his first transgression as one in which he was led to disregard the rights of property. Accidental circumstances may have furnished the occasion for such a setting forth of the story. I would only hint a possible doubt, not decide.

suspicious to us.<sup>1</sup> Only two suppositions remain to solve this contradiction. Either that a great change had transpired in the religious and moral life of Dolcino, and to this was to be traced the opposition he manifested against the corruption of the church of his times, or that there was some intrinsic connection between his want of respect for another's property in his early youth, and the tendency which later in life caused him to appear as a zealot for the community of goods—certainly a very improbable supposition.

But however this may have been, the districts of Tyrol were the first field of Dolcino's activity as a reformer; and here he might easily have come in contact with anti-churchly tendencies, which had been spread there ever since time of Arnold of Brescia. Here he appeared at first as a zealot against the corruption of the clergy living in pomp and luxury; and as he himself went in coarse apparel, like the so-called Beghards, Humiliates, so he was for setting up a society in opposition to the clergy, composed of those who were willing to make a total renunciation of the world, and live without any property whatever.<sup>2</sup> Driven from this place by persecutions, he betook himself to those districts where the apostolical society of Segarelli was established, joined it, and after the death of Segarelli, became the leader of the party. He travelled about Italy, seeking opportunities to extend his sect; but everywhere dogged by the Inquisitors, he was obliged to flee from city to city. Thrice he fell into the hands of the Inquisition, but so managed his part as to deceive the judges, and gain his liberty.<sup>3</sup> According to the original principles of the Apostolicals, all Christ's commands should be observed to the letter; and so every attestation was to be a simple yea or nay.<sup>4</sup> But the

1 Against its credibility is the fact also, that these writers, belonging to a place and period which breathed nothing but hostility to Dolcino, of whom they are eager to say everything bad, still mention nothing of this sort, which they gladly would have done if it had been true, for the purpose of showing that the hidden root of his heresy was covetousness.

2 So says Benvenuto: *Ibi in montibus illis inter gentes rudes et credulas coepit fundare novam sectam in habitu fraticelli sine ordine, praedicans se verum Dei apostolum et quod omnia debebant communicari in caritate.*

3 He confessed this at his last trial. See the *Historia Dolcini* in Muratori, t. ix., f. 436.

4 See in the protocol of the Inquisition at Toulouse, published by Philip of Limborch, f. 361, the declaration of an Apostolical with regard to oaths. He says to the inquisitor:



strictness of these principles must in this case have yielded, or the interpretation of them accommodated itself to the force of circumstances. As Dolcino denied the competency of that ecclesiastical tribunal, or the right of any mere human authority to call others to an account for their religious convictions, so he seems to have considered it allowable to deceive by an oath those judges who arrogated to themselves a lordship over the conscience which did not belong to them. The verbal answer might be given in one way, the convictions of the heart held in another. So long as a man could save his life by such prevarication, the end would sanctify the means,<sup>1</sup>—a principle which Dolcino undoubtedly applied in other cases where the circumstances seemed to require it.

At length he retired to Dalmatia, a safer spot. From thence he issued a circular letter to the brethren scattered through all countries, and directed also to Christians generally. He claimed for himself a divine mission, having respect not barely to a particular community, but to entire Christendom, to announce to all the judgment impending over the corrupt church, to present before all the pattern of the resuscitated apostolical life, since the entire purified church was to pass over into this apostolical brotherly community. This letter began with the confession of his orthodoxy, which his opponents pronounced a mere pretence. He then described the nature of the new Christian community, by which the perfection of the apostolic life was to be restored, a union without the outward vow of obedience, preserved only by the inward bond of love.<sup>2</sup> This fellowship, he declares, had been specially sent and chosen in these last days of the world, by God, the Father, for the salvation of souls. He, the brother Dolcino, as he styled himself, had been specially called and chosen by God, with revelations communicated to him respecting present and future events, which furnished a key for the understanding of the Old and New Testament. He calls Gerhard Segarelli the founder of this last reformation of the Christian life, and himself the divinely commissioned leader of the new spiritual community, to

*Quod caveret sibi, quod non peccaret, faciendo ipsum jurare, quia in evangelio Deus prohibuerat jurare.*

<sup>1</sup> See the *Additamentum* in Muratori, f. 457, n. 20.

<sup>2</sup> *Congregationem suam spiritualem esse et propriam in proprio modo vivendi apostolico et proprio nomine cum paupertate propria et sine vinculo obedientie exterioris, sed cum interiori tantum.*

qualify him for which office, the understanding of the prophecies in the Bible had been revealed to him.<sup>1</sup> He presented his intuitions of the onward movement of the church, of her increasing conflicts till the appearance of antichrist, and of her triumph, for which the way was to be prepared by the Apostolicals. He expressed himself throughout in the tone of a prophet. Anticipating, he said, the impending judgments of God, he had hidden himself and fled from the presence of his persecutors, as his predecessors had done, till God's appointed time, when all his adversaries were to be destroyed, and he and his would come forth and preach openly.<sup>2</sup> All their persecutors, all the prelates of the church, were in a short time to be exterminated; those that remained would be converted, and adopt the apostolical mode of living. The Apostolicals would then gain the preponderance in all matters. He subsequently wrote a second and a third letter of the same general import.

Many things in the circumstances of the times,—the appearance of a pope possessed of a spirit so much akin to that of the Apostolicals, and who stood in so strong a contrast with his predecessors, as Celestin the Fifth; the secular drift and policy of Boniface the Eighth, his contests and final humiliation, might appear as a confirmation of Dolcino's predictions. Where the issue plainly contradicted them, he still might not allow himself to be nonplussed, and would only have to give them a different interpretation.

Dolcino had determined to await the final crisis in Dalmatia, where he had founded a small community; but by the invitation of a wealthy landholder of his native country, Milano Sola, in the Valley of Sessia, near Campertolio, in the Province of Novara, he was induced, in the year 1304, to take refuge in that place, and from thence he extended his sect amongst men and women. Numbers flocked to him from all quarters. The attempts to waylay him led him to flee for security, with a band of adherents, amounting to two thousand men and women, to an inaccessible

<sup>1</sup> Gerardum inceptorẽ iustius vitæ novissimæ reformatæ, et rectorem alium, scilicet seipsum, a Deo missum super congregationem prædictam cum intelligentia ad aperientes prophetias.

<sup>2</sup> Usque ad tempus præfinitum, in quo ipse et sui publice apparebunt et publice prædicabunt, omnibus suis adversariis exterminatis.

<sup>3</sup> From the first two extracts in the *Additamentis ad historiam Dolcini*.

mountain. But here, though safe from other enemies, they were exposed to perish by famine. As none would willingly supply them with the means of subsistence, they took the liberty to obtain it by force from the surrounding country. The Apostolicals, who accused the dominant church of apostasy from the doctrine of Christ on account of the persecutions which they practised, who condemned all shedding of blood as unchristian, and were for committing everything to the judgment of God, were forced by necessity to depart from their own principles. Dolcino once more let down his theory to the exigencies of practice. The Apostolicals looked upon their relation to the adherents of the dominant church as one of open war. The end of self-preservation must again sanction the means. In the year 1305, a crusade was proclaimed against Dolcino. With consummate skill he directed for two years the measures of defence against a superior force, and was able to inspire his friends with an enthusiastic courage, which surmounted every difficulty till the year 1307, when the remnant of the famished Apostolicals, after fighting with desperate bravery, surrendered to the superior force of their enemies.<sup>1</sup> One of the captives was Dolcino, who, under the most cruel tortures which fanaticism and a thirst for vengeance could devise, manifested a steady calmness, which filled even his enemies with astonishment, though we can hardly doubt that it was rather the stoicism of the intoxicated enthusiast, than the calm submission of the sober, genuinely Christian martyr, with his eye fixed in the full consciousness of human weakness on the image of his suffering Master.

In Dolcino, we see the climax of that ascetical view of Christian charity,<sup>2</sup> according to which it should manifest itself, not in

<sup>1</sup> It is foreign from our purpose to enter farther into the account of this remarkable war. We refer on this point to the more full investigation and description in the above-mentioned work of Krone.

<sup>2</sup> Krone (p. 35), following the documents published by Baggiolini, gives a peculiar account of Dolcino's doctrines, according to which they would resemble those of the later Beghards. But we must have these documents before us, in order to form any decided judgment with regard to their credibility. We do not venture, therefore, as yet to follow this new view of the matter, but hold to the documents made known to us by Muratori, which, to be sure, do not contain a full representation of the doctrines of Dolcino, and indeed presuppose a great deal that is wanting. It is very true, the Spanish author, Alvarus Pelagius, who began to write his work, *De planctu ecclesiae*, at Avignon, when Papal poenitentiary, A.D. 1330. says lib. ii., f. 172, ed. 1517: *Caput istius sectae*

the appropriation of all earthly means for the advancement of God's kingdom, but in the renunciation of every earthly advantage; not in the conciliation and subordination of the inequalities of condition flowing out of human relations, and necessary to the various development of man's nature, but in the total abnegation of those differences. In opposition to the worldliness of the church, he proposed an entire estrangement from the world by a fraternal association of love, in which all should be united together under a voluntary bond, independent of constraint and law, and with the repudiation of all property and all inequalities of condition. Connected with this view of love in the form of entire estrangement from the world, was his view of marriage, which he would have separated from all sensuous affections, substituting a purely spiritual fellowship between husband and wife in the place of marriage, reviving the ascetical fanaticism of the *Syneisactae*. Such was the spiritual union in which he lived himself with the sister Margaret, whom, in the introduction to his letters, he called "the beloved above all others," (*prae caeteris sibi dilectissima*.) It was the most dangerous error in this fanatical drift. Sense thus despised, under the false persuasion of a superiority of the spirit over the flesh, would easily find occasions to manifest itself, and in a worse way than before. This principle was to be carried to the point, that all mankind should come to live together in perfect innocence as brothers and sisters, and this fellowship of love, renouncing every earthly feeling, was to form the transition-point to the end of all things and the fulfilment of the kingdom of Christ.

Dolcino distinguished four stages and divisions in the progress of the kingdom of God on the earth. First, the stage of the Old Testament, where, as all depended on the multiplication of the human race, everything was arranged with reference to this end. As at this stage corruption spread wider and wider, Christ with the apostles and their successors appeared, to heal the infirmities incident to the earlier condition. Humility, patience, poverty, chastity, were opposed to the corruption of the preceding stage.

*spiritus libertatis istis temporibus fuit Dulchinus Lombardus qui fuit combustus cum quadam sua meretrice in Lombardia prope Vercellensem civitatem; but even he does not sufficiently distinguish the different kinds of Apostolicals, Beghards, and brothers of the free spirit.*

The unmarried life was now preferred before marriage, the renunciation of all possessions to the possession of earthly goods. This second stage lasted till the time of Constantine or Pope Silvester, and the later generations gradually departed from the perfection of the preceding ones, till the third period appeared, when the multitudes of the heathen were converted in increasing numbers to Christianity. To train them by degrees for Christianity, and to show them how the things of earth should be used in the love of God and our neighbour, the church had now to assume earthly possessions and riches. She must make use of secular power, and rule in order to educate and guide the rude people. Hence, then, a departure was required from the original condition of apostolical poverty.<sup>1</sup> But when men grew cold in the love of God and their neighbours, when they departed from the example of Silvester and from the right use of earthly goods, the stricter rule of Benedict appeared as a reaction.<sup>2</sup> For a time, virtuous ecclesiastics and monks were to be found side by side; both forms of living were good, each in its place; save that in the case of the ecclesiastics, or the majority of them, the goodness went on diminishing, while in the case of the monks it went on increasing; the clerical life gradually lost its influence, and monachism continually gained the preponderance.<sup>3</sup> But when, again, both ecclesiastics and monks had almost entirely lost the love of God and their neighbours, and departed from their primitive mode of life, then, as a reaction against this state of things, came the renunciation of all earthly possessions and of all temporal lordship, in the rules of Francis and Dominick.<sup>4</sup> Still, even this reformation did not afford an adequate

<sup>1</sup> Dum sic convertebantur et non refrigerabantur in amore Dei et proximi, melius fuit sancto Silvestro papae et aliis successoribus suis possessiones terrenas et divitias suscipere et habere, quam paupertas apostolica et melius fuit regere populum, quam non regere, ad tenendum ipsum sic et conservandum.

<sup>2</sup> Quando incoeperunt populi refrigerari a caritate Dei et proximi et declinare a modo vivendi sancti Silvestri, tunc melior fuit modus vivendi beati Benedicti, quam aliquis alius, quia in terrenis fuit strictior et a temporali dominio magis separatus.

<sup>3</sup> Et tamen ita bonus erat tunc modus bonorum clericorum, qui tunc erant, sicut monachorum, nisi quod modus clericorum bonorum secundum majorem partem numerorum erat in diminuendo et monachorum erat in multiplicando.

<sup>4</sup> Quando clerici et monachi quasi ex toto a caritate Dei et proximi refrigerati fuerant et declinaverunt a priori statu suo, tunc melior fuit modus vivendi sancti Francisci et sancti Dominici et magis strictus in possidendo res terrenas et in dominio temporali magis quam modus vivendi beati Benedicti et monachorum.

counterpoise to the extensive spread of corruption among the monks and ecclesiastics. All prelates, ecclesiastics, and monks waxed colder and colder in the love of God and of their neighbours, departed farther and farther from the way of life among their predecessors. For the purpose then of checking this tide of corruption, the life of the Apostolical brethren was instituted, by a divine call; and this is the fourth and last stage of the Christian life, which is to continue till the final judgment; the last defence against the encroaching torrent of worldliness. In like manner, Dolcino marked out the different periods of the church. The first, when the church was a holy and humble one; the second, from Silvester and onwards, when the church was honoured and rich, but still persevered, however, in righteousness; the third, as she now is, rich and honoured, but at the same time apostate from God, full of avarice, luxury, and pride;<sup>1</sup> the fourth corresponds to the first, as being the restoration of the Apostolical perfection.

The mode of life among the Apostolical brethren differs from that of the mendicant orders of monks in two respects. First, the latter have monasteries, to which they carry what they have gained by begging. The Apostolical brethren have no houses, and take nothing with them, hoard nothing up; they live from hand to mouth, on the pittance bestowed on them at the moment by the charity of the pious.<sup>2</sup> Secondly, the Apostolicals, in distinction from the other orders of monks, do not bind themselves to their mode of life by any outward and formal vows;<sup>3</sup> they are

<sup>1</sup> Tertius status fuit et est modo dives, avarus, fornicarius, honorabilis et superbus. The word fornicarius may be understood in the proper or the improper apocalyptic sense. Here very probably in the latter, as Dolcino really taught (see Muratori, f. 456): *ecclesia Romana est illa meretrix, quae a fide Christi apostavit*, and the Apostolical Peter de Lugio styled the corrupt church Babylon, and the great whore of the Apocalypse. In the protocol published by Philip of Limborch, l. c., f. 861.

<sup>2</sup> Nos nec domos habemus nec etiam mendicata portare debemus, says Dolcino. The Apostolical Peter de Lugio, from Spain, Petrus Lucensis, distinguished the perfect and imperfect poverty: the perfecta paupertas, quam tenuerunt Apostoli et omnes illi, qui sequuntur et imitantur eos, videlicet nihil habere, nec in proprio nec in communi. Item est paupertas imperfecta, sicut est religiosorum viventium secundum regulam sancti Augustini et sancti Benedicti, qui habent possessiones et divitias in communi et tales religiosi non sunt perfecti in paupertate, quia habent domos ad manendum et in communi necessaria ad comedendum et bibendum. See the Inquisitional sentence-book of Philip of Limborch, f. 360.

<sup>3</sup> One of the principles of Dolcino in Muratori (l. ix., f. 457): *Quod perfectior vita est vivere sine voto, quam cum voto.*

not bound by any outward rule of obedience to a particular class of superiors, but, with them, all the members are held together by the free spirit of love ; no other bond exists but the inner one of the Holy Spirit. Thus Dolcino set up against the legal condition, that of gospel liberty. Though the Apostolicals recognized men called of God as the founders and guides of their society, yet they were not subject to them by an outward vow of obedience. The monkish virtue of obedience must wholly cease, according to the principles of the Apostolicals, who admitted no form of obedience whatever, but that of free obedience to God. Dolcino, in his letters to the different communities of the Apostolicals, describes them as brethren mutually subordinate and bound to each other, by ties of affection without the bond of outward obedience.<sup>1</sup> As Dolcino uniformly opposed the inward power and desecularization of religion, to its externalization and conformity to the world, in the corrupt church, so he undervalued the importance attached to consecrated places of worship. "A church," he is reported to have said, "is no better for prayer to God, than a stable or a sty."<sup>2</sup> Christ may be worshipped as well or even better in groves than in churches." It is clear that the above principle and tendency must have led him to depart in a great many other ways from the church doctrine, than his unsettled life and prevailing practical bent allowed him liberty to express with consciousness ; unless it be the fault of the records which we follow, that we have but a very imperfect knowledge of Dolcino's principles in their logical coherence.

Dolcino taught, again, that the church of Rome, by reason of her apostasy and of the prevailing vices among ecclesiastics and monks, had lost all the authority conferred on her in the person of the apostle Peter. This was transferred to the community which restored the Apostolical life, and was to be a refuge for all truly Christian people. The Apostolical Peter of Lugio, made a distinction betwixt the spiritual and the carnal church (*ecclesia spiritualis et carnalis*). The former consists of those who live in perfect poverty and humility, and in spiritual obedience to God ; but the second, of those who live in fleshly lusts, riches,

<sup>1</sup> Omnes invicem sine vinculo exterioris obedientiae, sed interioris tantum subjecti et uniti.

<sup>2</sup> Muratori, t. ix., f. 467.

and honour, in the pomp and glory of the world, like the prelates of the church of Rome.

If the representation given by opponents of Dolcino's doctrine is correct, he announced that after the corrupt church had been deprived of her wealth by some king whom God would choose as the instrument of the judgments to be brought upon her, and reduced back to apostolical poverty, the Roman pope and the incorrigible prelates were to be slain, and a new holy pope, the worthy successor of Peter, to be chosen by God himself, and this was to be Dolcino, should he be then living.<sup>1</sup> Unquestionably, it follows from the supposition that the Apostolical brethren represent the restored apostolical church, to which is transferred all the plenitude of the Holy Ghost that distinguished the apostolic age, to which passes over the entire authority bestowed on Peter; from this supposition it unquestionably follows that their divinely commissioned leader must hold the first place; that, namely, which was before occupied by the pope, yet with the modification growing out of the nature of *free* obedience, of the brotherly community, the universal outpouring of the Holy Spirit.

It is manifest from Dolcino's doctrine as thus set forth, that Joachim's idea of the period of the Holy Ghost harmonizes with it; though none of the older contemporary sources ascribe to him this idea.<sup>2</sup> According to Dolcino's doctrine, also, the last period might be called a time of the Holy Ghost, inasmuch as the distinguishing characteristic of this period was to be the free inspiration by the Holy Spirit, in the Apostolical brethren and

<sup>1</sup> The latter is stated, however, only in the *Historia Dolcini* in Muratori. According to the *Additamentis*, which are more accurate in their representation of Dolcino's doctrine, Dolcino distinguishes himself from this pope; and the supposition that he declared himself to be this pope, may have been nothing more than a false conclusion of his enemies.

<sup>2</sup> Notices of heretics of a later time in the French language, which are to be found in the libraries of Avignon and Marseilles, attribute to Dolcino that whole doctrine about the three ages, or periods. But these surely are no credible sources of information, since we find Dolcino confounded in them with the Fratricelli of the fourteenth century. I am indebted for this account to the kind communications of M. G. Heine of this city, one of my dear young theologians, who has for some years consecrated his means and talents to literary investigations, particularly in the libraries of Spain, from which a rich harvest may be expected in due time. The same friend has also sent me a *Historia Dolcini* transcribed by him, which, however, is not different from the one already published by Muratori.



sisters, of a life no longer depending, as before, on outward means and ordinances, but purely producing itself from within outwards.

We may also mention as a thing deserving notice, that the great poet, Dante, a contemporary, compares Dolcino with Mohammed. He composed his work after Dolcino's death; but he transports himself back to the time when the heresiarch was besieged in those inaccessible mountains covered with snow and ice, where starvation appeared the only method of forcing him to submission. He represents Mohammed therefore as telling Dante, that he might warn brother Dolcino to look out and provide himself well with the means of subsistence; for otherwise he would soon be compelled to yield, and come down to Mohammed in hell.<sup>1</sup> The question is, what led Dante to bring these two personages together? No doubt, because he looked upon him as a false prophet, determined to assert his pretended divine mission with the sword, and had heard of the doctrine of a community of wives, which was imputed to Dolcino by his opponents, and the like. But a certain truth lies at bottom of this comparison, different as these individuals were in other respects. In both, we find a true element of religious enthusiasm, though perverted by the intermingling of natural feelings not controlled, and an imagination not held in curb by the divine life. Both had a partial view of truth in one of its aspects, as opposed to prevailing errors. In the case of Mohammed, enthusiasm for the faith in one Almighty God stood abruptly opposed to polytheism; in the case of Dolcino, enthusiasm for a religious community, estranged from the world, stood abruptly opposed to a worldly church. Both meant, at first, to labour simply as prophets, simply by the word; but afterwards fell into the mistake of appealing to the sword in the defence of truth. In the case of Mohammed, success hurried him on to further steps; in that of Dolcino, it was necessity. Yet in Mohammed, this course of

<sup>1</sup> The words in the 28th canto of the *Inferno*, v. 55.

Or di a Fra Dolcin dunque, che s' armi.  
 Tu che forse vedrai il sole in breve,  
 S' egli non vuol qui tosto seguarmi  
 Si di vivanda, che stretta di neve  
 Non rechi la vittoria al Noarase,  
 Ch' altrimenti acquistar non saria lieve.

proceeding was certainly grounded in his whole religious mode of thinking, which was an incarnation of Judaism. In Dolcino, it was adopted, in contradiction to the principles originally laid down by him. Yet, as he was bent on realizing at once, in the form of an outward community, overlooking, with enthusiastic love, the great gulf betwixt his purpose and its accomplishment, an idea which Christianity would realize by moral spirit and temper in the very process of that historical development which proceeds in conformity with nature, so by this externalization and secularization of a thing that was only to be seized ideally and spiritually, he was hurried along farther and farther in the same course of secular action.

Ideas which have once acquired in a period a certain domination, are wont to lay hold of manifestations proceeding from some entirely different quarter, merely furnishing them a point of attachment; and to stamp their signature upon fanatical tendencies, which happen to meet and mingle with them, assuming in the same some strange, fantastic shape. Thus we may instance, as illustrating the power which the idea of the age of the Holy Ghost exerted on the minds of men in the thirteenth century, a sect otherwise unimportant, which sprung up in the last times of this century in Milan.

In the year 1281, a rich widow of noble rank, died in Milan, Wilhelma, or Wilhelmina, said to have been a Bohemian princess. Having spent in that city the last twenty or thirty years of her life, she secured the love and respect of many by her piety, and especially by her active charities. A circle of men and women, who had placed themselves under her guidance, and were advised and helped by her in their necessities, had become strongly attached to her. She was revered as a saint, insomuch that the sick applied to her for healing. Already in her lifetime she began to be made an object of extravagant, fanatical veneration; though such demonstrations were never sanctioned by herself, but repelled with abhorrence: but this veneration was not to be suppressed in that way; on the contrary, it increased so much the more after her death.

A citizen of Milan, Andrew Saramita, who seems to have united in himself the characters of impostor and fanatic, undertook to work upon this feeling. The body of Wilhelmina, which

had been already buried, was disinterred. Having first been bathed in water and wine, it was enwrapped in costly purple robes, fringed with silver and gold. To the water in which the body had been washed, the bewildered enthusiasts ascribed a miraculous virtue; over the recent grave of Wilhelmina they erected a magnificent altar, and pilgrims flocked in great numbers to the spot. It was not enough to honour Wilhelmina as a saint. The veneration exceeded all bounds; the spirit of dissatisfaction and opposition with the dominant church was doubtless connected with it. In Wilhelmina, it was pretended, the Holy Spirit had become incarnate. After the worship of the incarnation of the Divine Word in Christ, was to follow the worship of the Holy Spirit incarnate in Wilhelmina. A new age of the Holy Ghost was to begin. The ancient hierarchy, at whose head stood the vicar of Christ, was to cease; a new female hierarchy, corresponding to the incarnation of the Holy Spirit in a woman, at whose head stood a vicar of Wilhelmina, as the incarnate Holy Spirit, was to take its place. For the present, this place was filled by the nun Mayfreda of Tirovano. In the year 1300 this sect was put down by force, and those who stood at the head of it perished at the stake.<sup>1</sup>

Since then, as appears evident from the facts above presented, the church had now to engage in a violent contest with tendencies of spirit, struggling in opposition to her, continually multiplying and continually spreading,—a contest such as had never occurred before,—she must be driven (in case she would concede nothing to religious needs manifesting themselves with such power, but was determined to maintain her position against all opposition) to employ every means at her command for the purpose of suppressing an insurrection which could not be put down by spiritual might alone. Those principles of ecclesiastical law, on the ground of which all violent measures against heresies could be justified, had, indeed, long since been shaped out on the foundation laid by Augustin; and the systematic theologians of the thirteenth century needed, in the present case, only to build further on the same foundation. But the bishops were too busily occupied with

<sup>1</sup> See the extracts from the trial preserved in the Ambrosian library in the literary tour to Italy, of the Bohemian historiographer, Franz Palacky. Prague, 1838, p. 72, and on.

other concerns to ferret out, in all quarters, the sects which, with so much zeal and so much prudence, sought to spread themselves in the communities; and in many districts where the anti-churchly spirit had already become too powerful, they were no longer regarded in the communities with the requisite respect. This was especially the case in South France, in Languedoc, in the territory of the counts of Toulouse; districts where also at a later period Protestantism gained a wide spread, and sought to maintain itself in a sanguinary struggle,—where the opponents of the dominant church found protection from mighty lords, and the localities of a mountainous region afforded them safe retreats. The clergy, and the church service had here, ever since the last times of the twelfth century, been treated with contempt and ridicule. A characteristic proof of this was the colloquial phrase used in these districts to express a supreme feeling of disgust: "I would rather be a chaplain than that." By mere chance, the sects scattered in South France<sup>1</sup> received the common name of Albigenes from one of the districts, where the agents of the church who came to combat them, found them mostly to abound,<sup>2</sup> —the district around the town of Alba, or Alby; and by this common name they were known from the commencement of the thirteenth century.<sup>3</sup> Under this general denomination parties of

1 The man who during the crusades against the Albigenes wrote in verse in the Provençal language the history of this war, published by Fauriel, in the *Collection des documents inédits sur l'histoire de France*, Paris, 1837, says, that the sects were thickly spread throughout the whole province of Alby, Carcassone, Laurac, in a great part of the province of Beziers as far as Bourdeaux: — — — *la eretgia* [*Era tant fort montela cui domini Dieus maldia*] *Que trastotz Albege* (absolutely all,—the appended adverb *tras* gives a superlative signification to the adjective *tous*), *avia en sa bailla* [Carcasses, Lauragues, tot la major partia] *De Beziers tro a Bordel si col camí tenia* (as far as the way goes), *A motz de lor crezens e de lor companhia* (many of their faith and of their party). In the above-mentioned poem, v. 30, et seq.

2 In the *Histoire générale de Languedoc*, published by the Maurins, an important work in reference to the history of these struggles (t. iii., A. D. 1737), it is asserted, in connection with that inquiry concerning the origin of the name Albigeois, which first threw more light on this subject (note xiii., f. 553), that the heretics were by no means particularly spread over this district, and that it was not this which had occasioned the more general use of that name; but the above-cited words of the Provençal poet prove the contrary.

3 The words in the dedication, addressed to the pope, in the so often cited Chronicle of the monk Peter of Vaux-Sernai: *Unde sciunt, qui lecturi sunt, quia in pluribus hujus operis locis Tolosani et aliarum civitatum et castrorum haeretici et defensores eorum generaliter Albigenes vocantur, eo quod aliae nationes haereticos Provinciales Albigenes consueverint appellare.*

different tenets were comprehended together, but the Catharists seem to have constituted a predominant element among the people thus designated. Innocent the Third, a pope accustomed to act in all cases with vigour, well understood that extraordinary measures were needed to suppress the heretical tendencies so rapidly advancing, which threatened wholly to sever the connection betwixt these districts and the church of Rome. As the bishops, who were here even looked upon with contempt, had shown themselves too weak or too inactive, he chose for his instruments the monks,—an order in which the most faithful, zealous, and active organs of the hierarchy were ever to be found, and in whose hands was already placed an exorbitant power independent of the bishops,—the germ of the future inquisitions. At the very commencement of his papal reign, in 1198, he sent to South France two Cistercians, Rainer and Guido, whom he recommended to the bishops and magistrates of those districts, calling upon them to sustain them in their labours in all possible ways. These monks, on whom the pope conferred unlimited powers to proceed against the heretics, were to endeavour to convince them, by argument, of their errors, and if they did not succeed in this way, to pronounce the ban upon them. The nobles and magistrates should then expel the obstinate from the country, having first confiscated their goods; and if they ventured to come back again, they were to be visited with still severer punishments. The same punishments were suspended over all who dared to harbour the heretics as over the heretics themselves. These papal delegates were authorized to employ ban and interdict for the purpose of enforcing obedience to the appointed measures. But to those who, in the case of so great a danger threatening the church, contended against the heretics with fidelity and devotion, employing the power of the sword bestowed on them by God for the preservation of the faith, the pope promised the same indulgence which was granted to pilgrims to the tomb of St Peter, or to St Jago di Compostella. It is curious to observe the strange medley, not uncommon, indeed, nor new to this age, of juridical, ethical, and religious ideas in the way in which the pope proceeds to justify the severity of these measures for suppressing the heretics, when he says that these sects sought to rob men, not of their earthly goods, but of the spiritual life; for he who deprives a man of

faith, robs him of his life, since the just man lives by his faith.<sup>1</sup> But we have seen on a former page<sup>2</sup> how bishop Diego of Osmá, in Spain, and Dominick, joined themselves to these men, and endeavoured to introduce a more spiritual mode of dealing with the heretics. Several colloquies were held on the disputed points with the leading men of the heretical communities. But it was impossible that these transactions, where the two parties proceeded on such opposite principles, should lead to any favourable result; and then, the heretics were found fault with because they would not so easily allow themselves to be converted. In a religious conference of this sort, which was held in 1207, at Montreal, near Carcassone, betwixt the above-mentioned Spanish bishop, Dominick, and a pastor of the so-called Albigenses, Arnold Hot,<sup>3</sup> the latter defended the three following theses: That the church of Rome is not the bride of Christ, not the holy church, but the Babylon of the Apocalypse, drunk with the blood of saints and martyrs; that her doctrine is a doctrine of Satan, her constitution not a holy one, founded by Christ; that the mass, in the way in which it was at present celebrated, did not originate from Christ and the apostles. But as nothing could be effected by sermons<sup>4</sup> and disputation, and it was believed that nothing could be found in the heretics but incorrigible obstinacy in their rebellion against the church, it was deemed necessary to resort to more compulsory measures. The assassination of one of the papal delegates, added afterwards to the first, the monk Peter of Castel-

<sup>1</sup> Nec volumus ipsos aegre ferre aliquatenus, si eos ad id exequendum tam districto compelli præcipimus, eum ad nil amplius intendamus, uti severitatis iudicio, quam ad extirpandos hæreticos, qui non nobis substantiam temporalem, sed spirituales vitam surripere moliantur; nam qui fidem adimit, vitam furatur, justus enim ex fide vivit. See the letter of Innocent to the archbishop of Aix (Aquis), and the bishops of his diocese, lib. i., ep. 83.

<sup>2</sup> See vol. vii., p. 361.

<sup>3</sup> The protocol of this religious conference was composed in the Catalanian tongue. An extract from it was first published by Nicole Vignier in his *Histoire de l'Eglise*, and from this book, which has not fallen under my eye, archbishop Usher has transcribed it in his work: *De christianarum ecclesiarum in occidentis præsertim partibus ab apostolicis temporibus ad nostram usque ætatem continua successione et statu*, f. 157, Londini, 1687.

<sup>4</sup> The above-mentioned Provençal poet, who has given the history of the war with the Albigenses, says, sermons were, to the heretics, not worth a rotten apple. No prezan lo prezo (the preaching) una poma porria. See l. c. v. 52.

nau (*Pierre de Château neuf, Petrus a Castro novo*), in 1208,, which the pope attributed to Count Raimund of Toulouse, whom he had excommunicated, though he was afterwards compelled to acknowledge the groundlessness of this accusation ;—this melancholy event furnished the signal for a thirty years' bloody war, in which the worst outrages of fanaticism and cupidity were practised against the inhabitants of these districts,<sup>2</sup>—the famous crusade against the Albigenses. The principle that every heretic, or protector of heretics, should lose his land, and that this should fall into the hands of others, furnished an encouragement and pretext for every species of cupidity. The pope himself was compelled to see worldly interests and motives giving direction to the movement he had excited, and could no longer control.<sup>3</sup> A remark worthy of notice was uttered by a certain count Roger de Foix. During the negotiations for peace, in the year 1228, he declared the pope had no business to meddle in the concerns of his religion ; for that was a matter in which each man must enjoy his liberty : " This liberty," he said, " his father had always recommended to him ; assuring him that, with it, and a mind resolved to maintain it, he might look on calmly though the very vault of heaven gave way and broke over his head ; for he had nothing to fear."<sup>4</sup> After the land had been laid waste for thirty years, the blood of thousands had been spilt, and a general submission had thus, in the year 1229, been finally brought about by

<sup>1</sup> Pope Innocent the Third says (lib. xi. ep. 26) that, when dying, he prayed God to forgive his murderers. Also the above-mentioned Provençal poet, stating that one of the equerries of the Count of Toulouse had murdered Peter of Castelnau, says that the latter, in the presence of all, prayed God to forgive that person his sin.

El preguet domni deu vèzent tota la jant,  
Quels perdo sos peccatz a cel felo sarjant.

See v. 90.

<sup>2</sup> The above Provençal poet reports that the besiegers of the town of Chasseneuil, when they saw themselves compelled to raise the siege, first condemned many heretics to the stake, and cast many beautiful heretic females into the flames, who, though urgently importuned, would not consent to be converted.

E cels est jutgero mot eretge arder  
E mota bela eretga ins en lo foc giter,  
Car convertir non volon tan nols podon prier.

See v. 322.

<sup>3</sup> See a letter of Innocent the Third to his legates, in which he declares against the unjust proceeding of the count of Toulouse. Lib. xv., ep. 102.

<sup>4</sup> See Paul Perrin, *Histoire des Albigeois*, Genève, 1568, p. 141, from a manuscript account of the life of this count.

force, the maintenance of the faith was still by no means secured for the future. The sects destroyed by fire and sword sprung up afresh out of the same needs of the spirit, from which they had sprung up at the beginning. It required the unceasing vigilance of spiritual despotism to prevent the renewal of those anti-churchly tendencies.

At a council of Toulouse, held in 1229, it was ordered, after the precedent of measures appointed already at the Lateran council, c. iii., in 1215, that a permanent Inquisition should be established against the heretics. 1. The bishops were to appoint in all the communities, in city and country, a priest, and with him two or three, or if necessary several laymen, of good standing and character, and bind them by oath, carefully and faithfully to ferret out the heretics, to search suspected houses, subterranean chambers, and other hiding-places, all which should be destroyed; to lodge as speedily as possible with the archbishop, bishop, or the lord or magistrate of the province, an information against detected heretics, their patrons and concealers, after first taking every precautionary measure to prevent their escape, in order that they might be brought to condign punishment, c. xii. In every commune all males, from the age of fourteen and upward, and females from the age of twelve, should abjure all doctrines in hostility to the church of Rome, also swear that they would preserve the Catholic faith which the church of Rome holds and preaches, and persecute and conscientiously make known all heretics, according to their ability. That this oath might be taken by every individual, the names of all the men and women in each parish should be recorded. And if any person should be absent at the time of the taking of this oath, and did not take it within fourteen days after his return, he should be put down as suspected of heresy. This oath should be renewed once in every two years. Manifold disadvantages should, in civil life, be connected with the fact that a man was even suspected of heresy. But every man was so suspected, whom public rumour accused of that crime.

Though, according to the church constitution up to this time, it belonged to the bishops to administer and direct all such measures, yet, for the reasons already mentioned, the practice was adopted, by pope Gregory the Ninth, in 1232-33, after the ex-



ample set by Innocent the Third, of selecting for this purpose monks who might proceed independently of the bishops, and particularly from that order which had derived its origin from the contests with the heretics, the order of the Dominicans. Thus were formed those tribunals which obtained special jurisdiction over cases of transgression coming within the spiritual province, the *inquisitores hæreticæ pravitatis*. The church hypocritically deprecated the appearance of having anything to do with the shedding of blood, but used the secular power as its executioner, the blind tool of its cruel fanaticism. The convicts, excommunicated by the spiritual tribunal, were handed over to the secular power, which put them to the stake. The arbitrary violence of these tribunals, instituted first in Toulouse and Carcassone, and in Spain, might light also upon such as in any way fell under the suspicion of the zealots for orthodoxy, or of the hierarchy, or against whom their enemies might seek, in the charge of heresy, a means of revenge.

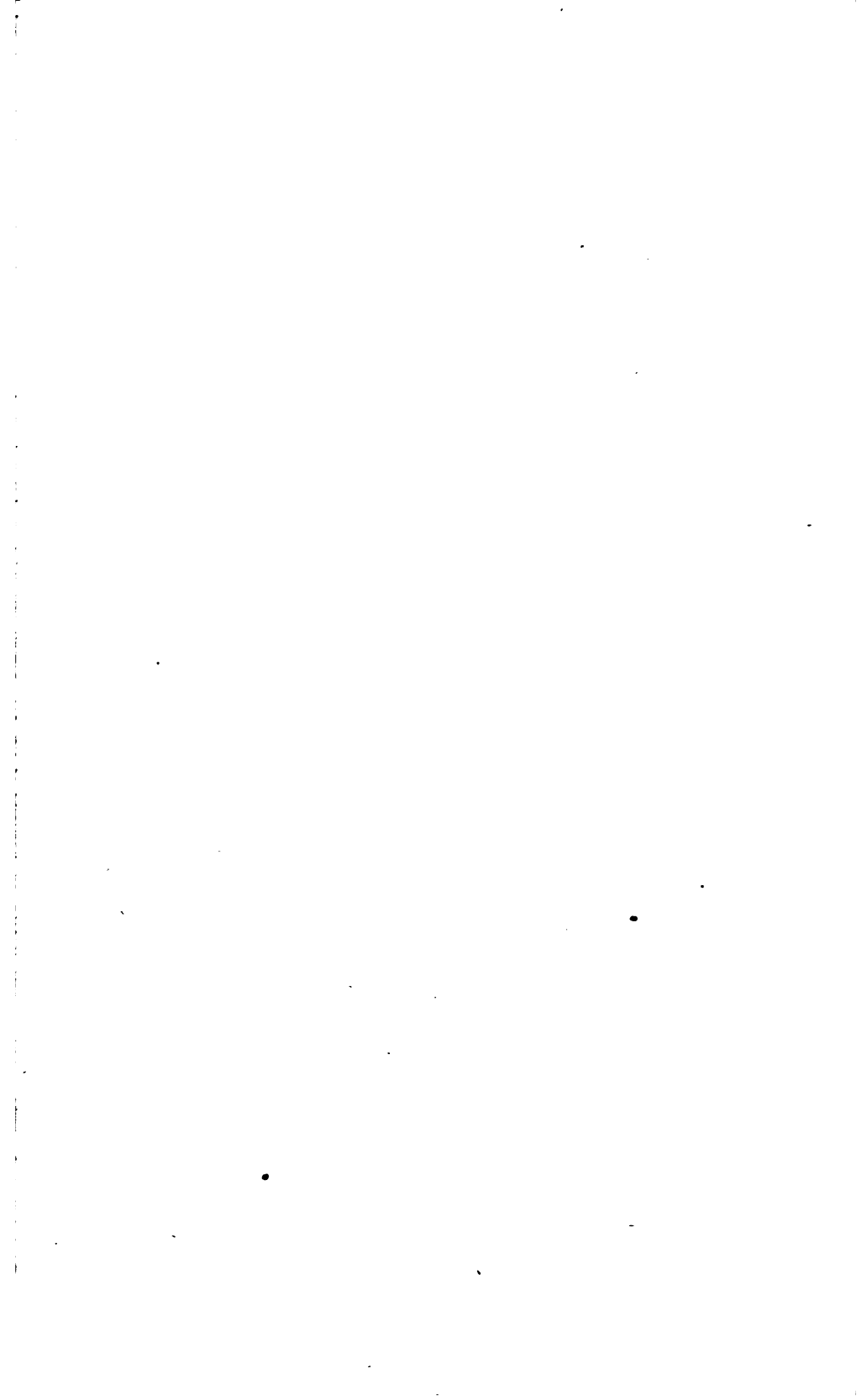
When such a power against heresy first began to be formed, it was the priest Conrad of Marburg who was charged with the execution of it in Germany; a man in whose hands such power must have been especially dangerous, on account of his inexorable severity and his credulity, at a time when, after the year 1230, the sects were uninterruptedly spreading in the countries about the Rhine.<sup>1</sup> Conrad's example showed how ruinous those measures appointed by Innocent the Third and Gregory the Ninth against the heretics and those suspected of heresy might prove, not to the heretics alone, but to persons who in this respect were altogether innocent. No man was safe before the terrific power of Conrad; he exercised it, unscrupulously, against the highest as well as the humblest individuals. A man once accused of heresy, could save his life only by declaring himself guilty, and confirming all that had ever been said by the most extravagant rumours concerning the assemblies of the heretics, and subjecting himself to penance. But he who would not confess, was held to be guilty, and burnt. These accusations were employed as means of revenge.<sup>2</sup> The archbishop of Mentz and the Dominican\*Bernhard held it necessary, afterwards, to draw up a report to the old credulous pope,

<sup>1</sup> See above, p. 428.

<sup>2</sup> See the description in the *Gesta Trevirorum*, i., c. civ., and c. cv., f. 317.

Gregory the Ninth, concerning the arbitrary use which Conrad the priest made of the power entrusted to him, and the disorders thus created in Germany.<sup>1</sup> His credulous fanaticism also brought war and devastation over another district of Germany. That branch of Frieslanders which dwelt in the territory of Oldenburg, the Stedingers, had been involved, by their inflexible love of liberty, in violent contests with the nobles and with the clergy, the archbishop of Bremen in particular. The rebellion against the hierarchy arose here, not from a religious but from a political element. But this furnished occasion for drawing the matter within the religious province. Conrad of Marburg could believe the most extravagant things of the Stedingers, and make them believed by the pope. After the crusade against the Albigenes followed that against the Stedingers: the pope surrendered the poor people victims to their enemies; but when, after their subjection, the church became reconciled with them, the accusation of heresy which had been brought against them—the groundlessness of which must probably have been well known—was no longer mentioned. Conrad of Marburg at length fell himself a victim to his own ferocity; the vengeance of a mighty lord, whom he had without cause stigmatized as an heretic, overtook him, and he was murdered in 1233. These unfortunate events had however a beneficial effect, in that they operated as a warning and terrifying example for Germany, which kept the tribunal of the Inquisition at a distance from that country.

<sup>1</sup> See Extracts therefrom in the *Chronicon of Alberic*, A. D. 1233, in the *Accessiones historicae* of Leibnitz, t. ii., p. 543.



## GENERAL INDEX

TO

VOLS. VII. &amp; VIII.

- Abelard, vii. 327, 346; viii. 74, 80, 106, 109, 213, 217, 224, 230, 236, 271, 282, 318  
 Absalom, bishop of Roskilde, vii. 49  
 Adalbert, companion of Otto of Bamberg, vii. 22  
 Adalbert, bishop of Bremen, vii. 45  
 Adalbert, archbishop of Prague, vii. 55  
 Adalbert, bishop of Würzburg, vii. 143  
 Ademar, bishop of Puy, vii. 168  
 Adiaphora, viii. 129, 314  
 Adolph, Duke of Holstein, vii. 46  
 Adrian the Fourth, vii. 216, 224.  
 Aegidius of Assisi, viii. 26  
 Alanus Magnus, viii. 168, 228  
 Alberic of Cîteaux, vii. 338  
 Alberic of Ostia, viii. 420  
 Albert, patriarch of Jerusalem, vii. 358  
 Albertus Magnus, vii. 385; viii. 72, 173, 184, 211, 230, 239, 249, 305  
 Alby, viii. 420, 469  
 Albigenes, vii. 363; viii. 376  
 Albin, companion of Otto of Bamberg, vii. 27  
 Albrecht (Albert) the bear, vii. 29  
 Albrecht (Albert) of Alpeidern vii. 61  
 Aleth, Bernard's mother, vii. 339  
 Alexander the Second, pope, vii. 142  
 Alexander the Third, pope, vii. 225, 261, 278, 287  
 Alexander the Fourth, pope, vii. 252, 280, 174  
 Alexander of Hales, viii. 173, 182, 204, 230, 239, 248, 265, 269, 299, 306  
 Alexander, the theologian, vii. 231  
 Alexiopolis, viii. 868  
 Alexius the Second, Greek emperor, viii. 322  
 Almaric of Bene, viii. 207, 254  
 Altmann, bishop of Passau, vii. 150  
 Ambrose of Milan, vii. 148  
 Ambrose of Siena, viii. 4  
 Anabasis of Isaiah, viii. 378  
 Anacleta the Second, pope, vii. 193, 196  
 Andrew, archbishop of Lund, vii. 62  
 Andronicus, Greek emperor, viii. 346  
 Anselm, of Canterbury, vii. 318; viii. 60, 93, 200, 217, 222, 246, 261, 271, 278, 296, 301, 330  
 Anselm of Havelberg, viii. 330  
 Anselm of Laon, viii. 110  
 Angers, count, vii. 121  
 Antichrist, viii. 423, 436  
 Antioch, school at, viii. 291  
 Anthony, fire of St., vii. 358  
 Anthony of Padua, vii. 392  
 Appeals, vii. 268  
 Apostolicals, viii. 14, 421, 451  
 Archdeacons, vii. 284  
 Aristotle, viii. 136, 169, 171, 211, 264 307, 372  
 Arnold, companion of John of Monte Corvino, vii. 77  
 Arnold of Brescia, vii. 198, 218, 242, 279; viii. 142  
 Arnold Hot, Waldensian, viii. 471  
 Arsenus, patriarch of Constantinople, viii. 389  
 Arsenians, vii. 348  
 Ascellin, monk, vii. 66  
 Asia, conversion of, vii. 61  
 Auditores, viii. 389  
 Augustin, viii. 114, 131, 158, 182, 191, 222, 246, 277, 280, 270, 271, 275, 277, 296, 301  
 Averrhoes, viii. 181, 187, 212  
 Aybert, vii. 320  
 Bartholomew, Catharist pope, viii. 403  
 Basilus, Bogomile, viii. 361  
 Beatrice, margravine, vii. 122  
 Bec, monastery of, viii. 94  
 Becket, Thomas à, vii. 227  
 Beghardi, vii. 386; viii. 15  
 Beguines, Beguttæ, vii. 395  
 Beccus, Johannes, viii. 341  
 Belgrade, city in Pommerania, vii. 22  
 Berengar, vii. 346; viii. 61  
 Bernard, priest, viii. 211  
 Bernard of Clairvaux, vii. 98, 183, 201, 204, 206, 261, 266, 291, 339; viii. 58, 106, 127, 137, 157, 284, 293, 302, 420  
 Bernard's mother, vii. 314  
 Bernard, Dominican, viii. 420  
 Bernard, converter of Pommerania, vii. 2  
 Bernard of Tiron, vii. 217; viii. 21, 27  
 Bernard of Ydres, viii. 426  
 Bertha, vii. 163  
 Berthold of Calabria, vii. 368  
 Berthold, Franciscan, preacher of repentance, vii. 375; viii. 35, 81  
 Berthold, bishop of Lieland, vii. 50

- Berthrade, vii. 163  
 Besançon, diet at, vii. 220  
 Bible, reading of the, viii. 39  
 Bible, versions of the, viii. 39  
 Bible, meetings, viii. 40  
 Bishops, vii. 268, 286  
     — in partibus infidelium, suffra-  
     ganei, vii. 289  
 Blanche, mother of Louis the Ninth, viii. 10  
 Boethius, viii. 88, 90  
 Bogomiles, viii. 351  
 Boleslav, vii. 8, 22  
 Boleslav, vii. 32  
 Bonaventura, vii. 868, 385; viii. 65, 178,  
     184, 234, 267, 291  
 Boni homines, viii. 15  
 Boni valetti, viii. 15  
 Boniface the Eighth, pope, viii. 459  
 Boniface, vii. 269  
 Boniface. See Bruno.  
 Brindisi, crusaders at, vii. 239  
 Bruno (Boniface), vii. 57  
 Bruno, founder of the Carthusians, vii.  
     356  
 Bugri, viii. 369  
 Bulgari, viii. 369  
 Bulls, forged, vii. 275  
 Burdinus, archbishop of Braga, vii. 189  
 Burkhard of Worms, vii. 273  
  
 Caesarius of Helsterbach, vii. 210  
 Calixtus the Second, pope, vii. 192  
 Calixtus the Third, pope, vii. 226  
 Cambalu (Pekin), vii. 77  
 Cammin, city in Pomerania, vii. 11  
 Canute, son of the coconverter of the Wends,  
     Henry, vii. 43  
 Caracorum, chief city of Kerait, vii. 62  
 Carmel, vii. 358  
 Carmelites, vii. 358  
 Carthusians, vii. 356  
 Cassino, monastery, viii. 174  
 Catharists, viii. 368  
 Celestin the Second, pope, vii. 202  
 Celestin the Third, pope, vii. 232  
 Celestin the Fourth, pope, vii. 240  
 Celestin the Fifth, pope, vii. 90, 259, viii.  
     459  
 Celibacy, vii. 126  
 Charles, king of Naples, vii. 259  
 Christian of Oliva, vii. 58  
 Chrysostom, viii. 360  
 Cincius Roman, vii. 144  
 Cistercians, vii. 354  
 Clara of Assisi, vii. 373  
 Clarendon, meeting at, vii. 228  
 Clement the Third, pope, viii. 159; viii.  
     166  
 Clement the Fourth, pope, vii. 389; viii.  
     178  
 Clement the Fifth, pope, vii. 94; viii. 67  
 Clerici conductores, vii. 277  
 Clerici regulares, irregulares, vii. 280  
 Clairvaux, vii. 341  
 Clodona, town in Pomerania, vii. 22  
 Cluniacensians, vii. 354  
 Cluny, order of, vii. 335  
 Colberg, history of its conversion, vii. 22  
 College, literary, under the Commenes,  
     viii. 321  
 Comnenus, Alexius, viii. 361, 368  
 Comnenus, Manuel, vii. 321, 326, 352  
 Comnenus the Second, viii. 330  
 Conception, immaculate, viii. 53  
 Concomitanee, doctrine of, vii. 71  
 Concordat of Worms, vii. 192  
 Conon, legate, viii. 122  
 Conrad, the Third, vii. 203  
 Conrad the Fourth, viii. 430  
 Conrad of Marburg, viii. 474  
 Consolamentum, viii. 377, 383  
 Consolati, viii. 384  
 Constantia, vii. 236  
 Constantine, viii. 423  
 Constantine Chrysomalos, viii. 362  
 Constantine Copronymus, viii. 358  
 Constantinople, western empire at, viii. 333  
 Corpus Christi day, viii. 67  
 Cosmos patriarch, viii. 367  
 Councils and Synods—at Aix la Chapelle,  
     vii. 280. At Autun, an. 1094, vii. 165.  
     At Bari, an. 1049, 1098, viii. 224. At  
     Brizen, vii. 152. At Clermont, vii. 166.  
     At Constantinople, an. 1166, viii. 327;  
     an. 1140, viii. 362. Lateran, an. 1112,  
     vii. 189; an. 1139, vii. 196; an. 1179, vii.  
     227; an. 1215, vii. 268, 278, 285, 360, 363,  
     382, 386; viii. 59, 73, 160, 473. At  
     Lyons, an. 1245, vii. 249; an. 1274, vii.  
     253, viii. 173, 343, 453. At Mentz, vii.  
     159. At Montpellier, an. 1208, vii. 362.  
     At Placensis, an. 1095, vii. 167. At Pisa,  
     vii. 196. At Rheims, an. 1094, vii. 165;  
     an. 1143, vii. 398. At Sens, an. 1140,  
     vii. 138. At Soissons, an. 1093, viii. 92;  
     an. 1121, viii. 121. At Toulouse, an. 1229,  
     viii. 44, 473. At Troyes, an. 1127, vii.  
     347. At Worms, 142  
 Cunibert, bishop of Turin, vii. 132  
 Curland, history of conversion of, vii. 51  
 Cyprus, viii. 334  
  
 Damietta, in Egypt, vii. 80  
 Dante, viii. 466  
 Dantzig, history of conversion of, vii. 55  
 David of Dinanto, viii. 207, 208  
 Decretists, vii. 274  
 Demetrius, legate, viii. 327  
 Demmin, Pomeranian town, vii. 24  
 Dendrites, viii. 320  
 Denis, St., viii. 122  
 Desiderius of Monte Cassino, vii. 162  
 Dictates, pretended, of Gregory the  
     Seventh, vii. 162  
 Didacus, bishop of Oama, vii. 361; viii. 471  
 Diego. See Didacus  
 Dieteric of Verdun, vii. 113, 159  
 Dionysius the Areopagite, viii. 122, 172,  
     206  
 Dodo, Franciscan, vii. 374  
 Dolcino, viii. 465  
 Dominicans, vii. 351  
 Dominicus, vii. 361  
 Donum lachrymarum, viii. 18  
 Dschingiskhan (Temudschin), vii. 65  
 Ducas Vatazes, viii. 387

Durand de Ossa, viii. 482

Eadmer, monk, viii. 100

Ebedjeu, vii. 46

Eberhard, archbishop of Salzburg, mother of, viii. 4.

Ebrard, count of Breteil, vii. 815

Edessa, vii. 205

Elfeg, archbishop of Canterbury, vii. 60

Elias, disciple of St Francis, vii. 370

Elizabeth of Hessa, viii. 13

Elizabeth of Schönan, vii. 292

Episcopi in partibus infidelium, vii. 289

Erie, king of Sweden, vii. 61

Erigena, Scotus, viii. 205

Ermeland, history of conversion of, vii. 61

Ermenberga, viii. 93

Esthland, history of conversion of, vii. 61

Euthites, viii. 351

Eugene the Third, pope, vii. 204, 210, 264, 288, 291; viii. 166, 168, 330, 366, 420

Eustathius, viii. 322, 329

Euthymius, vii. 360

Evangelium æternum, viii. 441

Everwin, Provost of Steinfield, viii. 406

Faldra, a village of the Wends, vii. 45

Fast-synods, vii. 125

Felix of Valots, vii. 360

Festum fatuorum, follorum, hypodiæconorum, viii. 58

Fillas major, minor, viii. 389

Finns, history of the conversion of, vii. 61

Folmar, Provost of Traufenstein, viii. 72

Fontevraud, convent of nuns at, vii. 332

Frangipani, vii. 172

Franciscans, vii. 361

Francis of Assisi, vii. 80, 364

Frates scripti, vii. 320

Frederic the First, vii. 216, 231, 278

Frederic the Second, vii. 236, 238, 241, 244

Frederic of Colle, Cistercian, vii. 63

Fulco, vii. 281

Fulco, bishop of Toulouse, vii. 363

Gaiak, khan of the Mongols, vii. 68

Gaston, founder of a society for the sick, vii. 369

Gaudentius, vii. 56

Gaullo, viii. 293

Gazzari, viii. 369

Gebhard, archbishop of Salzburg, vii. 129

Gelaclus the Second, pope, vii. 189

George, Tartar prince, vii. 78

Georgius, patriarch, viii. 350

Gerhard, bishop of Angoulême, vii. 194

Gerhard. See Segarell.

Germanus, patriarch, viii. 334, 340

Gerhoh of Eislebenberg, vii. 208, 217, 262, 276, 279, 288; viii. 166, 169

Gilbertus Porretanus, viii. 57, 159, 228

Glabert, abbot, vii. 105

Gnesen, archbishop of, vii. 58

Gnostics, viii. 291, 356

Golsfred, viii. 3

Gottfried of Chartres, vii. 266; viii. 122, 137

Gottfried of Lucina, vii. 58

Gottfried of Vendome, vii. 172, 182, 261, 332, 334

Gottshalk, converter of the Wends, vii. 43

Gregory the Seventh, pope, vii. 110, 116, 166, 177, 180, 196, 260, 276, 313

Gregory the Eighth, pope, vii. 189

Gregory the Ninth, pope, vii. 102, 239, 241, 275; viii. 169, 473

Gregory the Tenth, pope, vii. 76, 253; viii. 340

Gregory the Great, viii. 141, 168

Gregorius, cardinal, vii. 193

Guibert of Nogent Sous Coucy, vii. 167, 173, 314, 357; viii. 28, 45, 62

Guibert, archbishop of Ravenna, vii. 159

Guido, Cistercian, vii. 470

Guido, cardinal, vii. 202; viii. 67

Guigo, prior of Carthusians, vii. 163

Gulscard of Cremona, vii. 66

Gützkow, history of the conversion of, vii. 28.

Hammersleben, abbey, viii. 146

Hartmann, master of the school at Paderborn, vii. 44

Hartwig, archbishop of Bremen, vii. 47

Heloise, viii. 142, 145

Henry the First, vii. 97

Henry the Third, vii. 119

Henry the Fourth, vii. 5, 313

Henry the Fifth, vii. 178

Henry the Sixth, vii. 231, 232

Henry, Cluniacensis, viii. 412

Henry the Second, king of England, vii. 227

Henry, bishop of Upsala, vii. 61

Henry, archbishop of Mayence, vii. 100

Henry, son of the missionary Gottshalk, vii. 43

Henricians, viii. 421

Hereward, viii. 96

Herluin, abbot, vii. 97

Hermann, bishop of Bamberg, vii. 187

Hermann, archbishop of Metz, vii. 143

Hermann, Jewish convert, vii. 98, 106

Hildebert, bishop of Mans, vii. 180, 182, 267; viii. 19, 414, 417

Hildebrand. See Gregory

Hildegard, vii. 291; viii. 398

Holm, Liefland fortress, vii. 49

Honorius the Second, pope, vii. 8

Honorius the Third, pope, vii. 54, 238, 364; viii. 67

Honorius the Fourth, pope, vii. 87; viii. 453

Hugo Blacus, vii. 142

Hugo of St Caro, viii. 180

Hugo of Olany, vii. 123, 335

Hugo, monk of Fleury, vii. 190

Hugo, Franciscan, vii. 379

Hugo, bishop of Lyons, vii. 165

Hugo de Pagania, vii. 347

Hugo of St Victor, viii. 48, 68, 127, 146, 165, 213, 216, 220, 227, 247, 263, 276

Hulagu, khan of the Mongols, vii. 75

Humbert de Romanis, vii. 254, 359; viii. 30, 55, 392

Hamillates, viii. 457

- Iago de Compostella, viii. 19  
 Jacob (James) king of Majorca and Minorca, vii. 87  
 Jacob of Vitry, vii. 80, 280, 283, 360, 161  
 Jews, vii. 87  
 Infants, communion of, viii. 68  
 Innocent the Second, pope, vii. 101, 193, 344  
 Innocent the Third, pope, vii. 58, 101, 232, 268, 278, 860, 362, 366; viii. 19, 64, 160, 288, 432, 470  
 Innocent the Fourth, pope, vii. 103, 246  
 Inquisition, vii. 473  
 Inquisitors, viii. 474  
 Insubatati, viii. 428  
 Investiture, vii. 135  
 Joachim of Floris, vii. 181, 253, 291, 295, 323, 392; viii. 160, 210, 439, 449  
 John, count of Soissons, viii. 45  
 John, King of England, vii. 234  
 John the Twenty-first, pope, vii. 269  
 John of Damascus, viii. 349  
 John Ducas, viii. 834, 337, 341  
 John of Fidanza, viii. 173  
 John Cluamos, viii. 326  
 John Lascaris, viii. 339  
 John, archbishop of Lyons, vii. 183  
 John of Matha, vii. 860  
 John de Monte Corvino, vii. 76  
 John Parastron, viii. 341  
 John of Paris, vii. 66  
 John de Plano Carpini, vii. 68  
 John, legend of the Tartarian priest-king, vii. 62  
 John of Salisbury, vii. 230; viii. 88, 165  
 John Zimaces, viii. 368  
 John, apocryphal gospel of, viii. 370  
 Joseph, patriarch, viii. 340, 433  
 Irnerius (Guarnerius) at Bologna, vii. 273  
 Ivo (Yves) of Chartres, vii. 163, 183, 263, 273, 324; viii. 74  
 Julia, Pommeranian town, vii. 3, 21  
 Kerait, Tartarian kingdom of, vii. 63  
 Koblaikhan, founder of the Mongol empire in China, vii. 75  
 Kolberg (Colberg), history of the conversion of, vii. 22  
 Kulm, bishopric, vii. 60  
 Lanfranc, archbishop of Canterbury, viii. 50  
 Langton, Stephen, cardinal, vii. 234  
 Lascaris the Second, viii. 338, 339  
 Legates, papal, vii. 119, 266  
 Legists, vii. 274  
 Leo the Ninth, pope, vii. 111, 180, 196, 299  
 Leonis, cardinal, vii. 193  
 Leonistas, viii. 430  
 Liefland, history of the conversion of, vii. 50  
 Liege, letter of the clergy of, to Paschalis the Second, vii. 175  
 Lothaire the Second, vii. 46, 196  
 Lothario of Anagni, cardinal, vii. 232  
 Louis the Sixth, king of France, vii. 194  
 Louis the Seventh, king of France, vii. 101  
 Louis the Ninth, king of France, vii. 69, 273, 384; viii. 10, 46, 176  
 Lucius the Second, pope, vii. 203, 204  
 Lucius the Third, pope, viii. 428  
 Ludolf, companion of Violeins, vii. 45  
 Lucas, bishop of Tuy, viii. 404  
 Lull, Raymond, vii. 82, 255, 325, 328; viii. 20, 21, 56, 181, 193, 233, 244, 255, 292, 297, 307  
 Malachias of Armagh, viii. 61  
 Malek al Kamel, vii. 80  
 Mangru Khan, vii. 69  
 Mans, Henry the Oluniasensian, viii. 414  
 Marbod of Rennes, viii. 332  
 Marcel, St. priory of, viii. 145  
 Maroesina, viii. 337  
 Marco Polo, vii. 76  
 Margaret, Dolcino's female friend, viii. 461  
 Marie, Nestorian patriarch, vii. 62  
 Martin the Fourth, pope, viii. 346  
 Martin, cardinal, vii. 266  
 Martin of Tours, viii. 114  
 Mary, worship of, viii. 58  
 Matilda, queen of England, vii. 121; viii. 99  
 Mathildia, margravine of Tuscany, vii. 122, 152  
 Matthew of Paris, vii. 242, 252, 374, 377  
 Mauritius. See Peter the Venerable  
 Mayfreda, nun, viii. 468  
 Meinhard, converter of the Lieflanders, vii. 49  
 Mendicant friars, vii. 372  
 Michael Plasologus, viii. 398, 399  
 Minorities, vii. 372  
 Mizlav, Duke of Pommerania, vii. 39  
 Mahommed, viii. 466  
 Moritz, bishop of Paris, viii. 45  
 Nazarius, bishop of the Catharists, viii. 370  
 Nechites, archbishop of Nicomedia, vii. 330  
 Nequinta, pope of the Catharists, viii. 402  
 Nestorians, history of the conversion of, vii. 61  
 New Platonism, viii. 206, 211  
 Nices, viii. 338  
 Nicephorus Blemmydes, viii. 337  
 Nicetas, bishop of Chonae, viii. 321, 326, 331  
 Nicholas the Third, pope, vii. 392  
 Nicholas the Fourth, pope, vii. 454  
 Nicholas, bishop of Methone, viii. 322  
 Nicholas, English monk, vii. 54  
 Nicholas, patriarch of Constantinople, viii. 361  
 Nicholas de Pistorio, vii. 76  
 Niphon, monk, viii. 386  
 Nominalism, viii. 87, 228  
 Norbert, founder of the Premonstratensians, vii. 279, 329  
 Oblati, vii. 314  
 Octai Khan, vii. 66  
 Octavian, cardinal, vii. 225  
 Odo of Tournay, vii. 87, 90  
 Officiales, vii. 284  
 Olov, king of Norway, vii. 120  
 Ordibarii, viii. 376

- Ordo fratrum militie Christi, vii. 51  
 Ordo predicatorum, vii. 384  
 Osbern, viii. 86.  
 Otho the Third, vii. 57  
 Otto of Bamberg, vii. 4; viii. 58  
 Otto, bishop of Coeslitz, vii. 129  
 Otto, bishop of Freisingen, vii. 207  
 Otto, duke of Saxony, vii. 287  
 Otto of Ostia, vii. 162  
 Ovid, viii. 210  
 Oxford, vii. 95  
  
 Paderborn, school at, vii. 44  
 Palmaris of Piacenza, viii. 6, 14  
 Papelarda, vii. 384; viii. 15  
 Paris, vii. 94; viii. 87, 168  
 Pasagi, viii. 403  
 Paschalis the Second, pope, vii. 3, 174, 178, 188; viii. 72  
 Paschalis the Third, pope, vii. 226  
 Patarnoe, vii. 138; viii. 369, 405  
 Paulicians, viii. 351  
 Pauperes Catholici, viii. 433  
 Pauperes Christi, vii. 332  
 Pauperes de Lombardia, viii. 428  
 Pelagianism, vii. 260, 264, 271  
 Penance, sacrament of, viii. 74  
 Peraldus, viii. 307  
 Perfecti, viii. 388  
 Perigueux, sect at, viii. 407  
 Peter of Amiens, vii. 163, 207  
 Peter de Bernardone, vii. 364  
 Peter of Biols, vii. 273, 285; viii. 165  
 Peter of Bruis, viii. 409, 422  
 Peter of Castelnau, viii. 471  
 Peter of Cluny, vii. 100, 193, 261, 320, 336, 349; viii. 49, 143, 419  
 Peter the Venerable. See Peter of Cluny  
 Peter de la Celle, viii. 54, 265  
 Peter de Lucalongo, viii. 78  
 Peter of Moestier en Tarantaise, vii. 286  
 Peter de Oliva, viii. 443  
 Peter of Poitiers, viii. 159, 263  
 Peter de Rasia, vii. 283  
 Petrobrusians, viii. 411, 421  
 Petrus Cantor, vii. 272, 278, 285; viii. 16, 164, 398, 400  
 Petrus Lombardus, viii. 75, 158, 159, 230, 263, 374, 276, 287, 296  
 Petrus Waldus, viii. 424  
 Phalet, convert, vii. 58  
 Philip the First, king of France, vii. 136, 163  
 Phillip, companion of Gottfried of Lucina, vii. 58  
 Phillip, duke of Suabia, vii. 237  
 Phillip, companion of Christian, vii. 58  
 Phillip of Limboreh, viii. 390  
 Phillip Augustus, king of France, vii. 235  
 Philippolis in Thrace, viii. 386  
 Philipponus, viii. 229  
 Phocas, emperor, viii. 321  
 Photius, viii. 344  
 Placidus, vii. 185  
 Platonicians, viii. 172  
 Plotinus, viii. 313  
 Poles, history of the conversion of the, vii. 1.  
  
 Poll, merchants of the family of, vii. 76  
 Pomesania, bishopric, vii. 60  
 Pommerania, vii. 1  
 Pontius of Cluny, vii. 335; viii. 72  
 Potho of Prum, viii. 54  
 Premonstratensians, vii. 329  
 Prussians, history of the conversion of the, vii. 55  
 Publicani, viii. 369  
 Punsilovo, Armano, viii. 396  
 Pyritz, town in Pommerania, vii. 10  
  
 Rabbanta, Nestorian monk, vii. 64  
 Radulf, persecutor of the Jews, vii. 99  
 Raimbert of Lisle, viii. 87  
 Raimund de Pennaforte, vii. 85, 275  
 Raimund, count of Toulouse, viii. 472  
 Rainer, Cistercian, viii. 470  
 Rainerio Sacconi, viii. 398  
 Ratherius, vii. 279  
 Realism, viii. 86, 229, 270  
 Regino of Prum, vii. 273  
 Richard, archbishop of Canterbury, vii. 270  
 Richard of St Victor, viii. 128, 161, 226, 228, 304  
 Richmar, ecclesiastic, vii. 107  
 Riga, bishopric, vii. 51  
 Robert of Arbrissel, vii. 834  
 Robert of Cîteaux, vii. 338  
 Robert Guiscard, vii. 161  
 Robert, count of Flanders, vii. 174  
 Robert Groshead (Grouthead), vii. 248, 269, 279, 375, 177  
 Robert Pullein, viii. 156, 262, 287, 302  
 Robert de Sorbonne, viii. 15  
 Roger Bacon, viii. 177, 191, 245  
 Roger, count of Foix, viii. 472  
 Roger, duke of Sicily, viii. 97  
 Roger, king of Sicily, vii. 196  
 Roland, legate, vii. 221, 225  
 Roland of Parma, vii. 144  
 Roscellin, viii. 86, 91, 104, 228  
 Rudolph, companion of Vicelin, vii. 45  
 Rudolph of Suabia, vii. 157  
 Rügen, history of conversion of, vii. 41  
 Rufinus, viii. 176  
 Rulta in Brittany, viii. 123  
 Rupert of Bamberg, vii. 146  
 Rupert of Deuts, vii. 107; viii. 62, 160  
  
 Sabellius, viii. 228  
 Sabôtiers, viii. 428  
 Sacraments, the seven, viii. 58  
 Salamanca, vii. 95  
 Samland, history of the conversion of, vii. 60  
 Samson, archbishop of Rheims, viii. 398, 421  
 Sanael, viii. 353  
 Segarelli, viii. 451  
 Semgallen, history of the conversion of, vii. 51  
 Sengler, archbishop, viii. 138  
 Sirk, communion of the, viii. 70  
 Slegfried, archbishop of Mayence, vii. 127  
 Sigbert of Gemblours, viii. 130  
 Sigward of Aquileja, vii. 150



- Signy, Cistercian abbey, viii. 137  
 Silvester the Second, pope, vii. 57, 166  
 Silvester, bishop of Rome, viii. 423  
 Simon, monk, vii. 316  
 Simon of Tornay, viii. 169  
 Simony, vii. 125  
 Sinibald of Anagni, vii. 246  
 Slavic populations, history of their conversion, vii. 1  
 Slavoni, viii. 369  
 Socinians, viii. 214  
 Sodrach, a convert, vii. 58  
 Stedingers, viii. 475  
 Stephen de Ansa, viii. 424  
 Stephen Gobaros, viii. 133  
 Stephen, monk, viii. 27  
 Stephen of Obaise, viii. 27, 80  
 Stephen of Tournay, viii. 166  
 Stettin, history of its conversion, vii. 21  
 Strick, priest, vii. 53  
 Stylite at Thessalonica, viii. 324  
 Suffragan bishops, vii. 289  
 Sutri, treaty at, vii. 178  
 Svantovit, idol of Rügen, vii. 42  
 Sword, order of the brothers of the, vii. 60  
 Synesisaktes, vii. 834  
 Tanchelm of Flanders, viii. 406  
 Tarraao, Waldensians at, viii. 434  
 Temple, order of the knights of the, vii. 347  
 Temudschin (Dschingiskhan), vii. 64  
 Tertiaril, vii. 372  
 Tesserants, viii. 369  
 Thaddeus de Suessa, vii. 247  
 Theobald, count of Champagne, vii. 217, 343; viii. 110  
 Theodoric, converter of Lieflanders, vii. 49  
 Theodora, viii. 174  
 Theodorus Lascaris, viii. 339  
 Theodore of Mopuestia, viii. 275  
 Theodosius of Constantinople, viii. 328  
 Theophylact, viii. 322  
 Theaurus meritorum supererogationis, viii. 78  
 Thessalonica, viii. 322  
 Thibault the Second, viii. 11  
 Thomas Aquinas, vii. 378, 385; viii. 55, 63, 79, 173, 185, 187, 205, 209, 211, 216, 223, 231, 234, 242, 250, 269, 274, 289, 291, 296, 298, 305, 309, 313  
 Thomas of Cantimpre, vii. 373  
 Timur Khan, vii. 77  
 Toulouse, viii. 402  
 Transubstantiation, doctrine of, vii. 69  
 Troyes, viii. 122  
 Tribur, assembly at, vii. 150  
 Triglav, Slavic idol, vii. 19  
 Trinitarians, order of the, vii. 360  
 Trinity, festival of the, vii. 67  
 Trithemius, viii. 228  
 Tunis, history of conversion of, vii. 89  
 Uardus. See Odo  
 Udo, bishop of Trier, vii. 149  
 Ulric, companion of Otto of Bamberg, vii. 27, 33  
 University at Paris, vii. 380  
 Urban the Second, pope, vii. 162, 166, 187, 206; viii. 76, 77, 97  
 Urban the Fourth, pope, viii. 67  
 Usedom, history of its conversion, vii. 24  
 Valentinian the Second, pope, vii. 148  
 Vicarii, vii. 285  
 Vicelin, converter of the Slavonians, vii. 44; viii. 14  
 Victor the Third, pope, vii. 162, 166  
 Victor the Fourth, pope, vii. 225  
 Vincentius of Lerins, viii. 331  
 Vulgate, viii. 179, 181  
 Waldenses, viii. 14, 422  
 Walter Mapes, Franciscan, viii. 426  
 Walter of Mauretania, viii. 119, 159, 213  
 Walter of St Victor, viii. 119  
 Waltram, bishop of Naumburg, vii. 131, 148  
 Wartislav, Pommeranian duke, vii. 2, 9, 24  
 Wilhelmina, viii. 467  
 William the Second, viii. 97  
 William of St Amour, vii. 381, 389; viii. 10, 441  
 William of Arie, viii. 211  
 William, count of Aquitaine, vii. 194  
 William of Auxerre, viii. 79  
 William de Champesux, viii. 109  
 William, abbot of Cluny, vii. 364  
 William of Modena, legate, vii. 551  
 William of Paris, viii. 21, 177, 189, 289, 307, 311, 589  
 William of Rubraque, Franciscan, vii. 69  
 William the Second of Sicily, viii. 322  
 William of St Thierry, viii. 137  
 William of Utrecht, vii. 146  
 Witstach, Stettiner, viii. 85  
 Wladimir of Plozk, vii. 49  
 Woldemar, king of Denmark, vii. 42  
 Wolgast, history of its conversion, vii. 26  
 Wollin, history of its conversion, vii. 12  
 Yago. See Iago di Compostella, viii. 19  
 Yxküll, in Liefland, vii. 49  
 Zacharias, vii. 148  
 Zigabenus, viii. 321:  
 Zwentipolk, son of Henry, converter of the Wends, vii. 43.

# PASSAGES FROM ANCIENT WRITERS

PARTICULARLY NOTICED IN THIS VOLUME.

- |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                   |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                   |
|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <p>Abaelard. Comment. in ep. ad Roman. viii. p. 126<br/>         Abaelard. Dialogus, viii. p. 241<br/>         Acta Sanctior. ed. Bolland. Mens. Aug. t. i. f. 549, viii. 363<br/>         Acta Sanctior. ed. Bolland. Mens. Oct. t. ii. f. 699, vii. p. 81.<br/>         Acta Sanctior. ed. Bolland. Mens. June, t. v., f. 661, vii. p. 83<br/>         Bernhard. Clarav. opp. 189, 195, vii. p. 199<br/>         Canis. lectt. antiq. ed. Basnage, t. iii, p. ii, vii. p. 2<br/>         Eustath. Thessalonie. viii. p. 321</p> | <p>Ruthym. Zigab. Panoplia, viii. p. 355<br/>         Fabric. Biblioth. eccl. viii. p. 170.<br/>         Innocent the Third, opp. l. xliii., l. xv., vii. p. 58<br/>         Joach. de Flor. ed. Colon. p. 312, vii. p. 181<br/>         Martene et Durand Thes. nov. anecdot. t., v., f. 217, vii. p. 113<br/>         Martin. Colon. Supputationes, viii. p. 207<br/>         Muratori Scriptor. rer. Ital. t. i., t. ix. 448, viii. p. 454<br/>         Nicetas de Comneno, l. vii., c. vi., viii. p. 328<br/>         Wilkins, Concll. Brit. t. ii., f. 172, viii. p. 454</p> |
|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|

# PASSAGES OF SCRIPTURE.

- |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                 |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                  |
|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <p>Lev. xv., viii. p. 19<br/>         Deuteron. xviii. l, viii. p. 373<br/>         Joshua vi. 26, vii. p. 254<br/>         2 Samuel iii., vii. p. 218<br/>         1 Kings xvi. 34, vii. p. 254; xviii. 19, vii. p. 358; xix. 11, viii. p. 38<br/>         2 Kings ii. 25, vii. p. 358; iv. 25, vii. p. 358<br/>         Psalm xxxi. 2, viii. p. 293; ii. 5, viii. p. 53; lili. l, viii. p. 201; lv. 8, vii. p. 337; lxxiii. 26, vii. p. 350<br/>         Proverbs viii. 22, viii. p. 374<br/>         Ecclesiastes xix., viii. p. 141<br/>         Isaiah vii. 9, viii. p. 104; xi. 2, viii. p. 311<br/>         Jeremiah i. 10, vii. p. 338; xlviii. 10, vii. p. 119<br/>         Hosea i., vii. p. 178; viii. 4, vii. p. 215; xlii., viii. p. 55<br/>         Mal. ii. 12, vii. p. 128<br/>         Sirach xviii. l, viii. p. 373; xix. 4, viii. p. 112<br/>         Matthew vi. 16, vii. p. 884; x. 9, vii. p. 3; x. 27, viii. p. 42; xi. 6, viii. p. 381; xi. 27, viii. p. 121; xii. 17, viii. p. 382; xv. 24, viii. p. 373; xviii., viii. p. 379; xxi. 3, vii. p. 264; xxiii. 5, vii. p. 79<br/>         Luke i. viii. p. 141; x., viii. p. 153, 379; xi. 27, viii. p. 382; xi. 41, viii. p. 19; xii. 48, vii. p. 71; xviii. 22, vii. p. 381; xviii. 28, vii. p. 362</p> | <p>John ii. 3, viii. p. 382; iv. 22, vii. p. 96; vi. 40, viii. p. 121; viii. 44, viii. p. 372; xix. 23, vii. p. 384; x. 16, viii. p. 373; xiv. 9, viii. p. 121; xv., viii. p. 153; xvi. 7, viii. p. 52; xvi. 13, viii. p. 121; xvii. 3, viii. p. 120; xxi. 21, vii. p. 307<br/>         Acta viii. 20, vii. p. 204; xii. vii. p. 164<br/>         Romans iii. 23, viii. p. 293; v. 12, viii. p. 272; x. 8, viii. p. 187; xi. 11, vii. p. 96; xi. 26, vii. p. 99; xii. l, vii. p. 324; xlii. l, vii. p. 271; xiv. 17, vii. p. 824<br/>         1 Corinth. vii. 9, vii. p. 127; x. 4, viii. p. 384; xii. 28, vii. p. 215; xlii. 12, viii. p. 121; xvi. 19, vii. p. 287; xv. 46, viii. p. 270<br/>         2 Corinth. x. 5, viii. p. 188<br/>         Ephes. iv. 16, vii. p. 215<br/>         Philipp. iii. 20, viii. p. 382<br/>         1 Thess. iv. 13, vii. p. 336<br/>         2 Thess. ii. 6, viii. p. 442<br/>         1 Tim. i. 7, viii. p. 382; iv. 8, vii. p. 353; v. 23, vii. p. 336<br/>         2 Tim. ii. 4, vii. p. 213; ii. 25, vii. p. 97<br/>         Hebrews xi. l, viii. p. 142, 186<br/>         1 John i. 8, vii. p. 339<br/>         James ii. 10, viii. p. 76; v. 20, viii. p. 397<br/>         Revelat. x. 10, viii. p. 449; xiv., viii. p. 449; xxi. 12, viii. p. 450</p> |
|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|

N.B.—The Indices to Vols. 1 and 2 will be found at end of Vol. 2; to Vols. 3 and 4 at end of Vol. 4; and to Vols. 5 and 6 at end of Vol. 6.



PUBLICATIONS OF  
T. AND T. CLARK,  
38 GEORGE STREET, EDINBURGH.

---

- Adam (J., D.D.)**—AN EXPOSITION OF THE EPISTLE OF JAMES. 8vo, 9s.
- Alexander (Dr. J. A.)**—COMMENTARY ON THE PROPHECIES OF ISAIAH.  
New and Revised Edition. Two vols. 8vo, 17s.
- Ante-Nicene Christian Library**—A COLLECTION OF ALL THE WORKS  
OF THE FATHERS OF THE CHRISTIAN CHURCH PRIOR TO THE COUNCIL OF  
NICÆA. Twenty-four vols. 8vo, Subscription price, £6, 6s.
- Auberlen (C. A.)**—THE DIVINE REVELATION. 8vo, 10s. 6d.
- Augustine's Works**—Edited by MARCUS DODS, D.D. Fifteen vols.  
8vo, Subscription price, £3, 19s.
- Bannerman (Professor)**—THE CHURCH OF CHRIST: A Treatise on the  
Nature, Powers, Ordinances, Discipline, and Government of the Christian  
Church. Two vols. 8vo, 21s.
- Baumgarten (Professor)**—APOSTOLIC HISTORY; Being an Account of  
the Development of the Early Church in the form of a Commentary on the  
Acts of the Apostles. Three vols. 8vo, 27s.
- Beck (Dr.)**—OUTLINES OF BIBLICAL PSYCHOLOGY. Crown 8vo, 4s.  
PASTORAL THEOLOGY. *Shortly.*
- Bengel**—GNOMON OF THE NEW TESTAMENT. With Original Notes,  
Explanatory and Illustrative. Five vols. 8vo, Subscription price, 31s. 6d.  
*Cheaper Edition, the five volumes bound in three, 24s.*
- Besser (Dr. Rudolph)**—BIBLICAL STUDIES ON ST. JOHN'S GOSPEL.  
Two vols. crown 8vo, 12s.
- Binnie (Wm., D.D.)**—THE CHURCH. *Bible Class Handbooks.* Crown  
8vo, 1s. 6d.
- Bleek (Professor)**—AN INTRODUCTION TO THE NEW TESTAMENT.  
Two vols. 8vo, 21s.
- Bowman (T., M.A.)**—EASY AND COMPLETE HEBREW COURSE: Con-  
taining Hebrew Grammar, Exercises, and Lexicon. 8vo. Part I., 7s. 6d.;  
Part II., 10s. 6d.
- Briggs (Prof. C.A., D.D.)**—BIBLICAL STUDY: Its Principles, Methods,  
and History. With a Preface by Rev. Prof. BRUCE, D.D., Glasgow. Post  
8vo, 7s. 6d.
- Brown (David, D.D.)**—CHRIST'S SECOND COMING: Will it be Pre-  
Millennial? Seventh Edition, crown 8vo, 7s. 6d.
- THE EPISTLE TO THE ROMANS. *Bible Class Handbooks.* Price 2s.
- Bruce (A. B., D.D.)**—THE TRAINING OF THE TWELVE; or, Exposition  
of Passages in the Gospels exhibiting the Twelve Disciples of Jesus under  
Discipline for the Apostleship. Third Edition, 8vo, 10s. 6d.
- THE HUMILIATION OF CHRIST, in its Physical, Ethical, and  
Official Aspects. Second Edition, 8vo, 10s. 6d.
- Buchanan (Professor)**—THE DOCTRINE OF JUSTIFICATION: An Out-  
line of its History in the Church, and of its Exposition from Scripture, with  
special reference to recent attacks on the Theology of the Reformation. (Second  
Series of Cunningham Lectures.) 8vo, 10s. 6d.
- ON COMFORT IN AFFLICTION. Crown 8vo, 2s. 6d.
- ON IMPROVEMENT OF AFFLICTION. Crown 8vo, 2s. 6d.

*T. and T. Clark's Publications.*

- Bungener (Felix)**—ROME AND THE COUNCIL IN THE NINETEENTH CENTURY. Crown 8vo, 5s.
- Calvin**—HIS LIFE, LABOURS, AND WRITINGS. By FELIX BUNGENER. 8vo, 8s. 6d.
- INSTITUTES OF THE CHRISTIAN RELIGION. Translated by HENRY BEVERIDGE. Two vols. 8vo, 14s.
- Calvini Institutio Christianæ Religionis.** Curavit A. THOLUCK. Two vols. 8vo, Subscription price, 14s.
- Candlish (Rev. Professor)**—THE CHRISTIAN SACRAMENTS. *Bible Class Handbooks.* Crown 8vo, 1s. 6d.
- Caspari (C. E.)**—A CHRONOLOGICAL AND GEOGRAPHICAL INTRODUCTION TO THE LIFE OF CHRIST. 8vo, 9s.
- Caspers (A.)**—THE FOOTSTEPS OF CHRIST. Crown 8vo, 7s. 6d.
- Cave (Professor)**—THE SCRIPTURAL DOCTRINE OF SACRIFICE. Demy 8vo, 12s.
- Christlieb (Dr.)**—MODERN DOUBT AND CHRISTIAN BELIEF. A Series of Apologetic Lectures addressed to Earnest Seekers after Truth. Fourth Edition, 8vo, 10s. 6d.
- Cotterill (J. M.)**—PEREGRINUS PROTEUS: An Investigation into certain Relations between De Morte Peregrini, the Two Epistles of Clement to the Corinthians, etc. 8vo, 12s.
- Cousin (Victor)**—LECTURES ON THE TRUE, THE BEAUTIFUL, AND THE GOOD. Post 8vo, 6s. 6d.
- Cremer (Professor)**—BIBLICO-THEOLOGICAL LEXICON OF NEW TESTAMENT GREEK. Third Edition, demy 4to, 25s.
- Crippen (Rev. T. G.)**—A POPULAR INTRODUCTION TO THE HISTORY OF CHRISTIAN DOCTRINE. 8vo, 9s.
- Cunningham (Principal)**—HISTORICAL THEOLOGY. A Review of the Principal Doctrinal Discussions in the Christian Church since the Apostolic Age. Second Edition, Two vols. 8vo, 21s.
- REFORMERS AND THEOLOGY OF THE REFORMATION. 8vo, 10s. 6d.
- DISCUSSIONS ON CHURCH PRINCIPLES. 8vo, 10s. 6d.
- Curtiss (Dr. S. I.)**—THE LEVITICAL PRIESTS. A Contribution to the Criticism of the Pentateuch. Crown 8vo, 5s.
- Dabney (B. L., D.D.)**—THE SENSUALISTIC PHILOSOPHY OF THE NINETEENTH CENTURY CONSIDERED. Crown 8vo, 6s.
- LECTURES ON SYSTEMATIC AND POLEMIC THEOLOGY. Second Edition, imperial 8vo, 16s.
- Davidson (Professor)**—AN INTRODUCTORY HEBREW GRAMMAR. With Progressive Exercises in Reading and Writing. Sixth Edition, 8vo, 7s. 6d.
- THE EPISTLE TO THE HEBREWS. *Bible Class Handbooks.* Crown 8vo, 2s. 6d.
- Delitzsch (Professor)**—A SYSTEM OF BIBLICAL PSYCHOLOGY. Second Edition, 8vo, 12s.
- COMMENTARY ON JOB. Two vols. 8vo, 21s.
- COMMENTARY ON PSALMS. Three vols. 8vo, 31s. 6d.
- ON THE PROVERBS OF SOLOMON. Two vols. 8vo, 21s.
- ON THE SONG OF SOLOMON AND ECCLESIASTES. 8vo, 10s. 6d.
- OLD TESTAMENT HISTORY OF REDEMPTION. Lectures Translated from the ms. by Professor S. I. CURTISS. Crown 8vo, 4s. 6d.

*T. and T. Clark's Publications.*

- Delitzsch (Prof.)**—COMMENTARY ON ISAIAH. Two vols. 8vo, 21s.  
 — ON THE EPISTLE TO THE HEBREWS. Two vols. 8vo, 21s.
- Dods (Marcus, D.D.)**—THE POST-EXILIAN PROPHETS—HAGGAI, ZECHARIAH, MALACHI. With Introduction and Notes. *Bible Class Handbooks*. Crown 8vo, 2s.
- THE BOOK OF GENESIS. *Bible Class Handbooks*. Cr. 8vo, 2s.
- Doedes (Dr. J.)**—MANUAL OF HERMENEUTICS FOR THE NEW TESTAMENT. Crown 8vo, 3s.
- Döllinger (Dr.)**—HIPPLYTUS AND CALLISTUS; or, The Roman Church in the First Half of the Third Century. 8vo, 9s.
- Dorner (Professor)**—HISTORY OF THE DEVELOPMENT OF THE DOCTRINE OF THE PERSON OF CHRIST. Five vols. 8vo, £2, 12s. 6d.
- SYSTEM OF CHRISTIAN DOCTRINE. Four vols. 8vo, £2, 2s.
- HISTORY OF PROTESTANT THEOLOGY, particularly in Germany, viewed according to its Fundamental Movement, and in connection with the Religious, Moral, and Intellectual Life. Two vols. 8vo, 21s.
- Douglas (Principal)**—THE BOOK OF JUDGES. *Bible Class Handbooks*. Crown 8vo, 1s. 3d.
- THE BOOK OF JOSHUA. *Bible Class Handbooks*. Cr. 8vo, 1s. 6d.
- Eadie (Professor)**—COMMENTARIES ON ST. PAUL'S EPISTLES TO THE GALATIANS, EPHESIANS, PHILIPPIANS, COLOSSIANS. New and Revised Editions, Edited by Rev. WILLIAM YOUNG, M.A. Four vols. 8vo, 10s. 6d. each.
- Ebrard (Dr. J. H. A.)**—THE GOSPEL HISTORY: A Compendium of Critical Investigations in support of the Four Gospels. 8vo, 10s. 6d.
- COMMENTARY ON THE EPISTLES OF ST. JOHN. 8vo, 10s. 6d.
- Elliott (Chas., D.D.)**—A TREATISE ON THE INSPIRATION OF THE HOLY SCRIPTURES. 8vo, 6s.
- Ernesti**—PRINCIPLES OF BIBLICAL INTERPRETATION OF NEW TESTAMENT. Two vols. fcap. 8vo, 8s.
- Ewald (Heinrich)**—SYNTAX OF THE HEBREW LANGUAGE OF THE OLD TESTAMENT. 8vo, 8s. 6d.
- Fairbairn (Principal)**—TYPOLOGY OF SCRIPTURE, viewed in connection with the series of Divine Dispensations. Sixth Edition, Two vols. 8vo, 21s.
- THE REVELATION OF LAW IN SCRIPTURE, considered with respect both to its own Nature and to its relative place in Successive Dispensations. (The Third Series of Cunningham Lectures.) 8vo, 10s. 6d.
- EZEKIEL AND THE BOOK OF HIS PROPHECY: An Exposition. Fourth Edition, 8vo, 10s. 6d.
- PROPHECY VIEWED IN ITS DISTINCTIVE NATURE, ITS SPECIAL FUNCTIONS, AND PROPER INTERPRETATIONS. Second Edition, 8vo, 10s. 6d.
- NEW TESTAMENT HERMENEUTICAL MANUAL. 8vo, 10s. 6d.
- THE PASTORAL EPISTLES. The Greek Text and Translation. With Introduction, Expository Notes, and Dissertations. 8vo, 7s. 6d.
- PASTORAL THEOLOGY: A Treatise on the Office and Duties of the Christian Pastor. With a Memoir of the Author. Crown 8vo, 6s.
- Fisher (G. B., D.D.)**—THE BEGINNINGS OF CHRISTIANITY, with a View of the State of the Roman World at the Birth of Christ. 8vo, 12s.

*T. and T. Clark's Publications.*

- Forbes (Professor)**—THE SYMMETRICAL STRUCTURE OF SCRIPTURE ; or, Scripture Parallelism Exemplified. 8vo. 8s. 6d.
- ANALYTICAL COMMENTARY ON THE EPISTLE TO THE ROMANS, tracing the Train of Thought by the aid of Parallelism. 8vo, 10s. 6d.
- Gebhardt (H.)**—THE DOCTRINE OF THE APOCALYPSE, AND ITS RELATION TO THE DOCTRINE OF THE GOSPEL AND EPISTLES OF JOHN. 8vo, 10s. 6d.
- Gerlach**—COMMENTARY ON THE PENTATEUCH. 8vo, 10s. 6d.
- Gieseler (Dr. J. C. L.)**—A COMPENDIUM OF ECCLESIASTICAL HISTORY. Five vols. 8vo, £2, 12s. 6d.
- Gifford (Canon)**—VOICES OF THE PROPHETS : Twelve Lectures preached on the Foundation of Bishop Warburton. Crown 8vo, 5s.
- Given (Rev. Prof. J. J.)**—THE TRUTHS OF SCRIPTURE IN CONNECTION WITH REVELATION, INSPIRATION, AND THE CANON. 8vo, 9s.
- Glasgow (Professor)**—THE APOCALYPSE TRANSLATED AND EXPOUNDED. 8vo, 14s.
- Gloag (Paton J., D.D.)**—A CRITICAL AND EXEGETICAL COMMENTARY ON THE ACTS OF THE APOSTLES. Two vols. 8vo, 21s.
- THE MESSIANIC PROPHECIES. *The Baird Lecture*, 1879. In crown 8vo, price 7s. 6d.
- INTRODUCTION TO THE PAULINE EPISTLES. 8vo, 12s.
- Godet (Prof.)**—COMMENTARY ON ST. LUKE'S GOSPEL. Two vols. 8vo, 21s.
- COMMENTARY ON ST. JOHN'S GOSPEL. Three vols. 8vo, 31s. 6d.
- COMMENTARY ON ST. PAUL'S EPISTLE TO THE ROMANS. Two vols. 8vo, 21s.
- LECTURES IN DEFENCE OF THE CHRISTIAN FAITH. Cr. 8vo, 6s.
- Goebel (Siegfried)**—THE PARABLES OF JESUS. 8vo, 10s. 6d.
- Gotthold's Emblems ;** or, INVISIBLE THINGS UNDERSTOOD BY THINGS THAT ARE MADE. Crown 8vo, 5s.
- Hagenbach (Dr. K. R.)**—HISTORY OF DOCTRINES. Translated from the last Edition, and edited, with large additions from various sources. Three vols. 8vo, 31s. 6d.
- HISTORY OF THE REFORMATION IN GERMANY AND SWITZERLAND CHIEFLY. Translated from the Fourth Revised Edition of the German by EVELINA MOORE. Two vols. 8vo, 21s.
- Hall (Rev. Newman, LL.B.)**—THE LORD'S PRAYER : A Practical Meditation. 8vo, 10s. 6d.
- Harless (Dr. C. A.)**—SYSTEM OF CHRISTIAN ETHICS. 8vo, 10s. 6d.
- Harris (Rev. Samuel, D.D.)**—THE PHILOSOPHICAL BASIS OF THEISM : An Examination of the Personality of Man to ascertain his Capacity to Know and Serve God, and the Validity of the Principles underlying the Defence of Theism. Ex. 8vo, 12s.
- Haupt (Erich)**—THE FIRST EPISTLE OF ST. JOHN. A Contribution to Biblical Theology. 8vo, 10s. 6d.
- Hävernick (H. A. Ch.)**—INTRODUCTION TO OLD TESTAMENT. 10s. 6d.
- Heard (Rev. J. B., M.A.)**—THE TRIPARTITE NATURE OF MAN—SPIRIT, SOUL, AND BODY—applied to Illustrate and Explain the Doctrine of Original Sin, the New Birth, the Disembodied State, and the Spiritual Body. With an Appendix on the Fatherhood of God. Fifth Edition, crown 8vo, 6s.
- Hefele (Bishop)**—A HISTORY OF THE COUNCILS OF THE CHURCH. Vol. I., to A.D. 325 ; Vol. II., A.D. 326 to 429. Vol. III., A.D. 431 to the close of the Council of Chalcedon, 451. 8vo, 12s. each.
- Hengstenberg (Professor)**—COMMENTARY ON PSALMS. 3 vols. 8vo, 33s.

*T. and T. Clark's Publications.*

- Hengstenberg (Professor)**—COMMENTARY ON THE BOOK OF ECCLESIASTES. To which are appended : Treatises on the Song of Solomon ; on the Book of Job ; on the Prophet Isaiah, etc. 8vo, 9s.
- THE PROPHECIES OF THE PROPHET EZEKIEL ELUCIDATED. 8vo, 10s. 6d.
- DISSERTATIONS ON THE GENUINENESS OF DANIEL, AND THE INTEGRITY OF ZECHARIAH. 8vo, 12s.
- HISTORY OF THE KINGDOM OF GOD UNDER THE OLD TESTAMENT. Two vols. 8vo, 21s.
- CHRISTOLOGY OF THE OLD TESTAMENT : A Commentary on the Messianic Predictions. Second Edition, Four vols. 8vo, £2, 2s.
- ON THE GOSPEL OF ST. JOHN. Two vols. 8vo, 21s.
- Hermes Trismegistus**—THEOLOGICAL AND PHILOSOPHICAL WORKS. Translated from the original Greek by J. D. CHAMBERS, M.A. 8vo, 6s.
- Herzog**—ENCYCLOPÆDIA OR DICTIONARY OF BIBLICAL, HISTORICAL, DOCTRINAL, AND PRACTICAL THEOLOGY. *Based on the Real-Encyclopædie of Herzog, Plitt, and Hauck.* Edited by Professor SCHAFF, D.D. In Three vols., price 24s. each.
- Hutchison (John, D.D.)**—COMMENTARY ON THESSALONIANS. 8vo, 9s.
- Janet (Paul)**—FINAL CAUSES. By PAUL JANET, Member of the Institute. Translated from the French by W. AFFLECK, B.D. Second Edition. Demy 8vo, 12s.
- THE THEORY OF MORALS. Translated from the latest French Edition. Demy 8vo, 10s. 6d. *Shortly.*
- Jouffroy**—PHILOSOPHICAL ESSAYS. Fcap. 8vo, 5s.
- Kant**—THE METAPHYSIC OF ETHICS. Crown 8vo, 6s.
- Keil (Professor)**—BIBLICAL COMMENTARY ON THE PENTATEUCH. Three vols. 8vo, 31s. 6d.
- COMMENTARY ON THE BOOKS OF JOSHUA, JUDGES, AND RUTH. 8vo, 10s. 6d.
- COMMENTARY ON THE BOOKS OF SAMUEL. 8vo, 10s. 6d.
- COMMENTARY ON THE BOOKS OF KINGS. 8vo, 10s. 6d.
- COMMENTARY ON THE BOOKS OF CHRONICLES. 8vo, 10s. 6d.
- COMMENTARY ON EZRA, NEHEMIAH, ESTHER. 8vo, 10s. 6d.
- COMMENTARY ON JEREMIAH. Two vols. 8vo, 21s.
- COMMENTARY ON EZEKIEL. Two vols. 8vo, 21s.
- COMMENTARY ON DANIEL. 8vo, 10s. 6d.
- ON THE BOOKS OF THE MINOR PROPHETS. Two vols. 8vo, 21s.
- MANUAL OF HISTORICO-CRITICAL INTRODUCTION TO THE CANONICAL SCRIPTURES OF THE OLD TESTAMENT. Two vols. 8vo, 21s.
- Keymer (Rev. N., M.A.)**—NOTES ON GENESIS ; or, Christ and His Church among the Patriarchs. With a Preliminary Notice by the Bishop of Lincoln. Crown 8vo, 1s. 6d.
- Killen (Prof.)**—THE OLD CATHOLIC CHURCH ; or, The History, Doctrine, Worship, and Polity of the Christians, traced from the Apostolic Age to the Establishment of the Pope as a Temporal Sovereign, A.D. 755. 8vo, 9s.
- Krummacher (Dr. F. W.)**—THE SUFFERING SAVIOUR ; or, Meditations on the Last Days of the Sufferings of Christ. Eighth Edit., crown 8vo, 7s. 6d.
- DAVID, THE KING OF ISRAEL : A Portrait drawn from Bible History and the Book of Psalms. Second Edition, crown 8vo, 7s. 6d.



*T. and T. Clark's Publications.*

- Krummacher (Dr. F. W.)**—AUTOBIOGRAPHY. Edited by his Daughter. Crown 8vo, 6s.
- Kurtz (Prof.)**—HANDBOOK OF CHURCH HISTORY. Two vols. 8vo, 15s.  
 ——— HISTORY OF THE OLD COVENANT. Three vols. 8vo, 31s. 6d.
- Ladd (Prof. G. T.)**—THE DOCTRINE OF SACRED SCRIPTURE: A Critical, Historical, and Dogmatic Inquiry into the Origin and Nature of the Old and New Testaments. Two vols., extra demy, 28s.
- Laidlaw (Rev. Prof. John, D.D.)**—THE BIBLE DOCTRINE OF MAN. (The Seventh Series of Cunningham Lectures.) 8vo, 10s. 6d.
- Lange (J. P., D.D.)**—THE LIFE OF OUR LORD JESUS CHRIST. Edited, with additional Notes, by MARCUS DODS, D.D. Second Edition, in Four vols. 8vo, Subscription price, 28s.  
 ——— COMMENTARIES ON THE OLD AND NEW TESTAMENT. Edited by PHILIP SCHAFF, D.D. OLD TESTAMENT, 14 vols. ; NEW TESTAMENT, 10 vols. ; APOCRYPHA, 1 vol. Subscription price, nett, 15s. each.
- Lange (J. P., D.D.)**—COMMENTARY, THEOLOGICAL AND HOMILETICAL, ON THE GOSPELS OF ST. MATTHEW AND ST. MARK. Three vols. 8vo, 31s. 6d.  
 ——— ON THE GOSPEL OF ST. LUKE. Two vols. 8vo, 18s.  
 ——— ON THE GOSPEL OF ST. JOHN. Two vols. 8vo, 21s.  
 ——— ON THE ACTS OF THE APOSTLES. Two vols. 8vo, 21s.
- Lewis (Taylor, LL.D.)**—THE SIX DAYS OF CREATION. New Edition, crown 8vo, 7s. 6d.
- Lindsay (Rev. Prof., D.D.)**—THE REFORMATION. *Bible Class Handbooks*. Crown 8vo, 2s.  
 ——— THE GOSPEL OF ST. MARK. *Bible Class Handbooks*. Cr. 8vo, 2s. 6d.
- Lisco (F. G.)**—PARABLES OF JESUS EXPLAINED. Fcap. 8vo, 5s.
- Lötze (Professor)**—MICROCOSMOS. *In preparation*.
- Luthardt, Kahnis, and Brückner**—THE CHURCH: Its Origin, its History, and its Present Position. Crown 8vo, 5s.
- Luthardt (Prof.)**—ST. JOHN THE AUTHOR OF THE FOURTH GOSPEL. 9s.  
 ——— ST. JOHN'S GOSPEL DESCRIBED AND EXPLAINED ACCORDING TO ITS PECULIAR CHARACTER. Three vols. 8vo, 31s. 6d.  
 ——— APOLOGETIC LECTURES ON THE FUNDAMENTAL (*Sixth Edition*), SAYING (*Fourth Edition*), MORAL TRUTHS OF CHRISTIANITY (*Third Edition*). Three vols. crown 8vo, 6s. each.
- Macdonald (Rev. Donald)**—INTRODUCTION TO THE PENTATEUCH: An Inquiry, Critical and Doctrinal, into the Genuineness, Authority, and Design of the Mosaic Writings. Two vols. 8vo, 21s.  
 ——— THE CREATION AND FALL. 8vo, 12s.
- Macgregor (Rev. Jas., D.D.)**—THE EPISTLE TO THE GALATIANS. With Introduction and Notes. *Bible Class Handbooks*. Crown 8vo, 1s. 6d.
- Macpherson (Rev. John, M.A.)**—THE WESTMINSTER CONFESSION OF FAITH. With Introduction and Notes. *Bible Class Handbooks*. Cr. 8vo, 2s.  
 ——— PRESBYTERIANISM. *Bible Class Handbooks*. Crown 8vo, 1s. 6d.
- McLauchlan (T., D.D., LL.D.)**—THE EARLY SCOTTISH CHURCH. To the Middle of the Twelfth Century. 8vo, 10s. 6d.
- Mair (Alexander, D.D.)**—STUDIES IN THE CHRISTIAN EVIDENCES. Crown 8vo, 6s.
- Martensen (Bishop)**—CHRISTIAN DOGMATICS: A Compendium of the Doctrines of Christianity. 8vo, 10s. 6d.  
 ——— CHRISTIAN ETHICS. (GENERAL ETHICS.) 8vo, 10s. 6d.  
 ——— CHRISTIAN ETHICS. (INDIVIDUAL ETHICS.) 8vo, 10s. 6d.  
 ——— CHRISTIAN ETHICS. (SOCIAL ETHICS.) 8vo, 10s. 6d.

*T. and T. Clark's Publications.*

- Matheson (Geo., D.D.)**—GROWTH OF THE SPIRIT OF CHRISTIANITY, from the First Century to the Dawn of the Lutheran Era. Two vols. 8vo, 21s.
- AID TO THE STUDY OF GERMAN THEOLOGY. 3d Edition, 4s. 6d.
- Meyer (Dr.)**—CRITICAL AND EXEGETICAL COMMENTARY ON ST. MATTHEW'S GOSPEL. Two vols. 8vo, 21s.
- ON MARK AND LUKE. Two vols. 8vo, 21s.
- ON ST. JOHN'S GOSPEL. Two vols. 8vo, 21s.
- ON ACTS OF THE APOSTLES. Two vols. 8vo, 21s.
- ON THE EPISTLE TO THE ROMANS. Two vols. 8vo, 21s.
- ON CORINTHIANS. Two vols. 8vo, 21s.
- ON GALATIANS. 8vo, 10s. 6d.
- ON EPHESIANS AND PHILEMON. One vol. 8vo, 10s. 6d.
- ON PHILIPPIANS AND COLOSSIANS. One vol. 8vo, 10s. 6d.
- ON THESSALONIANS. (*Dr. Lünemann.*) One vol. 8vo, 10s. 6d.
- THE PASTORAL EPISTLES. (*Dr. Huther.*) One vol. 8vo, 10s. 6d.
- THE EPISTLE TO THE HEBREWS. (*Dr. Lünemann.*) 8vo, 10s. 6d.
- ON ST. JAMES' AND ST. JOHN'S EPISTLES. (*Dr. Huther.*) 8vo, 10s. 6d.
- PETER AND JUDE. (*Dr. Huther.*) One vol. 8vo, 10s. 6d.
- Monrad (Dr. D. G.)**—THE WORLD OF PRAYER; or, Prayer in relation to Personal Religion. Crown 8vo, 4s. 6d.
- Morgan (J., D.D.)**—SCRIPTURE TESTIMONY TO THE HOLY SPIRIT. 9s.
- EXPOSITION OF THE FIRST EPISTLE OF JOHN. 8vo, 9s.
- Müller (Dr. Julius)**—THE CHRISTIAN DOCTRINE OF SIN. An entirely New Translation from the Fifth German Edition. Two vols. 8vo, 21s.
- Murphy (Professor)**—A CRITICAL AND EXEGETICAL COMMENTARY ON THE BOOK OF PSALMS. 8vo, 12s.
- BOOKS OF CHRONICLES. *Bible Class Handbooks.* Cr. 8vo, 1s. 6d.
- A CRITICAL AND EXEGETICAL COMMENTARY ON EXODUS. 9s.
- Naville (Ernest)**—THE PROBLEM OF EVIL. Crown 8vo, 4s. 6d.
- THE CHRIST. Translated by Rev. T. J. DESPRÉS. Cr. 8vo, 4s. 6d.
- MODERN PHYSICS: Studies Historical and Philosophical. Translated by Rev. HENRY DOWNTON, M.A. Crown 8vo, 5s.
- Nicoll (W. R., M.A.)**—THE INCARNATE SAVIOUR: A Life of Jesus Christ. Crown 8vo, 6s.
- Neander (Dr.)**—GENERAL HISTORY OF THE CHRISTIAN RELIGION AND CHURCH. Nine vols. 8vo, £3, 7s. 6d.
- Oehler (Prof.)**—THEOLOGY OF THE OLD TESTAMENT. 2 vols. 8vo, 21s.
- Oosterzee (Dr. Van)**—THE YEAR OF SALVATION. Words of Life for Every Day. A Book of Household Devotion. Two vols. 8vo, 7s. 6d. each.
- MOSES: A Biblical Study. Crown 8vo, 6s.
- Olahausen (Dr. H.)**—BIBLICAL COMMENTARY ON THE GOSPELS AND ACTS. Four vols. 8vo, £2, 2s. *Cheaper Edition*, four vols. crown 8vo, 24s.
- ROMANS. One vol. 8vo, 10s. 6d.
- CORINTHIANS. One vol. 8vo, 9s.
- PHILIPPIANS, TITUS, AND FIRST TIMOTHY. One vol. 8vo, 10s. 6d.
- Owen (Dr. John)**—WORKS. *Best and only Complete Edition.* Edited by Rev. Dr. GOULD. Twenty-four vols. 8vo, Subscription price, £4, 4s. The 'Hebrews' may be had separately, in Seven vols., £2, 2s. nett.
- Philippi (F. A.)**—COMMENTARY ON THE EPISTLE TO THE ROMANS. From the Third Improved Edition, by Rev. Professor BANKS. Two vols. 8vo, 21s.

*T. and T. Clark's Publications.*

- Piper (Dr. Ferdinand)**—LIVES OF THE LEADERS OF THE CHURCH UNIVERSAL. Translated from the German, and edited, with additions, by H. M. MACCRACKEN, D.D. Two vols. 8vo, 21s.
- Popular Commentary on the New Testament.** Edited by PHILIP SCHAFF, D.D. With Illustrations and Maps. Vol. I.—THE SYNOPTICAL GOSPELS. Vol. II.—ST. JOHN'S GOSPEL, AND THE ACTS OF THE APOSTLES. Vol. III.—ROMANS TO PHILEMON. Vol. IV.—HEBREWS TO REVELATION. In Four vols. imperial 8vo, 18s. each.
- Pressensé (Edward de)**—THE REDEEMER: Discourses Translated from the French. Crown 8vo, 6s.
- Rainy (Principal)**—DELIVERY AND DEVELOPMENT OF CHRISTIAN DOCTRINE. (The Fifth Series of the Cunningham Lectures.) 8vo, 10s. 6d.
- Reusch (Professor)**—BIBLE AND NATURE. *In preparation.*
- Reuss (Professor)**—HISTORY OF THE SACRED SCRIPTURES OF THE NEW TESTAMENT. *In preparation.*
- Riehm (Dr. E.)**—MESSIANIC PROPHECY: Its Origin, Historical Character, and Relation to New Testament Fulfilment. Crown 8vo, 5s.
- Ritter (Carl)**—THE COMPARATIVE GEOGRAPHY OF PALESTINE AND THE SINAITIC PENINSULA. Four vols. 8vo, 32s.
- Robinson (Rev. S., D.D.)**—DISCOURSES ON REDEMPTION. 8vo, 7s. 6d.
- Robinson (Edward, D.D.)**—GREEK AND ENGLISH LEXICON OF THE NEW TESTAMENT. 8vo, 9s.
- Rothe (Professor)**—SERMONS FOR THE CHRISTIAN YEAR. Cr. 8vo, 6s.
- Saisset**—MANUAL OF MODERN PANTHEISM: Essay on Religious Philosophy. Two vols. 8vo, 10s. 6d.
- Schaff (Professor)**—HISTORY OF THE CHRISTIAN CHURCH. (New Edition, thoroughly Revised and Enlarged.)
- APOSTOLIC CHRISTIANITY, A.D. 1-100. In Two Divisions. Ex. 8vo, 21s.
  - ANTE-NICENE CHRISTIANITY, A.D. 100-325. In Two Divisions. Ex. 8vo, 21s.
  - POST-NICENE CHRISTIANITY, A.D. 325-600. In Two Divisions. Ex. 8vo, 21s.
- Schmid's BIBLICAL THEOLOGY OF THE NEW TESTAMENT.** 8vo, 10s. 6d.
- Scott (Jas., M.A., D.D.)**—PRINCIPLES OF NEW TESTAMENT QUOTATION ESTABLISHED AND APPLIED TO BIBLICAL CRITICISM. Cr. 8vo, 2nd Edit., 4s.
- Scrymgeour (Wm., M.A.)**—LESSONS ON THE LIFE OF CHRIST. *Bible Class Handbooks.* Crown 8vo, 2s. 6d.
- Shedd (W., D.D.)**—HISTORY OF CHRISTIAN DOCTRINE. Two vols. 8vo, 21s.
- SERMONS TO THE NATURAL MAN. 8vo, 7s. 6d.
- Smeaton (Professor)**—THE DOCTRINE OF THE ATONEMENT AS TAUGHT BY CHRIST HIMSELF. Second Edition, 8vo, 10s. 6d.
- ON THE DOCTRINE OF THE HOLY SPIRIT. (*Ninth Series of Cunningham Lectures.*) 8vo, 10s. 6d.
- Smith (H. B., D.D.)**—FAITH AND PHILOSOPHY: Discourses and Essays. Edited, with an Introductory Notice, by G. L. PRENTISS, D.D. 8vo, 12s.
- Smith (Professor Thos., D.D.)**—MEDIÆVAL MISSIONS. (*Duff Missionary Lectures, First Series.*) Crown 8vo, 4s. 6d.
- Stalker (Jas., M.A.)**—A LIFE OF CHRIST. *Bible Class Handbooks.* Crown 8vo, 1s. 6d.
- Steinmeyer (Dr. F. L.)**—THE MIRACLES OF OUR LORD: Examined in their relation to Modern Criticism. 8vo, 7s. 6d.
- THE HISTORY OF THE PASSION AND RESURRECTION OF OUR LORD, considered in the Light of Modern Criticism. 8vo, 10s. 6d.

*T. and T. Clark's Publications.*

- Stevenson (Mrs.)**—THE SYMBOLIC PARABLES : The Predictions of the Apocalypse viewed in relation to the General Truths of Scripture. Crown 8vo, 5s.
- Steward (Rev. G.)**—MEDIATORIAL SOVEREIGNTY : The Mystery of Christ and the Revelation of the Old and New Testaments. Two vols. 8vo, 21s.
- THE ARGUMENT OF THE EPISTLE TO THE HEBREWS. A Posthumous Work. 8vo, 10s. 6d.
- Stier (Dr. Rudolph)**—ON THE WORDS OF THE LORD JESUS. Eight vols. 8vo, £4, 4s. Separate volumes may be had, price 10s. 6d.
- In order to bring this valuable Work more within the reach of all Classes, both Clergy and Laity, Messrs. Clark continue to supply the Eight-volume Edition bound in Four at the Original Subscription price of £2, 2s.*
- THE WORDS OF THE RISEN SAVIOUR, AND COMMENTARY ON THE EPISTLE OF ST. JAMES. 8vo, 10s. 6d.
- THE WORDS OF THE APOSTLES EXPOUNDED. 8vo, 10s. 6d.
- Tholuck (Professor)**—COMMENTARY ON GOSPEL OF ST. JOHN. 8vo, 9s.
- THE EPISTLE TO THE ROMANS. Two vols. fcap. 8vo, 8s.
- LIGHT FROM THE CROSS : Sermons on the Passion of Our Lord. Third Edition, crown 8vo, 5s.
- COMMENTARY ON THE SERMON ON THE MOUNT. 8vo, 10s. 6d.
- Tophel (Pastor G.)**—THE WORK OF THE HOLY SPIRIT. Translated by Rev. T. J. DESPREZ. Crown 8vo, 2s. 6d.
- Uhlhorn (G.)**—CHRISTIAN CHARITY IN THE ANCIENT CHURCH. Crown 8vo, 6s.
- Ullmann (Dr. Carl)**—REFORMERS BEFORE THE REFORMATION, principally in Germany and the Netherlands. Two vols. 8vo, 21s.
- THE SINLESSNESS OF JESUS : An Evidence for Christianity. Fourth Edition, crown 8vo, 6s.
- Urwick (W., M.A.)**—THE SERVANT OF JEHOVAH : A Commentary upon Isaiah lii. 13–liii. 12; with Dissertations upon Isaiah xl.–lxvi. 8vo, 6s.
- Vinet (Professor)**—STUDIES ON BLAISE PASCAL. Crown 8vo, 5s.
- PASTORAL THEOLOGY. Second Edition, post 8vo, 3s. 6d.
- Walker (Rev. Norman L.)**—SCOTTISH CHURCH HISTORY. *Bible Class Handbooks.* Crown 8vo, 1s. 6d.
- Watts (Professor)**—THE NEWER CRITICISM AND THE ANALOGY OF THE FAITH. A Reply to Lectures by W. Robertson Smith, M.A., on the Old Testament in the Jewish Church. Third Edition, crown 8vo, 5s.
- Weiss (Prof. Bernhard)**—BIBLICAL THEOLOGY OF THE NEW TESTAMENT. Two vols. 8vo, 21s.
- LIFE OF CHRIST. Three vols. 8vo, 31s. 6d. *Vol. III. in Press.*
- White (Rev. M.)**—THE SYMBOLICAL NUMBERS OF SCRIPTURE. Crown 8vo, 4s.
- Whyte (Alexander, D.D.)**—THE SHORTER CATECHISM. *Bible Class Handbooks.* Crown 8vo, 2s. 6d.
- Williams (W. H., M.A.)**—A SELECT VOCABULARY OF LATIN ETYMOLOGY. For the use of Schools. Fcap. 8vo, 1s. 6d.
- OVID'S PONTIC EPISTLES. With Notes for Schools. *In the Press.*
- Winer (Dr. G. B.)**—A TREATISE ON THE GRAMMAR OF NEW TESTAMENT GREEK, regarded as the Basis of New Testament Exegesis. Third Edition, edited by W. F. MOULTON, D.D. Ninth English Edition, 8vo, 15s.
- A COMPARATIVE VIEW OF THE DOCTRINES AND CONFESSIONS OF THE VARIOUS COMMUNITIES OF CHRISTENDOM. 8vo, 10s. 6d.
- Wuttke (Professor)**—CHRISTIAN ETHICS. Two vols. 8vo, 12s. 6d.

# NEW SERIES

OF THE

## FOREIGN THEOLOGICAL LIBRARY.

---

*The First Issue for 1884 will comprise—*

- WEISS ON THE LIFE OF CHRIST.** Vol. III. (completion).  
**SARTORIUS ON THE DOCTRINE OF DIVINE LOVE.** One Vol.
- 1880.—**GODET'S COMMENTARY ON THE EPISTLE OF ST. PAUL TO THE ROMANS.** Vol. I.  
**HAGENBACH'S HISTORY OF DOCTRINES.** Vols. I. and II.  
**DORNER'S SYSTEM OF CHRISTIAN DOCTRINE.** Vol. I.
- 1881.—**GODET'S COMMENTARY ON THE EPISTLE OF ST. PAUL TO THE ROMANS.** Vol. II.  
**DORNER'S SYSTEM OF CHRISTIAN DOCTRINE.** Vol. II.  
**MARTENSEN'S CHRISTIAN ETHICS.** (Individual Ethics.)  
**HAGENBACH'S HISTORY OF DOCTRINES.** Vol. III. (completion).
- 1882.—**DORNER'S SYSTEM OF CHRISTIAN DOCTRINE.** Vols. III. and IV. (completion).  
**WEISS'S BIBLICAL THEOLOGY OF THE NEW TESTAMENT.** Vol. I.  
**MARTENSEN'S CHRISTIAN ETHICS.** (Social Ethics.)
- 1883.—**WEISS ON THE LIFE OF CHRIST.** Vols. I. and II.  
**WEISS ON BIBLICAL THEOLOGY OF NEW TESTAMENT.** Vol. II. (completion).  
**GOEBEL ON THE PARABLES.** One Vol.
- 

The FOREIGN THEOLOGICAL LIBRARY was commenced in 1846, and from that time to this Four Volumes yearly (or about 160 in all) have appeared with the utmost regularity.

The Publishers decided to begin a NEW SERIES with 1880, and so give an opportunity to many to subscribe who are possibly deterred by the extent of the former Series.

The Publishers are sanguine enough to believe that a Series containing the works of writers so eminent, upon the most important subjects, cannot fail to secure support.

The Binding of the Series is modernized, so as to distinguish it from the former Series.

The Subscription Price will remain as formerly, 21s. annually for Four Volumes, payable in advance.

---

### A SELECTION OF TWENTY VOLUMES FOR FIVE GUINEAS (OR MORE AT SAME RATIO)

May be had from the Volumes issued previously to New Series, viz. :—  
Works mentioned on three succeeding pages.

# FOREIGN THEOLOGICAL LIBRARY.

ANNUAL SUBSCRIPTION: One Guinea for Four Volumes, Demy 8vo.

*N.B.*—Any two Years in this Series can be had at Subscription Price. *A single Year's Books* (except in the case of the current Year) *cannot be supplied separately.* Non-subscribers, price 10s. 6d. each volume, with exceptions marked.

- 1864—Lange on the Acts of the Apostles. Two Volumes.  
Keil and Delitzsch on the Pentateuch. Vols. I. and II.
- 1865—Keil and Delitzsch on the Pentateuch. Vol. III.  
Hengstenberg on the Gospel of John. Two Volumes.  
Keil and Delitzsch on Joshua, Judges, and Ruth. One Volume.
- 1866—Keil and Delitzsch on Samuel. One Volume.  
Keil and Delitzsch on Job. Two Volumes.  
Martensen's System of Christian Doctrine. One Volume.
- 1867—Delitzsch on Isaiah. Two Volumes.  
Delitzsch on Biblical Psychology. (12s.) One Volume.  
Auberlen on Divine Revelation. One Volume.
- 1868—Keil's Commentary on the Minor Prophets. Two Volumes.  
Delitzsch's Commentary on Epistle to the Hebrews. Vol. I.  
Harless' System of Christian Ethics. One Volume.
- 1869—Hengstenberg on Ezekiel. One Volume.  
Stier on the Words of the Apostles. One Volume.  
Keil's Introduction to the Old Testament. Vol. I.  
Bleek's Introduction to the New Testament. Vol. I.
- 1870—Keil's Introduction to the Old Testament. Vol. II.  
Bleek's Introduction to the New Testament. Vol. II.  
Schmid's New Testament Theology. One Volume.  
Delitzsch's Commentary on Epistle to the Hebrews. Vol. II.
- 1871—Delitzsch's Commentary on the Psalms. Three Volumes.  
Hengstenberg's Kingdom of God under the Old Testament. Vol. I.
- 1872—Keil's Commentary on the Books of Kings. One Volume.  
Keil's Commentary on the Book of Daniel. One Volume.  
Keil's Commentary on the Books of Chronicles. One Volume.  
Hengstenberg's History of the Kingdom of God. Vol. II.
- 1873—Keil's Commentary on Ezra, Nehemiah, and Esther. One Volume.  
Winer's Collection of the Confessions of Christendom. One Volume.  
Keil's Commentary on Jeremiah. Vol. I.  
Martensen on Christian Ethics.
- 1874—Christlieb's Modern Doubt and Christian Belief. One Vol.  
Keil's Commentary on Jeremiah. Vol. II.  
Delitzsch's Commentary on Proverbs. Vol. I.  
Oehler's Biblical Theology of the Old Testament. Vol. I.
- 1875—Godet's Commentary on St. Luke's Gospel. Two Volumes.  
Oehler's Biblical Theology of the Old Testament. Vol. II.  
Delitzsch's Commentary on Proverbs. Vol. II.
- 1876—Keil's Commentary on Ezekiel. Two Volumes.  
Luthardt's Commentary on St. John's Gospel. Vol. I.  
Gedet's Commentary on St. John's Gospel. Vol. I.
- 1877—Delitzsch's Commentary on Song of Solomon and Ecclesiastes.  
Godet's Commentary on St. John's Gospel. Vols. II. and III.  
Luthardt's Commentary on St. John's Gospel. Vol. II.
- 1878—Gebhardt's Doctrine of the Apocalypse.  
Luthardt's Commentary on St. John's Gospel. Vol. III.  
Philippi's Commentary on the Romans. Vol. I.  
Hagenbach's History of the Reformation. Vol. I.
- 1879—Philippi's Commentary on the Romans. Vol. II.  
Hagenbach's History of the Reformation. Vol. II.  
Steinmeyer's History of the Passion and Resurrection of our Lord.  
Haupt's Commentary on the First Epistle of St. John. One Volume.

\*.\* For New Series commencing with 1880, see previous page.

## *T. and T. Clark's Publications.*

MESSRS. CLARK allow a SELECTION of TWENTY VOLUMES (or more at the same ratio) from the Volumes issued previously to New Series (see below),

### At the Subscription Price of Five Guineas.

NON-SUBSCRIPTION PRICES WITHIN BRACKETS.

- Dr. Hengstenberg.**—Commentary on the Psalms. By E. W. HENGSTENBERG, D.D., Professor of Theology in Berlin. In Three Vols. 8vo. (83s.)
- Dr. Gieseler.**—Compendium of Ecclesiastical History. By J. C. L. GIESELER, D.D., Professor of Theology in Göttingen. Five Vols. 8vo. (£2, 12s. 6d.)
- Dr. Olshausen.**—Biblical Commentary on the Gospels and Acts. Adapted especially for Preachers and Students. By HERMANN OLSHAUSEN, D.D., Professor of Theology in the University of Erlangen. In Four Vols. 8vo. (£2, 2s.)—Commentary on the Romans. In One Vol. 8vo. (10s. 6d.)—Commentary on St. Paul's First and Second Epistles to the Corinthians. In One Vol. 8vo. (9s.)—Commentary on St. Paul's Epistles to the Philippians, to Titus, and the First to Timothy. In continuation of the Work of Olshausen. By LIC. AUGUST WIESINGER. In One Vol. 8vo. (10s. 6d.)
- Dr. Neander.**—General History of the Christian Religion and Church. By AUGUSTUS NEANDER, D.D. Nine Vols. 8vo. (£3, 7s. 6d.)
- Prof. H. A. Oh. Hävernick.**—General Introduction to the Old Testament. By PROFESSOR HÄVERNICK. One Vol. 8vo. (10s. 6d.)
- Dr. Müller.**—The Christian Doctrine of Sin. By Dr. JULIUS MÜLLER. Two Vols. 8vo. (21s.) New Edition.
- Dr. Hengstenberg.**—Christology of the Old Testament, and a Commentary on the Messianic Predictions. By E. W. HENGSTENBERG, D.D. Four Vols. (£2, 2s.)
- Dr. M. Baumgarten.**—The Acts of the Apostles; or, The History of the Church in the Apostolic Age. By M. BAUMGARTEN, Ph.D. Three Vols. (£1, 7s.)
- Dr. Stier.**—The Words of the Lord Jesus. By RUDOLPH STIER, D.D., Chief Pastor and Superintendent of Schkeuditz. In Eight Vols. 8vo. (£4, 4s.)
- Dr. Carl Ullmann.**—Reformers before the Reformation, principally in Germany and the Netherlands. Two Vols. 8vo. (£1, 1s.)
- Professor Kurtz.**—History of the Old Covenant; or, Old Testament Dispensation. By PROFESSOR KURTZ of Dorpat. In Three Vols. (£1, 11s. 6d.)
- Dr. Stier.**—The Words of the Risen Saviour, and Commentary on the Epistle of St. James. By RUDOLPH STIER, D.D. One Vol. (10s. 6d.)
- Professor Tholuck.**—Commentary on the Gospel of St. John. One Vol. (9s.)
- Professor Tholuck.**—Commentary on the Sermon on the Mount. One Vol. (10s. 6d.)
- Dr. Hengstenberg.**—On the Book of Ecclesiastes. To which are appended: Treatises on the Song of Solomon; the Book of Job; the Prophet Isaiah; the Sacrifices of Holy Scripture; and on the Jews and the Christian Church. In One Vol. 8vo. (9s.)
- Dr. Ebrard.**—Commentary on the Epistles of St. John. By Dr. JOHN H. A. EBRARD, Professor of Theology. In One Vol. (10s. 6d.)
- Dr. Lange.**—Theological and Homiletical Commentary on the Gospels of St. Matthew and Mark. By J. P. LANGE, D.D. Three Vols. (10s. 6d. each.)
- Dr. Dörner.**—History of the Development of the Doctrine of the Person of Christ. By Dr. J. A. DÖRNER, Professor of Theology in the University of Berlin. Five Vols. (£2, 12s. 6d.)
- Lange and Dr. J. J. Van Oosterzee.**—Theological and Homiletical Commentary on the Gospel of St. Luke. Two Vols. (18s.)
- Dr. Ebrard.**—The Gospel History: A Compendium of Critical Investigations in support of the Historical Character of the Four Gospels. One Vol. (10s. 6d.)
- Lange, Lechler, and Gerok.**—Theological and Homiletical Commentary on the Acts of the Apostles. Edited by Dr. LANGE. Two Vols. (21s.)
- Dr. Hengstenberg.**—Commentary on the Gospel of St. John. Two Vols. (21s.)
- Professor Keil.**—Biblical Commentary on the Pentateuch. Three Vols. (31s. 6d.)

## *T. and T. Clark's Publications.*

### CLARK'S FOREIGN THEOLOGICAL LIBRARY—*Continued.*

- Professor Keil.—Commentary on Joshua, Judges, and Ruth. One Vol. (10s. 6d.)  
 Professor Delitzsch.—A System of Biblical Psychology. One Vol. (12s.)  
 Dr. C. A. Auberlen.—The Divine Revelation. 8vo. (10s. 6d.)  
 Professor Delitzsch.—Commentary on the Prophecies of Isaiah. Two Vols. (21s.)  
 Professor Keil.—Commentary on the Books of Samuel. One Vol. (10s. 6d.)  
 Professor Delitzsch.—Commentary on the Book of Job. Two Vols. (21s.)  
 Bishop Martensen.—Christian Dogmatics. A Compendium of the Doctrines of Christianity. One Vol. (10s. 6d.)  
 Dr. J. P. Lange.—Commentary on the Gospel of St. John. Two Vols. (21s.)  
 Professor Keil.—Commentary on the Minor Prophets. Two Vols. (21s.)  
 Professor Delitzsch.—Commentary on Epistle to the Hebrews. Two Vols. (21s.)  
 Dr. Harless.—A System of Christian Ethics. One Vol. (10s. 6d.)  
 Dr. Hengstenberg.—Commentary on Ezekiel. One Vol. (10s. 6d.)  
 Dr. Stier.—The Words of the Apostles Expounded. One Vol. (10s. 6d.)  
 Professor Keil.—Introduction to the Old Testament. Two Vols. (21s.)  
 Professor Bleek.—Introduction to the New Testament. Two Vols. (21s.)  
 Professor Schmid.—New Testament Theology. One Vol. (10s. 6d.)  
 Professor Delitzsch.—Commentary on the Psalms. Three Vols. (31s. 6d.)  
 Dr. Hengstenberg.—The Kingdom of God under the Old Covenant. Two Vols. (21s.)  
 Professor Keil.—Commentary on the Books of Kings. One Volume. (10s. 6d.)  
 Professor Keil.—Commentary on the Book of Daniel. One Volume. (10s. 6d.)  
 Professor Keil.—Commentary on the Books of Chronicles. One Volume. (10s. 6d.)  
 Professor Keil.—Commentary on Ezra, Nehemiah, and Esther. One Vol. (10s. 6d.)  
 Professor Keil.—Commentary on Jeremiah. Two Vols. (21s.)  
 Winer (Dr. G. B.).—Collection of the Confessions of Christendom. One Vol. (10s. 6d.)  
 Bishop Martensen.—Christian Ethics. One Volume. (10s. 6d.)  
 Professor Delitzsch.—Commentary on the Proverbs of Solomon. Two Vols. (21s.)  
 Professor Oehler.—Biblical Theology of the Old Testament. Two Vols. (21s.)  
 Professor Christlieb.—Modern Doubt and Christian Belief. One Vol. (10s. 6d.)  
 Professor Godet.—Commentary on St. Luke's Gospel. Two Vols. (21s.)  
 Professor Luthardt.—Commentary on St. John's Gospel. Three Vols. (31s. 6d.)  
 Professor Godet.—Commentary on St. John's Gospel. Three Vols. (31s. 6d.)  
 Professor Keil.—Commentary on Ezekiel. Two Vols. (21s.)  
 Professor Delitzsch.—Commentary on Song of Solomon and Ecclesiastes. One Vol. (10s. 6d.)  
 Gebhardt (H.).—Doctrine of the Apocalypse. One Vol. (10s. 6d.)  
 Steinmeyer (Dr. F. L.).—History of the Passion and Resurrection of our Lord. One Vol. (10s. 6d.)  
 Haupt (H.).—Commentary on the First Epistle of St. John. One Vol. (10s. 6d.)  
 Hagenbach (Dr. K. R.).—History of the Reformation. Two Vols. (21s.)  
 Philippi (Dr. F. A.).—Commentary on Romans. Two Vols. (21s.)

#### *And, in connection with the Series—*

- Murphy's Commentary on the Book of Psalms. To count as Two Volumes. (12s.)  
 Alexander's Commentary on Isaiah. Two Volumes. (17s.)  
 Ritter's (Carl) Comparative Geography of Palestine. Four Volumes. (32s.)  
 Shedd's History of Christian Doctrine. Two Volumes. (21s.)  
 Macdonald's Introduction to the Pentateuch. Two Volumes. (21s.)  
 Gerlach's Commentary on the Pentateuch. 8vo. (10s. 6d.)  
 Dr. Hengstenberg.—Dissertations on the Genuineness of Daniel, etc. One Vol. (12s.)

The series, in 159 Volumes (including 1883), price £41, 14s. 9d., forms an *Apparatus* without which it may be truly said *no Theological Library can be complete*; and the Publishers take the liberty of suggesting that no more appropriate gift could be presented to a Clergyman than the Series, in whole or in part.

\*. No DUPLICATES can be included in the *Selection of Twenty Volumes*; and it will save trouble and correspondence if it be distinctly understood that NO LESS number than Twenty can be supplied, unless at non-subscription price.

**Subscribers' Names received by all Retail Booksellers.**

LONDON: (For Works at Non-subscription price only) HAMILTON, ADAMS, & CO.



# LANGE'S COMMENTARIES.

(Subscription price, nett), 15s. each.

## THEOLOGICAL AND HOMILETICAL COMMENTARY ON THE OLD AND NEW TESTAMENTS.

Specially designed and adapted for the use of Ministers and Students. By Prof. JOHN PETER LANGE, D.D., in connection with a number of eminent European Divines. Translated, enlarged, and revised under the general editorship of Rev. Dr. PHILIP SCHAFF, assisted by leading Divines of the various Evangelical Denominations.

### OLD TESTAMENT—14 VOLUMES.

I. GENESIS. With a General Introduction to the Old Testament. By Prof. J. P. LANGE, D.D. Translated from the German, with Additions, by Prof. TAYLOR LEWIS, LL.D., and A. GOSMAN, D.D.—II. EXODUS and LEVITICUS. By J. P. LANGE, D.D. With General Introduction by Rev. Dr. OSGOOD.—III. NUMBERS. By Prof. J. P. LANGE, D.D. DEUTERONOMY. By W. J. SCHROEDER.—IV. JOSHUA. By Rev. F. R. FAY. JUDGES and RUTH. By Prof. PAULUS CASSELL, D.D.—V. SAMUEL. By Professor EADMAN, D.D.—VI. KINGS. By KARL CHR. W. F. BAHR, D.D.—VII. CHRONICLES. By OTTO ZÖCKLER. EZRA. By FR. W. SCHULTZ. NHEMIAH. By Rev. HOWARD CROSBY, D.D., LL.D. ESTHER. By FR. W. SCHULTZ.—VIII. JOB. With an Introduction and Annotations by Prof. TAYLOR LEWIS, LL.D. A Commentary by Dr. OTTO ZÖCKLER, together with an Introductory Essay on Hebrew Poetry by Prof. PHILIP SCHAFF, D.D.—IX. THE PSALMS. By C. B. MOLL, D.D.—X. PROVERBS, ECCLESIASTES, and THE SONG OF SOLOMON. By Prof. O. ZÖCKLER, D.D.—XI. ISALAH. By C. W. E. NAEFELSBACH.—XII. JEREMIAH and LAMENTATIONS. By C. W. E. NAEFELSBACH, D.D.—XIII. EZEKIEL. By F. W. SCHROEDER, D.D. DANIEL. By Professor ZÖCKLER, D.D.—XIV. THE MINOR PROPHETS. HOSEA, JOEL, and AMOS. By OTTO SCHMOLLER, Ph.D. OBADIAH, MICAH, JONAH, NAHUM, HABAKKUK, and ZEPHANIAH. By Rev. PAUL KREIBERT. HAGGAI. By Rev. JAMES E. M'CURDY. ZECHARIAH. By T. W. CHAMBERS, D.D. MALACHI. By JOSEPH PACKARD, D.D.

THE APOCRYPHA. By E. C. BISSELL, D.D. One Volume.

### NEW TESTAMENT—10 VOLUMES.

I. MATTHEW. With a General Introduction to the New Testament. By J. P. LANGE, D.D. Translated, with Additions, by PHILIP SCHAFF, D.D.—II. MARK. By J. P. LANGE, D.D. LUKE. By J. J. VAN OOSTERZEE.—III. JOHN. By J. P. LANGE, D.D.—IV. ACTS. By G. V. LUTCHER, D.D., and Rev. CHARLES GERRICK.—V. ROMANS. By J. P. LANGE, D.D., and Rev. F. R. FAY.—VI. CORINTHIANS. By CHRISTIAN F. KLING.—VII. GALATIANS. By OTTO SCHMOLLER, Ph.D. EPHESIANS, COLOSSIANS, and PHILIPPIANS. By KARL BRAUNE, D.D.—VIII. THESSALONIANS. By Drs. AUBERLEN and RIIGENBACH. TIMOTHY, TITUS, and PHILEMON. By J. J. VAN OOSTERZEE, D.D. HEBREWS. By KARL B. MOLL, D.D.—IX. JAMES. By J. P. LANGE, D.D., and J. J. VAN OOSTERZEE, D.D. PETER and JUDE. By G. F. C. FRONCKMÜLLER, Ph.D. JOHN. By KARL BRAUNE, D.D.—X. THE REVELATION OF JOHN. By Dr. J. P. LANGE. Together with double Alphabetical Index to all the Ten Volumes on the New Testament, by JOHN H. WOODS.

## PROFESSOR EADIE'S COMMENTARIES.

MESSERS. CLARK, with the concurrence of the Trustees of the late PROFESSOR EADIE, beg to announce the issue, in Four Volumes 8vo, of the following Commentaries:—

GALATIANS. EPHESIANS. PHILIPPIANS. COLOSSIANS.

The Four Volumes will be supplied by Subscription at the price of

**TWENTY-FOUR SHILLINGS,**

or, in separate Volumes, at Ten Shillings and Sixpence each.

They have been carefully Edited by

The Rev. WILLIAM YOUNG, M.A., Glasgow.

The value of these Commentaries is well known. They occupy a first and distinctive place in New Testament exegetical literature.

Three of these Volumes have been out of print for a considerable time, and all of them are much in demand.

## KEIL AND DELITZSCH'S COMMENTARIES ON AND INTRODUCTION TO THE OLD TESTAMENT.

|                                       |              |
|---------------------------------------|--------------|
| INTRODUCTION, 2 VOLS.                 | (Keil).      |
| PENTATEUCH, 3 VOLS.                   | (Keil).      |
| JOSHUA, JUDGES, AND RUTH, 1 VOL.      | (Keil).      |
| SAMUEL, 1 VOL.                        | (Keil).      |
| KINGS, 1 VOL., AND CHRONICLES, 1 VOL. | (Keil).      |
| EZRA, NEHEMIAH, AND ESTHER, 1 VOL.    | (Keil).      |
| JOB, 2 VOLS.                          | (Delitzsch). |
| PSALMS, 3 VOLS.                       | (Delitzsch). |
| PROVERBS, 2 VOLS.                     | (Delitzsch). |
| ECCLASIASTES AND SONG OF SOLOMON      | (Delitzsch). |
| ISAIAH, 2 VOLS.                       | (Delitzsch). |
| JEREMIAH AND LAMENTATIONS, 2 VOLS.    | (Keil).      |
| EZEKIEL, 2 VOLS.                      | (Keil).      |
| DANIEL, 1 VOL.                        | (Keil).      |
| MINOR PROPHETS, 2 VOLS.               | (Keil).      |

**T**HE above series (published in CLARK'S Foreign Theological Library) is now completed in 27 Volumes, and Messrs. CLARK will supply it at the Subscription price, in COMPLETE SETS (only), of £7, 2s.

*Separate volumes may be had at the non-subscription price of 10s. 6d. each.*

So complete a Critical and Exegetical Apparatus on the Old Testament is not elsewhere to be found in the English language, and at the present time, when the study of the Old Testament is more widely extended than perhaps ever before, it is believed this offer will be duly appreciated.

'This series is one of great importance to the biblical scholar, and as regards its general execution, it leaves little or nothing to be desired.'—*Edinburgh Review*.

'We have often expressed our opinion of Dr. Delitzsch's great merits as a commentator, and, in particular, of his portion of the admirable Commentary on the Old Testament, written by himself and Dr. Keil, that we need only now congratulate our readers on the completion of the entire work.'—*Church Bells*.

'The authors are among the most accomplished of living Hebraists, and Delitzsch is, in addition, a man of fine historical imagination, and of clear spiritual vision.'—*Baptist Magazine*.

'A more important contribution than this series of commentaries has, we think, never been presented to English theological students.'—*Rock*.

'Very high merit, for thorough Hebrew scholarship, and for keen critical sagacity, belongs to these Old Testament Commentaries. No scholar will willingly dispense with them.'—*British Quarterly Review*.

'The very valuable Keil and Delitzsch series of Commentaries.'—*Wesleyan Methodist Magazine*.

In One Volume, 8vo, price 12s.,

### A SYSTEM OF BIBLICAL PSYCHOLOGY.

By F. DELITZSCH, D.D.

By the same Author.

In Two Volumes, 8vo, price 21s.,

### COMMENTARY ON THE EPISTLE TO THE HEBREWS.

*T. and T. Clark's Publications.*

*In Twenty Handsome 8vo Volumes, SUBSCRIPTION PRICE £5, 5s.,*

MEYER'S  
*Commentary on the New Testament.*

'Meyer has been long and well known to scholars as one of the very ablest of the German expositors of the New Testament. We are not sure whether we ought not to say that he is unrivalled as an interpreter of the grammatical and historical meaning of the sacred writers. The Publishers have now rendered another reasonable and important service to English students in producing this translation.'—*Guardian*.

*Each Volume will be sold separately at 10s. 6d. to Non-Subscribers.*

CRITICAL AND EXEGETICAL  
COMMENTARY ON THE NEW TESTAMENT..

BY DR. H. A. W. MEYER,  
OBERCONSISTORIALRATH, HANNOVER.

The portion contributed by Dr. MEYER has been placed under the editorial care of Rev. Dr. DICKSON, Professor of Divinity in the University of Glasgow; Rev. Dr. CROMBIE, Professor of Biblical Criticism, St. Mary's College, St. Andrews; and Rev. Dr. STEWART, Professor of Biblical Criticism, University of Glasgow..

1st Year—Romans, Two Volumes.

Galatians, One Volume.

St. John's Gospel, Vol. I.

2d Year—St. John's Gospel, Vol. II.

Philippians and Colossians, One Volume.

Acts of the Apostles, Vol. I.

Corinthians, Vol. I.

3d Year—Acts of the Apostles, Vol. II.

St. Matthew's Gospel, Two Volumes.

Corinthians, Vol. II.

4th Year—Mark and Luke, Two Volumes.

Ephesians and Philemon, One Volume.

Thessalonians. (Dr. Lünemann.)

5th Year—Timothy and Titus. (Dr. Huther.)

Peter and Jude. (Dr. Huther.)

Hebrews. (Dr. Lünemann.)

James and John. (Dr. Huther.)

*The series, as written by Meyer himself, is completed by the publication of Ephesians with Philemon in one volume. But to this the Publishers have thought it right to add Thessalonians and Hebrews, by Dr. Lünemann, and the Pastoral and Catholic Epistles, by Dr. Huther. So few, however, of the Subscribers have expressed a desire to have Dr. Düsterdieck's Commentary on Revelation included, that it has been resolved in the meantime not to undertake it.*

'I need hardly add that the last edition of the accurate, perspicuous, and learned commentary of Dr. Meyer has been most carefully consulted throughout; and I must again, as in the preface to the Galatians, avow my great obligations to the acumen and scholarship of the learned editor.'—BISHOP ELLICOTT in Preface to his '*Commentary on Ephesians*.'

'The ablest grammatical exegete of the age.'—PHILIP SCHAFF, D.D.

'In accuracy of scholarship and freedom from prejudice, he is equalled by few.'—*Literary Churchman*.

'We have only to repeat that it remains, of its own kind, the very best Commentary of the New Testament which we possess.'—*Church Bells*.

'No exegetical work is on the whole more valuable, or stands in higher public esteem. As a critic he is candid and cautious; exact to minuteness in philology; a master of the grammatical and historical method of interpretation.'—*Princeton Review*.





219 824

